

# SigLib

**Signal Processing Library**  
**Function Reference Manual**

**Version 10.40**

**24 April, 2023**

© 2023 Alpha Numerix  
Email: <mailto:support@numerix-dsp.com>  
WWW: <https://www.numerix-dsp.com/>



# Table of Contents

|  |           |
|--|-----------|
| <b>DOCUMENTATION OVERVIEW.....</b>                               | <b>24</b> |
| Documentation Conventions.....                                   | 24        |
| How To Use This Manual.....                                      | 24        |
| SigLib Data Types.....   | 24        |
| <b>FUNCTION DESCRIPTIONS.....</b>                                | <b>25</b> |
| <b>FREQUENCY DOMAIN FUNCTIONS.....</b>                           | <b>25</b> |
| <b>Fast Fourier Transform Functions (<i>ffourier.c</i>).....</b> | <b>25</b> |
| Radix-2 FFT Functions.....                                       | 25        |
| FFT <i>Bit Reverse Addressing</i> .....                          | 26        |
| FFT Scaling (Radix-2 and Radix-4).....                           | 26        |
| SIF_Fft.....   | 27        |
| SDA_Rfft.....  | 28        |
| SDA_Cfft.....  | 29        |
| SDA_Cifft.....   | 30        |
| SDA_BitReverseReorder.....                                       | 31        |
| SDA_IndexBitReverseReorder.....                                  | 32        |
| SIF_FastBitReverseReorder.....                                   | 33        |
| SDA_RealRealCepstrum.....  | 34        |
| SDA_RealComplexCepstrum.....                                     | 35        |
| SDA_ComplexComplexCepstrum.....                                  | 36        |
| SIF_FftTone.....   | 37        |
| SDA_RfftTone.....  | 38        |
| SDA_Rfftr.....   | 39        |
| SIF_Fft4.....  | 40        |
| SDA_Rfft4.....   | 41        |
| SDA_Cfft4.....   | 42        |
| SDA_DigitReverseReorder4.....                                    | 43        |
| SDA_IndexDigitReverseReorder4.....                               | 44        |
| SIF_FastDigitReverseReorder4.....                                | 45        |
| SDA_Cfft2rBy1c.....  | 46        |
| SDA_Cfft2rBy1cr.....   | 47        |
| SDA_Cfft42rBy1c.....   | 48        |
| SDA_Cfft42rBy1cr.....  | 49        |
| SDS_Cfft2.....   | 50        |
| SDA_Cfft2.....   | 51        |
| SDS_Cfft3.....   | 52        |
| SDA_Cfft3.....   | 53        |
| <b>Fourier Transform Functions (<i>fourier.c</i>).....</b>       | <b>54</b> |
| SIF_ZoomFft.....   | 54        |
| SDA_ZoomFft.....   | 55        |
| SIF_ZoomFftSimple.....   | 58        |
| SDA_ZoomFftSimple.....   | 59        |

|   |            |
|---|------------|
| SIF_FdHilbert.....  | 61         |
| SDA_FdHilbert.....  | 62         |
| SIF_FdAnalytic.....   | 63         |
| SDA_FdAnalytic.....   | 64         |
| SDA_InstantFreq.....  | 65         |
| SDA_Rdft.....   | 66         |
| SDA_Ridft.....  | 67         |
| SDA_Cdft.....   | 68         |
| SDA_Cidft.....  | 69         |
| SDA_FftShift.....   | 70         |
| SDA_CfftShift.....  | 71         |
| SDA_FftExtend.....  | 72         |
| SDA_CfftExtend.....   | 73         |
| SIF_DctII.....  | 74         |
| SDA_DctII.....  | 75         |
| SIF_DctIIOrthogonal.....  | 76         |
| SDA_DctIIOrthogonal.....  | 77         |
| <b>Arbitrary Length Fast Fourier Transform Functions (<i>arbfft.c</i>).....</b> | <b>78</b>  |
| SIF_FftArb.....   | 78         |
| SUF_FftArbAllocLength.....  | 79         |
| SDA_RfftArb.....  | 80         |
| SDA_CfftArb.....  | 81         |
| SDA_CifftArb.....   | 82         |
| <b>Power Spectrum Functions (<i>pspect.c</i>).....</b>                          | <b>84</b>  |
| SIF_FastAutoCrossPowerSpectrum.....   | 84         |
| SDA_FastAutoPowerSpectrum.....  | 85         |
| SDA_FastCrossPowerSpectrum.....   | 86         |
| SIF_ArbAutoCrossPowerSpectrum.....  | 87         |
| SDA_ArbAutoPowerSpectrum.....   | 88         |
| SDA_ArbCrossPowerSpectrum.....  | 89         |
| SIF_WelchPowerSpectrum.....   | 90         |
| SDA_WelchRealPowerSpectrum.....   | 91         |
| SDA_WelchComplexPowerSpectrum.....  | 92         |
| SIF_MagnitudeSquaredCoherence.....  | 93         |
| SDA_MagnitudeSquaredCoherence.....  | 94         |
| <b>Frequency Domain Filtering Functions (<i>fdfilter.c</i>).....</b>            | <b>95</b>  |
| SIF_FirOverlapAdd.....  | 95         |
| SDA_FirOverlapAdd.....  | 96         |
| SIF_FirOverlapSave.....   | 97         |
| SDA_FirOverlapSave.....   | 98         |
| SIF_FftConvolvePre.....   | 99         |
| SDA_FftConvolvePre.....   | 100        |
| SDA_FftConvolveArb.....   | 101        |
| SIF_FftCorrelatePre.....  | 102        |
| SDA_FftCorrelatePre.....  | 103        |
| SDA_FftCorrelateArb.....  | 104        |
| <b>CHIRP Z-TRANSFORM FUNCTIONS (<i>chirpz.c</i>).....</b>                       | <b>105</b> |
| SIF_Czt.....  | 106        |
| SIF_Awn.....  | 107        |

|  |            |
|--|------------|
| SIF_VI.....  | 108        |
| SIF_Wm.....  | 109        |
| <b>WINDOWING FUNCTIONS (<i>window.c</i>).....</b>      | <b>110</b> |
| SIF_Window.....  | 110        |
| SIF_TableTopWindow.....                                | 111        |
| SDA_Window.....  | 112        |
| SDA_ComplexWindow.....                                 | 113        |
| SDA_WindowInverseCoherentGain.....                     | 114        |
| SDA_WindowEquivalentNoiseBandwidth.....                | 115        |
| SDA_WindowProcessingGain.....                          | 116        |
| SDS_I0Bessel.....                                      | 117        |
| <b>FIXED COEFFICIENT FILTER FUNCTIONS.....</b>         | <b>118</b> |
| <b>FIR Filtering Functions (<i>firfilt.c</i>).....</b> | <b>118</b> |
| SIF_Fir.....   | 118        |
| SDS_Fir.....   | 119        |
| SDA_Fir.....   | 120        |
| SDS_FirAddSample.....                                  | 121        |
| SDA_FirAddSamples.....                                 | 122        |
| SIF_Comb.....  | 123        |
| SDS_Comb.....  | 124        |
| SDA_Comb.....  | 125        |
| SIF_FirComplex.....                                    | 126        |
| SDS_FirComplex.....                                    | 127        |
| SDA_FirComplex.....                                    | 128        |
| SIF_FirWithStore.....                                  | 129        |
| SDS_FirWithStore.....                                  | 130        |
| SDA_FirWithStore.....                                  | 131        |
| SIF_FirComplexWithStore.....                           | 132        |
| SDS_FirComplexWithStore.....                           | 133        |
| SDA_FirComplexWithStore.....                           | 134        |
| SDS_FirAddSampleWithStore.....                         | 135        |
| SDA_FirAddSamplesWithStore.....                        | 136        |
| SIF_FirExtendedArray.....                              | 137        |
| SDS_FirExtendedArray.....                              | 138        |
| SDA_FirExtendedArray.....                              | 139        |
| SIF_FirComplexExtendedArray.....                       | 140        |
| SDS_FirComplexExtendedArray.....                       | 141        |
| SDA_FirComplexExtendedArray.....                       | 142        |
| SDS_FirExtendedArrayAddSample.....                     | 143        |
| SDA_FirExtendedArrayAddSamples.....                    | 144        |
| SIF_FirLowPassFilter.....                              | 145        |
| SIF_FirHighPassFilter.....                             | 146        |
| SIF_FirBandPassFilter.....                             | 147        |
| SIF_FirLowPassFilterWindow.....                        | 148        |
| SIF_FirHighPassFilterWindow.....                       | 149        |
| SIF_FirBandPassFilterWindow.....                       | 150        |
| SUF_FirKaiserApproximation.....                        | 151        |
| SIF_FirMatchedFilter.....                              | 152        |
| SDA_FirFilterInverseCoherentGain.....                  | 153        |
| SIF_TappedDelayLine.....                               | 154        |

|  |            |
|--|------------|
| SDS_TappedDelayLine.....                               | 155        |
| SDA_TappedDelayLine.....                               | 156        |
| SIF_TappedDelayLineComplex.....                        | 157        |
| SDS_TappedDelayLineComplex.....                        | 158        |
| SDA_TappedDelayLineComplex.....                        | 159        |
| SIF_TappedDelayLineIQ.....                             | 160        |
| SDS_TappedDelayLineIQ.....                             | 161        |
| SDA_TappedDelayLineIQ.....                             | 162        |
| SIF_FirPolyPhaseGenerate.....                          | 163        |
| SIF_FirZeroNotchFilter.....                            | 164        |
| <b>IIR Filtering Functions (<i>iirfilt.c</i>).....</b> | <b>165</b> |
| SIF_lir.....   | 166        |
| SDS_lir.....   | 167        |
| SDA_lir.....   | 168        |
| SDS_lirMac.....  | 169        |
| SDA_lirMac.....  | 170        |
| SIF_lirOrderN.....                                     | 171        |
| SDS_lirOrderN.....                                     | 172        |
| SDA_lirOrderN.....                                     | 173        |
| SIF_lirNc.....   | 174        |
| SDA_lirNc.....   | 175        |
| SDA_BilinearTransform.....                             | 177        |
| SDS_PreWarp.....                                       | 178        |
| SDA_MatchedZTransform.....                             | 179        |
| SDA_lirZplaneToCoeffs.....                             | 180        |
| SDA_lirZplanePolarToCoeffs.....                        | 181        |
| SDA_lirZplaneLpfToLpf.....                             | 182        |
| SDA_lirZplaneLpfToHpf.....                             | 183        |
| SDA_lirZplaneLpfToBpf.....                             | 184        |
| SDA_lirZplaneLpfToBsf.....                             | 185        |
| SDA_lirModifyFilterGain.....                           | 186        |
| SIF_lirLowPassFilter.....                              | 187        |
| SIF_lirHighPassFilter.....                             | 188        |
| SIF_lirAllPassFilter.....                              | 189        |
| SIF_lirBandPassFilter.....                             | 190        |
| SIF_lirNotchFilter.....                                | 191        |
| SIF_lirPeakingFilter.....                              | 192        |
| SIF_lirLowShelfFilter.....                             | 193        |
| SIF_lirHighShelfFilter.....                            | 194        |
| SDS_lirRemoveDC.....                                   | 195        |
| SDA_lirRemoveDC.....                                   | 196        |
| SIF_OnePole.....                                       | 197        |
| SDS_OnePole.....                                       | 198        |
| SDA_OnePole.....                                       | 199        |
| SDS_OnePoleNormalized.....                             | 200        |
| SDA_OnePoleNormalized.....                             | 201        |
| SDA_OnePolePerSample.....                              | 202        |
| SIF_OnePoleHighPass.....                               | 203        |
| SDS_OnePoleHighPass.....                               | 204        |
| SDA_OnePoleHighPass.....                               | 205        |
| SDS_OnePoleHighPassNormalized.....                     | 206        |
| SDA_OnePoleHighPassNormalized.....                     | 207        |

|   |            |
|---|------------|
| SDA_OnePoleHighPassPerSample.....                             | 208        |
| SDS_OnePoleTimeConstantToFilterCoeff.....                     | 209        |
| SDS_OnePoleCutOffFrequencyToFilterCoeff.....                  | 210        |
| SDS_OnePoleHighPassCutOffFrequencyToFilterCoeff.....          | 211        |
| SIF_AllPole.....  | 212        |
| SDS_AllPole.....  | 213        |
| SDA_AllPole.....  | 214        |
| SDA_AllPole.....  | 215        |
| SDA_ZDomainCoefficientReorg.....                              | 216        |
| SIF_lirNotchFilter2.....                                      | 217        |
| SIF_lirNormalizedCoefficients.....                            | 218        |
| SIF_lirNormalizedSPlaneCoefficients.....                      | 219        |
| SDA_TranslateSPlaneCutOffFrequency.....                       | 220        |
| SDA_lirLpLpShift.....   | 221        |
| SDA_lirLpHpShift.....   | 222        |
| SIF_lir2PoleLpf.....  | 223        |
| SDS_lir2Pole.....   | 224        |
| SDS_lir2Pole.....   | 225        |
| SDA_lirNegateAlphaCoeffs.....                                 | 226        |
| <b>Generic Filtering Functions (<i>filter.c</i>).....</b>     | <b>227</b> |
| SDA_Integrate.....  | 227        |
| SDA_Differentiate.....  | 228        |
| SIF_LeakyIntegrator.....                                      | 229        |
| SDS_LeakyIntegrator1.....                                     | 230        |
| SDS_LeakyIntegrator2.....                                     | 231        |
| SIF_HilbertTransformer.....                                   | 232        |
| SIF_GoertzelFilter.....                                       | 233        |
| SDA_GoertzelFilter.....                                       | 234        |
| SDS_GoertzelFilter.....                                       | 235        |
| SIF_GoertzelDetect.....                                       | 236        |
| SDA_GoertzelDetect.....                                       | 237        |
| SIF_GoertzelDetectComplex.....                                | 238        |
| SDA_GoertzelDetectComplex.....                                | 239        |
| SIF_GaussianFilter.....                                       | 240        |
| SIF_GaussianFilter2.....                                      | 241        |
| SIF_RaisedCosineFilter.....                                   | 242        |
| SIF_RootRaisedCosineFilter.....                               | 243        |
| SDS_ZTransform.....   | 244        |
| SDS_ZTransformDB.....   | 245        |
| SUF_EstimateBPFilterLength.....                               | 246        |
| SUF_EstimateBPFilterError.....                                | 247        |
| SUF_FrequenciesToOctaves.....                                 | 248        |
| SUF_FrequenciesToCentreFreqHz.....                            | 249        |
| SUF_FrequenciesToQFactor.....                                 | 250        |
| SUF_BandwidthToQFactor.....                                   | 251        |
| SUF_QFactorToBandwidth.....                                   | 252        |
| <b>ACOUSTIC PROCESSING FUNCTIONS (<i>acoustic.c</i>).....</b> | <b>253</b> |
| SDA_LinearMicrophoneArrayBeamPattern.....                     | 253        |
| SDA_LinearMicrophoneArrayBeamPatternLinear.....               | 254        |
| SDA_MicrophoneArrayCalculateDelays.....                       | 255        |
| SDA_MicrophoneArrayBeamPattern.....                           | 256        |

|   |            |
|---|------------|
| SDA_MicrophoneArrayBeamPatternLinear.....                             | 257        |
| SDA_MicrophoneArrayBeamPatternLinear.....                             | 258        |
| <b>ADAPTIVE COEFFICIENT FILTER FUNCTIONS (<i>adaptive.c</i>).....</b> | <b>259</b> |
| SIF_Lms.....  | 260        |
| SDS_Lms.....  | 261        |
| SDA_LmsUpdate.....  | 262        |
| SDA_LeakyLmsUpdate.....   | 263        |
| SDA_NormalizedLmsUpdate.....  | 264        |
| SDA_SignErrorLmsUpdate.....   | 265        |
| SDA_SignDataLmsUpdate.....  | 266        |
| SDA_SignSignLmsUpdate.....  | 267        |
| <b>CONVOLUTION FUNCTIONS (<i>convolve.c</i>).....</b>                 | <b>268</b> |
| SDA_ConvolveLinear.....   | 268        |
| SDA_ConvolvePartial.....  | 269        |
| SDA_ConvolveCircular.....   | 270        |
| SDA_ConvolveLinearComplex.....  | 271        |
| SDA_ConvolvePartialComplex.....                                       | 272        |
| SDA_ConvolveCircularComplex.....                                      | 273        |
| SDA_Deconvolution.....  | 274        |
| SIF_FftDeconvolutionPre.....  | 275        |
| SDA_FftDeconvolutionPre.....  | 276        |
| <b>CORRELATION FUNCTIONS (<i>correlate.c</i>).....</b>                | <b>277</b> |
| SDA_CorrelateLinear.....  | 277        |
| SDA_CorrelatePartial.....   | 278        |
| SDA_CorrelateCircular.....  | 279        |
| SDA_Covariance.....   | 280        |
| SDA_CovariancePartial.....  | 281        |
| SDA_CorrelateLinearReturnPeak.....                                    | 282        |
| <b>DELAY FUNCTIONS (<i>delay.c</i>).....</b>                          | <b>283</b> |
| <b>Overview of SigLib delay functions.....</b>                        | <b>283</b> |
| SIF_FixedDelay.....   | 283        |
| SDS_FixedDelay.....   | 284        |
| SDA_FixedDelay.....   | 285        |
| SIF_FixedDelayComplex.....  | 286        |
| SDS_FixedDelayComplex.....  | 287        |
| SDA_FixedDelayComplex.....  | 288        |
| SDA_ShortFixedDelay.....  | 289        |
| SIF_VariableDelay.....  | 290        |
| SDS_VariableDelay.....  | 291        |
| SDA_VariableDelay.....  | 292        |
| SIF_VariableDelayComplex.....   | 293        |
| SDS_VariableDelayComplex.....   | 294        |
| SDA_VariableDelayComplex.....   | 295        |
| SUF_IncreaseVariableDelay.....  | 296        |
| SUF_DecreaseVariableDelay.....  | 297        |
| SDA_Align.....  | 298        |
| <b>IMAGE PROCESSING FUNCTIONS (<i>image.c</i>).....</b>               | <b>299</b> |

|   |            |
|---|------------|
| SIM_Fft2d.....  | 300        |
| SIF_Fft2d.....  | 301        |
| SIM_Conv3x3.....  | 302        |
| SIM_Sobel3x3.....   | 303        |
| SIM_SobelVertical3x3.....                                     | 304        |
| SIM_SobelHorizontal3x3.....                                   | 305        |
| SIM_Median3x3.....  | 306        |
| SIF_ConvCoefficients3x3.....                                  | 307        |
| SIM_Max.....  | 308        |
| SIM_Min.....  | 309        |
| <b>IMAGE CODING FUNCTIONS (<i>icoder.c</i>).....</b>          | <b>310</b> |
| SIF_Dct8x8.....   | 310        |
| SIM_Dct8x8.....   | 311        |
| SIM_Idct8x8.....  | 312        |
| SIM_ZigZagScan.....   | 313        |
| SIM_ZigZagDescan.....   | 314        |
| <b>SIGNAL GENERATION FUNCTIONS (<i>siggen.c</i>).....</b>     | <b>315</b> |
| SDA_SignalGenerate.....                                       | 315        |
| SDS_SignalGenerate.....                                       | 319        |
| SIF_Resonator.....  | 320        |
| SDA_Resonator.....  | 321        |
| SIF_Resonator1.....   | 322        |
| SDA_Resonator1.....   | 323        |
| SDA_Resonator1Add.....  | 324        |
| SDA_SignalGeneratePolarWhiteNoise.....                        | 325        |
| SDS_SignalGeneratePolarWhiteNoise.....                        | 326        |
| SDA_SignalGeneratePolarGaussianNoise.....                     | 327        |
| SDS_SignalGeneratePolarGaussianNoise.....                     | 328        |
| SDA_SignalAddPolarJitterAndGaussianNoise.....                 | 329        |
| SDS_SignalAddPolarJitterAndGaussianNoise.....                 | 330        |
| SDA_Ramp.....   | 331        |
| SIF_RandomNumber.....   | 332        |
| SDS_RandomNumber.....   | 333        |
| SDA_RandomNumber.....   | 334        |
| <b>COMMUNICATION FUNCTIONS.....</b>                           | <b>335</b> |
| <b>General Communications Functions (<i>comms.c</i>).....</b> | <b>335</b> |
| SDA_BitErrorRate.....   | 335        |
| SDA_Interleave.....   | 336        |
| SDA_Deinterleave.....   | 337        |
| SCV_EuclideanDistance.....                                    | 338        |
| SCV_EuclideanDistanceSquared.....                             | 339        |
| SCA_EuclideanDistance.....                                    | 340        |
| SCA_EuclideanDistanceSquared.....                             | 341        |
| SDS_EuclideanDistance.....                                    | 342        |
| SDS_EuclideanDistanceSquared.....                             | 343        |
| SDA_EuclideanDistance.....                                    | 344        |
| SDA_EuclideanDistanceSquared.....                             | 345        |
| SDS_ManchesterEncode.....                                     | 346        |
| SDS_ManchesterDecode.....                                     | 347        |



|  |            |
|--|------------|
| SDS_ManchesterEncodeByte.....  | 348        |
| SDS_ManchesterDecodeByte.....  | 349        |
| SIF_DetectNumericalWordSequence.....   | 350        |
| SDS_DetectNumericalWordSequence.....   | 351        |
| SIF_DetectNumericalBitSequence.....  | 352        |
| SDS_DetectNumericalBitSequence.....  | 353        |
| SIF_DetectCharacterSequence.....   | 354        |
| SDS_DetectCharacterSequence.....   | 355        |
| SDS_ErrorVector.....   | 356        |
| SDS_ErrorVectorMagnitudePercent.....   | 357        |
| SDS_ErrorVectorMagnitudeDecibels.....  | 358        |
| SDS_ReverseDiBits.....   | 359        |
| SDS_QpskBitErrorCount.....   | 360        |
| SDS_BitErrorRate.....  | 361        |
| <b>Communications Timing Detection Functions (<i>timing.c</i>).....</b>          | <b>362</b> |
| SIF_PhaseLockedLoop.....   | 362        |
| SDS_PhaseLockedLoop.....   | 363        |
| SDA_PhaseLockedLoop.....   | 364        |
| SIF_CostasLoop.....  | 365        |
| SDS_CostasLoop.....  | 367        |
| SDA_CostasLoop.....  | 368        |
| SRF_CostasLoop.....  | 369        |
| SIF_180DegreePhaseDetect.....  | 370        |
| SIF_180DegreePhaseDetect.....  | 371        |
| SIF_TriggerReverberator.....   | 372        |
| SDA_TriggerReverberator.....   | 373        |
| SDS_TriggerReverberator.....   | 374        |
| SDA_TriggerSelector.....   | 375        |
| SIF_EarlyLateGate.....   | 376        |
| SDA_EarlyLateGate.....   | 378        |
| SDA_EarlyLateGateDebug.....  | 379        |
| SDS_EarlyLateGate.....   | 380        |
| SIF_EarlyLateGateSquarePulse.....  | 381        |
| SDA_EarlyLateGateSquarePulse.....  | 383        |
| SDA_EarlyLateGateSquarePulseDebug.....   | 384        |
| SDS_EarlyLateGateSquarePulse.....  | 385        |
| <b>Convolutional Encode and Viterbi Decode Functions (<i>viterbi.c</i>).....</b> | <b>386</b> |
| SDS_ConvEncoderK3.....   | 387        |
| SIF_ViterbiDecoderK3.....  | 388        |
| SDS_ViterbiDecoderK3.....  | 389        |
| SDS_ConvEncoderV32.....  | 390        |
| SIF_ViterbiDecoderV32.....   | 391        |
| SDS_ViterbiDecoderV32.....   | 392        |
| <b>Analog Modulation Functions (<i>mod_a.c</i>).....</b>                         | <b>393</b> |
| SIF_AmplitudeModulate.....   | 393        |
| SDA_AmplitudeModulate.....   | 394        |
| SDS_AmplitudeModulate.....   | 395        |
| SIF_AmplitudeModulate2.....  | 396        |
| SDA_AmplitudeModulate2.....  | 397        |
| SDS_AmplitudeModulate2.....  | 398        |

|   |            |
|---|------------|
| SIF_ComplexShift.....                                     | 399        |
| SDA_ComplexShift.....                                     | 400        |
| SIF_FrequencyModulate.....                                | 401        |
| SDS_FrequencyModulate.....                                | 402        |
| SDA_FrequencyModulate.....                                | 403        |
| SDA_FrequencyDemodulate.....                              | 404        |
| SIF_FrequencyModulateComplex.....                         | 405        |
| SDS_FrequencyModulateComplex.....                         | 406        |
| SDA_FrequencyModulateComplex.....                         | 407        |
| SDA_DeltaModulate.....                                    | 408        |
| SDA_DeltaDemodulate.....                                  | 409        |
| SDA_DeltaModulate2.....                                   | 410        |
| <b>Digital Modulation Functions (<i>mod_d.c</i>).....</b> | <b>411</b> |
| SIF_CostasQamDemodulate.....                              | 411        |
| SDS_CostasQamDemodulate.....                              | 414        |
| SDS_CostasQamDemodulateDebug.....                         | 416        |
| SDA_CostasQamDemodulate.....                              | 418        |
| SDA_CostasQamDemodulateDebug.....                         | 420        |
| SIF_QpskModulate.....                                     | 422        |
| SDA_QpskModulate.....                                     | 423        |
| SIF_QpskDemodulate.....                                   | 424        |
| SDA_QpskDemodulate.....                                   | 425        |
| SDA_QpskDemodulateDebug.....                              | 426        |
| SDS_QpskDifferentialEncode.....                           | 427        |
| SDS_QpskDifferentialDecode.....                           | 428        |
| <b>Differential Encoder Introduction.....</b>             | <b>429</b> |
| SIF_DifferentialEncoder.....                              | 430        |
| SDS_DifferentialEncode.....                               | 431        |
| SDS_DifferentialDecode.....                               | 432        |
| SIF_FskModulate.....                                      | 433        |
| SDA_FskModulateByte.....                                  | 434        |
| SDA_FskDemodulateByte.....                                | 435        |
| SDA_CpfskModulateByte.....                                | 436        |
| SDA_FskModulate.....                                      | 437        |
| SDA_FskDemodulate.....                                    | 438        |
| SDA_CpfskModulate.....                                    | 439        |
| SIF_Qam16Modulate.....                                    | 440        |
| SDA_Qam16Modulate.....                                    | 441        |
| SIF_Qam16Demodulate.....                                  | 442        |
| SDA_Qam16Demodulate.....                                  | 443        |
| SDA_Qam16DemodulateDebug.....                             | 444        |
| SDA_Qam16DifferentialEncode.....                          | 445        |
| SDA_Qam16DifferentialDecode.....                          | 446        |
| SIF_BpskModulate.....                                     | 447        |
| SDA_BpskModulate.....                                     | 448        |
| SDA_BpskModulateByte.....                                 | 449        |
| SIF_BpskDemodulate.....                                   | 450        |
| SDA_BpskDemodulate.....                                   | 452        |
| SDA_BpskDemodulateDebug.....                              | 453        |
| SIF_DpskModulate.....                                     | 454        |
| SDA_DpskModulate.....                                     | 455        |

|   |            |
|---|------------|
| SDA_DpskModulateByte.....                                     | 456        |
| SIF_DpskDemodulate.....                                       | 457        |
| SDA_DpskDemodulate.....                                       | 458        |
| SDA_DpskDemodulateDebug.....                                  | 459        |
| SIF_PiByFourDQpskModulate.....                                | 460        |
| SDA_PiByFourDQpskModulate.....                                | 461        |
| SDS_ChannelizationCode.....                                   | 462        |
| SDA_ComplexQPSKSpread.....                                    | 463        |
| SDA_ComplexQPSKDeSpread.....                                  | 464        |
| <b>Modem Utility Functions (modem.c).....</b>                 | <b>465</b> |
| SUF_AsyncCharacterLength.....                                 | 465        |
| SDA_SyncToAsyncConverter.....                                 | 466        |
| SDA_AsyncToSyncConverter.....                                 | 467        |
| SIF_AsyncAddRemoveStopBits.....                               | 468        |
| SDA_AsyncRemoveStopBits.....                                  | 469        |
| SDA_AsyncAddStopBits.....                                     | 470        |
| SDA_DecreaseWordLength.....                                   | 471        |
| SDA_IncreaseWordLength.....                                   | 472        |
| <b>PRBS (prbs.c).....</b>                                     | <b>473</b> |
| SDS_Scrambler1417.....  | 473        |
| SDS_Descrambler1417.....                                      | 474        |
| SDS_Scrambler1417WithInversion.....                           | 475        |
| SDS_Descrambler1417WithInversion.....                         | 476        |
| SDS_Scrambler1823.....  | 477        |
| SDS_Descrambler1823.....                                      | 478        |
| SDS_Scrambler523.....   | 479        |
| SDS_Descrambler523.....                                       | 480        |
| SDS_ScramblerDescramblerPN9.....                              | 481        |
| SDS_SequenceGeneratorPN9.....                                 | 482        |
| SDS_ScramblerDescramblerPN15.....                             | 483        |
| SDS_SequenceGeneratorPN15.....                                | 484        |
| SDS_ScramblerDescramblergCRC24.....                           | 485        |
| SDS_SequenceGeneratorgCRC24.....                              | 486        |
| SDS_ScramblerDescramblergCRC16.....                           | 487        |
| SDS_SequenceGeneratorgCRC16.....                              | 488        |
| SDS_ScramblerDescramblergCRC12.....                           | 489        |
| SDS_SequenceGeneratorgCRC12.....                              | 490        |
| SDS_ScramblerDescramblergCRC8.....                            | 491        |
| SDS_SequenceGeneratorgCRC8.....                               | 492        |
| SDS_LongCodeGenerator3GPPDL.....                              | 493        |
| SDS_LongCodeGenerator3GPPUL.....                              | 494        |
| <b>Multiplex Functions (mux.c).....</b>                       | <b>495</b> |
| SDA_Multiplex.....  | 495        |
| SDA_Demultiplex.....  | 496        |
| SDA_MuxN.....   | 497        |
| SDA_DemuxN.....   | 498        |
| <b>Decimation And Interpolation Functions (decint.c).....</b> | <b>499</b> |
| SIF_Decimate.....   | 499        |
| SDA_Decimate.....   | 500        |

|   |            |
|---|------------|
| SIF_Interpolate.....  | 501        |
| SDA_Interpolate.....  | 502        |
| SIF_FilterAndDecimate.....                                  | 503        |
| SDA_FilterAndDecimate.....                                  | 504        |
| SIF_InterpolateAndFilter.....                               | 505        |
| SDA_InterpolateAndFilter.....                               | 506        |
| SDA_ResampleLinear.....                                     | 507        |
| SDA_ResampleLinearNSamples.....                             | 508        |
| SDA_InterpolateLinear1D.....                                | 509        |
| SDA_InterpolateLinear2D.....                                | 510        |
| SIF_ResampleSinc.....                                       | 511        |
| SIF_ResampleWindowedSinc.....                               | 512        |
| SDA_ResampleSinc.....                                       | 513        |
| SDA_ResampleSincNSamples.....                               | 514        |
| SIF_InterpolateSinc1D.....                                  | 516        |
| SIF_InterpolateWindowedSinc1D.....                          | 517        |
| SDA_InterpolateSinc1D.....                                  | 518        |
| SIF_ResampleLinearContiguous.....                           | 519        |
| SDA_ResampleLinearContiguous.....                           | 520        |
| SIF_ResampleSincContiguous.....                             | 521        |
| SIF_ResampleWindowedSincContiguous.....                     | 522        |
| SDA_ResampleSincContiguous.....                             | 523        |
| SDS_InterpolateQuadratic1D.....                             | 525        |
| SDS_InterpolateQuadraticBSpline1D.....                      | 526        |
| SDS_InterpolateQuadraticLagrange1D.....                     | 527        |
| <b>DTMF Functions (<i>dtmf.c</i>).....</b>                  | <b>528</b> |
| SIF_DtmfGenerate.....                                       | 530        |
| SDA_DtmfGenerate.....                                       | 531        |
| SIF_DtmfDetect.....   | 532        |
| SDA_DtmfDetect.....   | 533        |
| SDA_DtmfDetectAndValidate.....                              | 534        |
| SUF_AsciiToKeyCode.....                                     | 535        |
| SUF_KeyCodeToAscii.....                                     | 536        |
| <b>SPEECH PROCESSING FUNCTIONS (<i>speech.c</i>).....</b>   | <b>537</b> |
| SIF_PreEmphasisFilter.....                                  | 537        |
| SDA_PreEmphasisFilter.....                                  | 538        |
| SIF_DeEmphasisFilter.....                                   | 539        |
| SDA_DeEmphasisFilter.....                                   | 540        |
| SDA_AdpcmEncoder.....                                       | 541        |
| SDA_AdpcmEncoderDebug.....                                  | 542        |
| SDA_AdpcmDecoder.....                                       | 543        |
| <b>MINIMUM AND MAXIMUM FUNCTIONS (<i>minmax.c</i>).....</b> | <b>544</b> |
| SDA_Max.....  | 544        |
| SDA_AbsMax.....   | 545        |
| SDA_Min.....  | 546        |
| SDA_AbsMin.....   | 547        |
| SDA_Middle.....   | 548        |
| SDA_Range.....  | 549        |
| SDA_MaxIndex.....   | 550        |
| SDA_AbsMaxIndex.....  | 551        |

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| SDA_MinIndex.....                       | 552 |
| SDA_AbsMinIndex.....                    | 553 |
| SDS_Max.....                            | 554 |
| SDS_AbsMax.....                         | 555 |
| SDS_Min.....                            | 556 |
| SDS_AbsMin.....                         | 557 |
| SDA_LocalMax.....                       | 558 |
| SDA_LocalAbsMax.....                    | 559 |
| SDA_LocalMin.....                       | 560 |
| SDA_LocalAbsMin.....                    | 561 |
| SDA_Max2.....                           | 562 |
| SDA_AbsMax2.....                        | 563 |
| SDA_SignedAbsMax2.....                  | 564 |
| SDA_Min2.....                           | 565 |
| SDA_AbsMin2.....                        | 566 |
| SDA_SignedAbsMin2.....                  | 567 |
| SDA_PeakHold.....                       | 568 |
| SDA_PeakHoldPerSample.....              | 569 |
| SDA_DetectFirstPeakOverThreshold.....   | 570 |
| SDS_Round.....                          | 571 |
| SDA_Round.....                          | 572 |
| SDS_Clip.....                           | 573 |
| SDA_Clip.....                           | 574 |
| SDS_Threshold.....                      | 575 |
| SDA_Threshold.....                      | 576 |
| SDS_SoftThreshold.....                  | 577 |
| SDA_SoftThreshold.....                  | 578 |
| SDS_ThresholdAndClamp.....              | 579 |
| SDA_ThresholdAndClamp.....              | 580 |
| SDS_Clamp.....                          | 581 |
| SDA_Clamp.....                          | 582 |
| SDA_TestOverThreshold.....              | 583 |
| SDA_TestAbsOverThreshold.....           | 584 |
| SDA_SelectMax.....                      | 585 |
| SDA_SelectMin.....                      | 586 |
| SDA_SelectMagnitudeSquaredMax.....      | 587 |
| SDA_SelectMagnitudeSquaredMin.....      | 588 |
| SDS_SetMinValue.....                    | 589 |
| SDA_SetMinValue.....                    | 590 |
| SDA_PeakToAverageRatio.....             | 591 |
| SDA_PeakToAveragePowerRatio.....        | 592 |
| SDA_PeakToAveragePowerRatioDB.....      | 593 |
| SDA_PeakToAveragePowerRatioComplex..... | 594 |
| SDA_PeakToAveragePowerRatioComplex..... | 595 |
| SDA_PeakToAveragePowerRatioDB.....      | 596 |
| SDA_MovePeakTowardsDeadBand.....        | 597 |
| SIF_Envelope.....                       | 598 |
| SDS_Envelope.....                       | 599 |
| SDA_Envelope.....                       | 600 |
| SIF_EnvelopeRMS.....                    | 601 |
| SDS_EnvelopeRMS.....                    | 602 |
| SDA_EnvelopeRMS.....                    | 603 |
| SIF_EnvelopeHilbert.....                | 604 |

|   |            |
|---|------------|
| SDS_EnvelopeHilbert.....  | 605        |
| SDA_EnvelopeHilbert.....  | 606        |
| SDS_InterpolateThreePointQuadraticVertexMagnitude.....              | 607        |
| SDS_InterpolateThreePointQuadraticVertexLocation.....               | 608        |
| SDS_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticVertexMagnitude.....     | 609        |
| SDS_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticVertexLocation.....      | 610        |
| SDA_InterpolateThreePointQuadraticVertexMagnitude.....              | 611        |
| SDA_InterpolateThreePointQuadraticVertexLocation.....               | 612        |
| SDA_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticVertexMagnitude.....     | 613        |
| SDA_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticVertexLocation.....      | 614        |
| SDA_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticPeakVertexMagnitude..... | 615        |
| SDA_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticPeakVertexLocation.....  | 616        |
| SDA_FirstMinVertex.....   | 617        |
| SDA_FirstMinVertexPos.....  | 618        |
| SDA_FirstMaxVertex.....   | 619        |
| SDA_FirstMaxVertexPos.....  | 620        |
| SDA_NLargest.....   | 621        |
| SDA_NSmallest.....  | 622        |
| <b>MATH FUNCTIONS (<i>smath.c</i>).....</b>                         | <b>623</b> |
| SDA_Divide.....   | 623        |
| SDA_Divide2.....  | 624        |
| SDA_Multiply.....   | 625        |
| SDA_Multiply2.....  | 626        |
| SDS_ComplexMultiply.....  | 627        |
| SDS_ComplexInverse.....   | 628        |
| SDA_ComplexInverse.....   | 629        |
| SDS_ComplexDivide.....  | 630        |
| SDA_ComplexScalarMultiply.....                                      | 631        |
| SDA_ComplexMultiply2.....   | 632        |
| SDA_ComplexScalarDivide.....  | 633        |
| SDA_ComplexDivide2.....   | 634        |
| SDA_RealDotProduct.....   | 635        |
| SDA_ComplexDotProduct.....  | 636        |
| SDA_SumAndDifference.....   | 637        |
| SDA_AddN.....   | 638        |
| SDA_WeightedSum.....  | 639        |
| SDA_Subtract2.....  | 640        |
| SDA_Add.....  | 641        |
| SDA_PositiveOffset.....   | 642        |
| SDA_NegativeOffset.....   | 643        |
| SDA_Negate.....   | 644        |
| SDA_Inverse.....  | 645        |
| SDA_Square.....   | 646        |
| SDA_Sqrt.....   | 647        |
| SDA_Difference.....   | 648        |
| SDA_SumOfDifferences.....   | 649        |
| SDS_Roots.....  | 650        |
| SDS_Factorial.....  | 651        |
| SDS_Permutations.....   | 652        |
| SDS_Combinations.....   | 653        |
| SIF_OverlapAndAddLinear.....  | 654        |
| SDA_OverlapAndAddLinear.....  | 655        |

|   |            |
|---|------------|
| SDA_OverlapAndAddLinearWithClip.....                  | 656        |
| SDA_OverlapAndAddArbitrary.....                       | 657        |
| SDA_OverlapAndAddArbitraryWithClip.....               | 658        |
| SDS_DegreesToRadians.....                             | 659        |
| SDA_DegreesToRadians.....                             | 660        |
| SDS_RadiansToDegrees.....                             | 661        |
| SDA_RadiansToDegrees.....                             | 662        |
| SDS_DetectNAN.....                                    | 663        |
| SDA_DetectNAN.....                                    | 664        |
| <b>DSP UTILITY FUNCTIONS (<i>dsputils.c</i>).....</b> | <b>665</b> |
| SDA_Rotate.....                                       | 665        |
| SDA_Reverse.....                                      | 666        |
| SDA_Scale.....  | 667        |
| SDA_MeanSquare.....                                   | 668        |
| SDA_MeanSquareError.....                              | 669        |
| SDA_RootMeanSquare.....                               | 670        |
| SDA_Magnitude.....                                    | 671        |
| SDA_MagnitudeSquared.....                             | 672        |
| SDS_Magnitude.....                                    | 673        |
| SDS_MagnitudeSquared.....                             | 674        |
| SDS_Phase.....  | 675        |
| SDA_PhaseWrapped.....                                 | 676        |
| SDA_PhaseUnWrapped.....                               | 677        |
| SDA_MagnitudeAndPhaseWrapped.....                     | 678        |
| SDA_MagnitudeAndPhaseUnWrapped.....                   | 679        |
| SDA_MagnitudeSquaredAndPhaseWrapped.....              | 680        |
| SDA_MagnitudeSquaredAndPhaseUnWrapped.....            | 681        |
| SDA_PhaseWrap.....                                    | 682        |
| SDA_PhaseUnWrap.....                                  | 683        |
| SDS_Log2.....   | 684        |
| SDA_Log2.....   | 685        |
| SDS_LogN.....   | 686        |
| SDA_LogN.....   | 687        |
| SDA_LogDistribution.....                              | 688        |
| SDA_Copy.....   | 689        |
| SDA_CopyWithStride.....                               | 690        |
| SIF_CopyWithOverlap.....                              | 691        |
| SDA_CopyWithOverlap.....                              | 692        |
| SIF_CopyWithIndex.....                                | 693        |
| SDA_CopyWithIndex.....                                | 694        |
| SDA_20Log10.....                                      | 695        |
| SDA_10Log10.....                                      | 696        |
| SDA_LogMagnitude.....                                 | 697        |
| SDA_LogMagnitudeAndPhaseWrapped.....                  | 698        |
| SDA_LogMagnitudeAndPhaseUnWrapped.....                | 699        |
| SDA_Lengthen.....                                     | 700        |
| SDA_Shorten.....                                      | 701        |
| SIF_ReSize.....                                       | 702        |
| SDA_ReSize.....                                       | 703        |
| SDA_ReSizeInput.....                                  | 704        |
| SDA_ReSizeOutput.....                                 | 705        |
| SDA_Fill.....   | 706        |

|   |            |
|---|------------|
| SDA_Clear.....  | 707        |
| Histogram Functions.....                              | 708        |
| SIF_Histogram.....                                    | 711        |
| SDA_Histogram.....                                    | 712        |
| SDA_HistogramCumulative.....                          | 713        |
| SDA_HistogramExtended.....                            | 714        |
| SDA_HistogramExtendedCumulative.....                  | 715        |
| SDA_HistogramEqualize.....                            | 716        |
| SDA_Quantize.....                                     | 717        |
| SDS_Quantize.....                                     | 718        |
| SDA_Quantize_N.....                                   | 719        |
| SDS_Quantize_N.....                                   | 720        |
| SDA_Abs.....  | 721        |
| SDS_PeakValueToBits.....                              | 722        |
| SDS_BitsToPeakValue.....                              | 723        |
| SDS_LinearTodBm.....                                  | 724        |
| SDA_LinearTodBm.....                                  | 725        |
| SDS_dBmToLinear.....                                  | 726        |
| SDA_dBmToLinear.....                                  | 727        |
| SDS_Compare.....                                      | 728        |
| SDA_Compare.....                                      | 729        |
| SDS_CompareComplex.....                               | 730        |
| SDA_CompareComplex.....                               | 731        |
| SDS_Int.....  | 732        |
| SDS_Frac.....   | 733        |
| SDS_AbsFrac.....                                      | 734        |
| SDA_Int.....  | 735        |
| SDA_Frac.....   | 736        |
| SDA_AbsFrac.....                                      | 737        |
| SDA_SetMin.....                                       | 738        |
| SDA_SetMax.....                                       | 739        |
| SDA_SetRange.....                                     | 740        |
| SDA_SetMean.....                                      | 741        |
| <b>DSP UTILITY FUNCTIONS (<i>dsputil2.c</i>).....</b> | <b>742</b> |
| SDA_RealSpectralInverse.....                          | 742        |
| SDA_ComplexSpectralInverse.....                       | 743        |
| SDA_FdInterpolate.....                                | 744        |
| SDA_FdInterpolate2.....                               | 745        |
| SDS_TdPitchShift.....                                 | 746        |
| SDA_TdPitchShift.....                                 | 747        |
| SDS_EchoGenerate.....                                 | 748        |
| SDA_Power.....  | 749        |
| SDS_Polynomial.....                                   | 750        |
| SDA_Polynomial.....                                   | 751        |
| SDS_Modulo.....                                       | 752        |
| SDA_Modulo.....                                       | 753        |
| SDA_AgcPeak.....                                      | 754        |
| SIF_AgcMeanAbs.....                                   | 755        |
| SDA_AgcMeanAbs.....                                   | 756        |
| SIF_AgcMeanSquared.....                               | 757        |
| SDA_AgcMeanSquared.....                               | 758        |
| SDA_GroupDelay.....                                   | 759        |



|  |            |
|--|------------|
| SDA_ZeroCrossingDetect.....                                    | 760        |
| SDS_ZeroCrossingDetect.....                                    | 761        |
| SDA_FirstZeroCrossingLocation.....                             | 762        |
| SDA_ZeroCrossingCount.....                                     | 763        |
| SDA_LevelCrossingDetect.....                                   | 764        |
| SDS_LevelCrossingDetect.....                                   | 765        |
| SDA_FirstLevelCrossingLocation.....                            | 766        |
| SDA_LevelCrossingCount.....                                    | 767        |
| SDA_ClearLocation.....   | 768        |
| SDA_SetLocation.....   | 769        |
| SDA_SortMinToMax.....  | 770        |
| SDA_SortMaxToMin.....  | 771        |
| SDA_SortMinToMax2.....   | 772        |
| SDA_SortMaxToMin2.....   | 773        |
| SDA_SortIndexed.....   | 774        |
| SDS_CountOneBits.....  | 775        |
| SDS_CountZeroBits.....   | 776        |
| SDS_CountLeadingOneBits.....                                   | 777        |
| SDS_CountLeadingZeroBits.....                                  | 778        |
| SDA_Sign.....  | 779        |
| SDA_Swap.....  | 780        |
| SUF_ModuloIncrement.....                                       | 781        |
| SUF_ModuloDecrement.....                                       | 782        |
| SUF_IndexModuloIncrement.....                                  | 783        |
| SUF_IndexModuloDecrement.....                                  | 784        |
| SDA_Find.....  | 785        |
| SDA_FindValue.....   | 786        |
| <b>DSP UTILITY FUNCTIONS (<i>dsputil3.c</i>).....</b>          | <b>787</b> |
| SIF_DeGlitch.....  | 787        |
| SDS_DeGlitch.....  | 788        |
| SDA_DeGlitch.....  | 789        |
| SDA_RemoveDuplicates.....                                      | 790        |
| SDA_FindAllDuplicates.....                                     | 791        |
| SDA_FindFirstDuplicates.....                                   | 792        |
| SDA_FindSortAllDuplicates.....                                 | 793        |
| SDA_FindSortFirstDuplicates.....                               | 794        |
| SDA_Shuffle.....   | 795        |
| SDA_InsertSample.....  | 796        |
| SDA_InsertArray.....   | 797        |
| SDA_ExtractSample.....   | 798        |
| SDA_ExtractArray.....  | 799        |
| <b>DATA TYPE CONVERSION FUNCTIONS (<i>datatype.c</i>).....</b> | <b>800</b> |
| SDA_SigLibDataToFix.....                                       | 800        |
| SDA_FixToSigLibData.....                                       | 801        |
| SDA_SigLibDataToImageData.....                                 | 802        |
| SDA_ImageDataToSigLibData.....                                 | 803        |
| SDA_SigLibDataToFix16.....                                     | 804        |
| SDA_Fix16ToSigLibData.....                                     | 805        |
| SDA_SigLibDataToFix32.....                                     | 806        |
| SDA_Fix32ToSigLibData.....                                     | 807        |
| SDS_SigLibDataToQFormatInteger.....                            | 808        |

|  |            |
|--|------------|
| SDS_QFormatIntegerToSigLibData.....                          | 809        |
| SDA_SigLibDataToQFormatInteger.....                          | 810        |
| SDA_QFormatIntegerToSigLibData.....                          | 811        |
| <b>CONTROL FUNCTIONS (<i>control.c</i>).....</b>             | <b>812</b> |
| SDS_Pid.....   | 812        |
| SDA_Pwm.....   | 813        |
| <b>ORDER ANALYSIS FUNCTIONS (<i>order.c</i>).....</b>        | <b>814</b> |
| SDA_ExtractOrder.....  | 814        |
| SDA_SumLevel.....  | 815        |
| SDA_SumLevelWholeSpectrum.....                               | 816        |
| SIF_OrderAnalysis.....                                       | 817        |
| SDA_OrderAnalysis.....                                       | 818        |
| <b>STATISTICS FUNCTIONS (<i>stats.c</i>).....</b>            | <b>820</b> |
| SDA_Sum.....   | 820        |
| SDA_AbsSum.....  | 821        |
| SDA_SumOfSquares.....  | 822        |
| SDA_Mean.....  | 823        |
| SDA_AbsMean.....   | 824        |
| SDA_SubtractMean.....  | 825        |
| SDA_SubtractMax.....   | 826        |
| SDA_SampleSd.....  | 827        |
| SDA_PopulationSd.....  | 828        |
| SDA_UnbiasedVariance.....                                    | 829        |
| SDA_Median.....  | 830        |
| <b>REGRESSION ANALYSIS FUNCTIONS (<i>regress.c</i>).....</b> | <b>831</b> |
| SDA_LinraConstantCoeff.....                                  | 831        |
| SDA_LinraRegressionCoeff.....                                | 832        |
| SDA_LinraCorrelationCoeff.....                               | 833        |
| SDA_LinraEstimateX.....                                      | 834        |
| SDA_LinraEstimateY.....                                      | 835        |
| SDA_LograConstantCoeff.....                                  | 836        |
| SDA_LograRegressionCoeff.....                                | 837        |
| SDA_LograCorrelationCoeff.....                               | 838        |
| SDA_LograEstimateX.....                                      | 839        |
| SDA_LograEstimateY.....                                      | 840        |
| SDA_ExpraConstantCoeff.....                                  | 841        |
| SDA_ExpraRegressionCoeff.....                                | 842        |
| SDA_ExpraCorrelationCoeff.....                               | 843        |
| SDA_ExpraEstimateX.....                                      | 844        |
| SDA_ExpraEstimateY.....                                      | 845        |
| SDA_PowraConstantCoeff.....                                  | 846        |
| SDA_PowraRegressionCoeff.....                                | 847        |
| SDA_PowraCorrelationCoeff.....                               | 848        |
| SDA_PowraEstimateX.....                                      | 849        |
| SDA_PowraEstimateY.....                                      | 850        |
| SDA_Detrend.....   | 851        |
| SDA_ExtractTrend.....  | 852        |
| <b>TRIGONOMETRIC FUNCTIONS (<i>trig.c</i>).....</b>          | <b>853</b> |

|   |            |
|---|------------|
| SDA_Sin.....  | 853        |
| SDA_Cos.....  | 854        |
| SDA_Tan.....  | 855        |
| SIF_FastSin.....  | 856        |
| SDA_FastSin.....  | 857        |
| SDS_FastSin.....  | 858        |
| SIF_FastCos.....  | 859        |
| SDA_FastCos.....  | 860        |
| SDS_FastCos.....  | 861        |
| SIF_FastSinCos.....                                     | 862        |
| SDA_FastSinCos.....                                     | 863        |
| SDS_FastSinCos.....                                     | 864        |
| SIF_QuickSin.....                                       | 865        |
| SDA_QuickSin.....                                       | 866        |
| SDS_QuickSin.....                                       | 867        |
| SIF_QuickCos.....                                       | 868        |
| SDA_QuickCos.....                                       | 869        |
| SDS_QuickCos.....                                       | 870        |
| SIF_QuickSinCos.....                                    | 871        |
| SDA_QuickSinCos.....                                    | 872        |
| SDS_QuickSinCos.....                                    | 873        |
| SIF_QuickTan.....                                       | 874        |
| SDA_QuickTan.....                                       | 875        |
| SDS_QuickTan.....                                       | 876        |
| SDA_Sinc.....   | 877        |
| SDS_Sinc.....   | 878        |
| SIF_QuickSinc.....                                      | 879        |
| SDA_QuickSinc.....                                      | 880        |
| SDS_QuickSinc.....                                      | 881        |
| <b>COMPLEX VECTOR FUNCTIONS (<i>complex.c</i>).....</b> | <b>882</b> |
| SCV_Polar.....  | 882        |
| SCV_Rectangular.....                                    | 883        |
| SCV_PolarToRectangular.....                             | 884        |
| SCV_RectangularToPolar.....                             | 885        |
| SCV_Sqrt.....   | 886        |
| SCV_Inverse.....  | 887        |
| SCV_Conjugate.....                                      | 888        |
| SCV_Magnitude.....                                      | 889        |
| SCV_MagnitudeSquared.....                               | 890        |
| SCV_Phase.....  | 891        |
| SCV_Multiply.....                                       | 892        |
| SCV_Divide.....   | 893        |
| SCV_Add.....  | 894        |
| SCV_Subtract.....                                       | 895        |
| SCV_Log.....  | 896        |
| SCV_Exp.....  | 897        |
| SCV_Expj.....   | 898        |
| SCV_Pow.....  | 899        |
| SCV_VectorAddScalar.....                                | 900        |
| SCV_VectorSubtractScalar.....                           | 901        |
| SCV_VectorMultiplyScalar.....                           | 902        |
| SCV_VectorDivideScalar.....                             | 903        |

|   |            |
|---|------------|
| SCV_ScalarSubtractVector.....                           | 904        |
| SCV_Roots.....  | 905        |
| SCV_Copy.....   | 906        |
| SCV_Compare.....  | 907        |
| <b>COMPLEX ARRAY FUNCTIONS (<i>complexa.c</i>).....</b> | <b>908</b> |
| SDA_CreateComplexRect.....                              | 908        |
| SDA_CreateComplexPolar.....                             | 909        |
| SDA_ExtractComplexRect.....                             | 910        |
| SDA_ExtractComplexPolar.....                            | 911        |
| SDA_ClearComplexRect.....                               | 912        |
| SDA_ClearComplexPolar.....                              | 913        |
| SDA_FillComplexRect.....                                | 914        |
| SDA_FillComplexPolar.....                               | 915        |
| SDA_ComplexRectangularToPolar.....                      | 916        |
| SDA_ComplexPolarToRectangular.....                      | 917        |
| SDA_RectangularToPolar.....                             | 918        |
| SDA_PolarToRectangular.....                             | 919        |
| SDA_ComplexRectSqrt.....                                | 920        |
| SDA_ComplexRectInverse.....                             | 921        |
| SDA_ComplexRectConjugate.....                           | 922        |
| SDA_ComplexRectMagnitude.....                           | 923        |
| SDA_ComplexRectMagnitudeSquared.....                    | 924        |
| SDA_ComplexRectPhase.....                               | 925        |
| SDA_ComplexRectMultiply.....                            | 926        |
| SDA_ComplexRectDivide.....                              | 927        |
| SDA_ComplexRectAdd.....                                 | 928        |
| SDA_ComplexRectSubtract.....                            | 929        |
| SDA_ComplexRectLog.....                                 | 930        |
| SDA_ComplexRectExp.....                                 | 931        |
| SDA_ComplexRectExpj.....                                | 932        |
| SDA_ComplexRectPow.....                                 | 933        |
| SDA_ComplexRectAddScalar.....                           | 934        |
| SDA_ComplexRectSubtractScalar.....                      | 935        |
| SDA_ComplexRectMultiplyScalar.....                      | 936        |
| SDA_ComplexRectDivideScalar.....                        | 937        |
| SDA_ComplexScalarSubtractRect.....                      | 938        |
| SDA_ComplexRectLinearInterpolate.....                   | 939        |
| SDA_ComplexPolarLinearInterpolate.....                  | 940        |
| <b>MATRIX VECTOR FUNCTIONS (<i>matrix.c</i>).....</b>   | <b>941</b> |
| SMX_Transpose.....                                      | 942        |
| SMX_Multiply.....                                       | 943        |
| SMX_CreateIdentity.....                                 | 944        |
| SMX_Inverse2x2.....                                     | 945        |
| SMX_ComplexInverse2x2.....                              | 946        |
| SMX_Inverse.....  | 947        |
| SMX_LuDecompose.....                                    | 948        |
| SMX_LuSolve.....  | 949        |
| SMX_Determinant.....                                    | 950        |
| SMX_LuDeterminant.....                                  | 951        |
| SMX_RotateClockwise.....                                | 952        |
| SMX_RotateAntiClockwise.....                            | 953        |

|  |            |
|--|------------|
| SMX_Reflect.....                                   | 954        |
| SMX_Flip.....                                      | 955        |
| SMX_InsertRow.....                                 | 956        |
| SMX_ExtractRow.....                                | 957        |
| SMX_InsertColumn.....                              | 958        |
| SMX_ExtractColumn.....                             | 959        |
| SMX_InsertNewRow.....                              | 960        |
| SMX_DeleteOldRow.....                              | 961        |
| SMX_InsertNewColumn.....                           | 962        |
| SMX_DeleteOldColumn.....                           | 963        |
| SMX_InsertRegion.....                              | 964        |
| SMX_ExtractRegion.....                             | 965        |
| SMX_InsertDiagonal.....                            | 966        |
| SMX_ExtractDiagonal.....                           | 967        |
| SMX_SwapRows.....                                  | 968        |
| SMX_SwapColumns.....                               | 969        |
| SMX_Sum.....                                       | 970        |
| SMX_ShuffleColumns.....                            | 971        |
| SMX_ShuffleRows.....                               | 972        |
| SMX_ExtractCategoricalColumn.....                  | 973        |
| <b>MATRIX VECTOR MACROS.....</b>                   | <b>974</b> |
| SMX_Copy.....                                      | 974        |
| SMX_Add.....                                       | 975        |
| SMX_Subtract.....                                  | 976        |
| SMX_MultiplyPiecewise.....                         | 977        |
| SMX_ScalarMultiply.....                            | 978        |
| <b>Machine Learning Functions.....</b>             | <b>979</b> |
| SDA_TwoLayer2CategoryNetworkFit.....               | 980        |
| SDA_TwoLayer2CategoryNetworkPredict.....           | 981        |
| SDA_TwoLayerNCategoryNetworkFit.....               | 982        |
| SDA_TwoLayerNCategoryNetworkPredict.....           | 983        |
| SDA_TwoLayer2CategoryWithBiasesNetworkFit.....     | 984        |
| SDA_TwoLayer2CategoryWithBiasesNetworkPredict..... | 985        |
| SDA_TwoLayerNCategoryWithBiasesNetworkFit.....     | 986        |
| SDA_TwoLayerNCategoryWithBiasesNetworkPredict..... | 987        |
| SDS_ActivationReLU.....                            | 988        |
| SDA_ActivationReLU.....                            | 989        |
| SDS_ActivationReLUderivative.....                  | 990        |
| SDA_ActivationReLUderivative.....                  | 991        |
| SDS_ActivationLeakyReLU.....                       | 992        |
| SDA_ActivationLeakyReLU.....                       | 993        |
| SDS_ActivationLeakyReLUderivative.....             | 994        |
| SDA_ActivationLeakyReLUderivative.....             | 995        |
| SDS_ActivationLogistic.....                        | 996        |
| SDA_ActivationLogistic.....                        | 997        |
| SDS_ActivationLogisticDerivative.....              | 998        |
| SDA_ActivationLogisticDerivative.....              | 999        |
| SDS_ActivationTanH.....                            | 1000       |
| SDA_ActivationTanH.....                            | 1001       |
| SDS_ActivationTanHDerivative.....                  | 1002       |
| SDA_ActivationTanHDerivative.....                  | 1003       |

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| <b>UTILITY FUNCTIONS (<i>siglib.c</i>).....</b> | <b>1004</b> |
| SUF_SiglibVersion.....                          | 1004        |
| SUF_PrintArray.....                             | 1005        |
| SUF_PrintFixedPointArray.....                   | 1006        |
| SUF_PrintComplexArray.....                      | 1007        |
| SUF_PrintMatrix.....                            | 1008        |
| SUF_PrintPolar.....                             | 1009        |
| SUF_PrintRectangular.....                       | 1010        |
| SUF_PrintIIRCoefficients.....                   | 1011        |
| SUF_PrintCount.....                             | 1012        |
| SUF_PrintHigher.....                            | 1013        |
| SUF_PrintLower.....                             | 1014        |
| SUF_ClearDebugprintf.....                       | 1015        |
| SUF_Debugprintf.....                            | 1016        |
| SUF_Debugvprintf.....                           | 1017        |
| SUF_DebugPrintArray.....                        | 1018        |
| SUF_DebugPrintFixedPointArray.....              | 1019        |
| SUF_DebugPrintComplexArray.....                 | 1020        |
| SUF_DebugPrintComplex.....                      | 1021        |
| SUF_DebugPrintComplexRect.....                  | 1022        |
| SUF_DebugPrintComplexPolar.....                 | 1023        |
| SUF_DebugPrintMatrix.....                       | 1024        |
| SUF_DebugPrintPolar.....                        | 1025        |
| SUF_DebugPrintRectangular.....                  | 1026        |
| SUF_DebugPrintIIRCoefficients.....              | 1027        |
| SUF_DebugPrintCount.....                        | 1028        |
| SUF_DebugPrintHigher.....                       | 1029        |
| SUF_DebugPrintLower.....                        | 1030        |
| SUF_DebugPrintInfo.....                         | 1031        |
| SUF_DebugPrintLine.....                         | 1032        |
| SUF_DebugPrintTime.....                         | 1033        |
| SUF_PrintRectangular.....                       | 1034        |
| SUF_PrintPolar.....                             | 1035        |
| SUF_DebugPrintRectangular.....                  | 1036        |
| SUF_DebugPrintPolar.....                        | 1037        |
| SUF_MSDelay.....                                | 1038        |
| SUF_StrError.....                               | 1039        |
| SUF_DebugPrintMatrix.....                       | 1041        |
| SUF_DebugPrintPolar.....                        | 1042        |
| SUF_DebugPrintRectangular.....                  | 1043        |
| SUF_DebugPrintIIRCoefficients.....              | 1044        |
| SUF_DebugPrintCount.....                        | 1045        |
| SUF_DebugPrintHigher.....                       | 1046        |
| SUF_DebugPrintLower.....                        | 1047        |
| SUF_DebugPrintInfo.....                         | 1048        |
| SUF_DebugPrintLine.....                         | 1049        |
| SUF_DebugPrintTime.....                         | 1050        |
| SUF_PrintRectangular.....                       | 1051        |
| SUF_PrintPolar.....                             | 1052        |
| SUF_DebugPrintRectangular.....                  | 1053        |
| SUF_DebugPrintPolar.....                        | 1054        |
| SUF_MSDelay.....                                | 1055        |
| SUF_StrError.....                               | 1056        |

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| <b>File Input/Output Functions (<i>file_io.c</i>).....</b> | <b>1057</b> |
| <b>Data File Formats.....</b>                              | <b>1057</b> |
| SUF_BinReadData.....                                       | 1058        |
| SUF_BinWriteData.....                                      | 1059        |
| SUF_BinReadFile.....                                       | 1060        |
| SUF_BinWriteFile.....                                      | 1061        |
| SUF_CsvReadData.....                                       | 1062        |
| SUF_CsvWriteData.....                                      | 1063        |
| SUF_CsvReadFile.....                                       | 1064        |
| SUF_CsvWriteFile.....                                      | 1065        |
| SUF_CsvReadMatrix.....                                     | 1066        |
| SUF_CsvWriteMatrix.....                                    | 1067        |
| SUF_DatReadData.....                                       | 1068        |
| SUF_DatWriteData.....                                      | 1069        |
| SUF_DatReadHeader.....                                     | 1070        |
| SUF_DatWriteHeader.....                                    | 1071        |
| SUF_SigReadData.....                                       | 1072        |
| SUF_SigWriteData.....                                      | 1073        |
| SUF_SigReadFile.....                                       | 1074        |
| SUF_SigWriteFile.....                                      | 1075        |
| SUF_SigCountSamplesInFile.....                             | 1076        |
| SUF_XmtReadData.....                                       | 1077        |
| SUF_WriteWeightsIntegerCFile.....                          | 1078        |
| SUF_WriteWeightsFloatCFile.....                            | 1079        |
| SUF_WriteWeightsBinaryFile.....                            | 1080        |
| SUF_ReadWeightsBinaryFile.....                             | 1081        |
| SUF_WriteWeightsWithBiasesIntegerCFile.....                | 1082        |
| SUF_WriteWeightsWithBiasesFloatCFile.....                  | 1083        |
| SUF_WriteWeightsWithBiasesBinaryFile.....                  | 1084        |
| SUF_ReadWeightsWithBiasesBinaryFile.....                   | 1085        |
| <b>WAV File Functions.....</b>                             | <b>1086</b> |
| SUF_WavReadData.....                                       | 1087        |
| SUF_WavWriteData.....                                      | 1088        |
| SUF_WavReadWord.....                                       | 1089        |
| SUF_WavReadInt.....  | 1090        |
| SUF_WavWriteWord.....                                      | 1091        |
| SUF_WavWriteInt.....                                       | 1092        |
| SUF_WavReadHeader.....                                     | 1093        |
| SUF_WavWriteHeader.....                                    | 1094        |
| SUF_WavDisplayInfo.....                                    | 1095        |
| SUF_WavSetInfo.....  | 1096        |
| SUF_WavFileLength.....                                     | 1097        |
| SUF_WavReadFile.....                                       | 1098        |
| SUF_WavWriteFile.....                                      | 1099        |
| SUF_WavWriteFileScaled.....                                | 1100        |
| <b>UTILITY MACROS (<i>siglib_macros.h</i>).....</b>        | <b>1101</b> |

## **DOCUMENTATION OVERVIEW**

The SigLib documentation is split in to three sections, a User's Guide gives an overview of the SigLib library, whilst the Reference Manual gives a function by function description of the library and the Host Function Reference Manual. Users will probably find it beneficial to read the user's guide to get an understanding of how SigLib functions, they will then probably find that the reference manual is sufficient guidance in every day usage. The on-line nature of the documentation allows it to be used in parallel with the development tools.


Separate documentation is also supplied for the SigLib utility programs.

### **Documentation Conventions**

The SigLib documentation uses the following conventions:

The ANSI C standard conventions have been followed, for example hexadecimal numbers are prefixed by '0x'.

Names of directories, files and functions are given in italics.

Important programming information is indicated with the symbol: 

### **How To Use This Manual**

The functions are divided into modules, according to functionality.

The page per function section, in addition to giving a detailed description, also provide the function prototypes, describing all the function arguments. Each function description page also includes a function cross reference section, to other functions in the module.

For the sake of execution efficiency, few of the functions return error codes and none of them perform operations like array bounds checking. The onus lies with the programmer to ensure that the data passed to the functions is valid.

### **SigLib Data Types**

SigLib uses two pseudo data types, these are **SLData\_t** and **SLArrayIndex\_t** the reason for using these types is to ease portability across different processors and systems. For many processors, including most floating point DSPs the actual data type is specified by a typedef in the SigLib header files.



## **FUNCTION DESCRIPTIONS**

### **FREQUENCY DOMAIN FUNCTIONS**

#### **Fast Fourier Transform Functions (*ffourier.c*)**

The Fast Fourier Transform (FFT) functions include support for both radix-2 and radix-4.

---

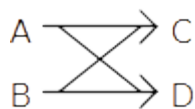
#### **Radix-2 FFT Functions**

---

The Fast Fourier Transform (FFT) functions all include code for handling the bit reversal however the exact operation of this is controlled through the use of conditional compilation statements at the top of the source file (*ffourier.c*).

The main FFT functions are initialised by the `SIF_Fft()` function.

Different text books use different notations for the sign of the sine term, when performing FFTs and IFFTs, SigLib uses the following Radix 2 butterfly notation:



$$C_r = A_r + B_r$$

$$C_i = A_i + B_i$$

$$D_r = (A_r - B_r) * \cos(\text{Theta}) + (A_i - B_i) * \sin(\text{Theta})$$

$$D_i = (A_i - B_i) * \cos(\text{Theta}) - (A_r - B_r) * \sin(\text{Theta})$$

It is recommended that users verify before hand that this is the notation, required, for their application. The phase differences, between the different notations is irrelevant, when performing a square magnitude sum on the results.

In order to be able to support different FFT lengths simultaneously it is necessary to initialise each length required with a separate call to `SIF_Fft()` function, with the coefficients and, if required, bit reverse address tables being located in separate arrays.

The transform length of the FFT must be a power of 2. The  $\log_2$  FFT length parameter is the logarithm to base 2 of the FFT length, this used to efficiently execute the correct number of stages.

The real FFT is almost twice as fast as the complex transform.

The real FFT function does not require any input data in the imaginary array.

### ***FFT Bit Reverse Addressing***

FFT bit reverse re-ordering happens in one of 3 ways, that are configured by passing the following to the function parameter `pBitReverseAddressTable`:

| <b>pBitReverseAddressTable</b>       | <b>Bit Reverse Addressing Mode</b>   |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| <code>SIGLIB_BIT_REV_NONE</code>     | No bit reverse addressing is performed   |
| <code>SIGLIB_BIT_REV_STANDARD</code> | Bit reverse addressing is handled via computation of the addresses to swap   |
| A valid memory address               | Bit reverse addressing is handled via a look-up table so is faster but requires the use of the additional look-up table, in memory. Note: for this mode to work the look-up table must not be located at memory addresses <code>0x0....00</code> or <code>0x0....01</code> |

### ***FFT Scaling (Radix-2 and Radix-4)***

A Discrete Fourier Transform (DFT) scales the result with respect to the continuous time equivalent by a factor of  $N$ , where  $N$  is the size of the FFT. Some FFT functions account for this in the forward FFT, some in the inverse and some not at all - there seems to be no consensus on where to account for the scaling. It is not that any particular implementation is right or wrong but just that they are different. The Siglib library does not apply any scaling to the results of the FFT functions. We have chosen not to scale the results because this allows the user to choose a suitable scaling for their application.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|                           |  |
|---------------------------|--|
| void SIF_Fft (SLData_t *, | Pointer to FFT coefficient table       |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,         | Bit reverse mode flag / Pointer to bit |
| reverse address table     |  |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)     | FFT Size                               |

## DESCRIPTION

This function initializes the FFT functions, including twiddle factor array. Prior to using any of the FFT functions, the function SIF\_Fft () must be called, this, amongst other things initialises the twiddle factor (coefficient) tables. If an application requires FFTs of different lengths then this function must be used to initialise separate coefficient tables and, if required, bit reverse address tables for each length.

## NOTES ON USE

This function generates a table of overlapping sine and cosine data, commonly called a three quarters sine table. This table consists of floating-point data values. For fixed point implementations it will be necessary to generate the tables with the appropriate data, which will depend on the length of the table and the CPU word length.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_Rfft, SDA\_Cfft, SDA\_Cifft, SDA\_FftShift, SDA\_CfftShift, SDA\_Rfftr, SDA\_Cfft2rBy1c, SDA\_Cfft2rBy1cr.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|                            |  |
|----------------------------|--|
| void SDA_Rfft (SLData_t *, | Real input/output arraypointer         |
| SLData_t *,                | Imaginary output array pointer         |
| SLData_t *,                | FFT coefficient pointer                |
| const SLArrayIndex_t *,    | Bit reverse mode flag / Pointer to bit |
| reverse address table      |  |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,      | FFT length                             |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)      | log <sub>2</sub> FFT length            |

## DESCRIPTION

This function performs a radix-2, decimation in frequency, real to complex fast Fourier transform, of arbitrary order greater than 3 (8 points). The transform is performed in-place, i.e. the result data is placed back in the source arrays.

This function does not scale the output, different applications may require different scaling, this can be achieved using the functions SDA\_Divide and SDA\_Multiply.

## NOTES ON USE

This function is initialized by SIF\_Fft function, which must be called prior to calling this function.

See notes at top of FFT section.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_Fft, SDA\_Cfft, SDA\_Cifft, SDA\_FftShift, SDA\_CfftShift, SDA\_Rfftr, SDA\_Cfft2rBy1c, SDA\_Cfft2rBy1cr.

---

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|                            |  |
|----------------------------|--|
| void SDA_Cfft (SLData_t *, | Real input/output array pointer        |
| SLData_t *,                | Imaginary input/output array pointer   |
| SLData_t *,                | FFT coefficient pointer                |
| const SLArrayIndex_t *,    | Bit reverse mode flag / Pointer to bit |
| reverse address table      |  |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,      | FFT length                             |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)      | log <sub>2</sub> FFT length            |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function performs a radix-2, decimation in frequency, complex to complex fast Fourier transform, of arbitrary order greater than 3 (8 points). The transform is performed in-place, i.e. the result data is placed back in the source arrays.

This function does not scale the output, different applications may require different scaling, this can be achieved using the functions SDA\_Divide and SDA\_Multiply.

**NOTES ON USE**

This function is initialized by SIF\_Fft function, which must be called prior to calling this function.

See notes at top of FFT section.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SIF\_Fft, SDA\_Rfft, SDA\_Cifft, SDA\_FftShift, SDA\_CfftShift, SDA\_Rfftr, SDA\_Cfft2rBy1c, SDA\_Cfft2rBy1cr.

---

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|                            |  |
|----------------------------|--|
| void SDA_Cfft (SLData_t *, | Real input/output array pointer        |
| SLData_t *,                | Imaginary input/output array pointer   |
| SLData_t *,                | FFT coefficient pointer                |
| const SLArrayIndex_t *,    | Bit reverse mode flag / Pointer to bit |
| reverse address table      |  |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,      | FFT length                             |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)      | log <sub>2</sub> FFT length            |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function performs a radix-2 complex to complex inverse fast Fourier transform, of arbitrary order greater than 3 (8 points). The transform is performed in-place, i.e. the result data is placed back in the source arrays.

This function does not scale the output, different applications may require different scaling, this can be achieved using the functions SDA\_Divide and SDA\_Multiply.

**NOTES ON USE**

This function is initialized by SIF\_Fft function, which must be called prior to calling this function.

See notes at top of FFT section.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SIF\_Fft, SDA\_Rfft, SDA\_Cfft, SDA\_FftShift, SDA\_CfftShift, SDA\_Rfftr, SDA\_Cfft2rBy1c, SDA\_Cfft2rBy1cr.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
void SDA_BitReverseReorder (const SLData_t *,   Input array pointer
                             SLData_t *,         Output array pointer
                             const SLArrayIndex_t *, Bit reverse mode flag / Pointer to bit
reverse address table
                             const SLArrayIndex_t)      Array length
```

**DESCRIPTION**

This function will take linearly ordered data and change the ordering to bit reversed. This operation is reversible and so the same function can be used for taking bit reversed data and returning it in a linear order.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_Rfft, SDA\_Cfft, SDA\_Cifft, SIF\_FftArb, SDA\_RfftArb, SDA\_Rfftr.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
void SDA_IndexBitReverseReorder (const SLArrayIndex_t*,      Input array pointer
                                SLArrayIndex_t *,           Output array pointer
                                const SLArrayIndex_t)         Array length
```

**DESCRIPTION**

This function will take a linearly ordered array of fixed point data and change the ordering to bit reversed. This operation is reversible and so the same function can be used for taking bit reversed data and returning it in a linear order.

This function is often used for indices that can be used for accessing arrays of floating point data.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_Rfft, SDA\_Cfft, SDA\_Cifft, SIF\_FftArb, SDA\_RfftArb, SDA\_Rfftr,  
SIF\_FastBitReverseReorder.



### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SIF\_FastBitReverseReorder (const SLArrayIndex\_t\*, Bit reverse address look  
up table pointer  
const SLArrayIndex\_t)                      Array length

### DESCRIPTION

This function initialises the look up table fast bit reversing functions.

### NOTES ON USE

This function only needs to be called if the SIF\_Fft function is not used.

### CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_IndexBitReverseReorder

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_RealRealCepstrum (SLData_t *, Real input data pointer
    SLData_t *,                      Real destination data pointer
    SLData_t *,                      Imaginary destination data pointer
    const SLData_t *,                FFT coefficient pointer
    const SLArrayIndex_t *,          Bit reverse mode flag / Pointer to bit
reverse address table
    const SLArrayIndex_t,            FFT length
    const SLArrayIndex_t)            Log2 FFT length
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function performs a real cepstrum operation on the real input data sequence. The real cepstrum is defined by the following equation:

$$C_x[n] = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} \log |X(e^{-j\omega})| e^{-j\omega n} d\omega$$

The cepstrum is defined as the Fourier transform of the logarithm of the magnitude of the Fourier transform of a sequence.

## NOTES ON USE

This function is initialized by SIF\_Fft function, which must be called prior to calling this function.

The difference between the complex cepstrum and the real cepstrum is that the complex variant includes the unwrapped phase sequence.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_RealComplexCepstrum and SDA\_ComplexComplexCepstrum.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_RealComplexCepstrum (SLData_t *,    Real input data pointer
                             SLData_t *,    Real destination data pointer
                             SLData_t *,    Imaginary destination data pointer
                             const SLData_t *, FFT coefficient pointer
                             const SLArrayIndex_t *, Bit reverse mode flag / Pointer to bit
reverse address table
                             const SLArrayIndex_t, FFT length
                             const SLArrayIndex_t) Log2 FFT length
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function performs a complex cepstrum operation on the real input data sequence. The complex cepstrum is defined by the following equation:

$$\hat{x}[n] = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} [\log |X(e^{-j\omega})| + j \arg(X(e^{-j\omega}))] e^{-j\omega n} d\omega$$

‘arg’ is the unwrapped phase function.

Complex cepstrum refers to complex logarithm, not complex sequence.

The complex cepstrum of a real sequence is also a real sequence.

The cepstrum is defined as the Fourier transform of the logarithm of the magnitude of the Fourier transform of a sequence.

## NOTES ON USE

This function is initialized by SIF\_Fft function, which must be called prior to calling this function.

The difference between the complex cepstrum and the real cepstrum is that the complex variant includes the unwrapped phase sequence.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_RealRealCepstrum and SDA\_ComplexComplexCepstrum.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_ComplexComplexCepstrum (SLData_t *,          Real input data pointer
    SLData_t *,          Imaginary input data pointer
    SLData_t *,          Real destination data pointer
    SLData_t *,          Imaginary destination data pointer
    const SLData_t *,    FFT coefficient pointer
    const SLArrayIndex_t *, Bit reverse mode flag / Pointer to bit
reverse address table
    const SLArrayIndex_t,  FFT length
    const SLArrayIndex_t)  Log2 FFT length
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function performs a complex cepstrum operation on the complex input data sequence. The complex cepstrum is defined by the following equation:

$$\hat{x}[n] = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} [\log |X(e^{-j\omega})| + j \arg(X(e^{-j\omega}))] e^{-j\omega n} d\omega$$

‘arg’ is the unwrapped phase function.

The cepstrum is defined as the Fourier transform of the logarithm of the magnitude of the Fourier transform of a sequence.

## NOTES ON USE

This function is initialized by SIF\_Fft function, which must be called prior to calling this function.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_RealRealCepstrum and SDA\_RealComplexCepstrum.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|                               |  |
|-------------------------------|--|
| void SIF_FftTone (SLData_t *, | Pointer to FFT coefficient table       |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,             | Bit reverse mode flag / Pointer to bit |
| reverse address table         |  |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)         | FFT Size                               |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function initializes the SDA\_FftTone function.

This function calls SIF\_Fft. Please read the notes for SIF\_Fft for further details.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SIF\_Fft and SDA\_RfftTone.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|                                      |  |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| void SDA_RfftTone (const SLData_t *, | Real source array pointer              |
| SLData_t *,                          | Real array pointer                     |
| SLData_t *,                          | Imaginary array pointer                |
| const SLData_t *,                    | FFT coefficient pointer                |
| const SLArrayIndex_t *,              | Bit reverse mode flag / Pointer to bit |
| reverse address table                |  |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                    | Pointer to tone FFT bin number         |
| SLData_t *,                          | Pointer to tone signal magnitude       |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                | FFT length                             |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)                | log2 FFT length                        |

## DESCRIPTION

This function returns the FFT bin and the linear magnitude of the peak frequency in the input signal.

This function calls SIF\_Fft. Please read the notes for SIF\_Fft for further details.

## NOTES ON USE

This function is initialized by SIF\_FftTone function, which must be called prior to calling this function.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_FftTone.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|                             |  |
|-----------------------------|--|
| void SDA_Rfftr (SLData_t *, | Real input/output array pointer        |
| SLData_t *,                 | Imaginary output array pointer         |
| SLData_t *,                 | FFT coefficient pointer                |
| const SLArrayIndex_t *,     | Bit reverse mode flag / Pointer to bit |
| reverse address table       |  |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,       | FFT length                             |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)       | log <sub>2</sub> FFT length            |

## DESCRIPTION

This function performs a radix-2, decimation in frequency, real to real fast Fourier transform, of arbitrary order greater than 3 (8 points). The transform is performed in-place, i.e. the result data is placed back in the source arrays.

This function does not scale the output, different applications may require different scaling, this can be achieved using the functions SDA\_Divide and SDA\_Multiply.

## NOTES ON USE

This function only returns the real component of the frequency domain response, saving approximately 10% of the MIPS required for a standard real to complex FFT.

This function is initialized by SIF\_Fft function, which must be called prior to calling this function.

See notes at top of FFT section.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_Fft, SDA\_Rfft, SDA\_Cfft, SDA\_Cifft, SDA\_FftShift, SDA\_CfftShift.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|                            |  |
|----------------------------|--|
| void SIF_Fft4 (SLData_t *, | Pointer to FFT coefficient table           |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,          | Digit reverse mode flag / Pointer to digit |
| reverse address table      |  |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)      | FFT Size                                   |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function initializes the radix-4 FFT functions, including twiddle factor array. Prior to using any of the FFT functions, the function SIF\_Fft4 () must be called, this, amongst other things initialises the twiddle factor (coefficient) tables. If an application requires FFTs of different lengths then this function must be used to initialise separate coefficient tables and, if required, bit reverse address tables for each length.

**NOTES ON USE**

This function generates a table of overlapping sine and cosine data, commonly called a three quarters sine table. This table consists of floating-point data values. For fixed point implementations it will be necessary to generate the tables with the appropriate data, which will depend on the length of the table and the CPU word length.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_Rfft4, SDA\_Cfft4, SDA\_Cfft42rBy1c, SDA\_Cfft42rBy1cr.



---

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|                             |  |
|-----------------------------|--|
| void SDA_Rfft4 (SLData_t *, | Real input/output array pointer            |
| SLData_t *,                 | Imaginary output array pointer             |
| SLData_t *,                 | FFT coefficient pointer                    |
| const SLArrayIndex_t *,     | Digit reverse mode flag / Pointer to digit |
| reverse address table       |  |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,       | FFT length                                 |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)       | log <sub>2</sub> FFT length                |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function performs a radix-4, decimation in frequency, real to complex fast Fourier transform, of arbitrary order greater than 3 (16 points). The transform is performed in-place, i.e. the result data is placed back in the source arrays.

This function does not scale the output, different applications may require different scaling, this can be achieved using the functions SDA\_Divide and SDA\_Multiply.

**NOTES ON USE**

This function is initialized by SIF\_Fft4() function, which must be called prior to calling this function.

See notes at top of FFT section.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_Cfft4, SIF\_Fft4, SDA\_Cfft42rBy1c, SDA\_Cfft42rBy1cr.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|                             |  |
|-----------------------------|--|
| void SDA_Cfft4 (SLData_t *, | Real input/output array pointer            |
| SLData_t *,                 | Imaginary input/output array pointer       |
| SLData_t *,                 | FFT coefficient pointer                    |
| const SLArrayIndex_t *,     | Digit reverse mode flag / Pointer to digit |
| reverse address table       |  |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,       | FFT length                                 |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)       | log <sub>2</sub> FFT length                |

## DESCRIPTION

This function performs a radix-4, decimation in frequency, complex to complex fast Fourier transform, of arbitrary order greater than 3 (16 points). The transform is performed in-place, i.e. the result data is placed back in the source arrays.

This function does not scale the output, different applications may require different scaling, this can be achieved using the functions SDA\_Divide and SDA\_Multiply.

## NOTES ON USE

This function is initialized by SIF\_Fft4() function, which must be called prior to calling this function.

See notes at top of FFT section.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_Fft4, SDA\_Rfft4, SDA\_Cfft42rBy1c, SDA\_Cfft42rBy1cr.

### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_DigitReverseReorder4 (const SLData_t *,      Input array pointer
                               SLData_t *,            Output array pointer
                               const SLArrayIndex_t)   Array length
```

### DESCRIPTION

This function will take linearly ordered data and change the ordering to radix-4 digit reversed. This operation is reversible and so the same function can be used for taking radix-4 digit reversed data and returning it in a linear order.

### NOTES ON USE

### CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_Cfft4.

### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_IndexDigitReverseReorder4 (const SArrayIndex_t*,   Input array pointer  
    SArrayIndex_t *,           Output array pointer  
    const SArrayIndex_t)       Array length
```

### DESCRIPTION

This function will take a linearly ordered array of fixed point data and change the ordering to fast radix-4 digit reversed. This operation is reversible and so the same function can be used for taking bit reversed data and returning it in a linear order.

This function is often used for indices that can be used for accessing arrays of floating point data.

### NOTES ON USE

### CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_Rfft, SDA\_Cfft, SDA\_Cifft, SIF\_FftArb, SDA\_RfftArb, SDA\_Rfftr, SIF\_FastDigitReverseReorder4.



## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|                                  |  |
|----------------------------------|--|
| void SDA_Cfft2rBy1c (SLData_t *, | Pointer to input #1 array              |
| SLData_t *,                      | Pointer to input #2 array              |
| SLData_t *,                      | Pointer to output #1 array             |
| SLData_t *,                      | Pointer to output #2 array             |
| const SLData_t *,                | Pointer to FFT coefficients            |
| const SLArrayIndex_t *,          | Bit reverse mode flag / Pointer to bit |
| reverse address table            |  |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,            | FFT length                             |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)            | log2 FFT length                        |

## DESCRIPTION

This function performs two radix-2 decimation in frequency, real to complex fast Fourier transforms using a single complex radix-2 FFT. The FFT can be of arbitrary order greater than 3 (8 points).

The results are returned in two separate arrays, one for each channel. Each array contains real and imaginary results:

real[0],...,real[N-1],imag[0],...,imag[N-1]

This function does not scale the output, different applications may require different scaling, this can be achieved using the functions SDA\_Divide and SDA\_Multiply.

## NOTES ON USE

The original input data is destroyed by this function as it is used to calculate the intermediate results.

This function is initialized by SIF\_Fft function, which must be called prior to calling this function.

See notes at top of FFT section.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_Fft, SDA\_Rfft, SDA\_Cfft, SDA\_Cifft, SDA\_FftShift, SDA\_CfftShift, SDA\_Rfftr, SDA\_Cfft2rBy1cr, SDA\_Cfft42rBy1c, SDA\_Cfft42rBy1cr.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|                                   |  |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| void SDA_Cfft2rBy1cr (SLData_t *, | Pointer to input #1 array              |
| SLData_t *,                       | Pointer to input #2 array              |
| SLData_t *,                       | Pointer to output #1 array             |
| SLData_t *,                       | Pointer to output #2 array             |
| const SLData_t *,                 | Pointer to FFT coefficients            |
| const SLArrayIndex_t *,           | Bit reverse mode flag / Pointer to bit |
| reverse address table             |  |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,             | FFT length                             |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)             | log2 FFT length                        |

## DESCRIPTION

This function performs two radix-2 decimation in frequency, real to real fast Fourier transforms using a single complex radix-2 FFT. The FFT can be of arbitrary order greater than 3 (8 points).

The results are returned in two separate arrays, one for each channel. Each array contains real and imaginary results:

real[0],...,real[N-1]

This function does not scale the output, different applications may require different scaling, this can be achieved using the functions SDA\_Divide and SDA\_Multiply.

## NOTES ON USE

The original input data is destroyed by this function as it is used to calculate the intermediate results.

This function is initialized by SIF\_Fft function, which must be called prior to calling this function.

See notes at top of FFT section.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_Fft, SDA\_Rfft, SDA\_Cfft, SDA\_Cifft, SDA\_FftShift, SDA\_CfftShift, SDA\_Rfftr, SDA\_Cfft2rBy1c, SDA\_Cfft42rBy1c, SDA\_Cfft42rBy1cr.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|                                   |  |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| void SDA_Cfft42rBy1c (SLData_t *, | Pointer to input #1 array                  |
| SLData_t *,                       | Pointer to input #2 array                  |
| SLData_t *,                       | Pointer to output #1 array                 |
| SLData_t *,                       | Pointer to output #2 array                 |
| const SLData_t *,                 | Pointer to FFT coefficients                |
| const SLArrayIndex_t *,           | Digit reverse mode flag / Pointer to digit |
| reverse address table             |  |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,             | FFT length                                 |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)             | log2 FFT length                            |

## DESCRIPTION

This function performs two radix-4 decimation in frequency, real to complex fast Fourier transforms using a single complex radix-4 FFT. The FFT can be of arbitrary order greater than 2 (16 points).

The results are returned in two separate arrays, one for each channel. Each array contains real and imaginary results:

real[0],...,real[N-1],imag[0],...,imag[N-1]

This function does not scale the output, different applications may require different scaling, this can be achieved using the functions SDA\_Divide and SDA\_Multiply.

## NOTES ON USE

The original input data is destroyed by this function as it is used to calculate the intermediate results.

This function is initialized by SIF\_Fft4 function, which must be called prior to calling this function.

See notes at top of FFT section.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_Fft, SDA\_Rfft, SDA\_Cfft, SDA\_Cifft, SDA\_FftShift, SDA\_CfftShift, SDA\_Rfftr, SDA\_Cfft2rBy1c, SDA\_Cfft2rBy1cr, SDA\_Cfft42rBy1cr.



## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|                                    |  |
|------------------------------------|--|
| void SDA_Cfft42rBy1cr (SLData_t *, | Pointer to input #1 array                  |
| SLData_t *,                        | Pointer to input #2 array                  |
| SLData_t *,                        | Pointer to output #1 array                 |
| SLData_t *,                        | Pointer to output #2 array                 |
| const SLData_t *,                  | Pointer to FFT coefficients                |
| const SLArrayIndex_t *,            | Digit reverse mode flag / Pointer to digit |
| reverse address table              |  |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,              | FFT length                                 |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)              | log2 FFT length                            |

## DESCRIPTION

This function performs two radix-4 decimation in frequency, real to real fast Fourier transforms using a single complex radix-4 FFT. The FFT can be of arbitrary order greater than 2 (16 points).

The results are returned in two separate arrays, one for each channel. Each array contains real and imaginary results:

real[0],...,real[N-1]

This function does not scale the output, different applications may require different scaling, this can be achieved using the functions SDA\_Divide and SDA\_Multiply.

## NOTES ON USE

The original input data is destroyed by this function as it is used to calculate the intermediate results.

This function is initialized by SIF\_Fft4 function, which must be called prior to calling this function.

See notes at top of FFT section.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_Fft, SDA\_Rfft, SDA\_Cfft, SDA\_Cifft, SDA\_FftShift, SDA\_CfftShift, SDA\_Rfftr, SDA\_Cfft2rBy1c, SDA\_Cfft2rBy1cr, SDA\_Cfft42rBy1c.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|                                 |                                    |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| void SDS_Cfft2 (const SLData_t, | Source sample real 1               |
| const SLData_t,                 | Source sample imaginary 1          |
| const SLData_t,                 | Source sample real 2               |
| const SLData_t,                 | Source sample imaginary 2          |
| SLData_t *,                     | Pointer to destination real 1      |
| SLData_t *,                     | Pointer to destination imaginary 1 |
| SLData_t *,                     | Pointer to destination real 2      |
| SLData_t *)                     | Pointer to destination imaginary 2 |

## DESCRIPTION

This function performs a radix-2 FFT operation on the supplied data.

The advantage of this function over the array oriented version is that the source and destination data values do not need to be contiguous in memory.

## NOTES ON USE

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_Cfft2, SDS\_Cfft3, SDA\_Cfft3.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|  |  |
|--|--|
| <code>void SDA_Cfft2 (const SLData_t *,</code> | Pointer to real source array           |
| <code>          const SLData_t *,</code>       | Pointer to imaginary source array      |
| <code>          SLData_t *,</code>             | Pointer to real destination array      |
| <code>          SLData_t *)</code>             | Pointer to imaginary destination array |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function performs a radix-2 FFT operation on the supplied data arrays.

**NOTES ON USE**

This function can operate “in-place” or not “in-place”.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDS\_Cfft2, SDS\_Cfft3, SDA\_Cfft3.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|                                 |                                    |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| void SDS_Cfft3 (const SLData_t, | Source sample real 1               |
| const SLData_t,                 | Source sample imaginary 1          |
| const SLData_t,                 | Source sample real 2               |
| const SLData_t,                 | Source sample imaginary 2          |
| const SLData_t,                 | Source sample real 3               |
| const SLData_t,                 | Source sample imaginary 3          |
| SLData_t *,                     | Pointer to destination real 1      |
| SLData_t *,                     | Pointer to destination imaginary 1 |
| SLData_t *,                     | Pointer to destination real 2      |
| SLData_t *,                     | Pointer to destination imaginary 2 |
| SLData_t *,                     | Pointer to destination real 3      |
| SLData_t *);                    | Pointer to destination imaginary 3 |

## DESCRIPTION

This function performs a radix-3 FFT operation on the supplied data.

The advantage of this function over the array oriented version is that the source and destination data values do not need to be contiguous in memory.

## NOTES ON USE

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDS\_Cfft2, SDA\_Cfft2, SDA\_Cfft3.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|  |  |
|--|--|
| <code>void SDA_Cfft3 (const SLData_t *,</code> | Pointer to real source array           |
| <code>          const SLData_t *,</code>       | Pointer to imaginary source array      |
| <code>          SLData_t *,</code>             | Pointer to real destination array      |
| <code>          SLData_t *)</code>             | Pointer to imaginary destination array |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function performs a radix-3 FFT operation on the supplied data arrays.

**NOTES ON USE**

This function can operate “in-place” or not “in-place”.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDS\_Cfft2, SDA\_Cfft2, SDS\_Cfft3.

#### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|                                    |  |
|------------------------------------|--|
| SLError_t SIF_ZoomFft (SLData_t *, | Pointer to real comb filter state array  |
| SLData_t *,                        | Real comb filter sum                     |
| SLData_t *,                        | Pointer to imag. comb filter state array |
| SLData_t *,                        | Imaginary comb filter sum                |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                  | Comb filter phase                        |
| SLData_t *,                        | Pointer to sine look-up table            |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                  | Sine table phase for mixer               |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                  | Pointer to real decimator index          |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                  | Pointer to imaginary decimator index     |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                  | Pointer to real LPF index                |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                  | Pointer to imaginary LPF index           |
| SLData_t *,                        | Pointer to real LPF state array          |
| SLData_t *,                        | Pointer to imaginary LPF state array     |
| SLData_t *,                        | Pointer to window look-up table          |
| SLData_t *,                        | Pointer to FFT coefficient table         |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                  | Pointer to bit reverse address table     |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,              | Comb filter length                       |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,              | Mixer sine table size                    |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,              | FIR filter length                        |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)              | FFT length                               |

#### DESCRIPTION

This function initializes the zoom FFT function, including twiddle factor array. Amongst other things, this function initialises the twiddle factor tables and the sine wave table, for the mixer. If an application requires zoom-FFTs of different lengths then this function must be called, to change the length, between use.

#### NOTES ON USE

This function returns the error code from the SIF\_Fft() and SIF\_ComplexShift () functions that it calls.

#### CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_Rfft, SDA\_Cfft, SDA\_Cifft, SDA\_ZoomFft, SIF\_ZoomFftSimple, SDA\_ZoomFftSimple.

---

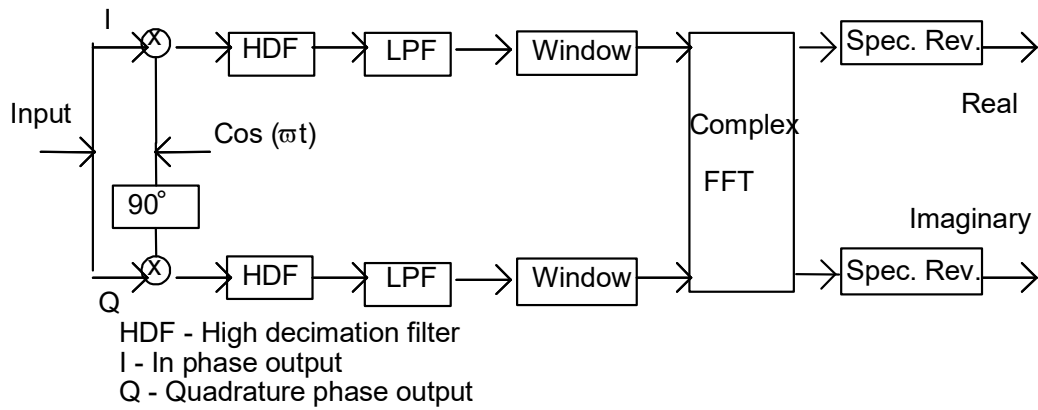
 PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|                                     |  |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| void SDA_ZoomFft (const SLData_t *, | Pointer to input array                   |
| SLData_t *,                         | Pointer to real result array             |
| SLData_t *,                         | Pointer to imaginary result array        |
| SLData_t *,                         | Pointer to real comb filter state array  |
| SLData_t *,                         | Real comb filter sum                     |
| SLData_t *,                         | Pointer to imag. comb filter state array |
| SLData_t *,                         | Imaginary comb filter sum                |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                   | Comb filter phase                        |
| const SLData_t *,                   | Pointer to sine look-up table            |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                   | Pointer to sine table phase for mixer    |
| const SLData_t,                     | Mix frequency                            |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,               | Length of comb filter                    |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,               | Sine table size for mixer                |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,               | High decimation ratio                    |
| SLData_t *,                         | Pointer to real LPF state array          |
| SLData_t *,                         | Pointer to imaginary LPF state array     |
| const SLData_t *,                   | Pointer to LPF coefficients              |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                   | Pointer to real decimator index          |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                   | Pointer to imaginary decimator index     |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                   | Pointer to real LPF index                |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                   | Pointer to imaginary LPF index           |
| const SLData_t *,                   | Pointer to window look-up table          |
| const SLData_t *,                   | Pointer to FFT coefficient table         |
| const SLArrayIndex_t *,             | Pointer to bit reverse address table     |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,               | Source array length                      |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,               | Intermediate array length                |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,               | FIR filter length                        |
| const SLFixData_t,                  | FIR decimation ratio                     |
| const SLFixData_t,                  | Frequency reverse flag                   |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,               | FFT length                               |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)               | Log2 FFT length                          |

## DESCRIPTION

This function performs the following operations on the input signal: complex mix and high decimation comb filter, FIR low pass filter decimation, windowing, FFT and optional spectral reversal. The mix uses an arbitrary length sine table and mix frequency, the high decimation filter is a comb filter, again of arbitrary length. The FFT is a radix-2, decimation in frequency, complex fast Fourier transform, that must be a power of 2 in length and greater than 8 points. The transform is performed in-place, i.e. the result data is placed back in the source arrays.

The following diagram shows the complete structure of the zoom-FFT:



#### NOTES ON USE

The SDA\_ZoomFft function does not scale the output, different applications may require different scaling, this can be achieved using the functions SDA\_Divide and SDA\_Multiply.

The decimation ratio of the high decimation filter should be a power of 2 where as that of the FIR filter can be any integer value.

See Notes for SDA\_Cfft function.

Prior to using this function, the function SIF\_ZoomFft must be called.

The frequency resolution = sample rate / number of input samples – it is important that the algorithm is provided with a long enough input array.

The accuracy of the frequencies in the decimated output array are defined by to the resolution of the mix frequency. The incoming signal is mixed with the in-phase (cos) and quadrature-phase (sin) carriers and these are generated from a look-up table for maximum performance. The resolution of the carrier frequencies is defined by the length of the table. In most zoom-FFT algorithms it is best to use a look-up table that is at least as long as the FFT length and preferably longer. The higher the decimation factor, the longer the look-up-tables must be.

The first NULL in the high decimation filter is at the sample frequency / decimation filter length.

The decimation filter length is the length of the comb filter and must be chosen to match the signal bandwidth. The sine array length defines the length of the sinusoid array used for the mixing process. The decimation filter length and sine array length need to be chosen to optimise performance (Signal to noise ratio) and minimise memory usage.

The decimation FIR filters should be linear phase filter to maintain the phase relationships of all the frequencies in the signal being decimated.

The decimation ratios must be integer values.



The “Intermediate array length” parameter specifies the length of the real and complex arrays that are used between the high decimation filter and the FIR filter.

The “Frequency reverse flag” parameter allows the frequency spectrum to be reversed in situations where the down conversion process has reversed it with respect to the original input.

Ghost frequencies in the output spectrum are very common artefacts of using the traditional zoom FFT algorithm. The artefacts are usually created by the first stage of decimation (the high decimation comb filters) and are due to the fact that the roll-off of these filters is not very sharp and they have little attenuation. It is possible to remove them by using pure FIR filters instead of comb filters but this has massive performance implications for the algorithm so the practical solution to the problem is to try to ensure that these artefacts are located out of the frequency band of interest after the first stage and then to remove them using the second (FIR) stage.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_Fft, SDA\_Cfft, SDA\_Cifft, SDA\_FftShift, SDA\_CfftShift, SIF\_ZoomFft, SIF\_ZoomFftSimple, SDA\_ZoomFftSimple.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|                                     |  |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| void SIF_ZoomFftSimple (SLData_t *, | Comb filter 1 pointer                  |
| SLData_t *,                         | Comb filter 1 sum                      |
| SLData_t *,                         | Comb filter 2 pointer                  |
| SLData_t *,                         | Comb filter 2 sum                      |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                   | Comb filter phase                      |
| SLData_t *,                         | Sine table pointer                     |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                   | Sine table phase for mixer             |
| SLData_t *,                         | FFT coefficient pointer                |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                   | Bit reverse mode flag / Pointer to bit |
| reverse address table               |  |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,               | Decimation filter length               |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,               | Mixer sine table length                |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)               | FFT length                             |

## DESCRIPTION

This function initialises the simple zoom FFT function, including twiddle factor array. Amongst other things, this function initialises the twiddle factor tables and the sine wave table, for the mixer. If an application requires zoom-FFTs of different lengths then this function must be called, to change the length, between use.

## NOTES ON USE

This function returns the error code from the SIF\_Fft() and SIF\_ComplexShift () functions that it calls.

## CROSS REFERENCE

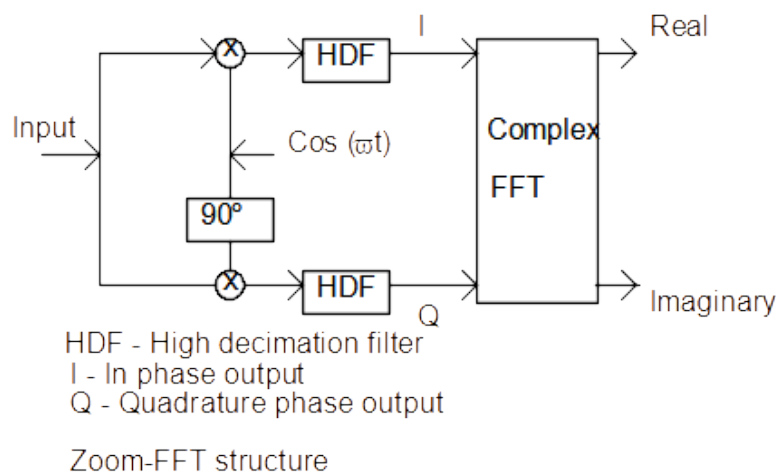
SDA\_Rfft, SDA\_Cfft, SDA\_Cifft, SDA\_ZoomFftSimple, SIF\_ZoomFft, SDA\_ZoomFft.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|   |  |
|---|--|
| void SDA_ZoomFftSimple (const SLData_t *, | Input array pointer                    |
| SLData_t *,                               | Real result array pointer              |
| SLData_t *,                               | Imaginary result array pointer         |
| SLData_t *,                               | Comb filter 1 pointer                  |
| SLData_t *,                               | Comb filter 1 sum                      |
| SLData_t *,                               | Comb filter 2 pointer                  |
| SLData_t *,                               | Comb filter 2 sum                      |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                         | Comb filter phase                      |
| const SLData_t *,                         | Sine table pointer                     |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                         | Sine table phase for mixer             |
| const SLData_t,                           | Mix frequency                          |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                     | Length of comb filter                  |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                     | Sine table length for mixer            |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                     | Decimation ratio                       |
| const SLData_t *,                         | FFT coefficient pointer                |
| const SLArrayIndex_t *,                   | Bit reverse mode flag / Pointer to bit |
| reverse address table                     |  |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                     | Source array length                    |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                     | FFT length                             |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)                     | Log2 FFT length                        |

## DESCRIPTION

This function performs complex mix and decimate on a signal and FFT. The mix uses an arbitrary length sine table and mix frequency, the decimation filter is a comb filter, again of arbitrary length. The filter is followed by a radix-2, decimation in frequency, complex fast Fourier transform that must be a power of two in length and greater than 8 points. The transform is performed in-place, i.e. the result data is placed back in the source arrays.



## NOTES ON USE

This function does not scale the output, different applications may require different scaling, this can be achieved using the functions `SDA_Divide` and `SDA_Multiply`.

The decimation ratio is a power of 2 and defines the change in sample rate between the input and output frequencies.

The decimation filter length is the length of the comb filter and must be chosen to match the signal bandwidth. The sine array length defines the length of the sinusoid array used for the mixing process. The decimation filter length and sine array length need to be chosen to optimise performance (Signal to noise ratio) and minimise memory usage.

See Notes for `SDA_Cfft` function.

Prior to using this function, the function `SIF_ZoomFftSimple` must be called.

The frequency resolution = sample rate / number of input samples – it is important that the algorithm is provided with a long enough input array.

The accuracy of the frequencies in the decimated output array are defined by to the resolution of the mix frequency. The incoming signal is mixed with the in-phase (cos) and quadrature-phase (sin) carriers and these are generated from a look-up table for maximum performance. The resolution of the carrier frequencies is defined by the length of the table. In most zoom-FFT algorithms it is best to use a look-up table that is at least as long as the FFT length and preferably longer. The higher the decimation factor, the longer the look-up-tables must be.

The first NULL in the decimation filter is at the sample frequency / decimation filter length.

The sine look-up tables that are allocated in the initialisation routine should be large enough for the required decimation ratio. The typical length should be at least 4 times the required decimation ratio. This function uses a single length N sine table. The cosine pointer index starts at (length >> 2) to account for the phase.

Ghost frequencies in the output spectrum are very common artefacts of using the traditional zoom FFT algorithm. The artefacts are usually created by the high decimation comb filters and are due to the fact that the roll-off of these filters is not very sharp and they have little attenuation. If this output from this function exhibits ghost frequencies then the `SDA_ZoomFft` function should be used instead.

#### CROSS REFERENCE

`SIF_Fft`, `SDA_Cfft`, `SDA_Cifft`, `SDA_FftShift`, `SDA_CfftShift`,  
`SIF_ZoomFftSimple`, `SIF_ZoomFft`, `SDA_ZoomFft`.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|                                 |  |
|---------------------------------|--|
| void SIF_FdHilbert (SLData_t *, | FFT coefficient pointer                |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,               | Bit reverse mode flag / Pointer to bit |
| reverse address table           |  |
| SLData_t *,                     | Pointer to inverse FFT length          |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)           | Hilbert transformer length             |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function initializes the frequency domain Hilbert transformer function.

**NOTES ON USE**

The transform length must be a power of 2.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_FdHilbert, SDA\_Rfft

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|                                       |   |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| void SDA_FdHilbert (const SLData_t *, | Input array pointer                       |
| SLData_t *,                           | Real destination array pointer            |
| SLData_t *,                           | Imaginary destination array pointer       |
| SLData_t *,                           | FFT coefficient pointer                   |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                     | Bit reverse mode flag / Pointer to bit    |
| reverse address table                 |   |
| const SLData_t,                       | Inverse FFT length                        |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                 | Hilbert transform length                  |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)                 | log <sub>2</sub> Hilbert transform length |

## DESCRIPTION

This function implements the frequency domain Hilbert transformer function.

The Hilbert transform phase shifts every component in a signal by 90 degrees.

## NOTES ON USE

The transform length must be a power of 2.

The function SIF\_FdHilbert must be called prior to calling this function.

This function operates by taking the FFT of the input, rotating it through 90 degrees and performing the inverse complex FFT. The real destination array returns the real FFT output i.e. the phase shifted data, the imaginary destination array returns the imaginary FFT output i.e. noise due to calculation errors.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_FdHilbert, SIF\_FdAnalytic, SDA\_FdAnalytic, SDA\_Rfft

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|                                  |  |
|----------------------------------|--|
| void SIF_FdAnalytic (SLData_t *, | FFT coefficient pointer                |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                | Bit reverse mode flag / Pointer to bit |
| reverse address table            |  |
| SLData_t *,                      | Pointer to inverse FFT length          |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)            | Hilbert transformer length             |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function initializes the frequency domain analytic transform function.

**NOTES ON USE**

The transform length must be a power of 2.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_FdHilbert, SDA\_Rfft

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|  |   |
|--|---|
| void SDA_FdAnalytic (const SLData_t *, | Input array pointer                       |
| SLData_t *,                            | Real destination array pointer            |
| SLData_t *,                            | Imaginary destination array pointer       |
| SLData_t *,                            | FFT coefficient pointer                   |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                      | Bit reverse mode flag / Pointer to bit    |
| reverse address table                  |   |
| const SLData_t,                        | Inverse FFT length                        |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                  | Hilbert transform length                  |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)                  | log <sub>2</sub> Hilbert transform length |

## DESCRIPTION

This function returns the analytic version of the input signal where the complex output contains the original input in the real array and the Hilbert transform of the input in the imaginary array. The Hilbert transform phase shifts every component in a signal by 90 degrees.

## NOTES ON USE

The transform length must be a power of 2.

The function SIF\_FdAnalytic must be called prior to calling this function.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_FdHilbert, SDA\_FdHilbert, SIF\_FdAnalytic, SDA\_Rfft



**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|   |                             |
|---|-----------------------------|
| void SDA_InstantFreq (const SLData_t *, | Leading phase input pointer |
| const SLData_t *,                       | Lagging phase input pointer |
| SLData_t *,                             | Destination array pointer   |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)                   | Array length                |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function calculates the instantaneous frequency from two waveforms which are  $\pi/2$  out of phase. This function is implemented as a two point differentiator and assumes that the sample rate is normalised to 1.

**NOTES ON USE**

The accuracy of the result is greatly affected by the purity of the sine wave.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_FdHilbert, SIF\_HilbertTransformer

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|                                  |                                |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| void SDA_Rdft (const SLData_t *, | Real input array pointer       |
| SLData_t *,                      | Real output array pointer      |
| SLData_t *,                      | Imaginary output array pointer |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)            | Transform length               |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function performs a real forward Fourier transform on the input data set.

**NOTES ON USE**

This function is included for reference purposes, in practice, the real FFT or arbitrary length FFT functions should always be used for reasons of speed.

There is no scaling on either the input or output of this function. 1/N DFT scaling is performed on the output of the inverse DFT function.

This function does not work “in-place”.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_Ridft, SDA\_Cdft, SDA\_Cidft, SDA\_Rfft, SDA\_RfftArb.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|                                   |                                |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| void SDA_Ridft (const SLData_t *, | Real input array pointer       |
| SLData_t *,                       | Real output array pointer      |
| SLData_t *,                       | Imaginary output array pointer |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)             | Transform length               |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function performs a real inverse Fourier transform on the input data set.

**NOTES ON USE**

The complex inverse FFT function should always be used for reasons of speed.

This function performs the 1/N DFT scaling on the output results.

This function does not work “in-place”.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_Rdft, SDA\_Cdft, SDA\_Cidft, SDA\_Cifft.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|                                  |                                |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| void SDA_Rdft (const SLData_t *, | Real input array pointer       |
| const SLData_t *,                | Imaginary input array pointer  |
| SLData_t *,                      | Real output array pointer      |
| SLData_t *,                      | Imaginary output array pointer |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)            | Transform length               |

## DESCRIPTION

This function performs a complex forward Fourier transform on the input data set.

## NOTES ON USE

The FFT or arbitrary length FFT functions should always be used for reasons of speed.

There is no scaling on either the input or output of this function. 1/N DFT scaling is performed on the output of the inverse DFT function.

This function does not work “in-place”.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_Rdft, SDA\_Ridft, SDA\_Cidft, SDA\_Rfft, SDA\_RfftArb.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|  |                                |
|--|--------------------------------|
| <code>void SDA_Ridft (const SLData_t *,</code> | Real input array pointer       |
| <code>          SLData_t *,</code>             | Real output array pointer      |
| <code>          SLData_t *,</code>             | Imaginary output array pointer |
| <code>          const SLArrayIndex_t)</code>   | Transform length               |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function performs a complex inverse Fourier transform on the input data set.

**NOTES ON USE**

The complex inverse FFT function should always be used for reasons of speed.

This function performs the 1/N DFT scaling on the output results.

This function does not work “in-place”.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_Rdft, SDA\_Ridft, SDA\_Cdft, SDA\_Cifft.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|                                      |                           |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| void SDA_FftShift (const SLData_t *, | Input array pointer       |
| SLData_t *,                          | Destination array pointer |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)                | Array length              |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function shifts the FFT results to locate the D.C. bin at the centre of the array, i.e. swap the left and right halves of the FFT result.

**NOTES ON USE**

This function is reversible, i.e. calling the same function will reverse the effect. SDA\_FftShift will also work "in-place".

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_Rfft, SDA\_Cfft, SDA\_Cifft, SDA\_ZoomFft.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|                                       |                                     |
|---------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| void SDA_CfftShift (const SLData_t *, | Real source array pointer           |
| const SLData_t *,                     | Imaginary source array pointer      |
| SLData_t *,                           | Real destination array pointer      |
| SLData_t *,                           | Imaginary destination array pointer |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)                 | Array length                        |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function shifts the FFT results to locate the D.C. bin at the centre of the array, i.e. swap the left and right halves of the FFT result.

**NOTES ON USE**

This function is reversible, i.e. calling the same function will reverse the effect. SDA\_CfftShift will also work "in-place".

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_Rfft, SDA\_Cfft, SDA\_Cifft, SDA\_ZoomFft.

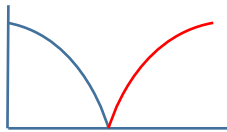
## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|                                       |                           |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| void SDA_FftExtend (const SLData_t *, | Source array pointer      |
| SLData_t *,                           | Destination array pointer |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                 | Source array length       |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)                 | Destination array length  |

## DESCRIPTION

This function extends the real frequency domain dataset to a longer length by zero padding the centre. This is shown in the following diagrams.

Source frequency domain:



Destination extended frequency domain:



## NOTES ON USE

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_Rfft, SDA\_Cfft, SDA\_Cifft, SDA\_CfftExtend.



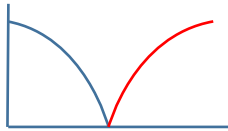
## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|  |                                     |
|--|-------------------------------------|
| void SDA_CfftExtend (const SLData_t *, | Real source array pointer           |
| const SLData_t *,                      | Imaginary source array pointer      |
| SLData_t *,                            | Real destination array pointer      |
| SLData_t *,                            | Imaginary destination array pointer |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                  | Source array length                 |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)                  | Destination array length            |

## DESCRIPTION

This function extends the complex frequency domain dataset to a longer length by zero padding the centre. This is shown in the following diagrams.

Source frequency domain:



Destination extended frequency domain:



## NOTES ON USE

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_Rfft, SDA\_Cfft, SDA\_Cifft, SDA\_FftExtend.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
void SIGLIB_FUNC_DECL SIF_DctII (SLData_t *, Pointer to cosine look up table  
    const SLArrayIndex_t)          DCT length
```

**DESCRIPTION**

This function initialises the type II DCT cosine table.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_DctII, SIF\_DctIIOrthogonal, SDA\_DctIIOrthogonal.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
void SIGLIB_FUNC_DECL SDA_DctII (const SLData_t *, Pointer to source array
    SLData_t *,                               Pointer to destination array
    const SLData_t *,                           Pointer to cosine look up table
    SLArrayIndex_t)                             DCT length
```

**DESCRIPTION**

This function performs the type II DCT.

**NOTES ON USE**

Reference:

[https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Discrete\\_cosine\\_transform#Formal\\_definition](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Discrete_cosine_transform#Formal_definition)

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SIF\_DctII, SIF\_DctIIOrthogonal, SDA\_DctIIOrthogonal.

### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SIGLIB_FUNC_DECL SIF_DctIIOrthogonal (SLData_t *, Pointer to square  
root half parameter  
    SLData_t *,           Pointer to output scale parameter  
    SLData_t *,           Pointer to cosine look up table  
    const SLArrayIndex_t) DCT length
```

### DESCRIPTION

This function initialises the type II DCT cosine table and orthogonal scaling parameters.

### NOTES ON USE

### CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_DctII, SDA\_DctII, SDA\_DctIIOrthogonal.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

void SIGLIB\_FUNC\_DECL SDA\_DctIIOrthogonal (const SLData\_t \*, Pointer to source array

|                   |                                 |
|-------------------|---------------------------------|
| SLData_t *,       | Pointer to destination array    |
| const SLData_t,   | Square root half parameter      |
| const SLData_t,   | Output scale parameter          |
| const SLData_t *, | Pointer to cosine look up table |
| SLArrayIndex_t)   | DCT length                      |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function performs the type II DCT with orthogonal scaling.

**NOTES ON USE**

Reference:

[https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Discrete\\_cosine\\_transform#Formal\\_definition](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Discrete_cosine_transform#Formal_definition)

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SIF\_DctII, SDA\_DctII, SIF\_DctIIOrthogonal.

### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|                              |  |
|------------------------------|--|
| void SIF_FftArb (SLData_t *, | AWNr coefficients pointer              |
| SLData_t *,                  | AWNi coefficients pointer              |
| SLData_t *,                  | WMr coefficients pointer               |
| SLData_t *,                  | WMi coefficients pointer               |
| SLData_t *,                  | vLr coefficients pointer               |
| SLData_t *,                  | vLi coefficients pointer               |
| SLData_t *,                  | FFT coefficient pointer                |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,            | Bit reverse mode flag / Pointer to bit |
| reverse address table        |  |
| enum SLArbitraryFFT_t *,     | Switch to indicate CZT or FFT pointer  |
| SLData_t *,                  | Pointer to the inverse FFT length      |
| SLData_t *,                  | Ptr. to inverse (array length * FFT    |
| length)                      |  |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,            | FFT length pointer                     |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,            | Log 2 FFT length pointer               |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)        | Source array length                    |

### DESCRIPTION

This function initialises the arbitrary length FFT functionality. When using this function, all of the parameters should be pointers to arrays or variables, except the array length parameter. The latter is the only parameter that needs to be specified prior to use, the contents of the remainder are initialised in this function. For further information on the parameters, for example the array lengths, please refer to the documentation for the FFT and chirp z-transform.

### NOTES ON USE

This function requires that the FFT coefficient array at least the length of the largest FFT length. I.E. the next largest power of 2 that is greater than or equal to twice the length of the input data set.

The chirp z-transform is used for transforms where the vector length is not a power of 2.

### CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_RfftArb, SDA\_CfftArb, SUF\_FftArbAllocLength.

### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLArrayIndex\_t SUF\_FftArbAllocLength (const SLArrayIndex\_t)    Source array length

### DESCRIPTION

This function returns the length of the FFT that is required for the Arbitrary length FFT functions.

### NOTES ON USE

### CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_FftArb, SDA\_RfftArb, SDA\_CfftArb.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|                                     |  |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| void SDA_RfftArb (const SLData_t *, | Real source array pointer              |
| SLData_t *,                         | Real destination array pointer         |
| SLData_t *,                         | Imaginary destination array pointer    |
| SLData_t *,                         | Real temporary array pointer           |
| SLData_t *,                         | Imaginary temporary array pointer      |
| const SLData_t *,                   | AWNr coefficients pointer              |
| const SLData_t *,                   | AWNi coefficients pointer              |
| const SLData_t *,                   | WMr coefficients pointer               |
| const SLData_t *,                   | WMi coefficients pointer               |
| const SLData_t *,                   | vLr coefficients pointer               |
| const SLData_t *,                   | vLi coefficients pointer               |
| const SLData_t *,                   | FFT coefficient pointer                |
| const SLArrayIndex_t *,             | Bit reverse mode flag / Pointer to bit |
| reverse address table               |  |
| const enum SLArbitraryFFT_t,        | Switch to indicate CZT or FFT          |
| const SLData_t,                     | Inverse FFT length                     |
| const SLData_t,                     | Inverse (array length * FFT length)    |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,               | FFT length                             |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,               | Log 2 FFT length                       |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)               | Arbitrary FFT length                   |

## DESCRIPTION

This function will calculate the forward real Fourier transform of an arbitrary length data set using either of two techniques, depending on the vector length. If the vector length is an integer power of two that the function performs a radix-2, decimation in frequency, real to complex fast Fourier transform, of arbitrary order greater than 3 (8 points). The transform is not performed in-place, i.e. the result data is placed in separate arrays to the source arrays.

If the array length is not an integer power of 2 then the function will use the chirp z-transform to calculate the Fourier transform. The SDA\_Rfft function does scale the output, in order that it will exactly equal that of the same length pure Fourier transform.

## NOTES ON USE

Care must be taken with the windowing of the input data to avoid edge effects. This function requires that the FFT coefficient array at least the length of the largest FFT length. I.E. the next largest power of 2 that is greater than or equal to twice the length of the input data set. The operational parameters (e.g. chirp z or FFT coefficients) for this function are initialised by the function SIF\_FftArb.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_Rfft, SUF\_FftArbAllocLength, SDA\_Rdft, SIF\_FftArb, SDA\_CfftArb.



---

 PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|                                     |  |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| void SDA_CfftArb (const SLData_t *, | Real source array pointer              |
| const SLData_t *,                   | Imaginary source array pointer         |
| SLData_t *,                         | Real destination array pointer         |
| SLData_t *,                         | Imaginary destination array pointer    |
| SLData_t *,                         | Real temporary array pointer           |
| SLData_t *,                         | Imaginary temporary array pointer      |
| const SLData_t *,                   | AWNr coefficients pointer              |
| const SLData_t *,                   | AWNi coefficients pointer              |
| const SLData_t *,                   | WMr coefficients pointer               |
| const SLData_t *,                   | WMi coefficients pointer               |
| const SLData_t *,                   | vLr coefficients pointer               |
| const SLData_t *,                   | vLi coefficients pointer               |
| const SLData_t *,                   | FFT coefficient pointer                |
| const SLArrayIndex_t *,             | Bit reverse mode flag / Pointer to bit |
| reverse address table               |  |
| const enum SLArbitraryFFT_t,        | Switch to indicate CZT or FFT          |
| const SLData_t,                     | Inverse FFT length                     |
| const SLData_t,                     | Inverse (array length * FFT length)    |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,               | FFT length                             |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,               | Log 2 FFT length                       |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)               | Arbitrary FFT length                   |

## DESCRIPTION

This function calculates the forward complex Fourier transform of an arbitrary length data set using either of two techniques, depending on the vector length. If the vector length is an integer power of two then the function performs a radix-2, decimation in frequency, complex fast Fourier transform, of arbitrary order greater than 3 (8 points). The transform is not performed in-place, i.e. the result data is placed in separate arrays to the source arrays.

If the array length is not an integer power of 2 then the function will use the chirp z-transform to calculate the Fourier transform. The function does scales the output, in order that it will exactly equal that of the same length pure Fourier transform.

## NOTES ON USE

Care must be taken with the windowing of the input data to avoid edge effects. This function requires that the FFT coefficient array at least the length of the largest FFT length. I.E. the next largest power of 2 that is greater than or equal to twice the length of the input data set. The operational parameters (e.g. chirp z or FFT coefficients) for this function are initialised by the function SIF\_FftArb.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_Cfft, SUF\_FftArbAllocLength, SDA\_Cifft, SIF\_FftArb, SDA\_RfftArb, SDA\_CifftArb.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|                                      |  |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| void SDA_CifftArb (const SLData_t *, | Real source array pointer              |
| const SLData_t *,                    | Imaginary source array pointer         |
| SLData_t *,                          | Real destination array pointer         |
| SLData_t *,                          | Imaginary destination array pointer    |
| SLData_t *,                          | Real temporary array pointer           |
| SLData_t *,                          | Imaginary temporary array pointer      |
| const SLData_t *,                    | AWNr coefficients pointer              |
| const SLData_t *,                    | AWNi coefficients pointer              |
| const SLData_t *,                    | WMr coefficients pointer               |
| const SLData_t *,                    | WMi coefficients pointer               |
| const SLData_t *,                    | vLr coefficients pointer               |
| const SLData_t *,                    | vLi coefficients pointer               |
| const SLData_t *,                    | FFT coefficient pointer                |
| const SLArrayIndex_t *,              | Bit reverse mode flag / Pointer to bit |
| reverse address table                |  |
| const enum SLArbitraryFFT_t,         | Switch to indicate CZT or FFT          |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                | FFT length                             |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                | Log 2 FFT length                       |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)                | Arbitrary FFT length                   |

## DESCRIPTION

This function calculates the inverse complex Fourier transform of an arbitrary length data set using either of two techniques, depending on the vector length. If the vector length is an integer power of two then the function performs a radix-2, decimation in frequency, complex inverse fast Fourier transform, of arbitrary order greater than 3 (8 points). The transform is not performed in-place, i.e. the result data is placed in separate arrays to the source arrays.

If the array length is not an integer power of 2 then the function calculates the inverse Fourier transform by conjugating the input sequence, applying the arbitrary length forward transform, using the chirp z-transform, and then conjugating the result. The function scales the output, in order that it will exactly equal that of the same length pure Fourier transform.

## NOTES ON USE

Care must be taken with the windowing of the input data to avoid edge effects. This function requires that the FFT coefficient array at least the length of the largest FFT length. I.E. the next largest power of 2 that is greater than or equal to twice the length of the input data set. The operational parameters (e.g. chirp z or FFT coefficients) for this function are initialised by the function SIF\_FftArb.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_Cfft, SUF\_FftArbAllocLength, SDA\_Cfft, SIF\_FftArb, SDA\_RfftArb, SDA\_CfftArb.



## Power Spectrum Functions (*pspect.c*)

The XXX\_FastAutoPowerSpectrum and XXX\_FastCrossPowerSpectrum functions will perform the given functions on sequences where the length is a power of two and use the Fast Fourier transform functions.

The XXX\_ArbAutoPowerSpectrum and XXX\_ArbCrossPowerSpectrum functions will perform the given functions on an arbitrary length sequence and will use the arbitrary length Fourier transform functions. The use of the SigLib arbitrary length Fourier transform functionality makes this function more complex than performing a regular Fourier transform but this does provide a far higher level of performance.

---

### SIF\_FastAutoCrossPowerSpectrum

---

#### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SIF_FastAutoCrossPowerSpectrum (SLData_t *,    FFT coefficient pointer  
    SLArrayIndex_t *,                          Bit reverse mode flag / Pointer to bit  
reverse address table  
    const SLArrayIndex_t,                      FFT Size  
    SLData_t *)                               Pointer to inverse FFT Size
```

#### DESCRIPTION

This function initializes the fast auto power spectrum and cross power spectrum function tables.

#### NOTES ON USE

Please refer to the documentation for the FFT functions for further details.

#### CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_FastAutoPowerSpectrum, SDA\_FastCrossPowerSpectrum,  
SIF\_ArbAutoCrossPowerSpectrum, SDA\_ArbAutoPowerSpectrum,  
SDA\_ArbCrossPowerSpectrum, SIF\_WelchPowerSpectrum,  
SDA\_WelchRealPowerSpectrum, SDA\_WelchComplexPowerSpectrum,  
SIF\_MagnitudeSquaredCoherence, SDA\_MagnitudeSquaredCoherence.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_FastAutoPowerSpectrum (SLData_t *,   Real array pointer
                                SLData_t *,   Imaginary array pointer
                                const SLData_t *,   FFT coefficient pointer
                                const SLArrayIndex_t *,   Bit reverse mode flag / Pointer to bit
reverse address table
                                const SLArrayIndex_t,   FFT length
                                const SLArrayIndex_t,   Log2 FFT length
                                const SLData_t)   Inverse FFT Size
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function returns the real auto power spectrum of the supplied data.

This function performs the following operations:

- FFT
- Scaling to ensure that the FFT output matches the DFT
- $X_{re}^2 + X_{im}^2$

## NOTES ON USE

This function works in-place so the input data is destroyed.

The imaginary input array is only used in the function, any input data is discarded.

The results are returned in the real input array.

The result array is of length (N/2)+1 because the results in bins 0 and N/2 are purely real.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_FastAutoCrossPowerSpectrum, SDA\_FastCrossPowerSpectrum,  
SIF\_ArbAutoCrossPowerSpectrum, SDA\_ArbAutoPowerSpectrum,  
SDA\_ArbCrossPowerSpectrum, SIF\_WelchPowerSpectrum,  
SDA\_WelchRealPowerSpectrum, SDA\_WelchComplexPowerSpectrum,  
SIF\_MagnitudeSquaredCoherence, SDA\_MagnitudeSquaredCoherence.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_FastCrossPowerSpectrum (SLData_t *, Real array 1 pointer
    SLData_t *,                      Imaginary array 1 pointer
    SLData_t *,                      Real source array 2 pointer
    SLData_t *,                      Imaginary source array 2 pointer
    const SLData_t *,                FFT coefficient pointer
    const SLArrayIndex_t *,          Bit reverse mode flag / Pointer to bit
reverse address table
    const SLArrayIndex_t,            FFT length
    const SLArrayIndex_t,            Log2 FFT length
    const SLData_t)                  Inverse FFT Size
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function returns the real cross power spectrum of the supplied data.

This function performs the following operations:

FFTs

Scaling to ensure that the FFT output matches the DFT

$(X_{re} \cdot Y_{re}) + (X_{im} + Y_{im})$

## NOTES ON USE

This function works in-place so the input data is destroyed.

The imaginary input arrays are only used in the function, any input data is discarded.

The results are returned in the first real input array.

If the real source array 1 pointer and the real source array 1 pointer point to the same array (i.e. auto power spectrum) then the result will be corrupted.

The result array is of length  $(N/2)+1$  because the results in bins 0 and  $N/2$  are purely real.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_FastAutoCrossPowerSpectrum, SDA\_FastAutoPowerSpectrum,  
 SIF\_ArbAutoCrossPowerSpectrum, SDA\_ArbAutoPowerSpectrum,  
 SDA\_ArbCrossPowerSpectrum, SIF\_WelchPowerSpectrum,  
 SDA\_WelchRealPowerSpectrum, SDA\_WelchComplexPowerSpectrum,  
 SIF\_MagnitudeSquaredCoherence, SDA\_MagnitudeSquaredCoherence.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SIF_ArbAutoCrossPowerSpectrum (SLData_t *, Pointer to AWNr coefficients
    SLData_t *,                               Pointer to AWNi coefficients
    SLData_t *,                               Pointer to WMr coefficients
    SLData_t *,                               Pointer to WMi coefficients
    SLData_t *,                               Pointer to vLr coefficients
    SLData_t *,                               Pointer to vLi coefficients
    SLData_t *,                               FFT coefficients pointer
    SLArrayIndex_t *,                         Bit reverse mode flag / Pointer to bit
reverse address table
    enum SLArbitraryFFT_t *,                 Pointer to switch to indicate CZT or FFT
    SLArrayIndex_t *,                       Pointer to FFT length
    SLArrayIndex_t *,                       Pointer to Log 2 FFT length
    SLData_t *,                             Pointer to inverse FFT Size
    SLData_t *,                             Ptr. to inverse (array length * FFT
length)
    const SLArrayIndex_t)                   Array length
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function initializes the arbitrary length auto power spectrum and cross power spectrum function tables.

These functions use the arbitrary length FFT functions further details can be found in the documentation section for these functions.

## NOTES ON USE

Please refer to the documentation for the FFT functions for further details.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_FastAutoCrossPowerSpectrum, SDA\_FastAutoPowerSpectrum,  
 SDA\_FastCrossPowerSpectrum, SDA\_ArbAutoPowerSpectrum,  
 SDA\_ArbCrossPowerSpectrum, SIF\_WelchPowerSpectrum,  
 SDA\_WelchRealPowerSpectrum, SDA\_WelchComplexPowerSpectrum,  
 SIF\_MagnitudeSquaredCoherence, SDA\_MagnitudeSquaredCoherence.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```

void SDA_ArbAutoPowerSpectrum (SLData_t *,   Real array pointer
                               SLData_t *,   Imaginary array pointer
                               SLData_t *,   Real temporary array pointer
                               SLData_t *,   Imaginary temporary array pointer
                               const SLData_t *, Pointer to AWNr coefficients
                               const SLData_t *, Pointer to AWNi coefficients
                               const SLData_t *, Pointer to WMr coefficients
                               const SLData_t *, Pointer to WMi coefficients
                               const SLData_t *, Pointer to vLr coefficients
                               const SLData_t *, Pointer to vLi coefficients
                               const SLData_t *, FFT coefficient pointer
                               const SLArrayIndex_t *, Bit reverse mode flag / Pointer to bit
reverse address table
                               const enum SLArbitraryFFT_t, Switch to indicate CZT or FFT
                               const SLArrayIndex_t,      FFT length
                               const SLArrayIndex_t,      Log 2 FFT length
                               const SLData_t,             Inverse FFT Size
                               const SLData_t,             Inverse (array length * FFT length)
                               const SLArrayIndex_t)       Arbitrary FFT length

```

## DESCRIPTION

This function returns the real auto power spectrum of an arbitrary length sequence.

This function performs the following operations:

```

FFT
Scaling to ensure that the FFT output matches the DFT
 $X_{re}^2 + X_{im}^2$ 

```

## NOTES ON USE

This function works in-place so the input data is destroyed.

The imaginary input array is only used in the function, any input data is discarded.

The results are returned in the real input array.

The result array is of length (N/2)+1 because the results in bins 0 and N/2 are purely real.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_FastAutoCrossPowerSpectrum, SDA\_FastAutoPowerSpectrum,  
SDA\_FastCrossPowerSpectrum, SIF\_ArbAutoCrossPowerSpectrum,  
SDA\_ArbCrossPowerSpectrum, SIF\_WelchPowerSpectrum,  
SDA\_WelchRealPowerSpectrum, SDA\_WelchComplexPowerSpectrum,  
SIF\_MagnitudeSquaredCoherence, SDA\_MagnitudeSquaredCoherence.



## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```

void SDA_ArbCrossPowerSpectrum (SLData_t *, Real array 1 pointer
    SLData_t *,           Imaginary array 1 pointer
    SLData_t *,           Real source array 2 pointer
    SLData_t *,           Imaginary source array 2 pointer
    SLData_t *,           Real temporary array pointer
    SLData_t *,           Imaginary temporary array pointer
    const SLData_t *,     Pointer to AWNr coefficients
    const SLData_t *,     Pointer to AWNi coefficients
    const SLData_t *,     Pointer to WMr coefficients
    const SLData_t *,     Pointer to WMi coefficients
    const SLData_t *,     Pointer to vLr coefficients
    const SLData_t *,     Pointer to vLi coefficients
    const SLData_t *,     FFT coefficient pointer
    const SLArrayIndex_t *, Bit reverse mode flag / Pointer to bit
reverse address table
    const enum SLArbitraryFFT_t, Switch to indicate CZT or FFT
    const SLArrayIndex_t,       FFT length
    const SLArrayIndex_t,       Log 2 FFT length
    const SLData_t,             Inverse FFT Size
    const SLData_t,             Inverse (array length * FFT length)
    const SLArrayIndex_t)       Arbitrary FFT length

```

## DESCRIPTION

This function returns the real cross power spectrum of the supplied data.

This function performs the following operations:

FFTs

Scaling to ensure that the FFT output matches the DFT

$$(X_{re} \cdot Y_{re}) + (X_{im} + Y_{im})$$

## NOTES ON USE

This function works in-place so the input data is destroyed.

The imaginary input arrays are only used in the function, any input data is discarded.

The results are returned in the first real input array.

If the real source array 1 pointer and the real source array 1 pointer point to the same array (i.e. auto power spectrum) then the result will be corrupted.

The result array is of length (N/2)+1 because the results in bins 0 and N/2 are purely real.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_FastAutoCrossPowerSpectrum, SDA\_FastAutoPowerSpectrum,  
SDA\_FastCrossPowerSpectrum, SIF\_ArbAutoCrossPowerSpectrum,  
SDA\_ArbAutoPowerSpectrum, SIF\_WelchPowerSpectrum,  
SDA\_WelchRealPowerSpectrum, SDA\_WelchComplexPowerSpectrum,  
SIF\_MagnitudeSquaredCoherence, SDA\_MagnitudeSquaredCoherence.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SL\_Error\_t SIF\_WelchPowerSpectrum (SLArrayIndex\_t \*, Pointer to overlap source array index

|                        |   |
|------------------------|---|
| SLData_t *,            | Window array pointer                    |
| const enum SLWindow_t, | Window type                             |
| const SLData_t,        | Window coefficient                      |
| SLData_t *,            | FFT coefficient pointer                 |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,      | Bit reverse mode flag / Pointer to bit  |
| reverse address table  |   |
| SLData_t *,            | Pointer to the inverse FFT length       |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,  | FFT length                              |
| SLData_t *,            | Pointer to the inverse of the number of |
| arrays averaged        |   |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)  | Number of arrays averaged               |

## DESCRIPTION

This function initializes the Welch power function.

## NOTES ON USE

This function returns SIGLIB\_NO\_ERROR if No error occurred or SIGLIB\_PARAMETER\_ERROR if the window type parameter was incorrect.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_FastAutoCrossPowerSpectrum, SDA\_FastAutoPowerSpectrum, SDA\_FastCrossPowerSpectrum, SDA\_ArbAutoPowerSpectrum, SDA\_ArbCrossPowerSpectrum, SDA\_WelchRealPowerSpectrum, SDA\_WelchComplexPowerSpectrum, SIF\_MagnitudeSquaredCoherence, SDA\_MagnitudeSquaredCoherence.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_WelchRealPowerSpectrum (const SLData_t *,  Pointer to source data
    SLData_t *,                                Pointer to destination data
    SLData_t *,                                Pointer to real internal processing array
    SLData_t *,                                Pointer to imag. internal processing array
    SLData_t *,                                Pointer to internal overlap array
    SLArrayIndex_t *,                          Pointer to overlap source array index
    SLArrayIndex_t,                            Overlap between successive arrays
    const SLData_t *,                          Pointer to window coefficients
    const SLData_t *,                          Pointer to FFT coefficients
    const SLArrayIndex_t *,                    Bit reverse mode flag / Pointer to bit
reverse address table
    const SLArrayIndex_t,                      FFT length
    const SLArrayIndex_t,                      Log2 FFT length
    const SLData_t,                            Inverse FFT length
    const SLArrayIndex_t,                      Number of arrays averaged
    const SLData_t,                            Inverse of number of arrays averaged
    const SLArrayIndex_t)                      Source array length
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function returns the Welch real auto power spectrum of the supplied data.

This function performs the following operations:

- Overlapping of data from the source array into the FFT processing arrays
- Windowing
- FFT
- $X_{re}^2 + X_{im}^2$
- Averaging of a given number of FFT periodograms

## NOTES ON USE

This function does not work in-place. The results are placed in the result array.

It is important to ensure that there is enough data in the source array to avoid overflow.

The result array is of length (N/2)+1 because the results in bins 0 and N/2 are purely real.

The imaginary input array is only used in the function, any input data is discarded.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_FastAutoCrossPowerSpectrum, SDA\_FastCrossPowerSpectrum,  
 SIF\_ArbAutoCrossPowerSpectrum, SDA\_ArbAutoPowerSpectrum,  
 SDA\_ArbCrossPowerSpectrum, SIF\_WelchPowerSpectrum,  
 SDA\_WelchRealPowerSpectrum, SDA\_WelchComplexPowerSpectrum,  
 SIF\_MagnitudeSquaredCoherence, SDA\_MagnitudeSquaredCoherence.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_WelchComplexPowerSpectrum (const SLData_t *, Ptr. to real source data
    const SLData_t *,           Pointer to imaginary source data
    SLData_t *,                 Pointer to destination data
    SLData_t *,                 Pointer to real internal processing array
    SLData_t *,                 Pointer to imag. internal processing array
    SLData_t *,                 Pointer to internal real overlap array
    SLData_t *,                 Pointer to internal imag. overlap array
    SLArrayIndex_t *,           Pointer to overlap source array index
    SLArrayIndex_t,             Overlap between successive arrays
    const SLData_t *,           Pointer to window coefficients
    const SLData_t *,           Pointer to FFT coefficients
    const SLArrayIndex_t *,     Bit reverse mode flag / Pointer to bit
reverse address table
    const SLArrayIndex_t,       FFT length
    const SLArrayIndex_t,       Log2 FFT length
    const SLData_t,             Inverse FFT length
    const SLArrayIndex_t,       Number of arrays averaged
    const SLData_t,             Inverse of number of arrays averaged
    const SLArrayIndex_t)       Source array length
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function returns the Welch complex auto power spectrum of the supplied data.

This function performs the following operations:

- Overlapping of data from the source array into the FFT processing arrays
- Windowing
- FFT
- $X_{re}^2 + X_{im}^2$
- Averaging of a given number of FFT periodograms

## NOTES ON USE

This function does not work in-place. The results are placed in the result array.

It is important to ensure that there is enough data in the source array to avoid overflow.

The result array is of length  $(N/2)+1$  because the results with real data, in bins 0 and  $N/2$ , are purely real.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_FastAutoCrossPowerSpectrum, SDA\_FastCrossPowerSpectrum,  
 SIF\_ArbAutoCrossPowerSpectrum, SDA\_ArbAutoPowerSpectrum,  
 SDA\_ArbCrossPowerSpectrum, SIF\_WelchPowerSpectrum,  
 SDA\_WelchRealPowerSpectrum, SIF\_MagnitudeSquaredCoherence,  
 SDA\_MagnitudeSquaredCoherence.

### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SIF_MagnitudeSquaredCoherence (SLData_t *,    FFT coefficient pointer  
    SLArrayIndex_t *,                          Bit reverse mode flag / Pointer to bit  
reverse address table  
    const SLArrayIndex_t,                      FFT Size  
    SLData_t *)                               Pointer to inverse FFT Size
```

### DESCRIPTION

This function initializes the magnitude squared coherence function tables.

### NOTES ON USE

Please refer to the documentation for the FFT functions for further details.

### CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_FastAutoPowerSpectrum, SDA\_FastCrossPowerSpectrum,  
SIF\_ArbAutoCrossPowerSpectrum, SDA\_ArbAutoPowerSpectrum,  
SDA\_ArbCrossPowerSpectrum, SIF\_WelchPowerSpectrum,  
SDA\_WelchRealPowerSpectrum, SDA\_WelchComplexPowerSpectrum,  
SDA\_MagnitudeSquaredCoherence.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_MagnitudeSquaredCoherence (SLData_t *,      Pointer to real array 1
    SLData_t *,      Pointer to internal imaginary data 1
    SLData_t *,      Pointer to real source data 2
    SLData_t *,      Pointer to internal imaginary data 2
    SLData_t *,      Pointer to internal temporary real data 1
    SLData_t *,      Pointer to internal temp. imag. data 1
    SLData_t *,      Pointer to internal temporary real data 2
    SLData_t *,      Pointer to internal temp. imag. data 2
    const SLData_t *, Pointer to FFT coefficients
    const SLArrayIndex_t *, Bit reverse mode flag / Pointer to bit
reverse address table
    const SLArrayIndex_t,   FFT length
    const SLArrayIndex_t,   Log2 FFT length
    const SLData_t)         Inverse FFT length
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function returns the magnitude squared coherence of the supplied data, according to the following equation:

$$MSC(f) = \frac{|P_{xy}(f)|^2}{P_{xx}(f) \cdot P_{yy}(f)}$$

Where:

Is  $P_{xy}(f)$  the cross power spectrum of inputs  $x[n]$  and  $y[n]$   
and:

and  $P_{xx}(f)$  are the  $P_{yy}(f)$  auto power spectra of inputs  $x[n]$  and  $y[n]$

## NOTES ON USE

This function places the results in real array 1. The data in imaginary array 1 and both array 2s are destroyed.

This function does not check for numerical overflow in the internal divide operation. The imaginary input arrays are only used in the function, any input data is discarded. The result array is of length (N/2)+1 because the results in bins 0 and N/2 are purely real.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_FastAutoCrossPowerSpectrum, SDA\_FastCrossPowerSpectrum,  
SIF\_ArbAutoCrossPowerSpectrum, SDA\_ArbAutoPowerSpectrum,  
SDA\_ArbCrossPowerSpectrum, SIF\_WelchPowerSpectrum,  
SDA\_WelchRealPowerSpectrum, SDA\_WelchComplexPowerSpectrum,  
SIF\_MagnitudeSquaredCoherence.

## Frequency Domain Filtering Functions (*fdfilter.c*)

### SIF\_FirOverlapAdd

#### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SIF_FirOverlapAdd (const SLData_t *, Time Domain coeffs pointer
    SLData_t *, Real freq. domain coeffs pointer
    SLData_t *, Imag. freq. domain coeffs pointer
    SLData_t *, Overlap array pointer
    SLArrayIndex_t *, FFT coefficients pointer
reverse address table FFT Bit reverse mode flag / Pointer to bit
    SLData_t *, Pointer to inverse FFT length
    const SLArrayIndex_t, FFT Length
    const SLArrayIndex_t, Log10 FFT Length
    const SLArrayIndex_t) Filter length
```

#### DESCRIPTION

This function initializes the frequency domain overlap-add function. The primary role for this function is to convert the time domain coefficients to the frequency domain and prepare the overlap array.

The overlap array must be of length "filter length -1".

#### NOTES ON USE

The FFT length must be greater than (Input length + Filter Length - 1).

#### CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_FirOverlapAdd.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|   |  |
|---|--|
| void SDA_FirOverlapAdd (const SLData_t *, | Source data pointer                        |
| SLData_t *,                               | Destination data pointer                   |
| const SLData_t *,                         | Real freq. domain coeffs pointer           |
| const SLData_t *,                         | Imaginary freq. domain coeffs pointer      |
| SLData_t *,                               | Overlap array pointer                      |
| SLData_t *,                               | Temporary array pointer                    |
| SLData_t *,                               | FFT coefficients pointer                   |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                         | FFT Bit reverse mode flag / Pointer to bit |
| reverse address table                     |  |
| const SLData_t,                           | Inverse FFT length                         |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                     | FFT Length                                 |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                     | Log 10 FFT Length                          |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                     | Filter length                              |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)                     | Data set length                            |

## DESCRIPTION

This function implements the frequency domain overlap-add function. The continuous time domain data stream is split into blocks and the Fourier transform performed on the blocks. The final results are identical to those obtained with time domain filtering.

## NOTES ON USE

The FFT length must be greater than (Input length + Filter Length - 1).

The processing delay is greater than the delay experienced with time domain filtering.

The overlap array must be of length "filter length -1".

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_FirOverlapAdd.



## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|  |  |
|--|--|
| void SIF_FirOverlapSave (const SLData_t *, | Time Domain coeffs pointer                 |
| SLData_t *,                                | Real freq. domain coeffs pointer           |
| SLData_t *,                                | Imag. freq. domain coeffs pointer          |
| SLData_t *,                                | Overlap array pointer                      |
| SLData_t *,                                | FFT coefficients pointer                   |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                          | FFT Bit reverse mode flag / Pointer to bit |
| reverse address table                      |  |
| SLData_t *,                                | Pointer to inverse FFT length              |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                      | FFT Length                                 |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                      | Log10 FFT Length                           |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)                      | Filter length                              |

## DESCRIPTION

This function initializes the frequency domain overlap-save function. The primary role for this function is to convert the time domain coefficients to the frequency domain and prepare the overlap array.

## NOTES ON USE

The FFT length must be greater than (Input length + Filter Length - 1). The array length must be greater than or equal to the length on the filter.

The overlap array must be of length "FFT length".

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_FirOverlapSave.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_FirOverlapSave (const SLData_t *,      Source data pointer
                        SLData_t *,            Destination data pointer
                        const SLData_t *,       Real freq. domain coeffs pointer
                        const SLData_t *,       Imaginary freq. domain coeffs pointer
                        SLData_t *,            Overlap array pointer
                        SLData_t *,            Temporary array pointer
                        SLData_t *,            FFT coefficients pointer
                        SLArrayIndex_t *,       FFT Bit reverse mode flag / Pointer to bit
reverse address table
                        const SLData_t,        Inverse FFT length
                        const SLArrayIndex_t,   FFT Length
                        const SLArrayIndex_t,   Log 10 FFT Length
                        const SLArrayIndex_t,   Filter length
                        const SLArrayIndex_t)   Data set length
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function implements the frequency domain overlap-save function. The continuous time domain data stream is split into blocks and the Fourier transform performed on the blocks. The final results are identical to those obtained with time domain filtering.

## NOTES ON USE

The FFT length must be greater than (Input length + Filter Length - 1). The array length must be greater than or equal to the length on the filter.

The processing delay is greater than the delay experienced with time domain filtering.

The overlap array must be of length "FFT length".

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_FirOverlapSave.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SIF_FftConvolvePre (const SLData_t *,   Pointer to time domain filter coeffs
                        SLData_t *,           Pointer to real freq. domain filter coeffs
                        SLData_t *,           Pointer to imag freq. domain filter coeffs
                        SLData_t *,           Pointer to FFT coefficients
                        SLArrayIndex_t *,     Pointer to bit reverse address table
                        const SLArrayIndex_t, Filter length
                        const SLArrayIndex_t, FFT length
                        const SLArrayIndex_t) Log 2 FFT length
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function initializes the frequency convolution function (SDA\_FftConvolvePre).

This function converts the time domain filter coefficients to the frequency domain.

## NOTES ON USE

The FFT length must be greater than  $(N + M - 1)$ . Where N and M are the lengths of the two time domain arrays provided to the function SDA\_FftConvolvePre.

The processing delay is greater than the delay experienced with time domain convolution.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_FftConvolvePre, SDA\_FftConvolveArb, SIF\_FftCorrelatePre,  
SDA\_FftCorrelatePre, SDA\_FftCorrelateArb.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|                                      |  |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| void SDA_FftConvolvePre (SLData_t *, | Pointer to real time domain source data    |
| SLData_t *,                          | Pointer to imag time domain source data    |
| SLData_t *,                          | Pointer to real freq. domain filter coeffs |
| SLData_t *,                          | Pointer to imag freq. domain filter coeffs |
| SLData_t *,                          | Pointer to destination array               |
| const SLData_t *,                    | Pointer to FFT coefficients                |
| const SLArrayIndex_t *,              | Pointer to bit reverse address table       |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                | Source length                              |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                | Filter length                              |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                | FFT length                                 |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                | Log 2 FFT length                           |
| const SLData_t)                      | Inverse FFT length                         |

## DESCRIPTION

This function performs the frequency convolution function of two discrete time domain sequences.

The time domain filter coefficients are pre-converted to the frequency domain using the function SIF\_FftConvolvePre so this function is more efficient than performing the time domain to frequency domain conversion on both time domain sequences.

## NOTES ON USE

The FFT length must be greater than  $(N + M - 1)$ . Where N and M are the lengths of the two time domain arrays provided to the function.

The processing delay is greater than the delay experienced with time domain convolution.

The data in the source arrays is destroyed when this function is called. This function is not able to process the data “in-place”.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_FftConvolvePre, SDA\_FftConvolveArb, SIF\_FftCorrelatePre,  
SDA\_FftCorrelatePre, SDA\_FftCorrelateArb.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_FftConvolveArb (SLData_t *,      Pointer to real time domain source data 1
                        SLData_t *,      Pointer to imag. time domain src data 1
                        SLData_t *,      Pointer to real time domain source data 2
                        SLData_t *,      Pointer to imag. time domain src data 2
                        SLData_t *,      Pointer to destination array
                        const SLData_t *, Pointer to FFT coefficients
                        const SLArrayIndex_t *, Pointer to bit reverse address table
                        const SLArrayIndex_t, Source 1 length
                        const SLArrayIndex_t, Source 2 length
                        const SLArrayIndex_t, FFT length
                        const SLArrayIndex_t, Log 2 FFT length
                        const SLData_t)     Inverse FFT length
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function performs the frequency convolution function of two discrete time domain sequences.

## NOTES ON USE

The FFT length must be greater than  $(N + M - 1)$ . Where N and M are the lengths of the two time domain arrays provided to the function.

The processing delay is greater than the delay experienced with time domain convolution.

The data in the source arrays is destroyed when this function is called. This function is not able to process the data “in-place”.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_FftConvolvePre, SDA\_FftConvolvePre, SIF\_FftCorrelatePre,  
SDA\_FftCorrelatePre, SDA\_FftCorrelateArb.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SIF_FftCorrelatePre (const SLData_t *,Pointer to time domain filter coefficients
    SLData_t *,                          Pointer to real freq. domain filter coeffs
    SLData_t *,                          Pointer to imag freq. domain filter coeffs
    SLData_t *,                          Pointer to FFT coefficients
    SLArrayIndex_t *,                    Pointer to bit reverse address table
    const SLArrayIndex_t,                Filter length
    const SLArrayIndex_t,                FFT length
    const SLArrayIndex_t)                Log 2 FFT length
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function initializes the frequency correlation function (SDA\_FftCorrelatePre).

This function converts the time domain sequence to the frequency domain.

## NOTES ON USE

The FFT length must be greater than  $(N + M - 1)$ . Where N and M are the lengths of the two time domain arrays provided to the function.

The processing delay is greater than the delay experienced with time domain correlation SDA\_FftCorrelatePre.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_FftConvolvePre, SDA\_FftConvolvePre, SDA\_FftConvolveArb,  
SDA\_FftCorrelatePre, SDA\_FftCorrelateArb.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|                                       |  |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| void SDA_FftCorrelatePre (SLData_t *, | Pointer to real time domain source data    |
| SLData_t *,                           | Pointer to imag time domain source data    |
| SLData_t *,                           | Pointer to real freq. domain filter coeffs |
| SLData_t *,                           | Pointer to imag freq. domain filter coeffs |
| SLData_t *,                           | Pointer to destination array               |
| const SLData_t *,                     | Pointer to FFT coefficients                |
| const SLArrayIndex_t *,               | Pointer to bit reverse address table       |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                 | Source length                              |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                 | Filter length                              |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                 | FFT length                                 |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                 | Log 2 FFT length                           |
| const SLData_t)                       | Inverse FFT length                         |

## DESCRIPTION

This function performs the frequency domain correlation of two discrete time domain sequences.

The time domain filter coefficients are pre-converted to the frequency domain using the function SIF\_FftCorrelatePre so this function is more efficient than performing the time domain to frequency domain conversion on both time domain sequences.

## NOTES ON USE

The FFT length must be greater than  $(N + M - 1)$ . Where N and M are the lengths of the two time domain arrays provided to the function.

The processing delay is greater than the delay experienced with time domain filtering.

The data in the source arrays is destroyed when this function is called. This function is not able to process the data “in-place”.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_FftConvolvePre, SDA\_FftConvolvePre, SDA\_FftConvolveArb,  
SIF\_FftCorrelatePre, SDA\_FftCorrelateArb.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|                                       |   |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| void SDA_FftCorrelateArb (SLData_t *, | Pointer to real time domain source data 1 |
| SLData_t *,                           | Pointer to imag time domain src. data 1   |
| SLData_t *,                           | Pointer to real time domain source data 2 |
| SLData_t *,                           | Pointer to imag time domain src. data 2   |
| SLData_t *,                           | Pointer to destination array              |
| const SLData_t *,                     | Pointer to FFT coefficients               |
| const SLArrayIndex_t *,               | Pointer to bit reverse address table      |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                 | Source 1 length                           |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                 | Source 2 length                           |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                 | FFT length                                |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                 | Log 2 FFT length                          |
| const SLData_t)                       | Inverse FFT length                        |

## DESCRIPTION

This function performs the frequency domain correlation of two discrete time domain sequences.

## NOTES ON USE

The FFT length must be greater than  $(N + M - 1)$ . Where N and M are the lengths of the two time domain arrays provided to the function.

The processing delay is greater than the delay experienced with time domain filtering.

The data in the source arrays is destroyed when this function is called. This function is not able to process the data “in-place”.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_FftConvolvePre, SDA\_FftConvolvePre, SDA\_FftConvolveArb,  
SIF\_FftCorrelatePre, SDA\_FftCorrelatePre.



## CHIRP Z-TRANSFORM FUNCTIONS (*chirpz.c*)

The contour used for the chirp z-transform is defined as:

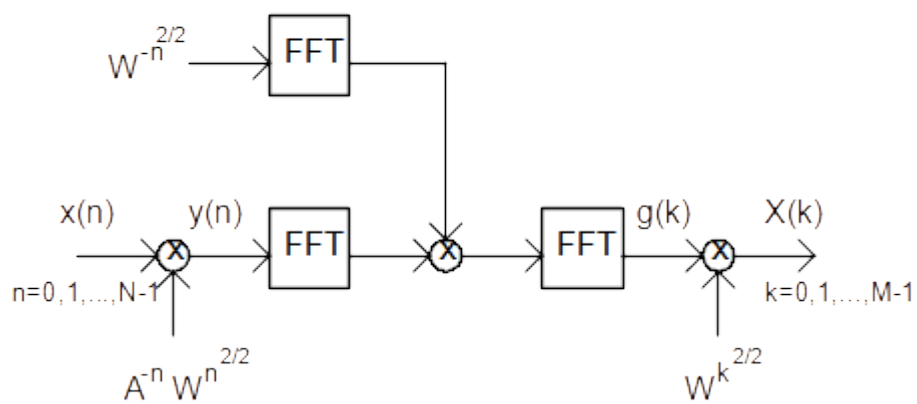
$$z_k = AW^{-k} \quad k=0,1,\dots,M-1$$

A and W are complex numbers of the type:

$$W = W_0 e^{-j\phi_0}$$

$$A = A_0 e^{j\theta_0}$$

The Chirp z-transform



---

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|                           |  |
|---------------------------|--|
| void SIF_Czt (SLData_t *, | AWNr coefficients pointer              |
| SLData_t *,               | AWNi coefficients pointer              |
| SLData_t *,               | WMr coefficients pointer               |
| SLData_t *,               | WMi coefficients pointer               |
| SLData_t *,               | vLr coefficients pointer               |
| SLData_t *,               | vLi coefficients pointer               |
| SLData_t *,               | FFT coefficient pointer                |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,         | Bit reverse mode flag / Pointer to bit |
| reverse address table     |  |
| const SLData_t,           | Contour start radius                   |
| const SLData_t,           | Contour decay rate                     |
| const SLData_t,           | Contour start frequency                |
| const SLData_t,           | Contour end frequency                  |
| const SLData_t,           | System sample rate                     |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,     | Source array lengths                   |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,     | Destination array lengths              |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,     | FFT length                             |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)     | log2 FFT length                        |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function initializes the coefficients for the Chirp z-Transform, according to the contour specification supplied.

**NOTES ON USE**

The FFT length must be greater than (Input length + Output Length - 1). The contour spirals in for decays < 0 and out for decays > 0. The sampling, start and end frequencies should all be in the same units, usually Hertz.

This function requires that the FFT coefficient array at least the length of the largest FFT length. I.E. the next largest power of 2 that is greater than or equal to twice the length of the input data set.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SIF\_Vl, SIF\_Awn, SIF\_Wm.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|                           |                               |
|---------------------------|-------------------------------|
| void SIF_Awn (SLData_t *, | Real coefficient pointer      |
| SLData_t *,               | Imaginary coefficient pointer |
| const Complex,            | $A^{-1}$                      |
| const Complex,            | $W$                           |
| const Complex,            | $W^{1/2}$                     |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)     | Array length                  |

## DESCRIPTION

This function generates the complex window coefficients for the Chirp z-Transform.

## NOTES ON USE

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_Vl, SIF\_Wm, SIF\_Czt.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|                          |                               |
|--------------------------|-------------------------------|
| void SIF_VI (SLData_t *, | Real coefficient pointer      |
| SLData_t *,              | Imaginary coefficient pointer |
| const Complex,           | $W^{(-1)}$                    |
| const Complex,           | $W^{(-1/2)}$                  |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,    | Source array length           |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,    | Destination array length      |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)    | FFT array length              |

## DESCRIPTION

This function generates the contour definition coefficients for the Chirp z-Transform.

## NOTES ON USE

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_Awn, SIF\_Wm, SIF\_Czt.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|                          |                               |
|--------------------------|-------------------------------|
| void SIF_Wm (SLData_t *, | Real coefficient pointer      |
| SLData_t *,              | Imaginary coefficient pointer |
| const Complex,           | W                             |
| const Complex,           | $W^{(1/2)}$                   |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)    | Array length                  |

## DESCRIPTION

This function generates the weighting coefficients for the Chirp z-Transform.

## NOTES ON USE

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_Vl, SIF\_Awn, SIF\_Czt.

## WINDOWING FUNCTIONS (*window.c*)

### SIF\_Window

#### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLError\_t SIF\_Window (SLData\_t \*,           Window array pointer  
                  const enum SLWindow\_t,       Window type  
                  const SLData\_t,           Window coefficient  
                  const SLArrayIndex\_t)       Window length

#### DESCRIPTION

This function initializes the window coefficient array. The window types are defined as follows:

| Enumerated type                              | Window type                                  |
|--|--|
| SIGLIB_HANNING                               | Hanning                                      |
| SIGLIB_HAMMING                               | Hamming                                      |
| SIGLIB_GENERALIZED_COSINE                    | Generalized cosine                           |
| SIGLIB_BLACKMAN                              | Blackman                                     |
| SIGLIB_BARTLETT_TRIANGLE_ZERO_END_POINTS     | Bartlett / triangle with zero end points     |
| SIGLIB_BARTLETT_TRIANGLE_NON_ZERO_END_POINTS | Bartlett / triangle with non-zero end points |
| SIGLIB_KAISER                                | Kaiser                                       |
| SIGLIB_BLACKMAN_HARRIS                       | 4th order Blackman-Harris                    |
| SIGLIB_RECTANGLE                             | Rectangle / none                             |
| SIGLIB_FLAT_TOP                              | Flat top                                     |

The window coefficient parameter is used to supply the beta coefficient to the Kaiser window. It is now used for any of the other window functions.

#### NOTES ON USE

This function returns SIGLIB\_PARAMETER\_ERROR if an incorrect window type is specified, otherwise it returns SIGLIB\_NO\_ERROR.

#### CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_Window, SDA\_ComplexWindow, SDA\_WindowInverseCoherentGain, SDA\_WindowEquivalentNoiseBandwidth, SDA\_WindowProcessingGain, SDS\_I0Bessel.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```

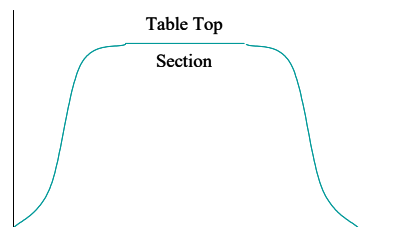
SL_Error_t SIF_TableTopWindow (SLData_t *,      Window array pointer
                               const enum SL_Window_t,    Window type
                               const SLData_t,           Window coefficient
                               const SLArrayIndex_t,      Table top length
                               const SLArrayIndex_t)      Window length

```

## DESCRIPTION

This function initializes the window coefficient array. Please refer to the function `SIF_Window` for a list of the window types supported.

The window generated will have a flat “table top” section in the middle of the array so the coefficient array will look like the following diagram:



The window coefficient parameter is used to supply the beta coefficient to the Kaiser window. It is now used for any of the other window functions.

## NOTES ON USE

This function returns `SIGLIB_PARAMETER_ERROR` if an incorrect window type is specified, otherwise it returns `SIGLIB_NO_ERROR`.

## CROSS REFERENCE

`SDA_Window`, `SDA_ComplexWindow`, `SDA_WindowInverseCoherentGain`, `SDA_WindowEquivalentNoiseBandwidth`, `SDA_WindowProcessingGain`, `SDS_I0Bessel`.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|                                    |                           |
|------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| void SDA_Window (const SLData_t *, | Source array pointer      |
| SLData_t *,                        | Destination array pointer |
| const SLData_t *,                  | Window array pointer      |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)              | Window length             |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function applies a window to the time domain array, prior to performing the FFT.

**NOTES ON USE**

The functions SIF\_Window or SIF\_TableTopWindow should be called prior to calling this function.

This function can operate in-place.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SIF\_Window, SIF\_TableTopWindow, SDA\_ComplexWindow,  
SDA\_WindowInverseCoherentGain, SDA\_WindowEquivalentNoiseBandwidth,  
SDA\_WindowProcessingGain.



**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
void SDA_ComplexWindow (const SLData_t *,    Real source pointer
                        const SLData_t *,    Imaginary source array pointer
                        SLData_t *,          Real destination array pointer
                        SLData_t *,          Imaginary destination array pointer
                        const SLData_t *,    Real window array pointer
                        const SLData_t *,    Imaginary window array pointer
                        const SLArrayIndex_t) Window length
```

**DESCRIPTION**

This function applies window to the time domain array, prior to performing the FFT.

**NOTES ON USE**

This function can operate in-place.

The same window can be applied to both real and imaginary streams if the real and imaginary window pointers point to the same window array.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SIF\_Window, SDA\_Window, SDA\_WindowInverseCoherentGain,  
SDA\_WindowEquivalentNoiseBandwidth, SDA\_WindowProcessingGain.

### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData\_t SDA\_WindowInverseCoherentGain (const SLData\_t \*, Window data ptr.  
const SLArrayIndex\_t) Window length

### DESCRIPTION

This function returns the inverse coherent gain of the window, so that the gain can be normalised.

### NOTES ON USE

### CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_Window, SDA\_Window, SDA\_ComplexWindow,  
SDA\_WindowEquivalentNoiseBandwidth, SDA\_WindowProcessingGain.

### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData\_t SDA\_WindowEquivalentNoiseBandwidth (const SLData\_t \*, Window  
data pointer  
const SLArrayIndex\_t) Window length

### DESCRIPTION

This function returns the equivalent noise bandwidth (ENBW) of the window.

### NOTES ON USE

### CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_Window, SDA\_Window, SDA\_ComplexWindow,  
SDA\_WindowInverseCoherentGain, SDA\_WindowProcessingGain.

### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData\_t SDA\_WindowProcessingGain (const SLData\_t \*, Window data pointer  
const SLArrayIndex\_t) Window length

### DESCRIPTION

This function returns the processing gain of the window.

### NOTES ON USE

### CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_Window, SDA\_Window, SDA\_ComplexWindow,  
SDA\_WindowInverseCoherentGain, SDA\_WindowEquivalentNoiseBandwidth.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDS_I0Bessel (const )
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function returns the modified Bessel function  $I_0(x)$ .

## NOTES ON USE

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_Window, SDA\_Window, SDA\_ComplexWindow.

## FIXED COEFFICIENT FILTER FUNCTIONS

### FIR Filtering Functions (*firfilt.c*)

**SIF\_Fir**

---

#### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|                           |                            |
|---------------------------|----------------------------|
| void SIF_Fir (SLData_t *, | Filter state array pointer |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,         | Filter offset pointer      |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)     | Filter length              |

#### DESCRIPTION

This function initializes the FIR filter functionality and clears the state array and filter offset to zero.

#### NOTES ON USE

#### CROSS REFERENCE

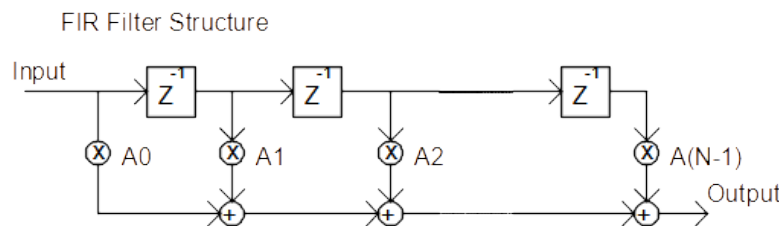
SDS\_Fir, SDA\_Fir, SIF\_FirWithStore, SDS\_FirWithStore,  
SDA\_FirWithStore, SDS\_FirAddSample

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|                                   |                                   |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| SLData_t SDS_Fir (const SLData_t, | Input data sample to be filtered  |
| SLData_t *,                       | Filter state array pointer        |
| const SLData_t *,                 | Filter coefficients array pointer |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                 | Filter offset pointer             |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)             | Filter length                     |

## DESCRIPTION

This function performs FIR filtering on a data sample. The coefficients (taps) for the FIR filter are in the form of a linear array of N points, where N is the filter length.



## NOTES ON USE

The traditional method of viewing the state array is as a bucket brigade FIFO array, with data flowing in one end and falling out the other. On DSP devices that implement modulo addressing it is more efficient to use a circular array, so that for each new sample all the data does not have to be shifted up. For this reason each time the SDA\_Fir function is called the current array pointer must be known. In order to make this function reusable it is necessary that each instance has a separate state array pointer, the address of which is passed to the function at call time.

Use of this function showed that the explicit test and modify for the array pointers, reaching the end of the array was more computationally efficient than using the modulo operator, which was usually handled via a function call.

SIF\_Fir should be called prior to using this function, to perform the required initialisation.

## CROSS REFERENCE

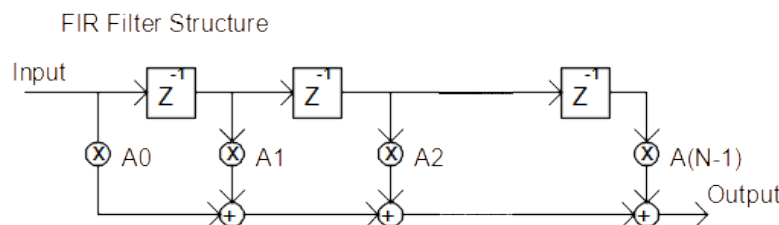
SIF\_Fir, SDA\_Fir, SIF\_FirWithStore, SDS\_FirWithStore, SDA\_FirWithStore, SDS\_FirAddSample

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|  |                                   |
|--|-----------------------------------|
| <code>void SDA_Fir (const SLData_t *,</code> | Input array to be filtered        |
| <code>SLData_t *,</code>                     | Filtered output array             |
| <code>SLData_t *,</code>                     | Filter state array pointer        |
| <code>const SLData_t *,</code>               | Filter coefficients array pointer |
| <code>SArrayIndex_t *,</code>                | Filter offset register pointer    |
| <code>const SArrayIndex_t,</code>            | Filter length                     |
| <code>const SArrayIndex_t)</code>            | Array length                      |

## DESCRIPTION

This function performs an FIR filtering on the array. The coefficients (taps) for the FIR filter are in the form of a linear array of  $N$  points, where  $N$  is the filter length.



## NOTES ON USE

The traditional method of viewing the state array is as a bucket brigade FIFO array, with data flowing in one end and falling out the other. On DSP devices that implement modulo addressing it is more efficient to use a circular array, so that for each new sample all the data does not have to be shifted up. For this reason each time the SDA\_Fir function is called the current array pointer must be known. In order to make this function reusable it is necessary that each instance has a separate state array pointer, the address of which is passed to the function at call time.

The input and output array pointers can point to the same array. SIF\_Fir should be called prior to using this function, to perform the required initialisation.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_Fir, SDS\_Fir, SIF\_FirWithStore, SDS\_FirWithStore, SDA\_FirWithStore, SDS\_FirAddSample



**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
void SDS_FirAddSample (const SLData_t,  Sample to add to delay line
                      SLData_t *,      Filter state array pointer
                      SLArrayIndex_t *,  Filter offset register pointer
                      const SLArrayIndex_t)  Filter length
```

**DESCRIPTION**

This function adds a new input sample into the filter delay line, without calculating the new output sample, thus saving a whole load of multiply accumulate functions.

**NOTES ON USE**

If you want to add samples to a complex FIR filter then this function should be called separately for the real sample/state array and the imaginary sample/state array.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SIF\_Fir, SDS\_Fir, SDA\_Fir, SIF\_FirComplex, SDS\_FirComplex,  
SDA\_FirComplex

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
void SDA_FirAddSamples (const SLData_t *,    Array of samples to add to delay line
                        SLData_t *,          Pointer to filter state array
                        SLArrayIndex_t *,    Pointer to filter index register
                        const SLArrayIndex_t, Filter length
                        const SLArrayIndex_t) Source array length
```

**DESCRIPTION**

This function adds a new input array of samples into the filter delay line, without calculating the new output sample, thus saving a whole load of multiply accumulate functions.

**NOTES ON USE**

If you want to add samples to a complex FIR filter then this function should be called separately for the real sample/state array and the imaginary sample/state array.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SIF\_Fir, SDS\_Fir, SDA\_Fir, SDS\_FirAddSample, SIF\_FirComplex,  
SDS\_FirComplex, SDA\_FirComplex

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|                            |                                  |
|----------------------------|----------------------------------|
| void SIF_Comb (SLData_t *, | Filter state array pointer       |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,          | Pointer to filter index register |
| SLData_t *,                | Pointer to filter sum register   |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)      | Filter length                    |

## DESCRIPTION

This function initializes an  $N$  delay comb (moving average) filter functionality and clears the state array, filter index and filter sum to zero.

$$\text{Comb filter output} = \sum_{n=0}^{N-1} x(n)$$

## NOTES ON USE

This is a very efficient filter form, giving complete nulls at a frequency equal to the sample rate divided by the delay length and its harmonics.

When calculating the moving average it is common to expect the output to be:

$$\text{Moving Average} = \sum_{n=0}^{N-1} x(n) / N$$

The only difference between the result returned from the Comb filter and the moving average sequences is the divide by  $N$ . The reason that the divide by  $N$  is not commonly calculated in DSP is because the divide operation is very expensive in terms of MIPS and the difference is purely in the scaling of the output. If you wish to account for the scaling then the easiest way to do it is to perform the following operation:

```
SDA_Multiply (DstArray, DstArray,  
              INVERSE_COMB_FILTER_LENGTH, SAMPLE_LENGTH)
```

A more run-time efficient solution is to perform all of the DSP operations and leave the scaling to the very end.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDS\_Comb, SDA\_Comb

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|                                    |                             |
|------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| SLData_t SDS_Comb (const SLData_t, | Input sample to be filtered |
| SLData_t *,                        | Filter state array pointer  |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                  | Filter index pointer        |
| SLData_t *,                        | Filter sum register pointer |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)              | Filter length               |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function performs a comb (moving average) filter on a data sample. The filter will output the running sum of the previous N samples of the input signal.

**NOTES ON USE**

Please refer to SIF\_Comb for further information.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SIF\_Comb, SDA\_Comb

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|                                  |                                  |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| void SDA_Comb (const SLData_t *, | Source array pointer             |
| SLData_t *,                      | Destination array pointer        |
| SLData_t *,                      | Pointer to filter state array    |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                | Pointer to filter index register |
| SLData_t *,                      | Pointer to filter sum register   |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,            | Filter length                    |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)            | Array length                     |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function performs a comb (moving average) filter on the data in the source array. The filter will output the running sum of the previous N samples of the input signal.

**NOTES ON USE**

Please refer to SIF\_Comb for further information.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SIF\_Comb, SDS\_Comb

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|                                  |                                      |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| void SIF_FirComplex (SLData_t *, | Real filter state array pointer      |
| SLData_t *,                      | Imaginary filter state array pointer |
| SArrayIndex_t *,                 | Pointer to filter index register     |
| const SArrayIndex_t)             | Filter length                        |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function initializes complex FIR filter functionality and clears the state arrays and filter index to zero.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDS\_FirComplex, SDA\_FirComplex

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|  |   |
|--|---|
| void SDS_FirComplex (const SLData_t *, | Real input data sample                  |
| const SLData_t *,                      | Imaginary input data sample             |
| SLData_t *,                            | Pointer to real destn. sample location  |
| SLData_t *,                            | Pointer to imag. destn. sample location |
| SLData_t *,                            | Real state array pointer                |
| SLData_t *,                            | Imaginary state array pointer           |
| const SLData_t *,                      | Real coefficient array pointer          |
| const SLData_t *,                      | Imaginary coefficient array pointer     |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                      | Filter index                            |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)                  | Filter length                           |

## DESCRIPTION

This function performs a complex FIR filter on a complex data sample. The coefficients (taps) for the FIR filter are in the form of two linear arrays (real and imaginary) of N points, where N is the filter length.

## NOTES ON USE

The real and imaginary components of the complex result are returned in the locations pointed to by the destination pointers.

The traditional method of viewing the state arrays is as a bucket brigade FIFO array, with data flowing in one end and falling out the other. For execution efficiency however it is more efficient to use a circular array, so that for each new sample all the data does not have to be shifted up. For this reason each time the SDS\_FirComplex function is called the current array pointer must be known. In order to make this function reusable it is necessary that each instance has a separate state array pointer, the address of which is passed to the function at call time.

The input and output array pointers can point to the same array.

SIF\_FirComplex should be called prior to using this function, to perform the required initialisation.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_FirComplex, SDA\_FirComplex, SDS\_FirAddSample,  
SDA\_FirAddSamples

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|  |                                     |
|--|-------------------------------------|
| void SDA_FirComplex (const SLData_t *, | Real input data to be filtered      |
| const SLData_t *,                      | Imaginary input data to be filtered |
| SLData_t *,                            | Real destination array pointer      |
| SLData_t *,                            | Imaginary destination array pointer |
| SLData_t *,                            | Real state array pointer            |
| SLData_t *,                            | Imaginary state array pointer       |
| const SLData_t *,                      | Real coefficient array pointer      |
| const SLData_t *,                      | Imaginary coefficient array pointer |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                      | Filter index                        |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                  | Filter length                       |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)                  | Array length                        |

## DESCRIPTION

This function performs a complex FIR filter on a complex data array. The coefficients (taps) for the FIR filter are in the form of two linear arrays of N points (real and imaginary), where N is the filter length.

## NOTES ON USE

The traditional method of viewing the state arrays is as a bucket brigade FIFO array, with data flowing in one end and falling out the other. For execution efficiency however it is more efficient to use a circular array, so that for each new sample all the data does not have to be shifted up. For this reason each time the SDA\_FirComplex function is called the current array pointer must be known. In order to make this function reusable it is necessary that each instance has a separate state array pointer, the address of which is passed to the function at call time.

The input and output array pointers can point to the same array.

SIF\_FirComplex should be called prior to using this function, to perform the required initialisation.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_FirComplex, SDS\_FirComplex, SDS\_FirAddSample,  
SDA\_FirAddSamples



**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|                                    |                            |
|------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| void SIF_FirWithStore (SLData_t *, | Filter state array pointer |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)              | Filter length              |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function initializes FIR With Store filter functionality and clears the state array to zero.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

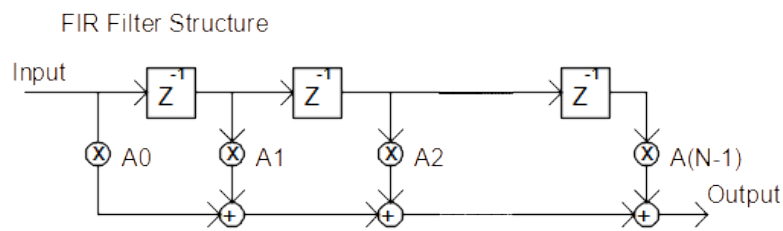
SDS\_FirWithStore, SDA\_FirWithStore, SIF\_Fir, SDS\_Fir, SDA\_Fir,  
SDS\_FirAddSample

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData\_t SDS\_FirWithStore (const SLData\_t,      Input data sample to be filtered  
                                  SLData\_t \*,                      Filter state array pointer  
                                  const SLData\_t \*,                      Filter coefficients array pointer  
                                  const SLArrayIndex\_t)                      Filter length

## DESCRIPTION

This function performs an FIR filter on a data sample. The coefficients (taps) for the FIR filter are in the form of a linear array of N points, where N is the filter length.



## NOTES ON USE

This function implements the traditional method of viewing the state array, as a bucket brigade FIFO array, with data flowing in one end and falling out the other. This means that this implementation performs additional stores for the filter state but can be more efficient on architectures that do not support modulo data addressing.

The input and output array pointers can point to the same array.

SIF\_FirWithStore should be called prior to using this function, to perform the required initialisation.

## CROSS REFERENCE

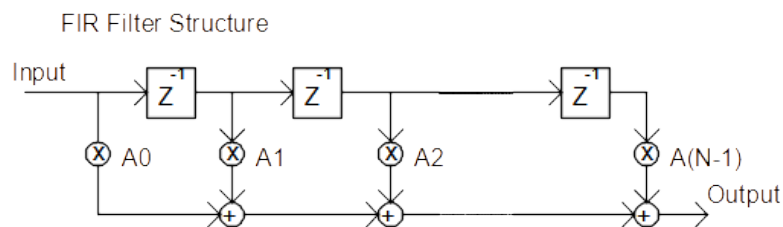
SIF\_FirWithStore, SDA\_FirWithStore, SIF\_Fir, SDS\_Fir, SDA\_Fir,  
 SDS\_FirAddSample

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_FirWithStore (const SLData_t *, Input array to be filtered
    SLData_t *,           Filtered output array
    SLData_t *,           Filter state array pointer
    const SLData_t *,     Filter coefficients array pointer
    SLArrayIndex_t *,     Filter offset register pointer
    const SLArrayIndex_t, Filter length
    const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function performs an FIR filter on the array. The coefficients (taps) for the FIR filter are in the form of a linear array of N points, where N is the filter length.



## NOTES ON USE

This function implements the traditional method of viewing the state array, as a bucket brigade FIFO array, with data flowing in one end and falling out the other. This means that this implementation performs additional stores for the filter state but can be more efficient on architectures that do not support modulo data addressing.

The input and output array pointers can point to the same array.

SIF\_FirWithStore should be called prior to using this function, to perform the required initialisation.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_FirWithStore, SDS\_FirWithStore, SIF\_Fir, SDS\_Fir, SDA\_Fir, SDS\_FirAddSample

### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SIF_FirComplexWithStore (SLData_t *,      Real filter state array pointer
                               SLData_t *,      Imaginary filter state array pointer
                               const SLArrayIndex_t)  Filter length
```

### DESCRIPTION

This function initializes complex FIR With Store filter functionality and clears the state arrays and filter index to zero.

### NOTES ON USE

### CROSS REFERENCE

SDS\_FirComplexWithStore, SDA\_FirComplexWithStore

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDS_FirComplexWithStore (const SLData_t *,      Real input data sample
                             const SLData_t *,      Imaginary input data sample
                             SLData_t *,            Pointer to real destn. sample location
                             SLData_t *,            Pointer to imag. destn. sample location
                             SLData_t *,            Real state array pointer
                             SLData_t *,            Imaginary state array pointer
                             const SLData_t *,      Real coefficient array pointer
                             const SLData_t *,      Imaginary coefficient array pointer
                             const SLArrayIndex_t)  Filter length
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function performs a complex FIR With Store filter on a complex data sample. The coefficients (taps) for the FIR filter are in the form of two linear arrays (real and imaginary) of N points, where N is the filter length.

## NOTES ON USE

The real and imaginary components of the complex result are returned in the locations pointed to by the destination pointers.

This function implements the traditional method of viewing the state array, as a bucket brigade FIFO array, with data flowing in one end and falling out the other. This means that this implementation performs additional stores for the filter state but can be more efficient on architectures that do not support modulo data addressing.

The input and output array pointers can point to the same array.

SIF\_FirComplexWithStore should be called prior to using this function, to perform the required initialisation.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_FirComplexWithStore, SDA\_FirComplexWithStore,  
SDS\_FirAddSampleWithStore, SDA\_FirAddSamplesWithStore

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|   |                                     |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| void SDA_FirComplexWithStore (const SLData_t *, | Real input data to be filtered      |
| filtered  |                                     |
| const SLData_t *,                               | Imaginary input data to be filtered |
| SLData_t *,                                     | Real destination array pointer      |
| SLData_t *,                                     | Imaginary destination array pointer |
| SLData_t *,                                     | Real state array pointer            |
| SLData_t *,                                     | Imaginary state array pointer       |
| const SLData_t *,                               | Real coefficient array pointer      |
| const SLData_t *,                               | Imaginary coefficient array pointer |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                           | Filter length                       |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)                           | Array length                        |

## DESCRIPTION

This function performs a complex FIR With Store filter on a complex data array. The coefficients (taps) for the FIR filter are in the form of two linear arrays of N points (real and imaginary), where N is the filter length.

## NOTES ON USE

This function implements the traditional method of viewing the state array, as a bucket brigade FIFO array, with data flowing in one end and falling out the other. This means that this implementation performs additional stores for the filter state but can be more efficient on architectures that do not support modulo data addressing.

The input and output array pointers can point to the same array.

SIF\_FirComplexWithStore should be called prior to using this function, to perform the required initialisation.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_FirComplexWithStore, SDS\_FirComplexWithStore,  
SDS\_FirAddSampleWithStore, SDA\_FirAddSamplesWithStore

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
void SDS_FirAddSampleWithStore (const SLData_t,      Sample to add to delay  
line  
                                SLData_t *,          Filter state array pointer  
                                const SLArrayIndex_t) Filter length
```

**DESCRIPTION**

This function adds a new input sample into the filter delay line, without calculating the new output sample, thus saving a whole load of multiply accumulate functions.

**NOTES ON USE**

If you want to add samples to a complex FIR filter then this function should be called separately for the real sample/state array and the imaginary sample/state array.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SIF\_FirWithStore, SDS\_FirWithStore, SDA\_FirWithStore,  
SIF\_FirComplexWithStore, SDS\_FirComplexWithStore, SDA\_FirComplexWithStore

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

void SDA\_FirAddSamplesWithStore (const SLData\_t \*,    Array of samples to add to delay line

|                       |                               |
|-----------------------|-------------------------------|
| SLData_t *,           | Pointer to filter state array |
| const SLArrayIndex_t, | Filter length                 |
| const SLArrayIndex_t) | Source array length           |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function adds a new input array of samples into the filter delay line, without calculating the new output sample, thus saving a whole load of multiply accumulate functions.

**NOTES ON USE**

If you want to add samples to a complex FIR filter then this function should be called separately for the real sample/state array and the imaginary sample/state array.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SIF\_FirWithStore, SDS\_FirWithStore, SDA\_FirWithStore,  
SIF\_FirComplexWithStore, SDS\_FirComplexWithStore, SDA\_FirComplexWithStore



**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|   |   |
|---|---|
| <code>void SIF_FirExtendedArray (SLData_t *,</code> | Filter state array pointer                |
| <code>const SLData_t *,</code>                      | Pointer to filter coefficients            |
| <code>SLData_t *,</code>                            | Pointer to filter processing coefficients |
| <code>SLArrayIndex_t *,</code>                      | Filter offset pointer                     |
| <code>const SLArrayIndex_t)</code>                  | Filter length                             |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function initializes FIR filter with extended state and coefficient array functionality and clears the state array and filter offset to zero.

**NOTES ON USE**

The extended array functions use double length coefficient processing and state arrays to reduce the circular buffer overhead. These arrays should be created using the function `SUF_FirExtendedArrayAllocate()`.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDS\_FirExtendedArray, SDA\_FirExtendedArray,  
SIF\_FirComplexExtendedArray, SDS\_FirComplexExtendedArray,  
SDA\_FirComplexExtendedArray, SDS\_FirExtendedArrayAddSample,  
SDA\_FirExtendedArrayAddSamples

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLData_t SDS_FirExtendedArray (const SLData_t, Input data sample to be filtered
    SLData_t *,                               Filter state array pointer
    const SLData_t *,                         Filter coefficients array pointer
    SLArrayIndex_t *,                         Filter offset pointer
    const SLArrayIndex_t)                     Filter length
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function performs the FIR filter with extended state and coefficient array on a data sample. The coefficients (taps) for the FIR filter are in the form of a duplicated linear array of 2xN points, where N is the filter length.

## NOTES ON USE

The extended array functions use double length coefficient processing and state arrays to reduce the circular buffer overhead. These arrays should be created using the function `SUF_FirExtendedArrayAllocate()`. This algorithm requires additional memory for the filter state and coefficients but can be more efficient on architectures that do not support modulo data addressing.

`SIF_FirExtendedArray()` should be called prior to using this function, to perform the required initialisation.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_FirExtendedArray, SDA\_FirExtendedArray,  
SIF\_FirComplexExtendedArray, SDS\_FirComplexExtendedArray,  
SDA\_FirComplexExtendedArray, SDS\_FirExtendedArrayAddSample,  
SDA\_FirExtendedArrayAddSamples

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_FirExtendedArray (const SLData_t *,    Input array to be filtered
                          SLData_t *,          Filtered output array
                          SLData_t *,          Filter state array pointer
                          const SLData_t *,     Filter coefficients array pointer
                          SLArrayIndex_t *,     Filter offset register pointer
                          const SLArrayIndex_t, Filter length
                          const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function performs the FIR filter with extended state and coefficient array on a data array. The coefficients (taps) for the FIR filter are in the form of a duplicated linear array of  $2 \times N$  points, where  $N$  is the filter length.

## NOTES ON USE

The extended array functions use double length coefficient processing and state arrays to reduce the circular buffer overhead. These arrays should be created using the function `SUF_FirExtendedArrayAllocate()`. This algorithm requires additional memory for the filter state and coefficients but can be more efficient on architectures that do not support modulo data addressing.

`SIF_FirExtendedArray()` should be called prior to using this function, to perform the required initialisation.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_FirExtendedArray, SDS\_FirExtendedArray,  
 SIF\_FirComplexExtendedArray, SDS\_FirComplexExtendedArray,  
 SDA\_FirComplexExtendedArray, SDS\_FirExtendedArrayAddSample,  
 SDA\_FirExtendedArrayAddSamples

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
void SIF_FirComplexExtendedArray (SLData_t *, Real filter state array pointer
    SLData_t *,                      Imaginary filter state array pointer
    const SLData_t *,                Pointer to real filter coefficients
    const SLData_t *,                Pointer to imaginary filter coefficients
    SLData_t *,                      Pointer to real filter processing
coefficients
    SLData_t *,                      Pointer to imaginary filter processing
coefficients
    SLArrayIndex_t *,                Pointer to filter index register
    const SLArrayIndex_t)            Filter length
```

**DESCRIPTION**

This function initializes complex FIR filter with extended state and coefficient array functionality and clears the state arrays and filter index to zero.

**NOTES ON USE**

The coefficient processing and state arrays should be created using the function `SUF_FirExtendedArrayAllocate()`.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SIF\_FirExtendedArray, SDS\_FirExtendedArray, SDA\_FirExtendedArray,  
SDS\_FirComplexExtendedArray, SDA\_FirComplexExtendedArray,  
SDS\_FirExtendedArrayAddSample, SDA\_FirExtendedArrayAddSamples

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
void SDS_FirComplexExtendedArray (const SLData_t *,   Real input data sample
    const SLData_t *,                               Imaginary input data sample
    SLData_t *,                                     Pointer to real destn. sample location
    SLData_t *,                                     Pointer to imag. destn. sample location
    SLData_t *,                                     Real state array pointer
    SLData_t *,                                     Imaginary state array pointer
    const SLData_t *,                               Real coefficient array pointer
    const SLData_t *,                               Imaginary coefficient array pointer
    SLArrayIndex_t *,                               Filter index
    const SLArrayIndex_t)                           Filter length
```

**DESCRIPTION**

This function performs the FIR filter with extended state and coefficient array on a complex data sample. The coefficients (taps) for the FIR filter are in the form of two extended linear arrays (real and imaginary) of 2xN points, where N is the filter length.

**NOTES ON USE**

The real and imaginary components of the complex result are returned in the locations pointed to by the destination pointers.

This FIR filter method uses a duplicated state array and coefficient array to reduce the overhead of implementing a bucket brigade state array. This means that this implementation requires additional memory for the filter state and coefficients but can be more efficient on architectures that do not support modulo data addressing.

SIF\_FirComplexExtendedArray should be called prior to using this function, to perform the required initialisation.

The input and output array pointers can point to the same array.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SIF\_FirExtendedArray, SDS\_FirExtendedArray, SDA\_FirExtendedArray,  
SIF\_FirComplexExtendedArray, SDA\_FirComplexExtendedArray,  
SDS\_FirExtendedArrayAddSample, SDA\_FirExtendedArrayAddSamples

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_FirComplexExtendedArray (const SLData_t *, Real input data to be
filtered
    const SLData_t *,           Imaginary input data to be filtered
    SLData_t *,                 Real destination array pointer
    SLData_t *,                 Imaginary destination array pointer
    SLData_t *,                 Real state array pointer
    SLData_t *,                 Imaginary state array pointer
    const SLData_t *,           Real coefficient array pointer
    const SLData_t *,           Imaginary coefficient array pointer
    SLArrayIndex_t *,           Filter index
    const SLArrayIndex_t,       Filter length
    const SLArrayIndex_t)       Array length
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function performs the FIR filter with extended state and coefficient array on a complex data array. The coefficients (taps) for the FIR filter are in the form of two extended linear arrays (real and imaginary) of 2xN points, where N is the filter length.

## NOTES ON USE

The real and imaginary components of the complex result are returned in the locations pointed to by the destination pointers.

This FIR filter method uses a duplicated state array and coefficient array to reduce the overhead of implementing a bucket brigade state array. This means that this implementation requires additional memory for the filter state and coefficients but can be more efficient on architectures that do not support modulo data addressing.

SIF\_FirComplexExtendedArray should be called prior to using this function, to perform the required initialisation.

The input and output array pointers can point to the same array.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_FirExtendedArray, SDS\_FirExtendedArray, SDA\_FirExtendedArray,  
SIF\_FirComplexExtendedArray, SDS\_FirComplexExtendedArray,  
SDS\_FirExtendedArrayAddSample, SDA\_FirExtendedArrayAddSamples

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

void SDS\_FirExtendedArrayAddSample (const SLData\_t, Sample to add to delay line

|                       |                                |
|-----------------------|--------------------------------|
| SLData_t *,           | Filter state array pointer     |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,     | Filter offset register pointer |
| const SLArrayIndex_t) | Filter length                  |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function adds a new input sample into the filter with extended state and coefficient delay line, without calculating the new output sample, thus saving a whole load of multiply accumulate functions.

**NOTES ON USE**

If you want to add samples to a complex FIR filter then this function should be called separately for the real sample/state array and the imaginary sample/state array.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SIF\_FirExtendedArray, SDS\_FirExtendedArray, SDA\_FirExtendedArray,  
SIF\_FirComplexExtendedArray, SDS\_FirComplexExtendedArray,  
SDA\_FirComplexExtendedArray, SDA\_FirExtendedArrayAddSamples

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

void SDA\_FirExtendedArrayAddSamples (const SLData\_t \*, Array of samples to add to delay line

|                       |                                  |
|-----------------------|----------------------------------|
| SLData_t *,           | Pointer to filter state array    |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,     | Pointer to filter index register |
| const SLArrayIndex_t, | Filter length                    |
| const SLArrayIndex_t) | Source array length              |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function adds a new input array of samples into the filter with extended state and coefficient delay line, without calculating the new output sample, thus saving a whole load of multiply accumulate functions.

**NOTES ON USE**

If you want to add samples to a complex FIR filter then this function should be called separately for the real sample/state array and the imaginary sample/state array.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SIF\_FirExtendedArray, SDS\_FirExtendedArray, SDA\_FirExtendedArray,  
SIF\_FirComplexExtendedArray, SDS\_FirComplexExtendedArray,  
SDA\_FirComplexExtendedArray, SDS\_FirExtendedArrayAddSample



**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

**SL\_Error\_t SIF\_FirLowPassFilter (SLData\_t \*,       Filter coefficients array**  
          **const SLData\_t,                   Filter cut off frequency**  
          **const enum SL\_Window\_t,       Window type**  
          **const SLArrayIndex\_t)       Filter length**

**DESCRIPTION**

This function generates the coefficients for a low-pass FIR filter. The coefficients (taps) for the FIR filter are in the form of a linear array of N points, where N is the filter length.

The filter is designed using the windowing method and the required window type can be chosen as a parameter to the function.

**NOTES ON USE**

This function generates a linear phase filter so the delay through the filter is equal to the middle sample in the coefficient array. So if the filter is 27 coefficients long then the middle sample is number 14 – C index 13. This means that the filter should always have an odd number of coefficients.

This function uses the malloc and free functions, it will return an error if these functions fail.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SIF\_Fir, SDA\_Fir, SIF\_FirHighPassFilter, SIF\_FirBandPassFilter,  
SIF\_FirLowPassFilterWindow, SIF\_FirHighPassFilterWindow,  
SIF\_FirBandPassFilterWindow

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

**SLError\_t SIF\_FirHighPassFilter (SLData\_t \*,       Filter coefficients array  
          const SLData\_t,                   Filter cut off frequency  
          const enum SLWindow\_t,           Window type  
          const SLArrayIndex\_t)           Filter length**

**DESCRIPTION**

This function generates the coefficients for a high-pass FIR filter. The coefficients (taps) for the FIR filter are in the form of a linear array of N points, where N is the filter length.

The filter is designed using the windowing method and the required window type can be chosen as a parameter to the function.

**NOTES ON USE**

This function generates a linear phase filter so the delay through the filter is equal to the middle sample in the coefficient array. So if the filter is 27 coefficients long then the middle sample is number 14 – C index 13. This means that the filter should always have an odd number of coefficients.

This function uses the malloc and free functions, it will return an error if these functions fail.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SIF\_Fir, SDA\_Fir, SIF\_FirLowPassFilter, SIF\_FirBandPassFilter,  
SIF\_FirLowPassFilterWindow, SIF\_FirHighPassFilterWindow,  
SIF\_FirBandPassFilterWindow

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLError_t SIF_FirBandPassFilter (SLData_t *,      Filter coefficients array
                                const SLData_t,    Filter centre frequency
                                const SLData_t,    Filter bandwidth
                                const enum SLWindow_t, Window type
                                const SLArrayIndex_t) Filter length
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function generates the coefficients for a band-pass FIR filter. The coefficients (taps) for the FIR filter are in the form of a linear array of N points, where N is the filter length.

The filter is designed using the windowing method and the required window type can be chosen as a parameter to the function.

With appropriate parameter choice, this function can also generate low-pass and high-pass filters.

## NOTES ON USE

This function generates a linear phase filter so the delay through the filter is equal to the middle sample in the coefficient array. So if the filter is 27 coefficients long then the middle sample is number 14 – C index 13. This means that the filter should always have an odd number of coefficients.

This function uses the malloc and free functions, it will return an error if these functions fail.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_Fir, SDA\_Fir, SIF\_FirLowPassFilter, SIF\_FirHighPassFilter,  
SIF\_FirLowPassFilterWindow, SIF\_FirHighPassFilterWindow,  
SIF\_FirBandPassFilterWindow

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
void SIF_FirLowPassFilterWindow (SLData_t *,   Filter coefficients array
                                const SLData_t,   Filter cut off frequency
                                const SLData_t *,   Pointer to window coefficients
                                const SLArrayIndex_t) Filter length
```

**DESCRIPTION**

This function generates the coefficients for a low-pass FIR filter. The coefficients (taps) for the FIR filter are in the form of a linear array of N points, where N is the filter length.

The filter is designed using the windowing method and the required window coefficients can be passed as a parameter to the function.

**NOTES ON USE**

This function generates a linear phase filter so the delay through the filter is equal to the middle sample in the coefficient array. So if the filter is 27 coefficients long then the middle sample is number 14 – C index 13. This means that the filter should always have an odd number of coefficients.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SIF\_Fir, SDA\_Fir, SIF\_FirLowPassFilter, SIF\_FirHighPassFilter,  
SIF\_FirBandPassFilter, SIF\_FirHighPassFilterWindow,  
SIF\_FirBandPassFilterWindow

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
void SIF_FirHighPassFilterWindow (SLData_t *,   Filter coefficients array  
    const SLData_t,                           Filter cut off frequency  
    const SLData_t *,                           Pointer to window coefficients  
    const SLArrayIndex_t)                       Filter length
```

**DESCRIPTION**

This function generates the coefficients for a high-pass FIR filter. The coefficients (taps) for the FIR filter are in the form of a linear array of N points, where N is the filter length.

The filter is designed using the windowing method and the required window coefficients can be passed as a parameter to the function.

**NOTES ON USE**

This function generates a linear phase filter so the delay through the filter is equal to the middle sample in the coefficient array. So if the filter is 27 coefficients long then the middle sample is number 14 – C index 13. This means that the filter should always have an odd number of coefficients.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SIF\_Fir, SDA\_Fir, SIF\_FirLowPassFilter, SIF\_FirHighPassFilter,  
SIF\_FirBandPassFilter, SIF\_FirLowPassFilterWindow,  
SIF\_FirBandPassFilterWindow

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
void SIF_FirBandPassFilterWindow (SLData_t *,  Filter coefficients array
    const SLData_t,                          Filter centre frequency
    const SLData_t,                          Filter bandwidth
    const SLData_t *,                        Pointer to window coefficients
    const SLArrayIndex_t)                   Filter length
```

**DESCRIPTION**

This function generates the coefficients for a band-pass FIR filter. The coefficients (taps) for the FIR filter are in the form of a linear array of N points, where N is the filter length.

The filter is designed using the windowing method and the required window coefficients can be passed as a parameter to the function.

With appropriate parameter choice, this function can also generate low-pass and high-pass filters.

**NOTES ON USE**

This function generates a linear phase filter so the delay through the filter is equal to the middle sample in the coefficient array. So if the filter is 27 coefficients long then the middle sample is number 14 – C index 13. This means that the filter should always have an odd number of coefficients.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SIF\_Fir, SDA\_Fir, SIF\_FirLowPassFilter, SIF\_FirHighPassFilter,  
SIF\_FirBandPassFilter, SIF\_FirLowPassFilterWindow,  
SIF\_FirHighPassFilterWindow



**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|  |                                    |
|--|------------------------------------|
| void SIF_FirMatchedFilter (SLData_t *, | Source signal                      |
| SLData_t *,                            | Output matched filter coefficients |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)                  | Filter length                      |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function generates a set of coefficients for an FIR matched filter from a given input signal. The source signal should represent a single symbol of information.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SIF\_Fir, SDA\_Fir, SDS\_Fir



### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData\_t SDA\_FirFilterInverseCoherentGain (const SLData\_t \*, Filter coeff. ptr.  
const SLArrayIndex\_t) Filter length

### DESCRIPTION

This function returns the inverse coherent gain of the FIR filter, so that the gain can be normalised.

### NOTES ON USE

### CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_Fir, SDS\_Fir, SDA\_Fir, SIF\_FirBandPassFilter, SIF\_FirLowPassFilter,  
SIF\_FirHighPassFilter.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
void SIF_TappedDelayLine (SLData_t *,    Pointer to state array
                          SLArrayIndex_t *, Pointer to delay index
                          const SLArrayIndex_t) State array length
```

**DESCRIPTION**

This function initializes the scalar tapped delay line functions.

**NOTES ON USE**

For a discussion on how to use this function for implementing a sparse tapped delay line or multi-path delay line, please refer to the NOTES for the function SDS\_TappedDelayLine.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDS\_TappedDelayLine, SDA\_TappedDelayLine,  
SIF\_TappedDelayLineComplex, SDS\_TappedDelayLineComplex,  
SDA\_TappedDelayLineComplex, SIF\_TappedDelayLineIQ,  
SDS\_TappedDelayLineIQ, SDA\_TappedDelayLineIQ.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLData_t SDS_TappedDelayLine (const SLData_t, Source sample
    SLData_t *,                      Pointer to state array
    SLArrayIndex_t *,                Pointer to delay index
    SLArrayIndex_t *,                Pointer to taps locations
    const SLData_t *,                Pointer to taps gains
    const SLArrayIndex_t,            Number of taps
    const SLArrayIndex_t)            State array length
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function returns the scalar tapped delayed value on a per-sample basis.

## NOTES ON USE

The tapped delay function allows the implementation of a sparse tapped delay line (AKA FIR filter). This type of filter is typically used to implement a multi-path delay line for mobile communications simulation. The two primary source parameters are:

Pointer to taps locations array  
 Pointer to taps gains array

An example sparse tapped delay line is shown in the following table:

|      |   |   |      |   |      |   |      |   |      |
|------|---|---|------|---|------|---|------|---|------|
| 0    | 1 | 2 | 3    | 4 | 5    | 6 | 7    | 8 | 9    |
| 10.0 | 0 | 0 | 13.1 | 0 | 15.2 | 0 | 17.3 | 0 | 19.4 |

The appropriate taps location array is as follows:

|   |   |   |   |   |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0 | 3 | 5 | 7 | 9 |
|---|---|---|---|---|

The appropriate taps location array is as follows:

|      |      |      |      |      |
|------|------|------|------|------|
| 10.0 | 13.1 | 15.2 | 17.3 | 19.4 |
|------|------|------|------|------|

The delay length (state array length) parameter is set to 10.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_TappedDelayLine, SDA\_TappedDelayLine,  
 SIF\_TappedDelayLineComplex, SDS\_TappedDelayLineComplex,  
 SDA\_TappedDelayLineComplex, SIF\_TappedDelayLineIQ,  
 SDS\_TappedDelayLineIQ, SDA\_TappedDelayLineIQ.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_TappedDelayLine (const SLData_t *,    Pointer to source array
                          SLData_t *,          Pointer to destination array
                          SLData_t *,          Pointer to state array
                          SLArrayIndex_t *,    Pointer to delay index
                          SLArrayIndex_t *,    Pointer to taps locations
                          const SLData_t *,    Pointer to taps gains
                          const SLArrayIndex_t, Number of taps
                          const SLArrayIndex_t, State array length
                          const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function returns the scalar tapped delayed value on an array basis.

## NOTES ON USE

For a discussion on how to use this function for implementing a sparse tapped delay line or multi-path delay line, please refer to the NOTES for the function SDS\_TappedDelayLine.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_TappedDelayLine, SDS\_TappedDelayLine,  
 SIF\_TappedDelayLineComplex, SDS\_TappedDelayLineComplex,  
 SDA\_TappedDelayLineComplex, SIF\_TappedDelayLineIQ,  
 SDS\_TappedDelayLineIQ, SDA\_TappedDelayLineIQ.

### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SIF_TappedDelayLineComplex (SLData_t *, Pointer to real state array
                                SLData_t *,           Pointer to imaginary state array
                                SLArrayIndex_t *,       Pointer to delay index
                                const SLArrayIndex_t)   State array length
```

### DESCRIPTION

This function initializes the complex tapped delay line functions.

### NOTES ON USE

For a discussion on how to use this function for implementing a sparse tapped delay line or multi-path delay line, please refer to the NOTES for the function SDS\_TappedDelayLine.

### CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_TappedDelayLine, SDS\_TappedDelayLine, SDA\_TappedDelayLine,  
SDS\_TappedDelayLineComplex, SDA\_TappedDelayLineComplex,  
SIF\_TappedDelayLineIQ, SDS\_TappedDelayLineIQ, SDA\_TappedDelayLineIQ.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDS_TappedDelayLineComplex (const SLData_t,    Real source sample
                                const SLData_t,    Imaginary source sample
                                SLData_t *,        Pointer to real destination sample
                                SLData_t *,        Pointer to imaginary destination sample
                                SLData_t *,        Pointer to real state array
                                SLData_t *,        Pointer to imaginary state array
                                SLArrayIndex_t *,   Pointer to delay index
                                SLArrayIndex_t *,   Pointer to taps locations
                                const SLData_t *,   Pointer to real taps gains
                                const SLData_t *,   Pointer to imaginary taps gains
                                const SLArrayIndex_t, Number of taps
                                const SLArrayIndex_t) State array length
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function returns the complex tapped delayed value on a per-sample basis. The function implements a complex sum of products operation between the data and the coefficients.

## NOTES ON USE

For a discussion on how to use this function for implementing a sparse tapped delay line or multi-path delay line, please refer to the NOTES for the function SDS\_TappedDelayLine.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_TappedDelayLine, SDS\_TappedDelayLine, SDA\_TappedDelayLine,  
SIF\_TappedDelayLineComplex, SDA\_TappedDelayLineComplex,  
SIF\_TappedDelayLineIQ, SDS\_TappedDelayLineIQ, SDA\_TappedDelayLineIQ.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_TappedDelayLineComplex (const SLData_t *,  Ptr. to real source array
    const SLData_t *,                               Pointer to imaginary source array
    SLData_t *,                                     Pointer to real destination array
    SLData_t *,                                     Pointer to imaginary destination array
    SLData_t *,                                     Pointer to real state array
    SLData_t *,                                     Pointer to imaginary state array
    SLArrayIndex_t *,                              Pointer to delay index
    SLArrayIndex_t *,                              Pointer to taps locations
    const SLData_t *,                               Pointer to real taps gains
    const SLData_t *,                               Pointer to imaginary taps gains
    const SLArrayIndex_t,                           Number of taps
    const SLArrayIndex_t,                           State array length
    const SLArrayIndex_t)                           Array length
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function returns the complex tapped delayed value on an array basis. The function implements a complex sum of products operation between the data and the coefficients.

## NOTES ON USE

For a discussion on how to use this function for implementing a sparse tapped delay line or multi-path delay line, please refer to the NOTES for the function SDS\_TappedDelayLine.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_TappedDelayLine, SDS\_TappedDelayLine, SDA\_TappedDelayLine,  
 SIF\_TappedDelayLineComplex, SDS\_TappedDelayLineComplex,  
 SIF\_TappedDelayLineIQ, SDS\_TappedDelayLineIQ, SDA\_TappedDelayLineIQ.

### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SIF_TappedDelayLineIQ (SLData_t *, Pointer to real state array
    SLData_t *,                      Pointer to imaginary state array
    SLArrayIndex_t *,                Pointer to delay index
    const SLArrayIndex_t)            State array length
```

### DESCRIPTION

This function initializes the IQ tapped delay line functions.

### NOTES ON USE

For a discussion on how to use this function for implementing a sparse tapped delay line or multi-path delay line, please refer to the NOTES for the function SDS\_TappedDelayLine.

### CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_TappedDelayLine, SDS\_TappedDelayLine, SDA\_TappedDelayLine,  
SIF\_TappedDelayLineComplex, SDS\_TappedDelayLineComplex,  
SDA\_TappedDelayLineComplex, SDS\_TappedDelayLineIQ,  
SDA\_TappedDelayLineIQ.



## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDS_TappedDelayLineIQ (const SLData_t,    Real source sample
                           const SLData_t,    Imaginary source sample
                           SLData_t *,        Pointer to real destination sample
                           SLData_t *,        Pointer to imaginary destination sample
                           SLData_t *,        Pointer to real state array
                           SLData_t *,        Pointer to imaginary state array
                           SLArrayIndex_t *,  Pointer to delay index
                           SLArrayIndex_t *,  Pointer to taps locations
                           const SLData_t *,  Pointer to real taps gains
                           const SLData_t *,  Pointer to imaginary taps gains
                           const SLArrayIndex_t, Number of taps
                           const SLArrayIndex_t) State array length
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function returns the complex tapped delayed value on a per-sample basis. The function implements a scalar sum of products operation between the data and the coefficients i.e. it separately multiplies the real data samples by the real coefficients and the imaginary data samples by the imaginary coefficients.

## NOTES ON USE

For a discussion on how to use this function for implementing a sparse tapped delay line or multi-path delay line, please refer to the NOTES for the function SDS\_TappedDelayLine.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_TappedDelayLine, SDS\_TappedDelayLine, SDA\_TappedDelayLine,  
SIF\_TappedDelayLineComplex, SDS\_TappedDelayLineComplex,  
SDA\_TappedDelayLineComplex, SIF\_TappedDelayLineIQ,  
SDA\_TappedDelayLineIQ.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_TappedDelayLineIQ (const SLData_t *, Pointer to real source array
    const SLData_t *,           Pointer to imaginary source array
    SLData_t *,                 Pointer to real destination array
    SLData_t *,                 Pointer to imaginary destination array
    SLData_t *,                 Pointer to real state array
    SLData_t *,                 Pointer to imaginary state array
    SLArrayIndex_t *,           Pointer to delay index
    SLArrayIndex_t *,           Pointer to taps locations
    const SLData_t *,           Pointer to real taps gains
    const SLData_t *,           Pointer to imaginary taps gains
    const SLArrayIndex_t,       Number of taps
    const SLArrayIndex_t,       State array length
    const SLArrayIndex_t)       Array length
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function returns the complex tapped delayed value on an array basis. The function implements a scalar sum of products operation between the data and the coefficients i.e. it separately multiplies the real data samples by the real coefficients and the imaginary data samples by the imaginary coefficients.

## NOTES ON USE

For a discussion on how to use this function for implementing a sparse tapped delay line or multi-path delay line, please refer to the NOTES for the function SDS\_TappedDelayLine.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_TappedDelayLine, SDS\_TappedDelayLine, SDA\_TappedDelayLine, SIF\_TappedDelayLineComplex, SDS\_TappedDelayLineComplex, SDA\_TappedDelayLineComplex, SIF\_TappedDelayLineIQ, SDS\_TappedDelayLineIQ.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
void SIF_FirPolyPhaseGenerate (const SLData_t *,   Input FIR coefficient pointer
                               SLData_t *,         Output poly-phase coefficient pointer
                               SLData_t **,         Output filter coefficient pointers
                               SLArrayIndex_t *,    Output filter lengths
                               const SLArrayIndex_t, Number of output filter phases
                               const SLArrayIndex_t) Input filter length
```

**DESCRIPTION**

This function converts the coefficients for an FIR filter into those for an  $M$  phase poly-phase FIR filter.

**NOTES ON USE**

The input and output arrays are the same length but the coefficients are re-ordered into separate banks for each phase.

This function also returns an array of  $M$  pointers to the start of each phase within the output array and the lengths of each phase filter.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

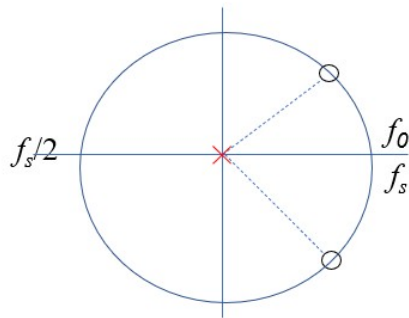
SIF\_Fir, SDS\_Fir, SDA\_Fir.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SIF_FirZeroNotchFilter (SLData_t *,   Coefficients array  
                           const SLData_t); Notch centre frequency normalized to Fs  
= 1 Hz
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function generates the coefficients for an FIR single conjugate zero notch filter. The conjugate zeros will be located on the unit circle at the specified frequency, as shown in the following diagram:



## NOTES ON USE

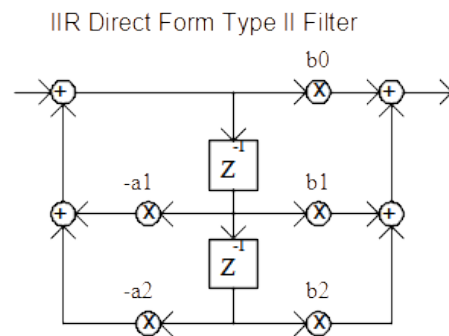
To get a flat pass-band, the SIF\_IirNotchFilter2() function should be used to design a suitable IIR biquad filter.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_Fir, SDS\_Fir, SDA\_Fir.

## IIR Filtering Functions (*iirfilt.c*)

The SigLib IIR filter functions implement cascaded second order biquad Direct Form II filters, as shown in the following diagram:



The coefficients for the IIR filter are stored in a linear array, as follows:

|         |                                |
|---------|--------------------------------|
| stage 1 | $b(0), b(1), b(2), a(1), a(2)$ |
| stage 2 | $b(0), b(1), b(2), a(1), a(2)$ |
|         | $\vdots$                       |
| stage N | $b(0), b(1), b(2), a(1), a(2)$ |

This filter structure has been chosen for the best compromise between processing efficiency and stability. Odd order filters can be implemented using a cascade of second order structures with the final stage having coefficients  $a_2$  and  $b_2$  set to zero. This technique gives better run time performance for a generic IIR filter function than having to choose between first and second order sections within the filter function.

SigLib includes a defined constant `IIR_COEFFS_PER_BIQUAD` that defines the length of the memory space to store the coefficients for each biquad section. This can be used to allocate the necessary memory space.

The  $z$ -transform for the IIR biquad is as follows:

$$Y(z) = \frac{b(0) + b(1)z^{-1} + b(2)z^{-2}}{1 + a(1)z^{-1} + a(2)z^{-2}} X(z)$$

The negation of the denominator ( $a(1)$  and  $a(2)$ ) coefficients is compatible with signal processing packages such as Digital Filter Plus and Matlab. If your filter design tools do not support this configuration then you will need to negate these coefficients prior to using them with SigLib (using the function `SDA_IirNegateAlphaCoeffs()`). Or you can also use the `SDS_IirMac()` or `SDA_IirMac()` functions which do not negate the coefficients.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|                           |                            |
|---------------------------|----------------------------|
| void SIF_Iir (SLData_t *, | Filter state array pointer |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)     | Number of biquads          |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function initializes IIR filter functionality and clears all state arrays to zero.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDS\_Iir, SDA\_Iir, SDS\_IirMac, SDA\_IirMac, SDA\_BilinearTransform,  
SDA\_IirZplaneToCoeffs.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|                                   |                                   |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| SLData_t SDS_Iir (const SLData_t, | Input sample to be filtered       |
| SLData_t *,                       | Filter state array pointer        |
| const SLData_t *,                 | Filter coefficients array pointer |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)             | Number of biquads                 |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function applies infinite impulse response (IIR) filter to a data stream, a sample at a time.

**NOTES ON USE**

Even though floating point data is used and the form of the filter chosen is very stable, care should be taken when dealing with filter poles that lie on, or near the unit circle.

SIF\_Iir should be called prior to using this function, to perform the required initialisation.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SIF\_Iir, SDA\_Iir, SDS\_IirMac, SDA\_IirMac, SDA\_BilinearTransform, SDA\_IirZplaneToCoeffs, SDA\_IirNegateAlphaCoeffs.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|                                 |                                   |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| void SDA_Iir (const SLData_t *, | Input array to be filtered        |
| SLData_t *,                     | Filtered output array             |
| SLData_t *,                     | Filter state array pointer        |
| const SLData_t *,               | Filter coefficients array pointer |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,           | Number of biquads                 |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)           | Array length                      |

## DESCRIPTION

This function applies an infinite impulse response (IIR) filter to an array. The filter structure is Direct Form II (as shown in the following diagram) and has been chosen for the best compromise between processing efficiency and stability.

## NOTES ON USE

Even though floating point data is used and the form of the filter chosen is very stable, care should be taken when dealing with filter poles that lie on, or near the unit circle.

SIF\_Iir should be called prior to using this function, to perform the required initialisation.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_Iir, SDS\_Iir, SDS\_IirMac, SDA\_IirMac, SDA\_IirNc,  
SDA\_BilinearTransform, SDA\_IirZplaneToCoeffs, SDA\_IirNegateAlphaCoeffs.



## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|                                      |                                   |
|--------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| SLData_t SDS_IirMac (const SLData_t, | Input sample to be filtered       |
| SLData_t *,                          | Filter state array pointer        |
| const SLData_t *,                    | Filter coefficients array pointer |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)                | Number of biquads                 |

## DESCRIPTION

This function applies an infinite impulse response (IIR) filter to a data stream, a sample at a time.

## NOTES ON USE

Even though floating point data is used and the form of the filter chosen is very stable, care should be taken when dealing with filter poles that lie on, or near the unit circle.

SIF\_Iir should be called prior to using this function, to perform the required initialisation.

This function uses the MAC rather than MSUB operation so it does not negate the denominator (feedback) coefficients. If you wish to use the SigLib IIR filter design functions (or other similar filter design applications) then you will need to use the SDA\_IirNegateAlphaCoeffs() function to negate the coefficients.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_Iir, SDS\_Iir, SDA\_Iir, SDA\_IirMac, SDA\_BilinearTransform, SDA\_IirZplaneToCoeffs, SDA\_IirNegateAlphaCoeffs.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|                                    |                                   |
|------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| void SDA_IirMac (const SLData_t *, | Input array to be filtered        |
| SLData_t *,                        | Filtered output array             |
| SLData_t *,                        | Filter state array pointer        |
| const SLData_t *,                  | Filter coefficients array pointer |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,              | Number of biquads                 |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)              | Array length                      |

## DESCRIPTION

This function applies an infinite impulse response (IIR) filter to an array. The filter structure is Direct Form II (as shown in the following diagram) and has been chosen for the best compromise between processing efficiency and stability.

## NOTES ON USE

Even though floating point data is used and the form of the filter chosen is very stable, care should be taken when dealing with filter poles that lie on, or near the unit circle.

SIF\_Iir should be called prior to using this function, to perform the required initialisation

This function uses the MAC rather than MSUB operation so it does not negate the denominator (feedback) coefficients. If you wish to use the SigLib IIR filter design functions (or other similar filter design applications) then you will need to use the SDA\_IirNegateAlphaCoeffs() function to negate the coefficients.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_Iir, SDS\_Iir, SDA\_Iir, SDS\_IirMac, SDA\_IirNc,  
SDA\_BilinearTransform, SDA\_IirZplaneToCoeffs, SDA\_IirNegateAlphaCoeffs.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|                                 |                            |
|---------------------------------|----------------------------|
| void SIF_IirOrderN (SLData_t *, | Filter state array pointer |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,               | Filter index pointer       |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)           | Filter order               |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function initializes the N<sup>th</sup> order IIR filter functionality and clears the state array to zero.

**NOTES ON USE**

The Nth order IIR filter functions implement a single structure for the entire filter, rather than the more traditional biquad implementation.

The state array should be the same size as the filter order.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDS\_IirOrderN, SDA\_IirOrderN.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLData_t SDS_IirOrderN (const SLData_t, Input sample
                        SLData_t *,      Pointer to state array
                        const SLData_t *,  Pointer to filter coefficients
                        SLArrayIndex_t *,  Pointer to filter index
                        const SLArrayIndex_t) Filter order
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function applies an  $N^{\text{th}}$  order filter to a data stream, a sample at a time.

## NOTES ON USE

The  $N^{\text{th}}$  order IIR filter functions implement a single structure for the entire filter, rather than the more traditional biquad implementation.

Be aware that  $N^{\text{th}}$  order IIR filters can easily be unstable. Biquad format IIR filters are generally more stable.

The coefficient array is  $N+1$  feedforward coefficients followed by  $N$  feedback coefficients followed by:

|                                |                            |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------|
| $N+1$ feedforward coefficients | - $b(0), b(1), \dots b(N)$ |
| $N$ feedback coefficients      | - $a(1), \dots a(N)$       |

SIF\_IirOrderN should be called prior to using this function, to perform the required initialisation.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_IirOrderN, SDA\_IirOrderN.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|                                       |  |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| void SDA_IirOrderN (const SLData_t *, | Pointer to source array to be filtered |
| SLData_t *,                           | Pointer to filter output array         |
| SLData_t *,                           | Pointer to filter state array          |
| SLData_t *,                           | Pointer to filter coefficients         |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                     | Pointer to filter state index          |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                 | Filter order                           |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)                 | Array length                           |

## DESCRIPTION

This function applies an  $N^{\text{th}}$  order IIR filter to a data stream.

## NOTES ON USE

The  $N^{\text{th}}$  order IIR filter functions implement a single structure for the entire filter, rather than the more traditional biquad implementation.

Be aware that  $N^{\text{th}}$  order IIR filters can easily be unstable. Biquad format IIR filters are generally more stable.

The coefficient array is  $N+1$  feedforward coefficients followed by  $N$  feedback coefficients followed by:

|                                |                            |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------|
| $N+1$ feedforward coefficients | - $b(0), b(1), \dots b(N)$ |
| $N$ feedback coefficients      | - $a(1), \dots a(N)$       |

SIF\_IirOrderN should be called prior to using this function, to perform the required initialisation.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_IirOrderN, SDS\_IirOrderN.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|                             |                              |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------|
| void SIF_IirNc (SLData_t *, | Filter 1 state array pointer |
| SLData_t *,                 | Filter 2 state array pointer |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)       | Source array length          |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function initializes the non-causal zero phase IIR filter functionality and clear all state arrays to zero.

**NOTES ON USE**

The defined constant IIR\_COEFFS\_PER\_BIQUAD defines the length of the memory space to store the coefficients for each biquad section. This can be used to allocate the necessary memory space form within the application.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_IirNc, SDA\_BilinearTransform, SDA\_IirZplaneToCoeffs.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

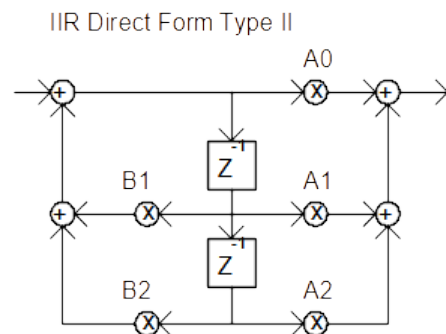
|  |                                   |
|--|-----------------------------------|
| <code>void SDA_IirNc (const SLData_t *,</code> | Input array to be filtered        |
| <code>SLData_t *,</code>                       | Filtered output array pointer     |
| <code>SLData_t *,</code>                       | Filter 1 state array pointer      |
| <code>SLData_t *,</code>                       | Filter 2 state array pointer      |
| <code>const SLData_t *,</code>                 | Filter coefficients array pointer |
| <code>const SLArrayIndex_t,</code>             | Number of biquads                 |
| <code>const SLArrayIndex_t)</code>             | Array length                      |

## DESCRIPTION

This function applies a non-causal zero phase infinite impulse response (IIR) filter coefficients to the array. The coefficients for the IIR filter are stored in a linear array, however the array locations represent:

|         |                    |
|---------|--------------------|
| stage 1 | A0, A1, A2, B1, B2 |
| stage 2 | A0, A1, A2, B1, B2 |
|         | .                  |
|         | .                  |
| stage N | A0, A1, A2, B1, B2 |

The IIR filter form is Direct Form II and has been chosen for the best compromise between processing efficiency and stability.



## NOTES ON USE

Even though floating point data is used and the form of the filter chosen is very stable, care should be taken when dealing with filter poles that lie on, or near the unit circle.

The input and output array pointers can point to the same array.

The two IIR filters use the same coefficients and are continuous across array boundaries however each filter must have a separate state array.

For more information, please see the documentation for `SDA_Iir_` function.

The defined constant `IIR_COEFFS_PER_BIQUAD` defines the length of the memory space to store the coefficients for each biquad section. This can be used to allocate the necessary memory space.

## CROSS REFERENCE

`SIF_IirNc`, `SDA_Iir`, `SDA_Iir`, `SDA_BilinearTransform`,  
`SDA_IirZplaneToCoeffs`.



## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_BilinearTransform (const SLComplexRect_s *, S-plane zeros
    const SLComplexRect_s *,      S-plane poles
    SLComplexRect_s *,           Z-plane zeros
    SLComplexRect_s *,           Z-plane poles
    const SLData_t,              Sample rate
    const SLData_t,              Pre-warp frequency
    const SLArrayIndex_t,        Pre-warp switch
    const SLArrayIndex_t,        Number of zeros
    const SLArrayIndex_t)        Number of poles
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function converts s-plane poles and zeros to the z-plane, using the bilinear transformation:

$$z = \frac{1 + (T/2)s}{1 - (T/2)s}$$

This function provides optional pre-warping of the frequencies using the following equation:

$$\omega = \tan^{-1}\left(\frac{\Omega}{2} T\right)$$

The pre-warp switch parameter should be set to either 'SIGLIB\_ON' or 'SIGLIB\_OFF'.

## NOTES ON USE

The poles and zeros returned are complex conjugate.

This function can accept filter specifications with a different number of poles and zeros. If the number of poles is greater than the number of zeros then additional zeros are added at  $z = 0$  to make the numbers equal.

The function SDA\_IirModifyFilterGain can be used to set the filter gain.

Although this function supports pre-warping of the frequencies, it is often easier to pre-warp the frequencies of the filter before using this function. This can be done by using the function SDS\_PreWarp.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_Iir, SDA\_Iir, SDA\_IirZplaneToCoeffs, SDA\_IirModifyFilterGain,  
SDA\_MatchedZTransform, SDS\_PreWarp.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLData\_t SDS\_PreWarp (const SLData\_t,   Desired frequency  
                          const SLData\_t)   Sample rate

**DESCRIPTION**

This function pre-warps the desired analog frequency, so that it may be used in the bilinear transform. The function returns the warped frequency.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_BilinearTransform.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
void SDA_MatchedZTransform (const SLComplexRect_s *, S-plane zeros
    const SLComplexRect_s *,      S-plane poles
    SLComplexRect_s *,           Z-plane zeros
    SLComplexRect_s *,           Z-plane poles
    const SLData_t,              Sample rate
    const SLArrayIndex_t,        Number of zeros
    const SLArrayIndex_t)        Number of poles
```

**DESCRIPTION**

This function converts s-plane poles and zeros to the z-plane, using the matched z-transform.

**NOTES ON USE**

The poles and zeros returned are complex conjugate.

This function can accept filter specifications with a different number of poles and zeros.

The function SDA\_IirModifyFilterGain can be used to set the filter gain.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_Iir, SDA\_Iir, SDA\_IirZplaneToCoeffs, SDA\_IirModifyFilterGain, SDA\_BilinearTransform.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_IirZplaneToCoeffs (const SLComplexRect_s *, Source Z-plane zeros
    const SLComplexRect_s *,      Source Z-plane poles
    SLData_t *,                  IIR filter coefficients
    const SLArrayIndex_t,        Number of zero conjugate pairs
    const SLArrayIndex_t)        Number of pole conjugate pairs
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function converts z-plane poles and zeros, in rectangular format, to second order (biquad) filter coefficients. The coefficients are stored in the order: A0, A1, A2, B1, B2,

## NOTES ON USE

The poles and zeros are assumed to be complex conjugate I.E. each biquad will consist of a complex conjugate pair of poles and a complex conjugate pair of zeros. For example a simple 2<sup>nd</sup> order low-pass filter may have the following pole and zero conjugate pairs:

    Poles: Magnitude 0.9, Angle 30 degrees ( $0.778 + j 0.45$ )

          Magnitude 0.9, Angle -30 degrees ( $0.778 - j 0.45$ )

    Zeros: Magnitude 1.0, Angle 90 degrees ( $0.0 + j 1.0$ )

          Magnitude 1.0, Angle -90 degrees ( $0.0 - j 1.0$ )

These only need to be specified using either of the conjugate pair values, for example:

    Pole:  $0.778 + j 0.45$

    Zero:  $0.0 + j 1.0$

I.E. you should not specify both of the conjugate poles and zeros as inputs.

This function can accept filter specifications with a different number of poles and zeros. Additional poles and zeros for the IIR biquads will be added and these will be located at the origin.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_Iir, SDS\_Iir, SDA\_IirZplanePolarToCoeffs, SDA\_BilinearTransform.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_IirZplanePolarToCoeffs (const SLComplexPolar_s *,  Z-plane zeros
                                const SLComplexPolar_s *,      Z-plane zeros
                                SLData_t *,                    IIR filter coefficients
                                const SLArrayIndex_t,           Number of zeros
                                const SLArrayIndex_t)           Number of poles
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function converts z-plane poles and zeros, in polar format, to second order (biquad) filter coefficients. The coefficients are stored in the order: A0, A1, A2, B1, B2,

## NOTES ON USE

The poles and zeros are assumed to be complex conjugate I.E. each biquad will consist of a complex conjugate pair of poles and a complex conjugate pair of zeros. For example a simple 2<sup>nd</sup> order low-pass filter may have the following pole and zero conjugate pairs:

Poles: Magnitude 0.9, Angle 30 degrees  
           Magnitude 0.9, Angle -30 degrees  
 Zeros: Magnitude 1.0, Angle 90 degrees  
           Magnitude 1.0, Angle -90 degrees

These only need to be specified using either of the conjugate pair values, for example:

Pole: 0.778 + j 0.45  
 Zero: 0.0 + j 1.0

And the number of pole and zero conjugate pairs specified to the function will both be 1.

This function can accept filter specifications with a different number of poles and zeros.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_Iir, SDS\_Iir, SDA\_IirZplaneToCoeffs, SDA\_BilinearTransform.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_IirZplaneLpfToLpf (const SLComplexRect_s *, Source z-plane zeros
    const SLComplexRect_s *,      Source Z-plane poles
    SLComplexRect_s *,            Destination Z-plane zeros
    SLComplexRect_s *,            Destination Z-plane poles
    const SLData_t,                Source cut-off frequency
    const SLData_t,                Destination cut-off frequency
    const SLData_t,                System sample rate
    const SLArrayIndex_t,          Number of zero conjugate pairs
    const SLArrayIndex_t)          Number of pole conjugate pairs
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function converts the z-plane poles and zeros of a low-pass filter with a different cut-off frequency.

## NOTES ON USE

The poles and zeros are assumed to be complex conjugate.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_IirZplaneLpfToLpf, SDA\_IirZplaneLpfToHpf,  
SDA\_IirZplaneLpfToBpf, SDA\_IirZplaneLpfToBsf.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_IirZplaneLpfToHpf (const SLComplexRect_s *, Source Z-plane zeros
    const SLComplexRect_s *,      Source Z-plane poles
    SLComplexRect_s *,           Destination Z-plane zeros
    SLComplexRect_s *,           Destination Z-plane poles
    const SLData_t,              Source cut-off frequency
    const SLData_t,              Destination cut-off frequency
    const SLData_t,              System sample rate
    const SLArrayIndex_t,        Number of zero conjugate pairs
    const SLArrayIndex_t)        Number of pole conjugate pairs
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function converts the z-plane poles and zeros of a low-pass filter to a high-pass filter.

## NOTES ON USE

The poles and zeros are assumed to be complex conjugate.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_IirZplaneLpfToLpf, SDA\_IirZplaneLpfToBpf,  
SDA\_IirZplaneLpfToBsf.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_lirZplaneLpfToBpf (const SLComplexRect_s *,   Source Z-plane zeros
                           const SLComplexRect_s *,   Source Z-plane poles
                           SLComplexRect_s *,         Destination Z-plane zeros
                           SLComplexRect_s *,         Destination Z-plane poles
                           const SLData_t,            Source cut-off frequency
                           const SLData_t,            Destination lower cut-off frequency
                           const SLData_t,            Destination upper cut-off frequency
                           const SLData_t,            System sample rate
                           const SLArrayIndex_t,       Number of zero conjugate pairs
                           const SLArrayIndex_t)       Number of pole conjugate pairs
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function converts the z-plane poles and zeros of a low-pass filter to a band-pass filter.

## NOTES ON USE

The poles and zeros are assumed to be complex conjugate.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_lirZplaneLpfToLpf, SDA\_lirZplaneLpfToHpf,  
SDA\_lirZplaneLpfToBsf.



## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_IirZplaneLpfToBsf (const SLComplexRect_s *,   Source Z-plane zeros
                           const SLComplexRect_s *,   Source Z-plane poles
                           SLComplexRect_s *,         Destination Z-plane zeros
                           SLComplexRect_s *,         Destination Z-plane poles
                           const SLData_t,            Source cut-off frequency
                           const SLData_t,            Destination lower cut-off frequency
                           const SLData_t,            Destination upper cut-off frequency
                           const SLData_t,            System sample rate
                           const SLArrayIndex_t,       Number of zero conjugate pairs
                           const SLArrayIndex_t)       Number of pole conjugate pairs
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function converts the z-plane poles and zeros of a low-pass filter to a band-stop filter.

## NOTES ON USE

The poles and zeros are assumed to be complex conjugate.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_IirZplaneLpfToLpf, SDA\_IirZplaneLpfToHpf,  
SDA\_IirZplaneLpfToBpf.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLData\_t SDA\_IirModifyFilterGain (const SLData\_t \*, Source IIR filter coefficients  
SLData\_t \*, Destination IIR filter coefficients  
const SLData\_t, Centre Frequency  
const SLData\_t, Desired filter gain  
const SLArrayIndex\_t) Number of biquads

**DESCRIPTION**

This function modifies the gain of the IIR filter at a particular centre frequency to any desired value. The function will return to gain of the original filter at the desired frequency. The centre frequency is normalised to a sample rate of 1 Hz.

**NOTES ON USE**

Reference: Maurice Bellanger; Digital Processing Of Signals (Theory and Practice), P160.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_BilinearTransform.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|   |   |
|---|---|
| <code>void SIF_IirLowPassFilter (SLData_t *,</code> | Pointer to output IIR filter coefficients |
| <code>    const SLData_t,</code>                    | Filter cut-off frequency                  |
| <code>    const SLData_t)</code>                    | Filter Q factor                           |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function generates the coefficients for a single IIR Biquad low-pass filter, from the supplied parameters.

**NOTES ON USE**

The coefficients are in the standard SigLib order: b(0), b(1), b(2), a(1), a(2).

**References:**

Discrete-Time Digital Signal Processing - Oppenheim, Schafer & Buck, 2ed, 1998, Chapter 7 Filter Design Techniques

Robert Bristow-Johnson "Cookbook formulae for audio EQ biquad filter coefficients": <http://www.musicdsp.org/files/audio-eq-cookbook.txt>.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SIF\_IirHighPassFilter, SIF\_IirAllPassFilter, SIF\_IirBandPassFilter, SIF\_IirNotchFilter, SIF\_IirPeakingFilter, SIF\_IirLowShelfFilter, SIF\_IirHighShelfFilter.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|   |   |
|---|---|
| void SIF_IirHighPassFilter (SLData_t *, | Pointer to output IIR filter coefficients |
| const SLData_t,                         | Filter cut-off frequency                  |
| const SLData_t)                         | Filter Q factor                           |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function generates the coefficients for a single IIR Biquad high-pass filter, from the supplied parameters.

**NOTES ON USE**

The coefficients are in the standard SigLib order: b(0), b(1), b(2), a(1), a(2).

**References:**

Discrete-Time Digital Signal Processing - Oppenheim, Schafer & Buck, 2ed, 1998, Chapter 7 Filter Design Techniques

Robert Bristow-Johnson "Cookbook formulae for audio EQ biquad filter coefficients": <http://www.musicdsp.org/files/audio-eq-cookbook.txt>.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SIF\_IirLowPassFilter, SIF\_IirAllPassFilter, SIF\_IirBandPassFilter, SIF\_IirNotchFilter, SIF\_IirPeakingFilter, SIF\_IirLowShelfFilter, SIF\_IirHighShelfFilter.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|   |   |
|---|---|
| <code>void SIF_IirAllPassFilter (SLData_t *,</code> | Pointer to output IIR filter coefficients |
| <code>    const SLData_t,</code>                    | Filter cut-off frequency                  |
| <code>    const SLData_t)</code>                    | Filter Q factor                           |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function generates the coefficients for a single IIR Biquad all-pass filter, from the supplied parameters.

**NOTES ON USE**

The coefficients are in the standard SigLib order: b(0), b(1), b(2), a(1), a(2).

**References:**

Discrete-Time Digital Signal Processing - Oppenheim, Schafer & Buck, 2ed, 1998, Chapter 7 Filter Design Techniques

Robert Bristow-Johnson "Cookbook formulae for audio EQ biquad filter coefficients": <http://www.musicdsp.org/files/audio-eq-cookbook.txt>.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SIF\_IirLowPassFilter, SIF\_IirHighPassFilter, SIF\_IirBandPassFilter, SIF\_IirNotchFilter, SIF\_IirPeakingFilter, SIF\_IirLowShelfFilter, SIF\_IirHighShelfFilter.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
void SIF_IirBandPassFilter (SLData_t *,      Pointer to output IIR filter coefficients
                           const SLData_t,   Filter cut-off frequency (low)
                           const SLData_t)   Filter cut-off frequency (high)
```

**DESCRIPTION**

This function generates the coefficients for a single IIR Biquad band-pass filter, from the supplied parameters.

**NOTES ON USE**

The coefficients are in the standard SigLib order: b(0), b(1), b(2), a(1), a(2).

**References:**

Discrete-Time Digital Signal Processing - Oppenheim, Schafer & Buck, 2ed, 1998, Chapter 7 Filter Design Techniques

Robert Bristow-Johnson "Cookbook formulae for audio EQ biquad filter coefficients": <http://www.musicdsp.org/files/audio-eq-cookbook.txt>.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SIF\_IirLowPassFilter, SIF\_IirHighPassFilter, SIF\_IirAllPassFilter,  
SIF\_IirNotchFilter, SIF\_IirPeakingFilter, SIF\_IirLowShelfFilter,  
SIF\_IirHighShelfFilter.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
void SIF_IirNotchFilter (SLData_t *, Pointer to output IIR filter coefficients
                        const SLData_t,           Filter cut-off frequency
                        const SLData_t)           Filter Q factor
```

**DESCRIPTION**

This function generates the coefficients for a single IIR Biquad notch filter, from the supplied parameters.

**NOTES ON USE**

The coefficients are in the standard SigLib order: b(0), b(1), b(2), a(1), a(2).

**References:**

Discrete-Time Digital Signal Processing - Oppenheim, Schafer & Buck, 2ed, 1998, Chapter 7 Filter Design Techniques

Robert Bristow-Johnson "Cookbook formulae for audio EQ biquad filter coefficients": <http://www.musicdsp.org/files/audio-eq-cookbook.txt>.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SIF\_IirLowPassFilter, SIF\_IirHighPassFilter, SIF\_IirAllPassFilter,  
SIF\_IirBandPassFilter, SIF\_IirPeakingFilter, SIF\_IirLowShelfFilter,  
SIF\_IirHighShelfFilter.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|  |   |
|--|---|
| void SIF_IirPeakingFilter (SLData_t *, | Pointer to output IIR filter coefficients |
| const SLData_t,                        | Filter cut-off frequency                  |
| const SLData_t,                        | Filter Q factor                           |
| const SLData_t)                        | Filter gain (dB)                          |

## DESCRIPTION

This function generates the coefficients for a single IIR Biquad peaking filter, from the supplied parameters.

## NOTES ON USE

The coefficients are in the standard SigLib order: b(0), b(1), b(2), a(1), a(2).

## References:

Discrete-Time Digital Signal Processing - Oppenheim, Schafer & Buck, 2ed, 1998, Chapter 7 Filter Design Techniques

Robert Bristow-Johnson "Cookbook formulae for audio EQ biquad filter coefficients": <http://www.musicdsp.org/files/audio-eq-cookbook.txt>.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_IirLowPassFilter, SIF\_IirHighPassFilter, SIF\_IirAllPassFilter,  
SIF\_IirBandPassFilter, SIF\_IirNotchFilter, SIF\_IirLowShelfFilter,  
SIF\_IirHighShelfFilter.



**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|   |   |
|---|---|
| void SIF_IirLowShelfFilter (SLData_t *, | Pointer to output IIR filter coefficients |
| const SLData_t,                         | Filter cut-off frequency                  |
| const SLData_t,                         | Filter Q factor                           |
| const SLData_t)                         | Filter shelf gain (dB)                    |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function generates the coefficients for a single IIR Biquad low shelf filter, from the supplied parameters.

**NOTES ON USE**

The coefficients are in the standard SigLib order: b(0), b(1), b(2), a(1), a(2).

**References:**

Discrete-Time Digital Signal Processing - Oppenheim, Schafer & Buck, 2ed, 1998, Chapter 7 Filter Design Techniques

Robert Bristow-Johnson "Cookbook formulae for audio EQ biquad filter coefficients": <http://www.musicdsp.org/files/audio-eq-cookbook.txt>.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SIF\_IirLowPassFilter, SIF\_IirHighPassFilter, SIF\_IirAllPassFilter,  
SIF\_IirBandPassFilter, SIF\_IirNotchFilter, SIF\_IirPeakingFilter,  
SIF\_IirHighShelfFilter.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|  |   |
|--|---|
| void SIF_IirHighShelfFilter (SLData_t *, | Pointer to output IIR filter coefficients |
| const SLData_t,                          | Filter cut-off frequency                  |
| const SLData_t,                          | Filter Q factor                           |
| const SLData_t)                          | Filter shelf gain (dB)                    |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function generates the coefficients for a single IIR Biquad high shelf filter, from the supplied parameters.

**NOTES ON USE**

The coefficients are in the standard SigLib order: b(0), b(1), b(2), a(1), a(2).

**References:**

Discrete-Time Digital Signal Processing - Oppenheim, Schafer & Buck, 2ed, 1998, Chapter 7 Filter Design Techniques

Robert Bristow-Johnson "Cookbook formulae for audio EQ biquad filter coefficients": <http://www.musicdsp.org/files/audio-eq-cookbook.txt>.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SIF\_IirLowPassFilter, SIF\_IirHighPassFilter, SIF\_IirAllPassFilter,  
SIF\_IirBandPassFilter, SIF\_IirNotchFilter, SIF\_IirPeakingFilter,  
SIF\_IirLowShelfFilter.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|                                     |                        |
|-------------------------------------|------------------------|
| SLData_t SDS_IirRemoveDC (SLData_t, | Input sample           |
| SLData_t *,                         | Previous input sample  |
| SLData_t *,                         | Previous output sample |
| const SLData_t)                     | Convergence rate       |

## DESCRIPTION

This function uses a simple feedback filter to remove the D.C. component of a signal. The convergence rate parameter defines the rate at which the filter will converge on the D.C. level. A value of 0.9 will converge (and hence diverge) quickly, where as a value of 0.99999 will converge slowly.

This function works on a per-sample basis.

## NOTES ON USE

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_IirRemoveDC.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_IirRemoveDC (const SLData_t *,Pointer to input array
    SLData_t *,           Pointer to output array
    SLData_t *,           Previous input sample
    SLData_t *,           Previous output sample
    const SLData_t,       Convergence rate
    const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function uses a simple feedback filter to remove the D.C. component of a signal. The convergence rate parameter defines the rate at which the filter will converge on the D.C. level. A value of 0.9 will converge (and hence diverge) quickly, where as a value of 0.99999 will converge slowly.

This function works on an array of data.

## NOTES ON USE

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDS\_IirRemoveDC.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLData\_t SIF\_OnePole (SLData\_t \*)      Feedback state

**DESCRIPTION**

This function initialises the state variable for the functions SDS\_OnePole, SDA\_OnePole, SDS\_OnePoleNormalized and SDA\_OnePoleNormalized.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDS\_OnePole, SDA\_OnePole, SDS\_OnePoleNormalized,  
SDA\_OnePoleNormalized, SDA\_OnePolePerSample, SIF\_OnePoleHighPass,  
SDS\_OnePoleHighPass, SDA\_OnePoleHighPass,  
SDS\_OnePoleHighPassNormalized, SDA\_OnePoleHighPassNormalized,  
SDA\_OnePoleHighPassPerSample, SDS\_OnePoleTimeConstantToFilterCoeff,  
SDS\_OnePoleCutOffFrequencyToFilterCoeff,  
SDS\_OnePoleHighPassCutOffFrequencyToFilterCoeff

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLData_t SDS_OnePole (const SLData_t,   Input data to be filtered
                      const SLData_t,   Feedback alpha
                      SLData_t *)       Feedback state
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function performs a one pole filter on single samples of data. The coefficient for the filter is specified in the parameter list. The "feedback state" parameter is a pointer to a single SLData\_t location. Separate "feedback states" are required for each filter.

The one pole filter implements the following equation:

$$y(n) = x(n) + \alpha \cdot y(n-1)$$

## NOTES ON USE

The function SIF\_OnePole should be called to initialise "feedback state" to zero.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_OnePole, SDA\_OnePole, SDS\_OnePoleNormalized,  
 SDA\_OnePoleNormalized, SDA\_OnePolePerSample, SIF\_OnePoleHighPass,  
 SDS\_OnePoleHighPass, SDA\_OnePoleHighPass,  
 SDS\_OnePoleHighPassNormalized, SDA\_OnePoleHighPassNormalized,  
 SDA\_OnePoleHighPassPerSample, SDS\_OnePoleTimeConstantToFilterCoeff,  
 SDS\_OnePoleCutOffFrequencyToFilterCoeff,  
 SDS\_OnePoleHighPassCutOffFrequencyToFilterCoeff

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|                                     |                            |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| void SDA_OnePole (const SLData_t *, | Input array to be filtered |
| SLData_t *,                         | Filtered output array      |
| const SLData_t,                     | Feedback alpha             |
| SLData_t *,                         | Feedback state             |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)               | Array length               |

## DESCRIPTION

This function performs a one pole filter on successive samples in the array. The coefficient for the filter is specified in the parameter list. The "feedback state" parameter is a pointer to a single SLData\_t location. Separate "feedback states" are required for each filter.

The one pole filter implements the following equation:

$$y(n) = x(n) + \alpha \cdot y(n-1)$$

## NOTES ON USE

The function SIF\_OnePole should be called to initialise "feedback state" to zero.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_OnePole, SDS\_OnePole, SDS\_OnePoleNormalized,  
SDA\_OnePoleNormalized, SDA\_OnePolePerSample, SIF\_OnePoleHighPass,  
SDS\_OnePoleHighPass, SDA\_OnePoleHighPass,  
SDS\_OnePoleHighPassNormalized, SDA\_OnePoleHighPassNormalized,  
SDA\_OnePoleHighPassPerSample, SDS\_OnePoleTimeConstantToFilterCoeff,  
SDS\_OnePoleCutOffFrequencyToFilterCoeff,  
SDS\_OnePoleHighPassCutOffFrequencyToFilterCoeff

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLData_t SDS_OnePoleNormalized (const SLData_t,      Input data to be filtered
                                const SLData_t,      Feedback alpha
                                SLData_t *)           Feedback state
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function performs a one pole filter on single samples of data. The coefficient for the filter is specified in the parameter list. The one pole filter has been designed so that the step response gain is normalized to 1.0, i.e. the input data is multiplied by  $(1.0 - \text{Alpha})$ . The "feedback state" parameter is a pointer to a single SLData\_t location. Separate "feedback states" are required for each filter.

## NOTES ON USE

The function SIF\_OnePole should be called to initialise "feedback state" to zero.

The one pole filter implements the following equation:

$$y(n) = (1 - \alpha) \cdot x(n) + \alpha \cdot y(n-1)$$

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_OnePole, SDS\_OnePole, SDA\_OnePole, SDA\_OnePoleNormalized,  
 SDA\_OnePolePerSample, SIF\_OnePoleHighPass, SDS\_OnePoleHighPass,  
 SDA\_OnePoleHighPass, SDS\_OnePoleHighPassNormalized,  
 SDA\_OnePoleHighPassNormalized, SDA\_OnePoleHighPassPerSample,  
 SDS\_OnePoleTimeConstantToFilterCoeff,  
 SDS\_OnePoleCutOffFrequencyToFilterCoeff,  
 SDS\_OnePoleHighPassCutOffFrequencyToFilterCoeff



## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_OnePoleNormalized (const SLData_t *, Input array to be filtered
    SLData_t *,                               Filtered output array
    const SLData_t,                           Feedback alpha
    SLData_t *,                               Feedback state
    const SLArrayIndex_t)                     Array length
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function performs a one pole filter on successive samples in the array. The coefficient for the filter is specified in the parameter list. The one pole filter has been designed so that the step response gain is normalized to 1.0, i.e. the input data is multiplied by  $(1.0 - \text{Alpha})$ . The "feedback state" parameter is a pointer to a single SLData\_t location. Separate "feedback states" are required for each filter.

The one pole filter implements the following equation:

$$y(n) = (1 - \text{alpha}) \cdot x(n) + \text{alpha} \cdot y(n-1)$$

## NOTES ON USE

The function SIF\_OnePole should be called to initialise "feedback state" to zero.

## CROSS REFERENCE

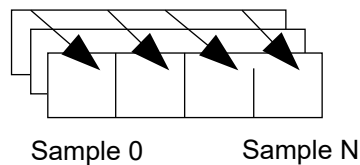
SIF\_OnePole, SDS\_OnePole, SDA\_OnePole, SDS\_OnePoleNormalized,  
SDA\_OnePolePerSample, SIF\_OnePoleHighPass, SDS\_OnePoleHighPass,  
SDA\_OnePoleHighPass, SDS\_OnePoleHighPassNormalized,  
SDA\_OnePoleHighPassNormalized, SDA\_OnePoleHighPassPerSample,  
SDS\_OnePoleTimeConstantToFilterCoeff,  
SDS\_OnePoleCutOffFrequencyToFilterCoeff,  
SDS\_OnePoleHighPassCutOffFrequencyToFilterCoeff

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_OnePolePerSample (const SLData_t *, Data to be filtered
    SLData_t *,           Filtered output array
    SLData_t *,           State array
    const SLData_t,       Feedback alpha
    const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function performs a normalized one pole filter on data between successive arrays. The coefficient for the filter is specified in the parameter list. The one pole filter has been designed so that the net gain to the signal is zero.



The one pole filter implements the following equation:

$$y(n) = (1 - \alpha) \cdot x(n) + \alpha \cdot y(n-1)$$

## NOTES ON USE

For initialisation, the "feedback state" array should be initialised to zero.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_OnePole, SDS\_OnePole, SDA\_OnePole, SDS\_OnePoleNormalized,  
 SDA\_OnePoleNormalized, SIF\_OnePoleHighPass, SDS\_OnePoleHighPass,  
 SDA\_OnePoleHighPass, SDS\_OnePoleHighPassNormalized,  
 SDA\_OnePoleHighPassNormalized, SDA\_OnePoleHighPassPerSample,  
 SDS\_OnePoleTimeConstantToFilterCoeff,  
 SDS\_OnePoleCutOffFrequencyToFilterCoeff,  
 SDS\_OnePoleHighPassCutOffFrequencyToFilterCoeff

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLData\_t SIF\_OnePoleHighPass (SLData\_t \*)      Feedback state

**DESCRIPTION**

This function initialises the state variable for the functions SDS\_OnePoleHighPass, SDA\_OnePoleHighPass, SDS\_OnePoleHighPassNormalized and SDA\_OnePoleHighPassNormalized.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SIF\_OnePole, SDS\_OnePole, SDA\_OnePole, SDS\_OnePoleNormalized, SDA\_OnePoleNormalized, SDA\_OnePolePerSample, SDS\_OnePoleHighPass, SDA\_OnePoleHighPass, SDS\_OnePoleHighPassNormalized, SDA\_OnePoleHighPassNormalized, SDA\_OnePoleHighPassPerSample, SDS\_OnePoleTimeConstantToFilterCoeff, SDS\_OnePoleCutOffFrequencyToFilterCoeff, SDS\_OnePoleHighPassCutOffFrequencyToFilterCoeff

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLData_t SDS_OnePoleHighPass (const SLData_t, Input data to be filtered
                               const SLData_t,      Feedback alpha
                               SLData_t *)          Feedback state
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function performs a one pole high pass filter on single samples of data. The coefficient for the filter is specified in the parameter list. The "feedback state" parameter is a pointer to a single SLData\_t location. Separate "feedback states" are required for each filter.

The one pole filter implements the following equation:

$$y(n) = x(n) + \alpha \cdot y(n-1)$$

## NOTES ON USE

The function SIF\_OnePoleHighPass should be called to initialise "feedback state" to zero.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_OnePole, SDS\_OnePole, SDA\_OnePole, SDS\_OnePoleNormalized,  
 SDA\_OnePoleNormalized, SDA\_OnePolePerSample, SIF\_OnePoleHighPass,  
 SDA\_OnePoleHighPass, SDS\_OnePoleHighPassNormalized,  
 SDA\_OnePoleHighPassNormalized, SDA\_OnePoleHighPassPerSample,  
 SDS\_OnePoleTimeConstantToFilterCoeff,  
 SDS\_OnePoleCutOffFrequencyToFilterCoeff,  
 SDS\_OnePoleHighPassCutOffFrequencyToFilterCoeff

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|   |                            |
|---|----------------------------|
| void SDA_OnePoleHighPass (const SLData_t *, | Input array to be filtered |
| SLData_t *,                                 | Filtered output array      |
| const SLData_t,                             | Feedback alpha             |
| SLData_t *,                                 | Feedback state             |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)                       | Array length               |

## DESCRIPTION

This function performs a one pole high pass filter on successive samples in the array. The coefficient for the filter is specified in the parameter list. The "feedback state" parameter is a pointer to a single SLData\_t location. Separate "feedback states" are required for each filter.

The one pole filter implements the following equation:

$$y(n) = x(n) + \alpha \cdot y(n-1)$$

## NOTES ON USE

The function SIF\_OnePoleHighPass should be called to initialise "feedback state" to zero.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_OnePole, SDS\_OnePole, SDA\_OnePole, SDS\_OnePoleNormalized,  
SDA\_OnePoleNormalized, SDA\_OnePolePerSample, SIF\_OnePoleHighPass,  
SDS\_OnePoleHighPass, SDS\_OnePoleHighPassNormalized,  
SDA\_OnePoleHighPassNormalized, SDA\_OnePoleHighPassPerSample,  
SDS\_OnePoleTimeConstantToFilterCoeff,  
SDS\_OnePoleCutOffFrequencyToFilterCoeff,  
SDS\_OnePoleHighPassCutOffFrequencyToFilterCoeff

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLData\_t SDS\_OnePoleHighPassNormalized (const SLData\_t,     Input data to be  
filtered  
          const SLData\_t,                             Feedback alpha  
          SLData\_t \*)                                 Feedback state

**DESCRIPTION**

This function performs a one pole filter high pass on single samples of data. The coefficient for the filter is specified in the parameter list. The one pole filter has been designed so that the step response gain is normalized to 1.0, i.e. the input data is multiplied by (1.0 – Alpha). The "feedback state" parameter is a pointer to a single SLData\_t location. Separate "feedback states" are required for each filter.

**NOTES ON USE**

The function SIF\_OnePoleHighPass should be called to initialise "feedback state" to zero.

The one pole filter implements the following equation:

$$y(n) = (1 - \alpha) \cdot x(n) + \alpha \cdot y(n-1)$$

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SIF\_OnePole, SDS\_OnePole, SDA\_OnePole, SDS\_OnePoleNormalized,  
SDA\_OnePoleNormalized, SDA\_OnePolePerSample, SIF\_OnePoleHighPass,  
SDS\_OnePoleHighPass, SDA\_OnePoleHighPass,  
SDA\_OnePoleHighPassNormalized, SDA\_OnePoleHighPassPerSample,  
SDS\_OnePoleTimeConstantToFilterCoeff,  
SDS\_OnePoleCutOffFrequencyToFilterCoeff,  
SDS\_OnePoleHighPassCutOffFrequencyToFilterCoeff

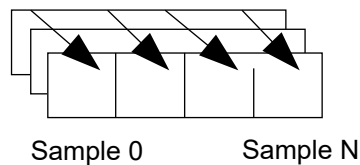


## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_OnePoleHighPassPerSample (const SLData_t *, Data to be filtered
    SLData_t *,           Filtered output array
    SLData_t *,           State array
    const SLData_t,       Feedback alpha
    const SLArrayIndex_t)  Array length
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function performs a normalized one pole high pass filter on data between successive arrays. The coefficient for the filter is specified in the parameter list. The one pole filter has been designed so that the net gain to the signal is zero.



The one pole filter implements the following equation:

$$y(n) = (1 - \alpha) \cdot x(n) + \alpha \cdot y(n-1)$$

## NOTES ON USE

For initialisation, the "feedback state" array should be initialised to zero.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_OnePole, SDS\_OnePole, SDA\_OnePole, SDS\_OnePoleNormalized,  
 SDA\_OnePoleNormalized, SDA\_OnePolePerSample, SIF\_OnePoleHighPass,  
 SDS\_OnePoleHighPass, SDA\_OnePoleHighPass,  
 SDS\_OnePoleHighPassNormalized, SDA\_OnePoleHighPassNormalized,  
 SDS\_OnePoleTimeConstantToFilterCoeff,  
 SDS\_OnePoleCutOffFrequencyToFilterCoeff,  
 SDS\_OnePoleHighPassCutOffFrequencyToFilterCoeff









**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|                               |                            |
|-------------------------------|----------------------------|
| void SIF_AllPole (SLData_t *, | Filter state array pointer |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,             | Filter index pointer       |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)         | Filter order               |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function initialises the all pole filter functionality and clears the state array to zero.

**NOTES ON USE**

The state array should be the same size as the filter order.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDS\_AllPole, SDA\_AllPole.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|                                       |                                |
|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| SLData_t SDS_AllPole (const SLData_t, | Input sample                   |
| SLData_t *,                           | Pointer to state array         |
| const SLData_t *,                     | Pointer to filter coefficients |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                     | Pointer to filter index        |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)                 | Filter order                   |

## DESCRIPTION

This function applies an all-pole filter to a data stream, a sample at a time.

## NOTES ON USE

Be aware that all-pole filters can easily be unstable.

SIF\_AllPole should be called prior to using this function, to perform the required initialisation.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_AllPole, SDA\_AllPole.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|                                     |  |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| void SDA_AllPole (const SLData_t *, | Pointer to source array to be filtered |
| SLData_t *,                         | Pointer to filter output array         |
| SLData_t *,                         | Pointer to filter state array          |
| SLData_t *,                         | Pointer to filter coefficients         |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                   | Pointer to filter state index          |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,               | Filter order                           |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)               | Array length                           |

## DESCRIPTION

This function applies an all-pole filter to a data stream.

## NOTES ON USE

Be aware that all-pole filters can easily be unstable.

SIF\_AllPole should be called prior to using this function, to perform the required initialisation.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_AllPole, SDS\_AllPole.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|                                     |  |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| void SDA_AllPole (const SLData_t *, | Pointer to source array to be filtered |
| SLData_t *,                         | Pointer to filter output array         |
| SLData_t *,                         | Pointer to filter state array          |
| SLData_t *,                         | Pointer to filter coefficients         |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                   | Pointer to filter state index          |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,               | Filter order                           |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)               | Array length                           |

## DESCRIPTION

This function applies an all-pole filter to a data stream.

## NOTES ON USE

Be aware that all-pole filters can easily be unstable.

SIF\_AllPole should be called prior to using this function, to perform the required initialisation.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_AllPole, SDS\_AllPole.

### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_ZDomainCoefficientReorg (const SLData_t *,   Pointer to z-domain
source coefficient array,
    SLComplexRect_s *,           Pointer to destination z-domain poles
    SLComplexRect_s *,           Pointer to destination z-domain zeros
    const SLArrayIndex_t)        Filter order
```

### DESCRIPTION

This function separates and re-organizes the z-domain coefficient array that is generated in Digital Filter Plus so that the coefficients can be used by SigLib. The output results in separate arrays for the poles and zeros..

### NOTES ON USE

### CROSS REFERENCE

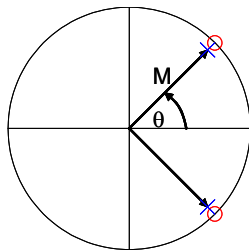


## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLError\_t SIF\_IirNotchFilter2 (SLData\_t \*, Pointer to filter coefficients  
     const SLData\_t,                      Notch frequency  
     const SLData\_t,                      Pole magnitude  
     const SLArrayIndex\_t)              Filter order

## DESCRIPTION

This function initialises the coefficients of an IIR notch filter where the zeros are placed on the unit circle at the specified frequency and the poles are at the same frequency ( $\theta$ ) but located at the given magnitude ( $M$ ) within the unit circle. The arrangement for a single biquad is shown in the following diagram.



## NOTES ON USE

The frequency parameter is in Hz, with a normalized sampling rate of 1.0 Hz.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_Iir, SDA\_Iir, SDS\_Iir.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```

SL_Error_t SIF_IirNormalizedCoefficients (SLData_t *,   Pointer to filter coefficients
enum SLIIRNormalizedCoeffs_t,   Filter coefficient type
const SLArrayIndex_t)           Filter order

```

## DESCRIPTION

This function returns a set of IIR biquad filter coefficients for a filter with the following cut-off frequency:

|                                 |                                   |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| $2\pi \text{ radians sec}^{-1}$ | $1.0 \text{ radians sec}^{-1}$    |
| 1.0 Hz                          | $1.0 / 2\pi = 0.15915 \text{ Hz}$ |

The coefficients can be converted to low-pass and high-pass filters using SDA\_IirLpLpShift, SDA\_IirLpHpShift respectively and from these it is possible to generate band-pass and notch filters.

The type of filter prototypes supported by this function are specified in the “filter coefficient type” parameter and are:

|                                    |             |
|------------------------------------|-------------|
| SIGLIB_BUTTERWORTH_IIR_NORM_COEFFS | Butterworth |
| SIGLIB_BESSEL_IIR_NORM_COEFFS      | Bessel      |

## NOTES ON USE

The maximum filter order for this function is 10 and is controlled by the constant: SIGLIB\_MAX\_NORMALIZED\_IIR\_FILTER\_ORDER.

Transforming the coefficients in the digital domain is not a monotonic transformation. I.E. The transform does not guarantee to maintain the gain and phase responses. If you wish to maintain the gain and phase then you should start with and modify the S-Plane coefficients. You can use the function SIF\_IirNormalizedSPlaneCoefficients for this purpose.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_IirLpLpShift, SDA\_IirLpHpShift,  
SIF\_IirNormalizedSPlaneCoefficients.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SL\_Error\_t SIF\_IirNormalizedSPlaneCoefficients (SLComplexRect\_s \*,  
 enum SLIIRNormalizedCoeffs\_t,      Pointer to filter poles  
 const SLArrayIndex\_t)      Filter coefficient type  
    Filter order

## DESCRIPTION

This function returns a set of poles for a filter with the following cut-off frequency:

|                                  |                               |
|----------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| $2\pi$ radians $\text{sec}^{-1}$ | 1.0 radians $\text{sec}^{-1}$ |
| 1.0 Hz                           | $1.0 / 2\pi = 0.15915$ Hz     |

The coefficients can be converted to low-pass and high-pass filters using SDA\_IirLpLpShift, SDA\_IirLpHpShift respectively and from these it is possible to generate band-pass and notch filters.

The type of filter prototypes supported by this function are specified in the “filter coefficient type” parameter and are:

|                                    |             |
|------------------------------------|-------------|
| SIGLIB_BUTTERWORTH_IIR_NORM_COEFFS | Butterworth |
| SIGLIB_BESSEL_IIR_NORM_COEFFS      | Bessel      |

## NOTES ON USE

The maximum filter order for this function is 10 and is controlled by the constant: SIGLIB\_MAX\_NORMALIZED\_IIR\_FILTER\_ORDER.

The poles of an IIR biquad section are assumed to be complex conjugate so this function only returns one value of the conjugate pair hence the number of poles returned = ((FILTER\_ORDER+1)>>1).

The function SDA\_TranslateSPlaneCutOffFrequency can be used to translate the cut-off frequency to any desired frequency.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_IirLpLpShift, SDA\_IirLpHpShift, SIF\_IirNormalizedCoefficients,  
 SDA\_TranslateSPlaneCutOffFrequency.

### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_TranslateSPlaneCutOffFrequency (const SLComplexRect_s *,
                                          SLComplexRect_s *,
                                          const SLData_t,
                                          const SLArrayIndex_t)
```

|   |
|---|
| Pointer to source filter poles / zeros      |
| Pointer to destination filter poles / zeros |
| New cut-off frequency                       |
| Filter order                                |

### DESCRIPTION

This function translates the cut-off frequency of a filter specified in the S-plane by translating the poles or zeros of the filter.

### NOTES ON USE

### CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_BilinearTransform, SDA\_MatchedZTransform,  
SIF\_IirNormalizedSPlaneCoefficients.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|  |                            |
|--|----------------------------|
| SLData_t SDA_IirLpLpShift (const SLData_t *, | Source coefficients        |
| SLData_t *,                                  | Destination coefficients   |
| const SLData_t,                              | Original cut-off frequency |
| const SLData_t,                              | Required cut-off frequency |
| const SLData_t,                              | Sample rate                |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)                        | Number of biquads          |

## DESCRIPTION

This function modifies the cut-off frequency of a low pass IIR biquad filter from the original cut-off frequency to the required frequency. This function returns the gain scaling factor at the centre frequency (D.C) of the filter.

## NOTES ON USE

When this function is used to modify the cut-off frequency of the filter it will also modify the pass-band gain. There are two options for handling the gain change:  
1/ SDA\_IirLpLpShift returns the scaling factor to normalise the filter gain this allows the input or output data to be multiplied by the scaling factor to maintain the required pass-band gain.

2/ Use the function SDA\_IirModifyFilterGain to adjust the gain of the filter at the centre frequency of the filter (D.C. for a low-pass filter).

Option 2 is usually the preferred method because it maintains the maximum dynamic range of the signal.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_IirLpHpShift.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|  |                            |
|--|----------------------------|
| SLData_t SDA_IirLpHpShift (const SLData_t *, | Source coefficients        |
| SLData_t *,                                  | Destination coefficients   |
| const SLData_t,                              | Original cut-off frequency |
| const SLData_t,                              | Required cut-off frequency |
| const SLData_t,                              | Sample rate                |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)                        | Number of biquads          |

## DESCRIPTION

Convert the low pass biquad IIR filter into a high pass filter and modify the cut-off frequency from the original cut-off frequency to the required frequency. This function returns the gain scaling factor at the centre frequency (Nyquist frequency) of the filter.

## NOTES ON USE

When this function is used to modify the cut-off frequency of the filter it will also modify the pass-band gain. There are two options for handling the gain change:  
1/ SDA\_IirLpHpShift returns the scaling factor to normalise the filter gain this allows the input or output data to be multiplied by the scaling factor to maintain the required pass-band gain.

2/ Use the function SDA\_IirModifyFilterGain to adjust the gain of the filter at the centre frequency of the filter (Nyquist frequency for a high-pass filter).

Option 2 is usually the preferred method because it maintains the maximum dynamic range of the signal.

## CROSS REFERENCE

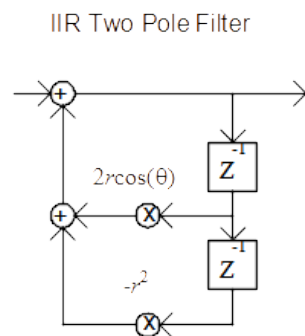
SDA\_IirLpLpShift.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|                                   |                                      |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| void SIF_Iir2PoleLpf (SLData_t *, | Pointer to filter state array        |
| SLData_t *,                       | Pointer to filter coefficients array |
| const SLData_t,                   | Cut-off frequency                    |
| const SLData_t)                   | Pole radius                          |

## DESCRIPTION

This function generates the feedback coefficients for a two-pole IIR low-pass filter, with the following flow diagram:



## NOTES ON USE

## CROSS REFERENCE

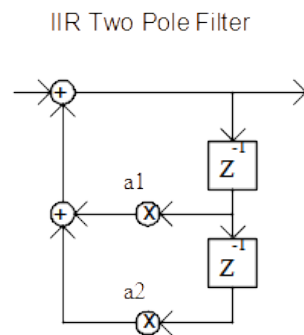
SDS\_Iir2Pole, SDA\_Iir2Pole.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|  |                                      |
|--|--------------------------------------|
| SLData_t SDS_Iir2Pole (const SLData_t, | Input data sample to be filtered     |
| SLData_t *,                            | Pointer to filter state array        |
| const SLData_t *)                      | Pointer to filter coefficients array |

## DESCRIPTION

This function implements a 2 pole IIR filter, on a per-sample basis, with the following flow diagram:



## NOTES ON USE

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_Iir2PoleLpf, SDS\_Iir2Pole, SDA\_Iir2Pole.

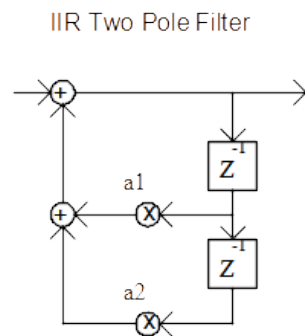


## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|                                      |                                      |
|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| void SDS_Iir2Pole (const SLData_t *, | Input array to be filtered           |
| SLData_t *,                          | Filtered output array                |
| SLData_t *,                          | Pointer to filter state array        |
| const SLData_t *,                    | Pointer to filter coefficients array |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)                | Array length                         |

## DESCRIPTION

This function implements a 2 pole IIR filter, on an array basis, with the following flow diagram:



## NOTES ON USE

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_Iir2PoleLpf, SDS\_Iir2Pole.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|  |   |
|--|---|
| void SDA_IirNegateAlphaCoeffs (const SLData_t *, | Pointer to source filter coefficients array |
| SLData_t *,                                      | Pointer to destn. filter coefficients array |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)                            | Number of biquads                           |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function negates the denominator (feedback) coefficients of an IIR filter to allow support for devices that implement MAC or MSUB operations. Also this allows coefficients to be used with SigLib that have been designed using filter design tools that do negate the feedback coefficients.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SIF\_Iir, SDS\_Iir, SDA\_Iir, SDS\_IirMac, SDA\_IirMac.

#### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|                                       |                       |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------------|
| void SDA_Integrate (const SLData_t *, | Input array pointer   |
| SLData_t *,                           | Output data pointer   |
| const SLData_t,                       | Integrate reset level |
| const SLData_t,                       | Sum decay value       |
| SLData_t *,                           | Integral sum pointer  |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)                 | Array length          |

#### DESCRIPTION

This function integrates the signal in the array. The function includes support for decaying the summation by a constant factor and resetting the sum, when it reaches a fixed peak value. The latter function is often termed integrate and dump. The fixed value, to which the integrator is allowed to rise is tested in both the positive and negative direction.

#### NOTES ON USE

The decay factor is a gain factor on the integration so for 0 decay the value 1.0 must be used.

The pointer to the integral sum value is used for continuity across array boundaries.

#### CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_Differentiate, SDS\_LeakyIntegrator1, SDS\_LeakyIntegrator2

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|   |                             |
|---|-----------------------------|
| void SDA_Differentiate (const SLData_t *, | Input array pointer         |
| SLData_t *,                               | Output array pointer        |
| SLData_t *,                               | Previous data value pointer |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)                     | Array length                |

**DESCRIPTION**

Differentiate the signal in the array, i.e. return the difference between two successive samples.

**NOTES ON USE**

The pointer to the previous data value is used for continuity across array boundaries.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_Integrate

### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SIF\_LeakyIntegrator (SLData\_t \*)      Pointer to integrator state variable

### DESCRIPTION

Initialize the leaky integrator functions.

### NOTES ON USE

### CROSS REFERENCE

SDS\_LeakyIntegrator1, SDS\_LeakyIntegrator2

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|  |   |
|--|---|
| SLData_t SDS_LeakyIntegrator1 (const SLData_t, Source data value |   |
| SLData_t *,  | Pointer to integrator state variable    |
| const SLData_t,  | Leak output value                       |
| const SLData_t)  | Peak value of integrator state variable |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function implements a leaky integrator. The state value is not allowed to overflow the peak level, even temporarily

**NOTES ON USE**

The function SIF\_LeakyIntegrator should be called prior to calling this function.

The Leak output value is the constant value that is subtracted from the integrator state variable prior to adding in the new data.

The peak value is that level above which the state variable can not exceed.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_Integrate, SIF\_LeakyIntegrator, SDS\_LeakyIntegrator2

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|  |   |
|--|---|
| SLData_t SDS_LeakyIntegrator2 (const SLData_t, Source data value |   |
| SLData_t *,  | Pointer to integrator state variable    |
| const SLData_t,  | Leak output value                       |
| const SLData_t)  | Peak value of integrator state variable |

**DESCRIPTION**

Implement a leaky integrator. The state value is allowed to overflow the peak level temporarily as SLArrayIndex\_t as the accumulator value is below the peak level when the function returns.

**NOTES ON USE**

The function SIF\_LeakyIntegrator should be called prior to calling this function.

The Leak output value is the constant value that is subtracted from the integrator state variable after adding in the new data.

The peak value is that level above which the state variable can not exceed.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_Integrate, SIF\_LeakyIntegrator, SDS\_LeakyIntegrator1

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
void SIF_HilbertTransformer (SLData_t *,   Filter coefficients array  
                             const SLArrayIndex_t)   Filter length
```

**DESCRIPTION**

This function initialises the coefficients of an FIR Hilbert transformer filter.

The Hilbert transform uses an N coefficient FIR filter to phase shift every component in a signal by 90 degrees (N is odd ordered).

The defining equations for the Hilbert transform are:

$$h(n) = \frac{2}{n * \pi} * \sin^2\left(\frac{n * \pi}{2}\right) \quad \text{for } n = \pm 1, \pm 2, \pm \frac{N}{2}$$

and  $h(0) = 0$  for  $n = 0$

**NOTES ON USE**

N must be odd.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDS\_Fir, SDA\_Fir, SDA\_FdHilbert.



**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLData\_t SIF\_GoertzelFilter (SLData\_t \*,   State array pointer  
          const SLData\_t,                   Centre frequency  
          const SLArrayIndex\_t)           Array length

**DESCRIPTION**

This function returns the coefficient for a Goertzel IIR filter. This parameter must be passed to the Goertzel filter and detect functions. The filter is a band-pass filter with the specified centre frequency.

**NOTES ON USE**

The frequency is normalised to  $F_s = 1.0$ .

**CROSS REFERENCE**

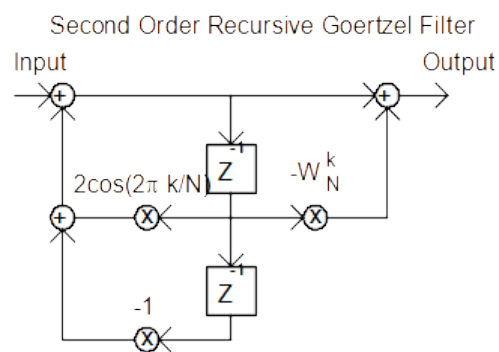
SDA\_GoertzelFilter, SDA\_GoertzelDetect, SUF\_EstimateBPFILTERLength,  
SUF\_EstimateBPFILTERError.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_GoertzelFilter (const SLData_t *, Input array pointer
                        SLData_t *,           Output array pointer
                        SLData_t *,           State array pointer
                        const SLData_t,       Filter coefficient
                        const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function applies the real Goertzel IIR filter to the data stream. A Goertzel filter is an IIR filter that selects a specified pass band in a filtered signal. The filter has the following flow diagram:



## NOTES ON USE

Best performance can be obtained if  $N$  can be chosen so that the array length \* the frequency gives a value that is close to an integer. This filter does not maintain the complex (phase) information because the value for  $-W_N^k$  is  $\cos(2\pi k/N)$ .

## CROSS REFERENCE

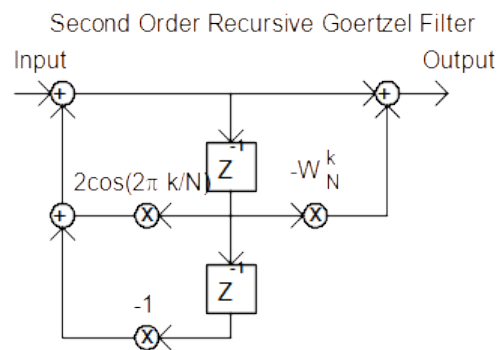
SIF\_GoertzelFilter, SDS\_GoertzelFilter, SDA\_GoertzelDetect,  
SUF\_EstimateBPFILTERLength, SUF\_EstimateBPFILTERError.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDS_GoertzelFilter (const SLData_t,   Input data sample
                        SLData_t *,       State array pointer
                        const SLData_t)    Filter coefficient
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function applies the real Goertzel IIR filter to the data stream, on a per-sample basis. A Goertzel filter is an IIR filter that selects a specified pass band in a filtered signal. The filter has the following flow diagram:



## NOTES ON USE

Best performance can be obtained if N can be chosen so that the array length \* the frequency gives a value that is close to an integer. This filter does not maintain the complex (phase) information because the value for  $-W_N^k$  is  $\cos(2\pi k/N)$ .

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_GoertzelFilter, SDA\_GoertzelFilter, SDA\_GoertzelDetect,  
SUF\_EstimateBPFILTERLength, SUF\_EstimateBPFILTERError.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLData\_t SIF\_GoertzelDetect (const SLData\_t,      Centre frequency  
                                 const SLArrayIndex\_t)      Array length

**DESCRIPTION**

This function returns the coefficient for a Goertzel detector. This parameter must be passed to the Goertzel detect function. The filter is a band-pass filter with the specified centre frequency.

**NOTES ON USE**

The frequency is normalised to  $F_s = 1.0$ .

**CROSS REFERENCE**

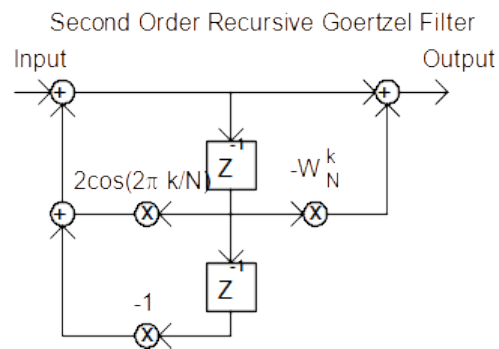
SDA\_GoertzelDetect, SUF\_EstimateBPFILTERLength,  
SUF\_EstimateBPFILTERError.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData\_t SDA\_GoertzelDetect (const SLData\_t \*, Source array pointer  
const SLData\_t, Filter coefficient  
const SLArrayIndex\_t) Filter length

## DESCRIPTION

This function applies the Goertzel IIR filter to the data stream and returns the power squared of the signal in the filter pass band. The filter has the following flow diagram:



This detector returns the magnitude squared filter output i.e.  $\text{real}^2 + \text{imaginary}^2$ . The Goertzel detector is often used to detect particular individual frequencies, a common application is the detection of DTMF tones.  $-W_N^k = \cos(2\pi k/N) - j \sin(2\pi k/N)$ .

## NOTES ON USE

Best performance can be obtained if N can be chosen so that the array length \* the frequency gives a value that is close to an integer.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_GoertzelDetect, SDA\_GoertzelFilter, SUF\_EstimateBPFilterLength,  
SUF\_EstimateBPFilterError.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLComplexRect\_s SIF\_GoertzelDetectComplex (const SLData\_t, Centre frequency  
const SLArrayIndex\_t) Array length

**DESCRIPTION**

This function returns the complex coefficient for a Goertzel IIR filter. This parameter must be passed to the complex Goertzel detect function. The filter is a band-pass filter with the specified centre frequency.

**NOTES ON USE**

The frequency is normalised to  $F_s = 1.0$ .

**CROSS REFERENCE**

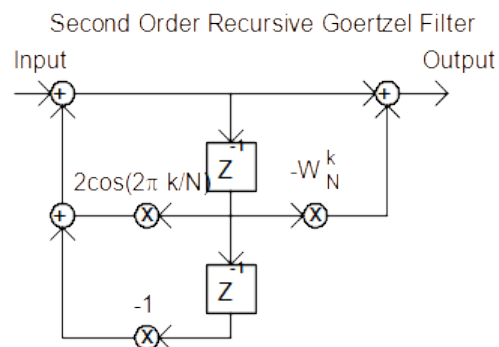
SDA\_GoertzelDetect, SDA\_GoertzelDetectComplex,  
SUF\_EstimateBPFILTERLength, SUF\_EstimateBPFILTERError.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLComplexRect\_s SDA\_GoertzelDetectComplex (const SLData\_t \*, Src pointer  
const SLComplexRect\_s, Complex filter coefficient  
const SLArrayIndex\_t) Filter length

## DESCRIPTION

This function applies the Goertzel IIR filter to the data stream and returns the frequency domain coefficients for the signal in the filter pass band. The filter has the following flow diagram:



This detector is exactly identical to the discrete Fourier transform. The Goertzel detector is often used to detect particular individual frequencies, a common application is the detection of DTMF tones.  $-W_N^k = \cos(2\pi k/N) - j \sin(2\pi k/N)$ .

## NOTES ON USE

Best performance can be obtained if N can be chosen so that the array length \* the frequency gives a value that is close to an integer.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_GoertzelDetectComplex, SDA\_GoertzelDetect,  
SDA\_GoertzelDetectComplex, SUF\_EstimateBPFILTERLength,  
SUF\_EstimateBPFILTERError.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|                                      |  |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| void SIF_GaussianFilter (SLData_t *, | Filter coefficients array              |
| const SLData_t,                      | Standard deviation of the distribution |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)                | Filter length                          |

## DESCRIPTION

This function initialises the coefficients of an FIR Gaussian filter.

The distribution has a mean of zero but is centred around the centre coefficient of the array (N is odd ordered). The Gaussian filter exhibits no oscillations in its frequency response, which is also Gaussian in nature.

The defining equations for the Gaussian filter are:

$$G(x) = \frac{1.0}{\sqrt{2\pi} \sigma} e^{-\frac{x^2}{2\sigma^2}}$$

where  $\sigma$  is the standard deviation of the distribution. The coefficient equation is:

$$h(n) = \frac{2}{n * \pi} * \sin^2\left(\frac{n * \pi}{2}\right) \text{ for } n = \pm 1, \pm 2, \pm \frac{N}{2}$$

and  $h(0) = 0$  for  $n = 0$

## NOTES ON USE

The filter length (number of coefficients) must be odd.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_Fir, SDA\_Fir, SDS\_Fir, SIF\_GaussianFilter2.



**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|                                       |                           |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| void SIF_GaussianFilter2 (SLData_t *, | Filter coefficients array |
| const SLData_t,                       | Filter bandwidth          |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)                 | Filter length             |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function initialises the coefficients of an FIR Gaussian filter.

The pass-band bandwidth is specified by the “Bandwidth” parameter. The coefficient equation is:

$$h(n) = \frac{2}{n * \pi} * \sin^2\left(\frac{n * \pi}{2}\right) \quad \text{for } n = \pm 1, \pm 2, \pm \frac{N}{2}$$

and  $h(0) = 0$  for  $n = 0$

**NOTES ON USE**

The filter length (number of coefficients) must be odd.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SIF\_Fir, SDA\_Fir, SDS\_Fir, SIF\_GaussianFilter.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SIF_RaisedCosineFilter (SLData_t *,   Filter coefficients pointer
                           const SLData_t, Symbol period
                           const SLData_t, Alpha
                           const SLArrayIndex_t) Filter length
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function initialises the coefficients of an FIR raised cosine filter. The defining equation for the coefficients of the raised cosine filter is:

$$h(t) = \frac{\text{sinc}\left(\frac{\pi t}{T}\right) \cos\left(\frac{\pi \alpha t}{T}\right)}{1 - 4\left(\frac{\alpha t}{T}\right)^2}$$

Where  $0 \leq \alpha \leq 1.0$  and the symbol rate (B) = 1/T.

$$h(n) = \frac{2}{n * \pi} * \sin^2\left(\frac{n * \pi}{2}\right) \text{ for } n = \pm 1, \pm 2, \pm \frac{N}{2}$$

and  $h(0) = 0$  for  $n = 0$

## NOTES ON USE

The number of coefficients will be odd. This function detects possible issues such as  $\cos(\pi/2)$  and generates the coefficient as a linear interpolation of the two adjacent coefficients.

The filter index is  $k = -N$  to  $+N$ , where  $N = (\text{Length} - 1) / 2$ .

The sample rate is normalised to 1.0 Hz

Alpha is the excess bandwidth of the filter beyond the -3dB point. For the raised cosine filter:

alpha = 0 - Ideal LPF with  $F_{\text{cut-off}} = \text{Nyquist Frequency}$

alpha = 1 - Smooth roll off but doubles signal bandwidth

The minimum pre-amble is one symbol when using this function.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_Fir, SDA\_Fir, SDS\_Fir.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SIF_RootRaisedCosineFilter (SLData_t *,  Filter coeffs. pointer
                                const SLData_t,      Symbol period
                                const SLData_t,      Alpha
                                const SLArrayIndex_t)  Filter length
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function initialises the coefficients of an FIR square root raised cosine filter. The defining equation for the coefficients of the square root raised cosine filter is:

$$h(t) = \frac{4\alpha}{\pi\sqrt{T}} \frac{\cos\left((1+\alpha)\frac{\pi}{T}\right) + \frac{\sin\left((1-\alpha)\frac{\pi}{T}\right)}{4\left(\frac{\alpha}{T}\right)}}{1 - \left(4\frac{\alpha}{T}\right)^2}$$

Where  $0 < \alpha < 1.0$  and the symbol rate  $(B) = 1/T$ .

$$h(n) = \frac{2}{n\pi} * \sin^2\left(\frac{n\pi}{2}\right) \text{ for } n = \pm 1, \pm 2, \pm \frac{N}{2}$$

and  $h(0) = 0$  for  $n = 0$

## NOTES ON USE

The number of coefficients will be odd. This function detects possible issues such as  $\cos(\pi/2)$  and generates the coefficient as a linear interpolation of the two adjacent coefficients. The filter index is  $k = -N$  to  $+N$ , where  $N = (\text{Length} - 1) / 2$ . The sample rate is normalised to 1.0 Hz Alpha is the excess bandwidth of the filter beyond the -3dB point. For the square root raised cosine filter

alpha = 0 - Ideal LPF with  $F_{\text{cut-off}} = \text{Nyquist Frequency}$

alpha = 1 - Smooth roll off but doubles signal bandwidth

The minimum pre-amble is one symbol when using this function.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_Fir, SDA\_Fir, SDS\_Fir.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData\_t SDS\_ZTransform (const SLComplexRect\_s,      Location in z-plane to  
calculate  
     const SLComplexRect\_s \*,      Pointer to numerator coefficients  
     const SLComplexRect\_s \*,      Pointer to denominator coefficients  
     const SLArrayIndex\_t,      Number of numerator coefficients  
     const SLArrayIndex\_t)      Number of denominator coefficients

## DESCRIPTION

This function returns the magnitude of the z-transform, calculated at the specific location in the z-plane.

## NOTES ON USE

The number of numerator or denominator coefficients may be zero. If the number of numerator or denominator coefficients is non zero then they must both be the same otherwise the function will return 0.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDS\_ZTransformDB.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLData\_t SDS\_ZTransformDB (const SLComplexRect\_s, Location in z-plane to calculate

|                          |                                     |
|--------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| const SLComplexRect_s *, | Pointer to numerator coefficients   |
| const SLComplexRect_s *, | Pointer to denominator coefficients |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,    | Number of numerator coefficients    |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)    | Number of denominator coefficients  |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function returns the magnitude of the z-transform in dB, calculated at the specific location in the z-plane.

**NOTES ON USE**

The number of numerator or denominator coefficients may be zero. If the number of numerator or denominator coefficients is non zero then they must both be the same otherwise the function will return 0.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDS\_ZTransform.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLArrayIndex\_t SUF\_EstimateBPFilterLength (const SLData\_t,    Sample rate  
          const SLData\_t,                                    Centre frequency  
          const SLArrayIndex\_t,                           Minimum filter length  
          const SLArrayIndex\_t)                           Maximum filter length

**DESCRIPTION**

This function analyzes the given range of band-pass filter lengths and estimates the length that provides the minimum side lobe error / Gibbs effect.

Side lobe error is estimated from the fractional component of the number of cycles of the input waveform in the filter state array, for the given sample rate..

This function is useful for the estimation of filter lengths for band-pass FIR and other equivalent filters (e.g. Goertzel filters, as used in DTMF detectors).

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SUF\_EstimateBPFilterError.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
void SUF_EstimateBPFilterError (const SLData_t, Sample rate
    const SLData_t,           Centre frequency
    const SLArrayIndex_t,     Minimum filter length
    const SLArrayIndex_t,     Maximum filter length
    SLData_t *)               Pointer to error array
```

**DESCRIPTION**

This function analyzes the given range of band-pass filter lengths and estimates the magnitude of the side lobe error / Gibbs effect for each filter length. The error values for all the filter lengths are written into the error array.

Side lobe error is estimated from the fractional component of the number of cycles of the input waveform in the filter state array, for the given sample rate..

This function is useful for the estimation of band-pass filter lengths for FIR and other equivalent filters (e.g. Goertzel filters, as used in DTMF detectors).

**NOTES ON USE**

It is important to ensure that the error array is long enough to store all of the error results for all of the filter lengths calculated.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SUF\_EstimateBPFilterLength.

### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData\_t SUF\_FrequenciesToOctaves (const SLData\_t Fl, Low frequency  
const SLData\_t Fh) High frequency

### DESCRIPTION

This function returns the octave band magnitude for the given frequency band.

### NOTES ON USE

### CROSS REFERENCE

SUF\_FrequenciesToOctaves, SUF\_FrequenciesToCentreFreqHz,  
SUF\_FrequenciesToQFactor, SUF\_BandwidthToQFactor and  
SUF\_QFactorToBandwidth.



### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData\_t SUF\_FrequenciesToCentreFreqHz (const SLData\_t Fl, Low frequency  
const SLData\_t Fh) High frequency

### DESCRIPTION

This function returns the centre frequency for the given frequency band.

### NOTES ON USE

### CROSS REFERENCE

SUF\_FrequenciesToOctaves, SUF\_FrequenciesToCentreFreqHz,  
SUF\_FrequenciesToQFactor, SUF\_BandwidthToQFactor and  
SUF\_QFactorToBandwidth.

### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData\_t SUF\_FrequenciesToQFactor (const SLData\_t Fl, Low frequency  
const SLData\_t Fh) High frequency

### DESCRIPTION

This function returns the Q factor for the given frequency band.

### NOTES ON USE

### CROSS REFERENCE

SUF\_FrequenciesToOctaves, SUF\_FrequenciesToCentreFreqHz,  
SUF\_FrequenciesToQFactor, SUF\_BandwidthToQFactor and  
SUF\_QFactorToBandwidth.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLData\_t SUF\_BandwidthToQFactor (const SLData\_t BW)      Bandwidth

**DESCRIPTION**

This function returns the Q factor for the given frequency bandwidth.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SUF\_FrequenciesToOctaves, SUF\_FrequenciesToCentreFreqHz,  
SUF\_FrequenciesToQFactor, SUF\_BandwidthToQFactor and  
SUF\_QFactorToBandwidth.

### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData\_t SUF\_QFactorToBandwidth (const SLData\_t QFactor)    Q factor

### DESCRIPTION

This function returns the bandwidth for the given Q factor.

### NOTES ON USE

### CROSS REFERENCE

SUF\_FrequenciesToOctaves, SUF\_FrequenciesToCentreFreqHz,  
SUF\_FrequenciesToQFactor, SUF\_BandwidthToQFactor and  
SUF\_QFactorToBandwidth.

## ACOUSTIC PROCESSING FUNCTIONS (*acoustic.c*)

### SDA\_LinearMicrophoneArrayBeamPattern

#### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_LinearMicrophoneArrayBeamPattern (const SLFixData_t,   Number of
microphones
    const SLData_t,           Microphone spacing (meters)
    const SLData_t,           Source signal frequency (Hz)
    SLData_t *,               Ptr to response angles array (Degrees)
    SLData_t *,               Pointer to response gain array (dB)
    const SLData_t,           Calculation start angle (Degrees)
    const SLData_t,           Calculation end angle (Degrees)
    const SLFixData_t)        Number of angles to calculate
```

#### DESCRIPTION

This function calculates the beam pattern for a linear microphone array, for a given number of microphones; microphone spacing and source signal frequency.

Calculates antenna gains, in dB, between the start angle and the end angle.

#### NOTES ON USE

The output is in the following format:

|             |         |
|-------------|---------|
| Beam angles | Degrees |
| Beam gains  | dB      |

#### CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_LinearMicrophoneArrayBeamPatternLinear,  
SDA\_MicrophoneArrayCalculateDelays, SDA\_MicrophoneArrayBeamPattern,  
SDA\_MicrophoneArrayBeamPatternLinear

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
void SDA_LinearMicrophoneArrayBeamPatternLinear (const SLFixData_t,  
Number of microphones  
    const SLData_t,  
    const SLData_t,  
    SLData_t *,  
    SLData_t *,  
    const SLData_t,  
    const SLData_t,  
    const SLFixData_t)  
    Microphone spacing (meters)  
    Source signal frequency (Hz)  
    Ptr to response angles array (Degrees)  
    Pointer to response gain array (dB)  
    Calculation start angle (Degrees)  
    Calculation end angle (Degrees)  
    Number of angles to calculate
```

**DESCRIPTION**

This function calculates the beam pattern for a linear microphone array, for a given number of microphones; microphone spacing and source signal frequency.

Calculates antenna gains between the start angle and the end angle.

The gain values are linear, rather than dB

**NOTES ON USE**

The output is in the following format:

|             |         |
|-------------|---------|
| Beam angles | Degrees |
| Beam gains  | dB      |

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_LinearMicrophoneArrayBeamPattern,  
SDA\_MicrophoneArrayCalculateDelays, SDA\_MicrophoneArrayBeamPattern,  
SDA\_MicrophoneArrayBeamPatternLinear

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

void SDA\_MicrophoneArrayCalculateDelays (const SLFixData\_t, Number of microphones

SLMicrophone\_s \*,  
const SLData\_t)

Microphone configuration  
Angle to steer beam (Degrees)

**DESCRIPTION**

This function calculates the delays required to steer the beam of an arbitrary array of microphones into a particular direction.

**NOTES ON USE**

The microphone details are defined as follows:

```
typedef struct {                // Microphone configuration
    SLData_t xPos;              // X location (Meters)
    SLData_t yPos;              // Y location (Meters)
    SLData_t delay;             // Delay (seconds)
    SLData_t gain;              // Gain (linear)
} SLMicrophone_s;
```

Here is an example of a microphone declaration:

```
        // 4 Mic Circular (Square), 0.043 mic radius
#define NUM_MICROPHONES 4      // Number of microphones
static SLMicrophone_s micDetails [NUM_MICROPHONES] = {
    { 0.0304,  0.0304, 0., 1., },
    { 0.0304, -0.0304, 0., 1., },
    { -0.0304, -0.0304, 0., 1., },
    { -0.0304,  0.0304, 0., 1., }
};
```

Applying the SDA\_MicrophoneArrayCalculateDelays() function to the microphone array will update the delay elements to steer the beam.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_LinearMicrophoneArrayBeamPattern,  
SDA\_LinearMicrophoneArrayBeamPatternLinear,  
SDA\_MicrophoneArrayBeamPattern, SDA\_MicrophoneArrayBeamPatternLinear

### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_MicrophoneArrayBeamPattern (const SLFixData_t, Number of
microphones
    const SLMicrophone_s *,           Microphone configuration
    const SLData_t,                   Source signal frequency
    const SLData_t,                   Source signal radius from centre of
microphone array
    SLData_t *,                       Pointer to response angles array
    SLData_t *,                       Pointer to response gain array
    const SLData_t,                   Calculation start angle (Degrees)
    const SLData_t,                   Calculation end angle (Degrees)
    const SLFixData_t,               Number of angles to calculate
    const SLData_t)                  Sample rate
```

### DESCRIPTION

This function calculates the beam pattern for an arbitrary microphone array, for a given number of microphones and source signal frequency.

Calculates antenna gains, in dB, between the start angle and the end angle.

### NOTES ON USE

The output is in the following format:

|             |         |
|-------------|---------|
| Beam angles | Degrees |
| Beam gains  | dB      |

The delays provided in the microphone configuration are quantized to the supplied sample rate.

### CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_LinearMicrophoneArrayBeamPattern,  
SDA\_LinearMicrophoneArrayBeamPatternLinear,  
SDA\_MicrophoneArrayCalculateDelays, SDA\_MicrophoneArrayBeamPatternLinear



**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

void SDA\_MicrophoneArrayBeamPatternLinear (const SLFixData\_t, Number of microphones

|                         |  |
|-------------------------|--|
| const SLMicrophone_s *, | Microphone configuration                             |
| const SLData_t,         | Source signal frequency                              |
| const SLData_t,         | Source signal radius from centre of microphone array |
| SLData_t *,             | Pointer to response angles array                     |
| SLData_t *,             | Pointer to response gain array                       |
| const SLData_t,         | Calculation start angle (Degrees)                    |
| const SLData_t,         | Calculation end angle (Degrees)                      |
| const SLFixData_t,      | Number of angles to calculate                        |
| const SLData_t)         | Sample rate  |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function calculates the beam pattern for an arbitrary microphone array, for a given number of microphones and source signal frequency.

Calculates antenna gains between the start angle and the end angle.

The gain values are linear, rather than dB.

**NOTES ON USE**

The output is in the following format:

|             |         |
|-------------|---------|
| Beam angles | Degrees |
| Beam gains  | dB      |

The delays provided in the microphone configuration are quantized to the supplied sample rate.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_LinearMicrophoneArrayBeamPattern,  
SDA\_LinearMicrophoneArrayBeamPatternLinear,  
SDA\_MicrophoneArrayCalculateDelays, SDA\_MicrophoneArrayBeamPattern

### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData\_t SDS\_TemperatureToSpeedOfSoundInAir (const SLData\_t temp)

### DESCRIPTION

This function calculates the speed of sound in air for a given air temperature.

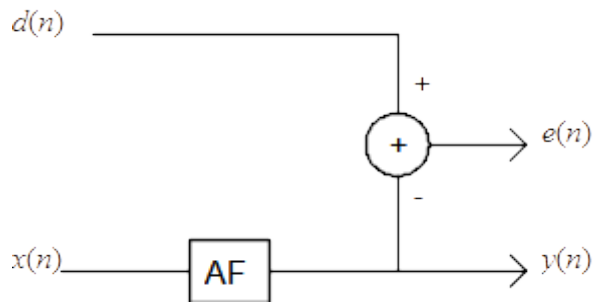
### NOTES ON USE

### CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_LinearMicrophoneArrayBeamPattern,  
SDA\_LinearMicrophoneArrayBeamPatternLinear,  
SDA\_MicrophoneArrayCalculateDelays, SDA\_MicrophoneArrayBeamPattern,  
SDA\_MicrophoneArrayBeamPatternLinear

## ADAPTIVE COEFFICIENT FILTER FUNCTIONS (*adaptive.c*)

The adaptive filter (AF) functions updates the adaptive transversal filter with the Least Mean Square (LMS) algorithms. The systems are configured as follows:



Where  $x(n)$  is the input signal,  $y(n)$  the output,  $d(n)$  is the desired signal and  $e(n)$  the error between the actual output and the desired.

When implementing adaptive filters, especially in fixed point devices, it is common that quantization leads to the growth of the magnitudes of the coefficients. In order to overcome this problem it is common to multiply the coefficients by a constant that is less than 1.0 (e.g. 0.99) after adaptation.

In many applications it is useful to move the location of the data peak to some other normalized position this can be achieved using the function `SDA_MovePeakTowardsDeadBand()`.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|                           |                                       |
|---------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| void SIF_Lms (SLData_t *, | LMS filter state array pointer        |
| SLData_t *,               | LMS filter coefficients array pointer |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,         | Pointer to LMS filter index           |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,         | Pointer to LMS filter updater index   |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)     | Adaptive filter length                |

## DESCRIPTION

This function initializes the adaptive filter functionality and clears all state arrays, filter index and filter updater index to zero.

## NOTES ON USE

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDS\_Lms, SDA\_LmsUpdate, SDA\_LeakyLmsUpdate,  
SDA\_NormalizedLmsUpdate, SDA\_SignErrorLmsUpdate,  
SDA\_SignDataLmsUpdate, SDA\_SignSignLmsUpdate.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|                                   |                                       |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| SLData_t SDS_Lms (const SLData_t, | Input data sample                     |
| SLData_t *,                       | LMS filter state array pointer        |
| const SLData_t *,                 | LMS filter coefficients array pointer |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                 | LMS filter offset pointer             |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)             | LMS filter length                     |

## DESCRIPTION

This function applies the adaptive transversal filter to the input data stream a sample at a time. this function is almost identical to the SDS\_Fir routine, however for the sake of neatness separate functions are used.

## NOTES ON USE

The traditional method of viewing the state array is as a bucket brigade FIFO array, with data flowing in one end and falling out the other. For execution efficiency however it is more efficient to use a circular array, so that for each new sample all the data does not have to be shifted up. For this reason each time the SDS\_Lms function is called the current array pointer must be known. In order to make this function reusable it is necessary that each instance has a separate pointer, the address of which is passed to the function at call time.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_Lms, SDA\_LmsUpdate, SDA\_LeakyLmsUpdate,  
SDA\_NormalizedLmsUpdate, SDA\_SignErrorLmsUpdate,  
SDA\_SignDataLmsUpdate, SDA\_SignSignLmsUpdate..

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|                                       |                                       |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| void SDA_LmsUpdate (const SLData_t *, | Filter state array pointer            |
| SLData_t *,                           | LMS filter coefficients array pointer |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                     | LMS filter offset pointer             |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                 | LMS filter length                     |
| const SLData_t,                       | Adaptation step length                |
| const SLData_t)                       | Error                                 |

## DESCRIPTION

This function updates the adaptive transversal filter with the Lease Mean Square (LMS) algorithm. The following coefficient update algorithm is used:

$$y(n) = \sum_{k=0}^{N-1} w(k) * x(n-k)$$
$$e(n) = d(n) - y(n)$$
$$w(k) = w(k) + u * e(n) * x(n-k) \quad k = 0,1,2,\dots,N-1$$

## NOTES ON USE

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_Lms, SDS\_Lms, SDA\_LeakyLmsUpdate, SDA\_NormalizedLmsUpdate, SDA\_SignErrorLmsUpdate, SDA\_SignDataLmsUpdate, SDA\_SignSignLmsUpdate.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_LeakyLmsUpdate (const SLData_t *,   Filter state array pointer
                        SLData_t *,          LMS filter coefficients array pointer
                        SLArrayIndex_t *,     LMS filter offset pointer
                        const SLArrayIndex_t, LMS filter length
                        const SLData_t,       Adaptation step length
                        const SLData_t,       Coefficient decay
                        const SLData_t)       Error
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function updates the adaptive transversal filter with leaky LMS algorithm. The following coefficient update algorithm is used:

One common problem with the LMS algorithm is that over time the coefficients can "grow" and the filter can become unstable. The leaky LMS algorithm reduces the possibility of this by applying a decay to the coefficients.

$$y(n) = \sum_{k=0}^{N-1} w(k) * x(n-k)$$

$$e(n) = d(n) - y(n)$$

$$w(k) = w(k) * DecayRate + u * e(n) * x(n-k) \quad k = 0,1,2,...,N-1$$

## NOTES ON USE

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_Lms, SDS\_Lms, SDA\_LmsUpdate, SDA\_NormalizedLmsUpdate, SDA\_SignErrorLmsUpdate, SDA\_SignDataLmsUpdate, SDA\_SignSignLmsUpdate.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```

void SDA_NormalizedLmsUpdate (const SLData_t *,   Filter state pointer
                             SLData_t *,         LMS filter coefficients array pointer
                             SLArrayIndex_t *,    LMS filter offset pointer
                             SLData_t *,         Signal power
                             const SLArrayIndex_t, LMS filter length
                             const SLData_t,      Adaptation step length
                             const SLData_t)      Error

```

## DESCRIPTION

This function updates the adaptive transversal filter with the normalised LMS algorithm. The following coefficient update algorithm is used:

$$\begin{aligned}
 y(n) &= \sum_{k=0}^{N-1} w(k) * x(n-k) \\
 e(n) &= d(n) - y(n) \\
 w(k) &= w(k) + (u * a / Power) * e(n) * x(n-k) \quad k = 0, 1, 2, \dots, N-1
 \end{aligned}$$

The normalised LMS algorithm reduces the dependency of convergence speed on the input signal power, at a cost of increased computational complexity. The algorithm applies automatic gain control to the input signal. The equation for the AGC is:

$$Power(n) = (1 - b) * Power(n-1) + bx(0)^2$$

## NOTES ON USE

Note variables  $a$  and  $b$  are the same value and this is a common technique in most applications.

The signal power parameter should be initialised to SIGLIB\_ZERO.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_Lms, SDS\_Lms, SDA\_LmsUpdate, SDA\_LeakyLmsUpdate, SDA\_SignErrorLmsUpdate, SDA\_SignDataLmsUpdate, SDA\_SignSignLmsUpdate.



## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_SignErrorLmsUpdate (const SLData_t *,   LMS filter state pointer
                             SLData_t *,         LMS filter coefficients array pointer
                             SLArrayIndex_t *,    LMS filter offset pointer
                             const SLArrayIndex_t, LMS filter length
                             const SLData_t,      Adaptation step length
                             const SLData_t)      Error
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function updates the adaptive transversal filter with sign error LMS algorithm. The following coefficient update algorithm is used:

$$y(n) = \sum_{k=0}^{N-1} w(k) * x(n-k)$$

$$e(n) = d(n) - y(n)$$

$$w(k) = w(k) + u * \text{sign}[e(n)] * x(n-k) \quad k = 0, 1, 2, \dots, N-1$$

Where  $\text{sign}[x] = 1.0$  for  $x \geq 0$  and  $\text{sign}[x] = -1.0$  for  $x < 0$

The sign error LMS function is one of a group of functions that allows for more efficient execution on a range of processors, typically fixed point. The mathematical simplification is through taking the sign of the error component.

## NOTES ON USE

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_Lms, SDS\_Lms, SDA\_LmsUpdate, SDA\_LeakyLmsUpdate, SDA\_NormalizedLmsUpdate, SDA\_SignDataLmsUpdate, SDA\_SignSignLmsUpdate.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```

void SDA_SignDataLmsUpdate (const SLData_t *,   Filter state array pointer
                           SLData_t *,         LMS filter coefficients array pointer
                           SLArrayIndex_t *,    LMS filter offset pointer
                           const SLArrayIndex_t, LMS filter length
                           const SLData_t,      Adaptation step length
                           const SLData_t)      Error

```

## DESCRIPTION

This function updates the adaptive transversal filter with the sign data LMS algorithm. The following coefficient update algorithm is used:

$$y(n) = \sum_{k=0}^{N-1} w(k) * x(n-k)$$

$$e(n) = d(n) - y(n)$$

$$w(k) = w(k) + u * e(n) * \text{sign}[x(n-k)] \quad k = 0, 1, 2, \dots, N-1$$

Where  $\text{sign}[x] = 1.0$  for  $x \geq 0$  and  $\text{sign}[x] = -1.0$  for  $x < 0$

The sign data LMS function is one of a group of functions that allows for more efficient execution on a range of processors, typically fixed point. The mathematical simplification is through taking the sign of the data component.

## NOTES ON USE

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_Lms, SDS\_Lms, SDA\_LmsUpdate, SDA\_LeakyLmsUpdate,  
 SDA\_NormalizedLmsUpdate, SDA\_SignErrorLmsUpdate,  
 SDA\_SignSignLmsUpdate.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_SignSignLmsUpdate (const SLData_t *,   Filter state array pointer
                           SLData_t *,         LMS filter coefficients array pointer
                           SLArrayIndex_t *,    LMS filter offset pointer
                           const SLArrayIndex_t, LMS filter length
                           const SLData_t,      Adaptation step length
                           const SLData_t)      Error
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function updates the adaptive transversal filter with the sign-sign LMS algorithm. The following coefficient update algorithm is used:

$$y(n) = \sum_{k=0}^{N-1} w(k) * x(n-k)$$

$$e(n) = d(n) - y(n)$$

$$w(k) = w(k) + u * \text{sign}[e(n)] * \text{sign}[x(n-k)] \quad k = 0, 1, 2, \dots, N-1$$

Where  $\text{sign}[x] = 1.0$  for  $x \geq 0$  and  $\text{sign}[x] = -1.0$  for  $x < 0$

The sign-sign LMS function is one of a group of functions that allows for more efficient execution on a range of processors, typically fixed point. The mathematical simplification is through taking the sign of both the error and the data components.

## NOTES ON USE

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_Lms, SDS\_Lms, SDA\_LmsUpdate, SDA\_LeakyLmsUpdate, SDA\_NormalizedLmsUpdate, SDA\_SignErrorLmsUpdate, SDA\_SignDataLmsUpdate.

## CONVOLUTION FUNCTIONS (*convolve.c*)

### SDA\_ConvolveLinear

---

#### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_ConvolveLinear (const SLData_t *,      Input array pointer
                        const SLData_t *,      Impulse response data pointer
                        SLData_t *,            Destination array pointer
                        const SLArrayIndex_t,   Input data length
                        const SLArrayIndex_t)   Impulse response length
```

#### DESCRIPTION

This function performs a linear (zero padded) convolution between two arrays. One array containing the input data, and one containing the impulse response function, to which that data is being applied.

The equation for this function is:

$$y[m] = \sum_{n=0}^{W-1} (w[n] * x[m-n]) \quad 0 \leq m < W + X - 1$$

#### NOTES ON USE

This function is almost identical to the FIR filter function, it is however treated as a separate function for the sake of completeness and because treating the functions separately fits more naturally into many applications.

This function treats all data outside the specified arrays as zero.

The Destination array length must be greater than or equal to  $W+X-1$

The input and output arrays can be of different lengths.

#### CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_ConvolveCircular, SDA\_ConvolvePartial, SDA\_CorrelateLinear,  
SDA\_CorrelateCircular, SDA\_ConvolveLinearComplex,  
SDA\_ConvolvePartialComplex, SDA\_ConvolveCircularComplex

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_ConvolvePartial (const SLData_t *,      Input array pointer
                        const SLData_t *,      Impulse response data pointer
                        SLData_t *,            Destination array pointer
                        const SLArrayIndex_t,    Input data length
                        const SLArrayIndex_t)    Impulse response length
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function performs a linear (non-zero padded) convolution between two arrays. One array containing the input data, and one containing the impulse response function, to which that data is being applied.

The equation for this function is:

$$y[m] = \sum_{n=0}^{W-1} (w[n] * x[m + W - 1 - n]) \quad 0 \leq m < W - X$$

## NOTES ON USE

This function only convolves the data where the arrays completely overlap each other. The Destination array length is equal to  $X+W+1$ . The input array 1 must be larger than or equal to input array 2.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_ConvolveLinear, SDA\_ConvolveCircular, SDA\_CorrelateLinear,  
SDA\_CorrelateCircular, SDA\_ConvolveLinearComplex,  
SDA\_ConvolvePartialComplex, SDA\_ConvolveCircularComplex

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_ConvolveCircular (const SLData_t *,    Input array pointer
                           const SLData_t *,    Impulse response data pointer
                           SLData_t *,          Destination array pointer
                           const SLArrayIndex_t) Input data length
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function performs a circular convolution between two arrays. One array containing the input data, and one containing the impulse response function, to which that data is being applied.

The equation for this function is:

$$y[m] = \sum_{n=0}^{N-1} (w[n] \cdot x[m - n + N]_N) \quad 0 \leq m < N - 1$$

## NOTES ON USE

The input and output arrays must be the same length.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_ConvolveLinear, SDA\_ConvolvePartial, SDA\_CorrelateLinear,  
SDA\_CorrelateCircular, SDA\_ConvolveLinearComplex,  
SDA\_ConvolvePartialComplex, SDA\_ConvolveCircularComplex

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_ConvolveLinearComplex (const SLData_t *,    Pointer to real input array
                                const SLData_t *,    Pointer to imaginary input array
                                const SLData_t *,    Pointer to real impulse response
                                const SLData_t *,    Pointer to imaginary impulse response
                                SLData_t *,          Pointer to real destination array
                                SLData_t *,          Pointer to imaginary destination array
                                const SLArrayIndex_t, Input data length
                                const SLArrayIndex_t) Impulse response length
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function performs a linear (zero padded) convolution between two complex data sequences. One sequence containing the input data, and one containing the impulse response function, to which that data is being applied.

The equation for this function is:

$$y[m] = \sum_{n=0}^{W-1} (w[n] * x[m-n]) \quad 0 \leq m < W + X - 1$$

## NOTES ON USE

This function treats all data outside the specified sequences as zero.  
 The Destination sequence length must be greater than or equal to  $W+X-1$   
 The input and output sequences can be of different lengths.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_ConvolveLinear, SDA\_ConvolveCircular, SDA\_ConvolvePartial,  
 SDA\_CorrelateLinear, SDA\_CorrelateCircular, SDA\_ConvolvePartialComplex,  
 SDA\_ConvolveCircularComplex

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_ConvolvePartialComplex (const SLData_t *,    Pointer to real input array
                                const SLData_t *,    Pointer to imaginary input array
                                const SLData_t *,    Pointer to real impulse response
                                const SLData_t *,    Pointer to imaginary impulse response
                                SLData_t *,          Pointer to real destination array
                                SLData_t *,          Pointer to imaginary destination array
                                const SLArrayIndex_t, Input data length
                                const SLArrayIndex_t) Impulse response length
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function performs a linear (non-zero padded) convolution between two complex data sequences. One sequence containing the input data, and one containing the impulse response function, to which that data is being applied.

The equation for this function is:

$$y[m] = \sum_{n=0}^{W-1} (w[n] * x[m+W-1-n]) \quad 0 \leq m < W-X$$

## NOTES ON USE

This function only convolves the data where the sequences completely overlap each other.

The Destination array length is equal to  $X-W+1$ .

The input sequence 1 must be larger than or equal to input sequence 2.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_ConvolveLinear, SDA\_ConvolvePartial, SDA\_ConvolveCircular,  
SDA\_CorrelateLinear, SDA\_CorrelateCircular, SDA\_ConvolveLinearComplex,  
SDA\_ConvolveCircularComplex



## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_ConvolveCircularComplex (const SLData_t *,  Pointer to real input array
    const SLData_t *,                               Pointer to imaginary input array
    const SLData_t *,                               Pointer to real impulse response
    const SLData_t *,                               Pointer to imaginary impulse response
    SLData_t *,                                     Pointer to real destination array
    SLData_t *,                                     Pointer to imaginary destination array
    const SLArrayIndex_t)                          Array length
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function performs a circular convolution between two complex data sequences. One sequence containing the input data, and one containing the impulse response function, to which that data is being applied.

The equation for this function is:

$$y[m] = \sum_{n=0}^{N-1} (w[n] \cdot x[m - n + N]_N) \quad 0 \leq m < N - 1$$

## NOTES ON USE

The input and output sequences must be the same length.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_ConvolveLinear, SDA\_ConvolvePartial, SDA\_ConvolveCircular,  
SDA\_CorrelateLinear, SDA\_CorrelateCircular, SDA\_ConvolveLinearComplex,  
SDA\_ConvolvePartialComplex

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|                                     |   |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| void SDA_Deconvolution (SLData_t *, | Pointer to real source array            |
| SLData_t *,                         | Pointer to imag. source array           |
| SLData_t *,                         | Pointer to real impulse response array  |
| SLData_t *,                         | Pointer to imag. impulse response array |
| const SLData_t,                     | Minimum value to avoid divide by zero   |
| const SLData_t *,                   | FFT length                              |
| const SLArrayIndex_t *,             | FFT bit reversed address look up table  |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,               | FFT length                              |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,               | Log2 FFT length                         |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)               | Inverse FFT length                      |

## DESCRIPTION

This function performs a frequency domain deconvolution between two arrays. One array containing the input data, and one containing the impulse response function that is being deconvolved from the original.

## NOTES ON USE

The input and output arrays must be the same length – and zero padded to the length of the FFT.

The results are returned in the source arrays.

The impulse response data is destroyed in the process.

The minimum value must be set to avoid division by zero in the deconvolution process.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_ConvolveLinear, SDA\_ConvolvePartial, SDA\_CorrelateLinear,  
SDA\_CorrelateCircular, SIF\_FftDeconvolutionPre, SDA\_FftDeconvolutionPre

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SIF_FftDeconvolutionPre (const SLData_t *,   Pointer to impulse response array
                             SLData_t *,         Pointer to real FT(1/(impulse response))
                             array
                             SLData_t *,         Pointer to imaginary FT(1/(impulse
                             response)) array
                             const SLData_t,      Minimum value to avoid divide by zero
                             const SLData_t *,    FFT coefficients
                             const SLArrayIndex_t *, FFT Bit reversed address look up table
                             const SLArrayIndex_t, FFT length
                             const SLArrayIndex_t) Log2 FFT length
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function initialized the SDA\_FftDeconvolutionPre() function, which uses pre-calculated frequency domain coefficients for the system impulse response.

## NOTES ON USE

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_ConvolveLinear, SDA\_ConvolvePartial, SDA\_CorrelateLinear,  
SDA\_CorrelateCircular, SDA\_FftDeconvolution, SDA\_FftDeconvolutionPre

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|   |  |
|---|--|
| void SDA_FftDeconvolutionPre (SLData_t *, | Pointer to real source array             |
| SLData_t *,                               | Pointer to imaginary source array        |
| const SLData_t *,                         | Pointer to real FT(1/(impulse response)) |
| array                                     |  |
| const SLData_t *,                         | Pointer to imaginary FT(1/(impulse       |
| response)) array                          |  |
| const SLData_t *,                         | FFT coefficients                         |
| const SLArrayIndex_t *,                   | FFT Bit reversed address look up table   |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                     | FFT length                               |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                     | log2 FFT length                          |
| const SLData_t)                           | Inverse FFT Size                         |

## DESCRIPTION

This function performs a frequency domain deconvolution between two arrays. One array containing the input data, and one containing the impulse response function that is being deconvolved from the original. This function uses pre-calculated frequency domain coefficients for the system impulse response.

## NOTES ON USE

The input and output arrays must be the same length – and zero padded to the length of the FFT.

The results are returned in the source arrays.

The impulse response data is destroyed in the process.

The minimum value must be set to avoid division by zero in the deconvolution process.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_ConvolveLinear, SDA\_ConvolvePartial, SDA\_CorrelateLinear,  
SDA\_CorrelateCircular, SDA\_FftDeconvolution, SIF\_FftDeconvolution

## CORRELATION FUNCTIONS (*correlate.c*)

### SDA\_CorrelateLinear

---

#### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_CorrelateLinear (const SLData_t *,   Source array 1 pointer
                          const SLData_t *,   Source array 2 pointer
                          SLData_t *,         Destination array pointer
                          const SLArrayIndex_t, Length of source array 1
                          const SLArrayIndex_t, Length of source array 2
                          const SLArrayIndex_t) Number of correlations
```

#### DESCRIPTION

This function performs a linear cross correlation between two data vectors, the addresses of which are passed to the function.

The equation for the SDA\_CorrelateLinear function is:

$$y[n] = \sum_{m=0}^{L-1-n} (w[m] * x[m+n]) \quad 0 \leq m < L$$

Where:

$w$  is source array 1

$x$  is source array 2

$L$  is the Number of correlations

#### NOTES ON USE

To perform auto-correlation, the address of the vector array to be correlated should be passed twice.

The number of correlations must be  $\geq 1$ .

$\text{Corr}(w,x) \neq \text{corr}(x,w)$  in fact  $\text{corr}(w,x)$  is time reversed from  $\text{corr}(x,w)$ .

#### CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_CorrelatePartial, SDA\_CorrelateCircular, SDA\_Covariance,  
SDA\_CorrelateLinearReturnPeak

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
void SDA_CorrelatePartial (const SLData_t *,   Source array 1 pointer
                          const SLData_t *,   Source array 2 pointer
                          SLData_t *,         Destination array pointer
                          const SLArrayIndex_t, Length of source array 1
                          const SLArrayIndex_t) Length of source array 2
```

**DESCRIPTION**

This function performs a non-overlapped linear cross correlation between two data vectors, the addresses of which are passed to the function.

**NOTES ON USE**

To perform auto-correlation, the address of the vector array to be correlated should be passed twice.

The number of correlations must be  $\geq 1$ .

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_CorrelateLinear, SDA\_CorrelateCircular, SDA\_Covariance,  
SDA\_CorrelateLinearReturnPeak

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
void SDA_CorrelateCircular (const SLData_t *,   Input array 1 pointer
                           const SLData_t *,   Input array 2 pointer
                           SLData_t *,         Destination array pointer
                           const SLArrayIndex_t) Length of input arrays
```

**DESCRIPTION**

This function performs a cyclic cross correlation between two data vectors, the addresses of which are passed to the function.

The equation for the SDA\_CorrelateCircular function is:

$$y[m] = \sum_{n=0}^{N-1} (x[n] \cdot x[(n+m)_N]) \quad 0 \leq m < N$$

**NOTES ON USE**

To perform auto-correlation, the address of the vector array to be correlated should be passed twice.

Both input arrays are the same length

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_CorrelateLinear, SDA\_CorrelatePartial, SDA\_Covariance,  
SDA\_CorrelateLinearReturnPeak

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|                                  |                               |
|----------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| void SDA_Covariance (SLData_t *, | Source array 1 pointer        |
| const SLData_t *,                | Source array 2 pointer        |
| SLData_t *,                      | Destination array pointer     |
| const SLData_t,                  | Inverse of length of array #1 |
| const SLData_t,                  | Inverse of length of array #2 |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,            | Length of source array 1      |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,            | Length of source array 2      |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)            | Number of correlations        |

## DESCRIPTION

This function returns the covariance of two vectors, where the covariance is defined as the correlation of the two vectors, with the means subtracted from the two signals.

## NOTES ON USE

**WARNING: THIS FUNCTION DESTROYS THE SOURCE ARRAYS.**

This function calls the SDA\_CorrelateLinear function.

This function destroys the data in the source arrays.

The “inverse of array length” parameters is used to avoid having to perform a divide operation within the function. This improves run-time performance.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_CorrelateLinear, SDA\_CorrelatePartial, SDA\_CorrelateCircular,  
SDA\_CovariancePartial, SDA\_CorrelateLinearReturnPeak.



**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
void SDA_CovariancePartial (SLData_t *,   Source array 1 pointer
                           const SLData_t *, Source array 2 pointer
                           SLData_t *,     Destination array pointer
                           const SLData_t,  Inverse of length of array #1
                           const SLData_t,  Inverse of length of array #2
                           const SLArrayIndex_t, Length of source array 1
                           const SLArrayIndex_t) Length of source array 2
```

**DESCRIPTION**

This function returns the covariance of two vectors, where the covariance is defined as the correlation of the two vectors, with the means subtracted from the two signals.

**NOTES ON USE**

**WARNING: THIS FUNCTION DESTROYS THE SOURCE ARRAYS.**

This function calls the SDA\_CorrelatePartial function.

This function destroys the data in the source arrays.

The “inverse of array length” parameters is used to avoid having to perform a divide operation within the function. This improves run-time performance.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_CorrelateLinear, SDA\_CorrelatePartial, SDA\_CorrelateCircular,  
SDA\_Covariance, SDA\_CorrelateLinearReturnPeak.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_CorrelateLinearReturnPeak (const SLData_t *,   Source array 1 pointer
                                   const SLData_t *,       Source array 2 pointer
                                   SLData_t *,             Peak value result pointer
                                   SLArrayIndex_t *,        Peak index result pointer
                                   const SLArrayIndex_t,    Length of source array 1
                                   const SLArrayIndex_t,    Length of source array 2
                                   const SLArrayIndex_t)    Number of correlations
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function performs a linear cross correlation between two data vectors, the addresses of which are passed to the function. It then returns the magnitude of the cross correlation peak and the index of that peak in the cross correlation result.

The equation for the SDA\_CorrelateLinear function is:

$$y[n] = \sum_{m=0}^{L-1-n} (w[m] * x[m+n]) \quad 0 \leq m < L$$

Where:

- $w$  is source array 1
- $x$  is source array 2
- $L$  is the Number of correlations

## NOTES ON USE

To perform auto-correlation, the address of the vector array to be correlated should be passed twice.

The number of correlations must be  $\geq 1$ .

$\text{Corr}(w,x) \neq \text{corr}(x,w)$  in fact  $\text{corr}(w,x)$  is time reversed from  $\text{corr}(x,w)$ .

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_CorrelateLinear, SDA\_CorrelatePartial, SDA\_CorrelateCircular,  
SDA\_Covariance, SDA\_CovariancePartial

## DELAY FUNCTIONS (*delay.c*)

### Overview of SigLib delay functions

SigLib includes two different sets of delay functions. The first set of functions (SDS\_FixedDelay, SDA\_FixedDelay, SDS\_FixedDelayComplex, SDA\_FixedDelayComplex) implement a fixed length delay while the second set of functions (SDS\_VariableDelay, SDA\_VariableDelay, SDS\_VariableDelayComplex, SDA\_VariableDelayComplex) implement a variable length delay where the delay can be increased and decreased as required, for example to track timing offsets in a modem.

One other function (SDA\_ShortFixedDelay) is provided that provides a simple delay function where the delay length must be less than the length of the source array.

---

### SIF\_FixedDelay

#### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|                                  |                        |
|----------------------------------|------------------------|
| void SIF_FixedDelay (SLData_t *, | State array pointer    |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                | Pointer to delay index |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)            | Delay length           |

#### DESCRIPTION

This function initializes the delay functions SDS\_FixedDelay, SDA\_FixedDelay or SDA\_ShortFixedDelay. Initialises the state array and the delay index to zero.

#### NOTES ON USE

If this function is used to initialise SDA\_ShortFixedDelay then the delay index pointer can be set to SIGLIB\_NULL\_FIX\_DATA\_PTR and it will be ignored.

#### CROSS REFERENCE

SDS\_FixedDelay, SDA\_FixedDelay, SIF\_FixedDelayComplex, SDS\_FixedDelayComplex, SDA\_FixedDelayComplex, SDA\_ShortFixedDelay, SIF\_VariableDelay, SDS\_VariableDelay, SDA\_VariableDelay, SIF\_VariableDelayComplex, SDS\_VariableDelayComplex, SDA\_VariableDelayComplex.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLData_t SDS_FixedDelay (const SLData_t,      Input sample to delay
                        SLData_t *,           State array pointer
                        SLArrayIndex_t *,      Delay index
                        const SLArrayIndex_t)  Delay length
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function delays the data by  $N$  samples. This function works as a FIFO buffer.

## NOTES ON USE

You must initialise the delay using the function SIF\_FixedDelay.

The state array must be at least as long as the delay length.

The xxx\_FIFODelay functions provide generic FIFO functionality with the ability to increase and decrease the delay on-the-fly.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_FixedDelay, SDA\_FixedDelay, SIF\_FixedDelayComplex,  
SDS\_FixedDelayComplex, SDA\_FixedDelayComplex, SIF\_VariableDelay,  
SDS\_VariableDelay, SDA\_VariableDelay, SIF\_VariableDelayComplex,  
SDS\_VariableDelayComplex, SDA\_VariableDelayComplex.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
void SDA_FixedDelay (const SLData_t *,   Source array pointer
                     SLData_t *,         Destination array pointer
                     SLData_t *,         State array pointer
                     SLArrayIndex_t *,   Delay index
                     const SLArrayIndex_t) Delay length
```

**DESCRIPTION**

This function delays the data by N samples. This function works as a FIFO buffer.

**NOTES ON USE**

You must initialise the delay using the function SIF\_FixedDelay.

The state array must be at least as long as the delay length.

The xxx\_FIFODelay functions provide generic FIFO functionality with the ability to increase and decrease the delay on-the-fly.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SIF\_FixedDelay, SDS\_FixedDelay, SIF\_FixedDelayComplex,  
SDS\_FixedDelayComplex, SDA\_FixedDelayComplex, SIF\_VariableDelay,  
SDS\_VariableDelay, SDA\_VariableDelay, SIF\_VariableDelayComplex,  
SDS\_VariableDelayComplex, SDA\_VariableDelayComplex.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
void SIF_FixedDelayComplex (SLData_t *, Real state array pointer
    SLData_t *,                      Imaginary state array pointer
    SLArrayIndex_t *,                Pointer to delay index
    const SLArrayIndex_t)            Delay length
```

**DESCRIPTION**

This function initializes the delay functions SDS\_FixedDelayComplex and SDA\_FixedDelayComplex. Initialises the state array and the delay index to zero.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SIF\_FixedDelay, SDS\_FixedDelay, SDA\_FixedDelay,  
SDS\_FixedDelayComplex, SDA\_FixedDelayComplex, SIF\_VariableDelay,  
SDS\_VariableDelay, SDA\_VariableDelay, SIF\_VariableDelayComplex,  
SDS\_VariableDelayComplex, SDA\_VariableDelayComplex.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
void SDS_FixedDelayComplex (const SLData_t,    Real input sample to delay
                           const SLData_t,    Imaginary input sample to delay
                           SLData_t *,        Real destination sample pointer
                           SLData_t *,        Imaginary destination sample pointer
                           SLData_t *,        Real state array pointer
                           SLData_t *,        Imaginary state array pointer
                           SLArrayIndex_t *,  Delay index
                           const SLArrayIndex_t) Delay length
```

**DESCRIPTION**

This function delays the complex data by N samples. This function works as a FIFO buffer.

**NOTES ON USE**

You must initialise the delay using the function SIF\_FixedDelayComplex.

The state arrays must be at least as long as the delay length.

The xxx\_FIFODelay functions provide generic FIFO functionality with the ability to increase and decrease the delay on-the-fly.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SIF\_FixedDelay, SDS\_FixedDelay, SDA\_FixedDelay,  
SIF\_FixedDelayComplex, SDA\_FixedDelayComplex, SIF\_VariableDelay,  
SDS\_VariableDelay, SDA\_VariableDelay, SIF\_VariableDelayComplex,  
SDS\_VariableDelayComplex, SDA\_VariableDelayComplex.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
void SDA_FixedDelayComplex (const SLData_t *, Real source array pointer
    const SLData_t *,           Imaginary source array pointer
    SLData_t *,                 Real destination array pointer
    SLData_t *,                 Imaginary destination array pointer
    SLData_t *,                 Real state array pointer
    SLData_t *,                 Imaginary state array pointer
    SLArrayIndex_t *,           Delay index
    const SLArrayIndex_t)       Delay length
```

**DESCRIPTION**

This function delays the complex data by N samples. This function works as a FIFO buffer.

**NOTES ON USE**

You must initialise the delay using the function SIF\_FixedDelayComplex.

The state arrays must be at least as long as the delay length.

The xxx\_FIFODelay functions provide generic FIFO functionality with the ability to increase and decrease the delay on-the-fly.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SIF\_FixedDelay, SDS\_FixedDelay, SDA\_FixedDelay,  
SIF\_FixedDelayComplex, SDS\_FixedDelayComplex, SIF\_VariableDelay,  
SDS\_VariableDelay, SDA\_VariableDelay, SIF\_VariableDelayComplex,  
SDS\_VariableDelayComplex, SDA\_VariableDelayComplex.



**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
void SDA_ShortFixedDelay (const SLData_t *,      Source array pointer
                          SLData_t *,            Destination array pointer
                          SLData_t *,            Temporary delayed array pointer
                          SLData_t *,            Temporary destination array pointer
                          const SLArrayIndex_t,   Sample delay count
                          const SLArrayIndex_t)   Delay length
```

**DESCRIPTION**

This function delays the data in the array by N samples, any remaining data will be carried over and will be used in succeeding functions.

**NOTES ON USE**

This function will work in-place.

The delay length must be less than the length of the source array.

The temporary array must be the same length as the length of the delay and should be initialised using the functions SDA\_Clear or SIF\_FixedDelay prior to use.

The xxx\_FIFODelay functions provide generic FIFO functionality with the ability to increase and decrease the delay on-the-fly.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SIF\_FixedDelay, SDS\_FixedDelay, SDA\_FixedDelay, SIF\_VariableDelay,  
SDS\_VariableDelay, SDA\_VariableDelay.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SL\_Error\_t SIF\_VariableDelay (SLData\_t \*, Pointer to the delay state array  
SLArrayIndex\_t \*, Pointer to the FIFO input index  
SLArrayIndex\_t \*, Pointer to the FIFO output index  
SLArrayIndex\_t \*, Variable FIFO delay length  
const SLArrayIndex\_t, Initial FIFO delay value  
const SLArrayIndex\_t) Maximum delay length

**DESCRIPTION**

This function initialises the FIFO Delay functions.

**NOTES ON USE**

The index pointers are used to access the FIFO for the input and output streams.  
These values are initialised by the function.

The length of the delay state array must be at least the size of the maximum FIFO delay length.

The minimum delay length (in number of samples) is equal to zero.  
The maximum delay length (in number of samples) is equal to MaxDelayLength - 1.  
This function returns SIGLIB\_ERROR if the requested initial FIFO delay is less than zero or greater than the maximum allowable delay  
The variable FIFO delay parameter is used to track the depth of the delay in the state array to ensure that it does not overflow. This is used by the functions  
SUF\_IncreaseVariableDelay and SUF\_DecreaseVariableDelay.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SIF\_FixedDelay, SDS\_FixedDelay, SDA\_FixedDelay,  
SIF\_FixedDelayComplex, SDS\_FixedDelayComplex, SDA\_FixedDelayComplex,  
SDS\_VariableDelay, SDA\_VariableDelay, SIF\_VariableDelayComplex,  
SDS\_VariableDelayComplex, SDA\_VariableDelayComplex,  
SUF\_IncreaseVariableDelay, SUF\_DecreaseVariableDelay.

### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|          |                   |                       |                                  |
|----------|-------------------|-----------------------|----------------------------------|
| SLData_t | SDS_VariableDelay | (const SLData_t,      | Input value                      |
|          |                   | SLData_t *,           | Pointer to the delay state array |
|          |                   | SLArrayIndex_t *,     | Pointer to the FIFO input index  |
|          |                   | SLArrayIndex_t *,     | Pointer to the FIFO output index |
|          |                   | const SLArrayIndex_t) | Maximum delay length             |

### DESCRIPTION

This function implements a FIFO Delay on a single input sample and generates a single output sample.

### NOTES ON USE

The delay through this function can be modified on-the-fly using the functions `SUF_IncreaseVariableDelay` and `SUF_DecreaseVariableDelay`.

### CROSS REFERENCE

`SIF_FixedDelay`, `SDS_FixedDelay`, `SDA_FixedDelay`,  
`SIF_FixedDelayComplex`, `SDS_FixedDelayComplex`, `SDA_FixedDelayComplex`,  
`SIF_VariableDelay`, `SDA_VariableDelay`, `SIF_VariableDelayComplex`,  
`SDS_VariableDelayComplex`, `SDA_VariableDelayComplex`,  
`SUF_IncreaseVariableDelay`, `SUF_DecreaseVariableDelay`.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_VariableDelay (const SLData_t *,      Pointer to the input array
                        SLData_t *,           Pointer to the output array
                        SLData_t *,           Pointer to the delay state array
                        SLArrayIndex_t *,      Pointer to the FIFO input index
                        SLArrayIndex_t *,      Pointer to the FIFO output index
                        const SLArrayIndex_t,  Maximum delay length
                        const SLArrayIndex_t)  Input / output array length
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function implements a FIFO Delay on a stream of samples.

## NOTES ON USE

The delay through this function can be modified on-the-fly using the functions `SUF_IncreaseVariableDelay` and `SUF_DecreaseVariableDelay`.

## CROSS REFERENCE

`SIF_FixedDelay`, `SDS_FixedDelay`, `SDA_FixedDelay`,  
`SIF_FixedDelayComplex`, `SDS_FixedDelayComplex`, `SDA_FixedDelayComplex`,  
`SIF_VariableDelay`, `SDS_VariableDelay`, `SIF_VariableDelayComplex`,  
`SDS_VariableDelayComplex`, `SDA_VariableDelayComplex`,  
`SUF_IncreaseVariableDelay`, `SUF_DecreaseVariableDelay`.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```

SL_Error_t SIF_VariableDelayComplex (SLData_t *, Pointer to real delay state array
    SLData_t *,                               Pointer to imaginary delay state array
    SLArrayIndex_t *,                         Pointer to the FIFO input index
    SLArrayIndex_t *,                         Pointer to the FIFO output index
    SLArrayIndex_t *,                         Variable FIFO delay length
    const SLArrayIndex_t,                     Initial FIFO delay value
    const SLArrayIndex_t)                     Maximum delay length

```

## DESCRIPTION

This function initialises the complex FIFO Delay functions.

## NOTES ON USE

The index pointers are used to access the FIFO for the input and output streams. These values are initialised by the function.

The length of the delay state arrays must be at least the size of the maximum FIFO delay length.

The minimum delay length (in number of samples) is equal to zero.  
 The maximum delay length (in number of samples) is equal to MaxDelayLength - 1.  
 This function returns SIGLIB\_ERROR if the requested initial FIFO delay is less than zero or greater than the maximum allowable delay.  
 The variable FIFO delay parameter is used to track the depth of the delay in the state array to ensure that it does not overflow. This is used by the functions  
 SUF\_IncreaseVariableDelay and SUF\_DecreaseVariableDelay.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_FixedDelay, SDS\_FixedDelay, SDA\_FixedDelay,  
 SIF\_FixedDelayComplex, SDS\_FixedDelayComplex, SDA\_FixedDelayComplex,  
 SIF\_VariableDelay, SDS\_VariableDelay, SDA\_VariableDelay,  
 SDS\_VariableDelayComplex, SDA\_VariableDelayComplex,  
 SUF\_IncreaseVariableDelay, SUF\_DecreaseVariableDelay.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDS_VariableDelayComplex (const SLData_t, Real input value
    const SLData_t,           Imaginary input value
    SLData_t *,               Pointer to real output value
    SLData_t *,               Pointer to imaginary output value
    SLData_t *,               Pointer to real delay state array
    SLData_t *,               Pointer to imaginary delay state array
    SLArrayIndex_t *,         Pointer to the FIFO input index
    SLArrayIndex_t *,         Pointer to the FIFO output index
    const SLArrayIndex_t)     Maximum delay length
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function implements a FIFO Delay on a single complex input sample and generates a single complex output sample.

## NOTES ON USE

The delay through this function can be modified on-the-fly using the functions `SUF_IncreaseVariableDelay` and `SUF_DecreaseVariableDelay`.

## CROSS REFERENCE

`SIF_FixedDelay`, `SDS_FixedDelay`, `SDA_FixedDelay`,  
`SIF_FixedDelayComplex`, `SDS_FixedDelayComplex`, `SDA_FixedDelayComplex`,  
`SIF_VariableDelay`, `SDS_VariableDelay`, `SDA_VariableDelay`,  
`SIF_VariableDelayComplex`, `SDA_VariableDelayComplex`,  
`SUF_IncreaseVariableDelay`, `SUF_DecreaseVariableDelay`.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_VariableDelayComplex (const SLData_t *, Pointer to the real input array
    const SLData_t *,           Pointer to the imaginary input array
    SLData_t *,                 Pointer to the real output array
    SLData_t *,                 Pointer to the imaginary output array
    SLData_t *,                 Pointer to real delay state array
    SLData_t *,                 Pointer to imaginary delay state array
    SLArrayIndex_t *,           Pointer to the FIFO input index
    SLArrayIndex_t *,           Pointer to the FIFO output index
    const SLArrayIndex_t,       Maximum delay length
    const SLArrayIndex_t)       Input / output array length
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function implements a FIFO Delay on a stream of samples.

## NOTES ON USE

The delay through this function can be modified on-the-fly using the functions `SUF_IncreaseVariableDelay` and `SUF_DecreaseVariableDelay`.

## CROSS REFERENCE

`SIF_FixedDelay`, `SDS_FixedDelay`, `SDA_FixedDelay`,  
`SIF_FixedDelayComplex`, `SDS_FixedDelayComplex`, `SDA_FixedDelayComplex`,  
`SIF_VariableDelay`, `SDS_VariableDelay`, `SDA_VariableDelay`,  
`SIF_FifoComplexDelay`, `SDS_FifoComplexDelay`, `SUF_IncreaseVariableDelay`,  
`SUF_DecreaseVariableDelay`.

### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLArrayIndex\_t SUF\_IncreaseVariableDelay (SLArrayIndex\_t \*, Pointer to the  
FIFO output index

|                       |                         |
|-----------------------|-------------------------|
| SLArrayIndex_t *,     | Pointer to delay length |
| const SLArrayIndex_t) | Maximum delay length    |

### DESCRIPTION

This function increments the FIFO delay length.

### NOTES ON USE

This function returns an error if the incremented delay is greater than the maximum allowable delay and it does not adjust the delay.

### CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_VariableDelay, SDS\_VariableDelay, SDA\_VariableDelay,  
SIF\_VariableDelayComplex, SDS\_VariableDelayComplex,  
SDA\_VariableDelayComplex, SUF\_DecreaseVariableDelay.



**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLArrayIndex\_t SUF\_DecreaseVariableDelay (SLArrayIndex\_t \*, Pointer to the  
FIFO output index

|                       |                         |
|-----------------------|-------------------------|
| SLArrayIndex_t *,     | Pointer to delay length |
| const SLArrayIndex_t) | Maximum delay length    |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function decrements the FIFO delay length.

**NOTES ON USE**

This function returns SIGLIB\_ERROR if the decremented delay is less than zero and it does not adjust the delay.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SIF\_VariableDelay, SDS\_VariableDelay, SDA\_VariableDelay,  
SIF\_FifoComplexDelay, SDS\_FifoComplexDelay, SDA\_FifoComplexDelay,  
SUF\_IncreaseVariableDelay.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLArrayIndex_t SDA_Align (const SLData_t *, Pointer to source array #1
                          const SLData_t *,      Pointer to source array #2
                          SLData_t *,            Pointer to destination array #1
                          SLData_t *,            Pointer to destination array #2
                          const enum SAlign_t,     Alignment mode
                          const SLArrayIndex_t,    Source array #1 length
                          const SLArrayIndex_t)    Source array #2 length
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function first locates the cross-correlation peak (using SDA\_CorrelateLinearReturnPeak()) then aligns the two arrays.

The return value is the length of the destination arrays.

## NOTES ON USE

The two available alignment types are:

|                     |  |
|---------------------|--|
| SIGLIB_ALIGN_EXTEND | Zero pads each array so that no data is lost                 |
| SIGLIB_ALIGN_CROP   | Crops the output so that only the overlaped data is returned |

It is important to ensure that the destination arrays are long enough to hold the worst case output: Source array #1 length + Source array #1 length -1.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_CorrelateLinearReturnPeak

## IMAGE PROCESSING FUNCTIONS (*image.c*)



**Due to the memory requirements of image processing applications, LARGE memory models may be required for some processors. When using the image processing functions on a 16 bit processor it is often necessary to use the “huge” keyword when declaring pointers. The definition of whether the “huge” keyword is required in the function declaration is located in the processor specific section of the *siglib.h* file. To select the “huge” declaration, set the defined constant `_SL_HUGE_ARRAYS` to “1”. If the “huge” keyword is unnecessary then this should be set to “0”.**

The SigLib Windows DLL libraries are compiled for either 32 or 64 bits so `_SL_HUGE_ARRAYS` should be set to “0” at all times.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|  |  |
|--|--|
| void SIM_Fft2d (const SLImageData_t *, | Source image pointer                   |
| const SLImageData_t *,                 | Destination image pointer              |
| const SLData_t *,                      | FFT coefficients pointer               |
| SLImageData_t *,                       | Pointer to FFT calculation array       |
| SLData_t *,                            | Pointer to real FFT calculation array  |
| SLData_t *,                            | Pointer to imag. FFT calculation array |
| const SLData_t,                        | 1.0 / Dimension - used for FFT scaling |
| const SLArrayIndex_t *,                | Bit reverse mode flag / Pointer to bit |
| reverse address table                  |  |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                  | Dimension of image                     |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)                  | Log2 of dimension of image             |

## DESCRIPTION

This function performs a two dimensional FFT on an image.

## NOTES ON USE

The program is currently written for the integer based machines, because of memory limitations etc. all temporary pixel storage is in fixed point format and the data after each FFT is scaled to fit. The function can be easily ported to any environment and it becomes significantly simpler on systems with more memory and on systems with floating point capability. The latter will allow the removal of all of the scaling that has currently been included, to facilitate pixel storage in a single byte of memory. The final results are logarithmic, to maintain the best dynamic range.

There are many different techniques for performing a multi-dimensional FFT, the actual technique chosen often depends on the hardware architecture. On large workstations with a linear address space it is often more computationally efficient to perform the whole 2D FFT as a single process. When using general purpose floating point DSPs, with on-chip memory or when using some of the more modern RISC processors with on-chip cache, it is often more efficient to perform the row and column FFTs separately in this memory. There is an overhead associated with transferring the data in and out of on-chip memory, but this does not usually outweigh the benefit of performing the FFT in on-chip memory. It is for this reason that the SigLib SIM\_Fft2d function performs the row and column FFTs separately.

Further parameter details: The pointer to FFT calculation array - this is a pointer to an array of type SLImageData\_t that is the same size as the source image. Pointer to real and imaginary FFT calculation arrays - these are pointers to arrays of type SLData\_t that are as long as one dimension of the image – either row or column.

Please also refer to the notes about the regular FFT functions.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_Fft2d

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|                             |  |
|-----------------------------|--|
| void SIF_Fft2d (SLData_t *, | FFT coefficient pointer                |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,           | Bit reverse mode flag / Pointer to bit |
| reverse address table       |  |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)       | Dimension of image                     |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function initializes 2D FFT function, including twiddle factor array. Prior to using the 2D FFT function, the function SIF\_Fft2d() must be called.

**NOTES ON USE**

Please also refer to the notes about the regular FFT functions.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SIM\_Fft2d

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
void SIM_Conv3x3 (const SLImageData_t *,      Source array pointer
                  SLImageData_t *,           Destination array pointer
                  const SLData_t *,          Coefficients array pointer
                  const SLArrayIndex_t,      Line length
                  const SLArrayIndex_t)      Column length
```

**DESCRIPTION**

This function convolves an arbitrary n x m image with a 3x3 kernel.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SIM\_SobelVertical3x3, SIM\_SobelHorizontal3x3, SIM\_Median3x3,  
SIM\_Sobel3x3, SIF\_ConvCoefficients3x3

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
void SIM_Sobel3x3 (const SLImageData_t *,      Source array pointer
                  SLImageData_t *,            Destination array pointer
                  const SLArrayIndex_t,        Line length
                  const SLArrayIndex_t)        Column length
```

**DESCRIPTION**

This function convolves an arbitrary n x m image with a 3x3 Sobel filter kernel.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SIM\_SobelVertical3x3, SIM\_SobelHorizontal3x3, SIM\_Median3x3,  
SIM\_Sobel3x3

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SIM_SobelVertical3x3 (const SLImageData_t *,      Source array pointer
                           SLImageData_t *,            Destination array pointer
                           const SLArrayIndex_t,        Line length
                           const SLArrayIndex_t)        Column length
```

## DESCRIPTION

The SIM\_SobelVertical3x3 function performs a two dimensional Sobel vertical edge detection filter on the image. The coefficients for the filter are:

$$S = \begin{bmatrix} -1 & 0 & 1 \\ -2 & 0 & 2 \\ -1 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

## NOTES ON USE

This filter gives better performance if the image has been cleaned up by low pass filtering and thresholding.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIM\_Sobel3x3, SIM\_SobelHorizontal3x3, SIM\_Median3x3



**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
void SIM_SobelHorizontal3x3 (const SLImageData_t *, Source array Pointer
                             SLImageData_t *,           Destination array pointer
                             const SLArrayIndex_t,       Line length
                             const SLArrayIndex_t)       Column length
```

**DESCRIPTION**

The SIM\_SobelHorizontal3x3 function performs a two dimensional horizontal Sobel edge detection filter on the image. The coefficients for the filter are:

$$S = \begin{bmatrix} -1 & -2 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 2 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

**NOTES ON USE**

This filter gives better performance if the image has been cleaned up by low pass filtering and thresholding.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SIM\_Median3x3, SIM\_Sobel3x3, SIM\_SobelVertical3x3

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
void SIM_Median3x3 (const SLImageData_t *,    Source array pointer  
                  SLImageData_t *,          Destination array pointer  
                  const SLArrayIndex_t,      Line length  
                  const SLArrayIndex_t)      Column length
```

**DESCRIPTION**

The SIM\_Median3x3 function performs a two dimensional median filter on the image.

**NOTES ON USE**

The 3x3 median filter is good at removing impulse noise unlike the 3x3 convolution it also good for preserving spatial resolution. It performs well on binary noise, but poorly on Gaussian. The median filter also doesn't perform well if there are more than 4 noise pixels per kernel.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SIM\_Conv3x3, SIM\_SobelVertical3x3, SIM\_SobelHorizontal3x3

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SL\_Error\_t SIF\_ConvCoefficients3x3 SLData\_t \*,   Pointer to coefficient array  
                   enum SL3x3Coeffs\_t           Filter type

## DESCRIPTION

This function initializes the coefficients for the following 3x3 convolution kernels:

Edge enhancement (SIGLIB\_EDGE\_ENHANCEMENT):

$$h = \begin{bmatrix} -1 & -1 & -1 \\ -1 & 8 & -1 \\ -1 & -1 & -1 \end{bmatrix}$$

Horizontal edge detection (SIGLIB\_HORIZONTAL\_EDGE):

$$h = \begin{bmatrix} -1 & -1 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

Vertical edge detection (SIGLIB\_VERTICAL\_EDGE):

$$h = \begin{bmatrix} -1 & 0 & 1 \\ -1 & 0 & 1 \\ -1 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

## NOTES ON USE

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIM\_Conv3x3, SIM\_Sobel3x3, SIM\_SobelVertical3x3,  
 SIM\_SobelHorizontal3x3, SIM\_Median3x3

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLImageData\_t SIM\_Max (const SLImageData\_t \*,       Array pointer  
                          const SLArrayIndex\_t)        Array length

**DESCRIPTION**

This function returns the maximum data value in the image array.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SIM\_Max.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLImageData\_t SIM\_Min (const SLImageData\_t \*,       Array pointer  
                          const SLArrayIndex\_t)       Array length

**DESCRIPTION**

This function returns the minimum data value in the image array.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SIM\_Max.

|                        |      |
|------------------------|------|
| void SIF_Dct8x8 (void) | Void |
|------------------------|------|

DESCRIPTION

This function initialises the coefficient table for the 8 x 8 DCT. The coefficients are scaled to give a symmetric DCT / inverse DCT pair. The frequency domain coefficients produced by this technique will have a larger dynamic range than the input time domain data. Typically the dynamic range will be larger by a factor of about 4 to 6.

NOTES ON USE

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIM\_Dct8x8, SIM\_Idct8x8, SIM\_ZigZagScan, SIM\_ZigZagDescan

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|                                    |                           |
|------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| void SIM_Dct8x8 (const SLData_t *, | Source array pointer      |
| SLData_t *)                        | Destination array pointer |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function performs an 8 x 8 DCT on the data.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SIF\_Dct8x8, SIM\_Idct8x8, SIM\_ZigZagScan, SIM\_ZigZagDescan

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|                                     |                           |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| void SIM_Idct8x8 (const SLData_t *, | Source array pointer      |
| SLData_t *)                         | Destination array pointer |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function performs an inverse 8 x 8 DCT on the data.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SIF\_Dct8x8, SIM\_Dct8x8, SIM\_ZigZagScan, SIM\_ZigZagDescan



**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
void SIM_ZigZagScan (const SLData_t *,   Source array pointer
                    SLData_t *,         Destination array pointer
                    const SLArrayIndex_t) Array lengths
```

**DESCRIPTION**

This function performs a zig-zag scan of the square 2D source array and place the results in a 1D array. In the zig-zag scan, the destination array is linearly addressed and the pointer to the source array must be non-linearly modified at the boundaries of the square matrix.

**NOTES ON USE**

The source array must be square and the two arrays must have the same number of elements.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SIF\_Dct8x8, SIM\_Dct8x8, SIM\_Idct8x8, SIM\_ZigZagDescan

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
void SIM_ZigZagDescan (const SLData_t *,Source array pointer  
                      SLData_t *,           Destination array pointer  
                      const SLArrayIndex_t)      Array lengths
```

**DESCRIPTION**

This function performs a linear scan of the 1D source array and place the results in a zig-zag scanned square 2D array. In the zig-zag de-scan, the source array is linearly addressed and the pointer to the destination array must be non-linearly modified at the boundaries of the square matrix.

**NOTES ON USE**

The destination array must be square and the two arrays must have the same number of elements.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SIF\_Dct8x8, SIM\_Dct8x8, SIM\_Idct8x8, SIM\_ZigZagScan

#### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|   |                                    |
|---|------------------------------------|
| SLError_t SDA_SignalGenerate (SLData_t *, | Destination array pointer          |
| const enum SLSignal_t,                    | Signal type                        |
| const SLData_t,                           | Peak value of signal               |
| const enum SLSignalFillMode_t,            | Array fill mode, fill up or add to |
| SLData_t,                                 | Signal frequency                   |
| const SLData_t,                           | Signal offset                      |
| const SLData_t,                           | Control parameter                  |
| const SLData_t,                           | End value                          |
| SLData_t *,                               | Phase offset                       |
| SLData_t *,                               | Current value                      |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)                     | Array length                       |

#### DESCRIPTION

This function fills the array with a signal, according to the equation specified, the following is a list of the possible types, for the signal specification parameter:

```
SIGLIB_SINE_WAVE,  
SIGLIB_COSINE_WAVE,  
SIGLIB_WHITE_NOISE - normal distribution,  
SIGLIB_GAUSSIAN_NOISE - Gaussian distribution,  
SIGLIB_CHIRP_NL (non-linear),  
SIGLIB_CHIRP_LIN (linear),  
SIGLIB_SQUARE_WAVE,  
SIGLIB_TRIANGLE_WAVE  
SIGLIB_IMPULSE,  
SIGLIB_IMPULSE_STREAM,  
SIGLIB_STEP,  
SIGLIB_PN_SEQUENCE.
```

In addition to specifying the signal type, the mode with which the signal data is entered into the array can be specified. The two possibilities are: SIGLIB\_FILL and SIGLIB\_ADD. The former writes the data directly into the array, the latter adds the data to the existing contents of the array.

Some of the function parameters are obvious in their meaning and use, however the following will clarify some points. The signal type, SLSignal\_t, should be one of the enumerated signal types, previously mentioned. The peak parameter specifies the largest positive value, that the signal will attain, all other values are scaled to this value accordingly. The array fill mode specifies whether to overwrite, or add to the existing array contents. The signal frequency parameter specifies the frequency, normalised to a sample rate of 1.0. Signal offset adds a specified DC offset to the signal, before storing it.

The frequency parameter is normalised to a sample rate of 1 Hz, therefore to calculate the entry for a particular frequency, at a particular sample rate, use:

$$y[m] = \sum_{n=0}^{N-1} (w[n] \cdot x[\lfloor n + m \rfloor_N]) \quad 0 \leq m < N$$

To fill any array with a single cycle wave, use:

$$\text{frequency parameter} = \frac{1}{\text{array length}}$$

The control parameter has different applications for different signal types. For the SQUARE wave it defines the duty cycle. For the TRIANGLE wave it specifies whether the signal is: a positively increasing, negatively decreasing, or a symmetric waveform. For the chirp signals this parameter specifies the rate of change of the frequency (the chirp) of the SINE wave (see below). In a linear chirp the frequency is incremented by a fixed value each time whereas in a non-linear chirp the frequency is multiplied by a constant factor so in the latter case the frequency variation increases with each sample. The control parameter also specifies the delay for an IMPULSE signal, in bins, from the start of the array. The PN\_SEQUENCE signal requires that this parameter specifies the number of discrete levels that are generated, between 0 and the value specified by the peak parameter.

The GAUSSIAN\_NOISE option uses the Box-Muller method for generating Gaussian (normally) distributed random noise. The only parameter that mathematically effects the outcome is the ‘control parameter’, which supplies the variance of the noise and can be any positive real number, as required. You should initialise the GaussPhase variable to SIGLIB\_ZERO prior to calling this function. When using the GAUSSIAN\_NOISE option to generate a signal with a given signal to noise ratio (SNR) then the following equation should be used:

$$\text{SNR} = \frac{\text{average power of the signal}}{\text{variance of the Gaussian noise}}$$

When generating random numbers, SigLib uses the defined constant “SL\_RANDOMIZE” to define whether the sequence should use the system default seed for the pseudo random sequence. Setting SL\_RANDOMIZE to “1” will use the system clock to initialise the seed. Setting SL\_RANDOMIZE to “0” will use the system default seed.

The phase offset address parameter is used to store the current phase of the signal. This parameter ensures that the function does not introduce any discontinuities across array boundaries. The phase for the sine and cosine functions are in radians.

The current value parameter is used by the pseudo-random sequence generation function, to save the current value, so that sequences longer than a single array length may be generated. The reason for passing an address is that in any particular process many different signals may be required and each will require a separate current value register. For the chirp signal this specifies the current value being output and is used to maintain the signal phase across array boundaries.

The end value parameter is used by when generating a chirp signal to specify the end frequency for the chirp.

The TRIANGLE waveform generator can generate three forms of triangular wave, a positively increasing, negatively decreasing, or a symmetric wave. The symmetric generation function actually generates a positively offset waveform, then the offset is removed before the data is stored. The reason for this is that the offset parameter must keep track, not only of the current amplitude, but whether the signal is increasing or decreasing in amplitude. The current value is therefore stored with a sign corresponding to the sign of the differential of the signal.

The IMPULSE and IMPULSE\_STREAM signals are respectively a single impulse, in the array and a stream of impulses, with a frequency as defined by the frequency parameter.

The STEP signal generates a "0" level for all vector indices less than the control parameter and a "peak" level for all indices greater than or equal to the control parameter. Note: for users of the SigLib DLLs via the BASIC language, this is declared as STEP\_SIGNAL to avoid confusion with the "step" keyword.

The SDA\_SignalGenerate function allows for the generation of two types of CHIRP signal, a linear and a non-linear one, each has its own benefits and applications. The two functions are similar in function, they will both allow chirps to be generated, between a lower and an upper limit and when the limits are reached, the frequency will change to the other limit. The functions are used slightly differently, as described here.

Both the signal types require a chirp rate specification, for the non-linear chirp signal, this must be greater than 1.0 for an increasing frequency wave, or less than 1.0 for a decreasing frequency wave. For the linear chirp signal, the chirp rate specified must be greater than zero for an increasing frequency wave, or less than zero for a decreasing frequency wave, in this case:

$$\text{chirp rate} = \frac{f_{\text{max}} - f_{\text{min}}}{\text{chirp period} * \text{sample rate}}$$

## NOTES ON USE

When signals are being generated that do not use the phase or current value parameters, it is recommended that the parameter is defined as SIGLIB\_NULL\_FLOAT\_PTR in the function call.

If a PN sequence is required, centred about 0 then the peak value should be twice the required value and an offset of -peak must be used. For example for a PN signal with range +/- 0.9, the peak must be 1.8 and the offset -0.9.

## EXAMPLE

If we wish to generate a chirp signal with the following characteristics defined using the #define statements:

SAMPLE\_RATE

The system sample rate

CHIRP\_START\_FREQ

Start frequency of the chirp

CHIRP\_END\_FREQ  
SAMPLE\_LENGTH

End frequency of the chirp  
Length of the chirp in samples

Then we would use the following code sample:

```
SDA_SignalGenerate (pSrc, SIGLIB_CHIRP_LIN, SIGLIB_ONE, SIGLIB_FILL,  
                    (CHIRP_START_FREQ / SAMPLE_RATE), SIGLIB_ZERO,  
                    ((CHIRP_END_FREQ - CHIRP_START_FREQ) /  
                     (SAMPLE_LENGTH * SAMPLE_RATE)),  
                    (CHIRP_END_FREQ / SAMPLE_RATE),  
                    &ChirpPhase, &ChirpValue, SAMPLE_LENGTH)
```

The following function call generates Gaussian noise with a variance of 4.0:

```
GaussPhase = SIGLIB_ZERO;  
SDA_SignalGenerate (pRealData, Output array pointer  
                    SIGLIB_GAUSSIAN_NOISE, Signal type - Gaussian noise  
                    SIGLIB_ZERO, Signal peak level - Unused  
                    SIGLIB_FILL, Fill (overwrite) or add to existing  
                                array contents  
                    SIGLIB_ZERO, Signal frequency - Unused  
                    GAUS_NOISE_OFFSET, D.C. Offset  
                    GAUS_NOISE_VARIANCE, Gaussian noise variance  
                    SIGLIB_ZERO, Signal end value - Unused  
                    SIGLIB_ZERO, Pointer to Gaussian signal phase -  
                                should be initialised to zero  
                    SIGLIB_FOUR, Gaussian signal second sample - should  
                                be initialised to zero  
                    SAMPLE_LENGTH) Array length
```

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDS\_SignalGenerate

Macros: SDA\_SignalGenerateKronekerDeltaFunction,

SDA\_SignalGenerateWhiteNoise, SDS\_SignalGenerateWhiteNoise,

SDA\_SignalGenerateGaussianNoise, SDS\_SignalGenerateGaussianNoise.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```

SL_Error_t SDS_SignalGenerate (SLData_t *,      Destination sample pointer
                               const enum SL_Signal_t,  Signal type
                               const SLData_t,          Peak value of signal
                               const enum SL_SignalFillMode_t, Array fill mode, fill up or add to
                               SLData_t,              Signal frequency
                               const SLData_t,          Signal offset
                               const SLData_t,          Control parameter
                               const SLData_t,          End value
                               SLData_t *,             Phase offset
                               SLData_t *)             Current value

```

## DESCRIPTION

This function generates a single sample of a signal, according to the equation specified, the following is a list of the possible types, for the signal specification parameter:

```

SIGLIB_SINE_WAVE,
SIGLIB_COSINE_WAVE,
SIGLIB_WHITE_NOISE - normal distribution,
SIGLIB_GAUSSIAN_NOISE - Gaussian distribution,
SIGLIB_CHIRP_NL (non-linear),
SIGLIB_CHIRP_LIN (linear),
SIGLIB_SQUARE_WAVE,
SIGLIB_TRIANGLE_WAVE
SIGLIB_IMPULSE,
SIGLIB_IMPULSE_STREAM,
SIGLIB_STEP,
SIGLIB_PN_SEQUENCE.

```

For complete details of the parameters to this function, please see SDA\_SignalGenerate.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_SignalGenerate

Macros: SDA\_SignalGenerateKronekerDeltaFunction,  
SDA\_SignalGenerateWhiteNoise, SDS\_SignalGenerateWhiteNoise,  
SDA\_SignalGenerateGaussianNoise, SDS\_SignalGenerateGaussianNoise.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|                                 |                               |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| void SIF_Resonator (SLData_t *, | Filter state array pointer    |
| const SLData_t,                 | Resonant frequency            |
| SLData_t *,                     | Pointer to cosine coefficient |
| SLData_t *)                     | Pointer to sine coefficient   |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function initializes the resonator coefficients and clears the state array to zero.

**NOTES ON USE**

The resonant frequency is normalised to a sample rate of 1.0 Hertz.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_Resonator, SDA\_Resonator1, SDA\_Resonator1Add



## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|                                       |                     |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------|
| void SDA_Resonator (const SLData_t *, | Input array         |
| SLData_t *,                           | Output array        |
| SLData_t *,                           | State array pointer |
| const SLData_t,                       | Cosine coefficient  |
| const SLData_t,                       | Sine coefficient    |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)                 | Array length        |

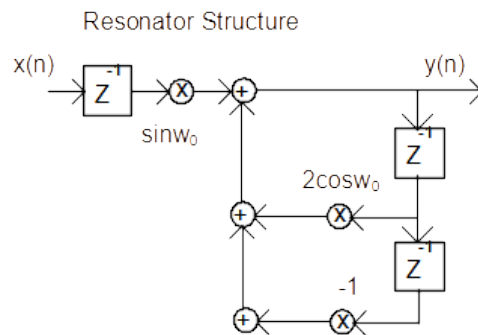
## DESCRIPTION

This function applies a resonator with the following z-transform to the input data stream:

$$H(z) = \frac{\sin \omega_0 z^{-1}}{1 - 2 \cos \omega_0 z^{-1} + z^{-2}}$$

Resonators are often used with an impulse input to generate sinusoidal outputs.

The flow diagram for the resonator is as follows:



## NOTES ON USE

This function works 'in-place' i.e. the input and output array pointers can point to the same array.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_Resonator, SDA\_Resonator1, SDA\_Resonator1Add

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
void SIF_Resonator1 (SLData_t *,   Filter state array pointer
                    const SLData_t, Resonant frequency
                    SLData_t *,    Pointer to cosine coefficient
                    SLData_t *,    Pointer to sine coefficient
                    SLFixData_t *) Pointer to first iteration flag
```

**DESCRIPTION**

Initialise resonator coefficients, clears the state array to zero and initializes first iteration flag.

**NOTES ON USE**

The resonant frequency is normalised to a sample rate of 1.0 Hertz.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_Resonator, SDA\_Resonator1, SDA\_Resonator1Add

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

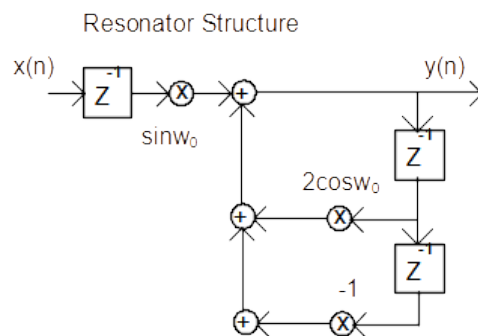
|                                  |                                 |
|----------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| void SDA_Resonator1 (SLData_t *, | Destination array pointer       |
| const SLData_t,                  | Output signal magnitude         |
| SLData_t *,                      | State array pointer             |
| SLFixData_t *,                   | Pointer to first iteration flag |
| const SLData_t,                  | Cosine coefficient              |
| const SLData_t,                  | Sine coefficient                |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)            | Array length                    |

## DESCRIPTION

This function generates a sinusoidal output at the specified frequency. This function is equivalent to applying an impulse to a resonator with the following z-transform:

$$H(z) = \frac{\sin \omega_0 z^{-1}}{1 - 2 \cos \omega_0 z^{-1} + z^{-2}}$$

The flow diagram for the resonator is as follows:



## NOTES ON USE

The first iteration flag must be initialised to SIGLIB\_TRUE

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_Resonator, SDA\_Resonator, SDA\_Resonator1Add

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

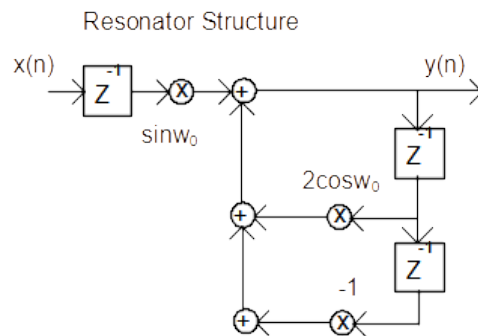
|                                     |                                 |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| void SDA_Resonator1Add (SLData_t *, | Destination array pointer       |
| const SLData_t,                     | Output signal magnitude         |
| SLData_t *,                         | State array pointer             |
| SLFixData_t *,                      | Pointer to first iteration flag |
| const SLData_t,                     | Cosine coefficient              |
| const SLData_t,                     | Sine coefficient                |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)               | Array length                    |

## DESCRIPTION

This function generates a sinusoidal output at the specified frequency and adds the result to the data already in the destination array. This function is equivalent to applying an impulse to a resonator with the following z-transform:

$$H(z) = \frac{\sin \omega_0 z^{-1}}{1 - 2 \cos \omega_0 z^{-1} + z^{-2}}$$

The flow diagram for the resonator is as follows:



## NOTES ON USE

The first iteration flag must be initialised to SIGLIB\_TRUE

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_Resonator, SDA\_Resonator, SDA\_Resonator1

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
void SDA_SignalGeneratePolarWhiteNoise (SLComplexRect_s *, Destn. array ptr.  
    const SLData_t,                      Peak level  
    const enum SLSignalFillMode_t,       Array fill mode, fill up or add to  
    const SLArrayIndex_t)               Array length
```

**DESCRIPTION**

This function fills an array with a polar white noise signal. I.E. the noise pattern on a constellation diagram will be circular, as opposed to square if the pattern was generated using a rectangular distribution. The magnitude and the angle of the noise points are independently generated by normally distributed random number generators. The angle values are distributed between  $-\pi$  and  $+\pi$  while the magnitude values are distributed between 0 and the Peak value.

**NOTES ON USE**

The array fill mode specifies whether to overwrite, or add to the existing array contents.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_SignalGenerate, SDS\_SignalGenerate,  
SDS\_SignalGeneratePolarWhiteNoise, SDA\_SignalGeneratePolarGaussianNoise,  
SDS\_SignalGeneratePolarGaussianNoise

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLComplexRect\_s SDS\_SignalGeneratePolarWhiteNoise (const SLData\_t Peak)  
Peak level

**DESCRIPTION**

This function generates a single sample of a polar white noise signal. I.E. the noise pattern on a constellation diagram will be circular, as opposed to square if the pattern was generated using a rectangular distribution. The magnitude and the angle of the noise points are independently generated by normally distributed random number generators. The angle values are distributed between  $-\pi$  and  $+\pi$  while the magnitude values are distributed between 0 and the Peak value.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_SignalGenerate, SDS\_SignalGenerate,  
SDA\_SignalGeneratePolarWhiteNoise, SDA\_SignalGeneratePolarGaussianNoise,  
SDS\_SignalGeneratePolarGaussianNoise

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_SignalGeneratePolarGaussianNoise (SLComplexRect_s *,
                                           Destination array pointer
                                           const SLData_t,           Noise variance
                                           SLData_t *,             Phase offset
                                           SLData_t *,             Current value
                                           const enum SLSignalFillMode_t, Array fill mode, fill up or add to
                                           const SLArrayIndex_t)    Array length
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function fills an array with a polar Gaussian noise signal. I.E. the noise pattern on a constellation diagram will be circular, as opposed to square if the pattern was generated using a rectangular distribution. The magnitude of the noise signal is generated by a Gaussian distributed random number generator and the angle of the noise points are generated by a normally distributed random number generator. The angle values are distributed between  $-\pi/2$  and  $+\pi/2$  while the magnitude values are centred on 0,0 and have a variance specified by the appropriate parameter.

## NOTES ON USE

The noise phase offset parameter must be initialized to zero prior to calling this function.

The array fill mode specifies whether to overwrite, or add to the existing array contents.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_SignalGenerate, SDS\_SignalGenerate,  
 SDA\_SignalGeneratePolarWhiteNoise, SDS\_SignalGeneratePolarWhiteNoise,  
 SDS\_SignalGeneratePolarGaussianNoise

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLComplexRect_s SDS_SignalGeneratePolarGaussianNoise (const SLData_t,
                                                         Noise variance
                                                         SLData_t *,
                                                         Phase offset
                                                         SLData_t *)
                                                         Current value
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function generates a single sample of a polar Gaussian noise signal. I.E. the noise pattern on a constellation diagram will be circular, as opposed to square if the pattern was generated using a rectangular distribution. The magnitude of the noise signal is generated by a Gaussian distributed random number generator and the angle of the noise points are generated by a normally distributed random number generator. The angle values are distributed between  $-\pi/2$  and  $+\pi/2$  while the magnitude values are centred on 0,0 and have a variance specified by the appropriate parameter.

## NOTES ON USE

The noise phase offset parameter must be initialized to zero prior to calling this function.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_SignalGenerate, SDS\_SignalGenerate,  
SDA\_SignalGeneratePolarWhiteNoise, SDS\_SignalGeneratePolarWhiteNoise,  
SDA\_SignalGeneratePolarGaussianNoise



**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
void SDA_SignalAddPolarJitterAndGaussianNoise (const SLComplexRect_s *,
                                                Source array pointer
                                                SLComplexRect_s *,
                                                Destination array pointer
                                                const SLData_t,
                                                Jitter sine wave frequency
                                                const SLData_t,
                                                Jitter sine wave magnitude
                                                SLData_t *,
                                                Jitter sine wave phase offset
                                                const SLData_t,
                                                Noise variance
                                                SLData_t *,
                                                Noise phase offset
                                                SLData_t *,
                                                Noise current value
                                                const SLArrayIndex_t)
                                                Array length
```

**DESCRIPTION**

This function adds jitter with a sinusoidal distribution and polar Gaussian noise to the source signal constellation diagram.

The noise pattern on a constellation diagram will be circular, as opposed to square if the pattern was generated using a rectangular distribution. The magnitude of the noise signal is generated by a Gaussian distributed random number generator and the angle of the noise points are generated by a normally distributed random number generator. The angle values are distributed between  $-\pi/2$  and  $+\pi/2$  while the magnitude values are centred on 0,0 and have a variance specified by the appropriate parameter.

**NOTES ON USE**

The noise phase offset parameter must be initialized to zero prior to calling this function.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDS\_SignalAddPolarJitterAndGaussianNoise

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
void SDS_SignalAddPolarJitterAndGaussianNoise (const SLComplexRect_s *,
                                                Source array pointer
                                                SLComplexRect_s *,
                                                Destination array pointer
                                                const SLData_t,
                                                Jitter sine wave frequency
                                                const SLData_t,
                                                Jitter sine wave magnitude
                                                SLData_t *,
                                                Jitter sine wave phase offset
                                                const SLData_t,
                                                Noise variance
                                                SLData_t *,
                                                Noise phase offset
                                                SLData_t *,
                                                Noise current value
                                                const SLArrayIndex_t)
                                                Array length
```

**DESCRIPTION**

This function adds jitter with a sinusoidal distribution and polar Gaussian noise to the source signal constellation diagram, on a per-sample basis.

The noise pattern on a constellation diagram will be circular, as opposed to square if the pattern was generated using a rectangular distribution. The magnitude of the noise signal is generated by a Gaussian distributed random number generator and the angle of the noise points are generated by a normally distributed random number generator. The angle values are distributed between  $-\pi/2$  and  $+\pi/2$  while the magnitude values are centred on 0,0 and have a variance specified by the appropriate parameter.

**NOTES ON USE**

The noise phase offset parameter must be initialized to zero prior to calling this function.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_SignalAddPolarJitterAndGaussianNoise

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|                            |                           |
|----------------------------|---------------------------|
| void SDA_Ramp (SLData_t *, | Destination array pointer |
| const SLData_t,            | Start value               |
| const SLData_t,            | Increment value           |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)      | Array length              |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function generates a ramp with incrementing N values starting with the start value and incrementing by the increment value.

If the increment value is negative the data will ramp down.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDS\_SignalGenerate, SDA\_SignalGenerate.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SIF\_RandomNumber (void)

DESCRIPTION

This function initializes the random number generator seed.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDS\_RandomNumber, SDA\_RandomNumber, SDS\_SignalGenerate,  
SDA\_SignalGenerate.

### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLData_t SDS_RandomNumber (const SLData_t,  Lower bound  
                           const SLData_t)    Upper bound
```

### DESCRIPTION

This function generates and returns a random number, between the lower and upper bounds, using the rand() function.

Use the function SIF\_RandomNumber() to initialize the random number seed.

### NOTES ON USE

### CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_RandomNumber, SDA\_RandomNumber, SDS\_SignalGenerate,  
SDA\_SignalGenerate.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|                                    |                           |
|------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| void SDA_RandomNumber (SLData_t *, | Destination array pointer |
| const SLData_t,                    | Lower bound               |
| const SLData_t,                    | Upper bound               |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)              | Array length              |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function fills an array with random numbers, between the lower and upper bounds, using the rand() function.

Use the function SIF\_RandomNumber() to initialize the random number seed.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SIF\_RandomNumber, SDS\_RandomNumber, SDA\_RandomNumber,  
SDS\_SignalGenerate.

## COMMUNICATION FUNCTIONS

### General Communications Functions (*comms.c*)

#### SDA\_BitErrorRate

##### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLData_t SDA_BitErrorRate (const SLChar_t *,    Source 1 pointer
                           const SLChar_t *,    Source 2 pointer
                           const SLData_t,      Inverse of the number of bits
                           const SLArrayIndex_t) Sample array length
```

##### DESCRIPTION

This function returns the bit error rate between the two data streams.

##### NOTES ON USE

The “inverse of the number of bits” parameter is used to avoid having to perform a divide operation within the function. This improves run-time performance.

##### CROSS REFERENCE

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|  |                     |
|--|---------------------|
| void SDA_Interleave (const SLData_t *, | Source pointer      |
| SLData_t *,                            | Destination pointer |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                  | Stride              |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)                  | Array Length        |

## DESCRIPTION

This function interleaves the samples in the data stream.

## NOTES ON USE

During the interleave, the data is effectively written into an array along the horizontal lines and read out along the vertical columns. In de interleaving, the reverse is true. Care should be taken when interleaving multiplexed data streams because the individual channels can be re-ordered in such a way that the samples are again in sequential locations.

This technique can be useful in telecommunications, to avoid burst errors.

It is important that the array length is an integer multiple of the stride.

For a ramp (0 to 11.0) input and a stride of 3, the rearranged order of the data is:

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Input Data  | 0.0, 1.0, 2.0, 3.0, 4.0, 5.0, 6.0, 7.0, 8.0, 9.0, 10.0, 11.0 |
| Output Data | 0.0, 3.0, 6.0, 9.0, 1.0, 4.0, 7.0, 10.0, 2.0, 5.0, 8.0, 11.0 |

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_Deinterleave



## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_Deinterleave (const SLData_t *, Source pointer
                      SLData_t *,      Destination pointer
                      const SLArrayIndex_t, Stride
                      const SLArrayIndex_t) Array Length
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function de-interleaves the samples in the data stream.

## NOTES ON USE

During the interleave, the data is effectively written into an array along the horizontal lines and read out along the vertical columns. In de interleaving, the reverse is true. Care should be taken when interleaving multiplexed data streams because the individual channels can be re-ordered in such a way that the samples are again in sequential locations.

This technique can be useful in telecommunications, to avoid burst errors.

It is important that the array length is an integer multiple of the stride.

For an interleaved ramp (0 to 11.0) input and a stride of 3, the rearranged order of the data is:

|                        |  |
|------------------------|--|
| Interleaved Input Data | 0.0, 3.0, 6.0, 9.0, 1.0, 4.0, 7.0, 10.0, 2.0, 5.0, 8.0, 11.0 |
| Output Data            | 0.0, 1.0, 2.0, 3.0, 4.0, 5.0, 6.0, 7.0, 8.0, 9.0, 10.0, 11.0 |

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_Interleave

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLData\_t SCV\_EuclideanDistance (const SLComplexRect\_s,      Source vector 1  
   const SLComplexRect\_s)      Source vector 2

**DESCRIPTION**

This function returns the Euclidean distance between two complex samples.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SCV\_EuclideanDistanceSquared, SCA\_EuclideanDistance,  
SCA\_EuclideanDistanceSquared, SDS\_EuclideanDistance,  
SDS\_EuclideanDistanceSquared, SDA\_EuclideanDistance,  
SDA\_EuclideanDistanceSquared



### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SCA_EuclideanDistance (const SLComplexRect_s *, Pointer to source vector #1
                           const SLComplexRect_s *,      Pointer to source vector #2
                           SLData_t *,                  Pointer to destination
                           const SLArrayIndex_t)         Number of samples
```

### DESCRIPTION

This function returns the Euclidean distance between successive complex samples in the source arrays.

### NOTES ON USE

### CROSS REFERENCE

SCV\_EuclideanDistance, SCV\_EuclideanDistanceSquared,  
SCA\_EuclideanDistanceSquared, SDS\_EuclideanDistance,  
SDS\_EuclideanDistanceSquared, SDA\_EuclideanDistance,  
SDA\_EuclideanDistanceSquared

### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SCA\_EuclideanDistanceSquared (const SLComplexRect\_s \*, Pointer to source vector #1

|                          |                             |
|--------------------------|-----------------------------|
| const SLComplexRect_s *, | Pointer to source vector #2 |
| SLData_t *,              | Pointer to destination      |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)    | Number of samples           |

### DESCRIPTION

This function returns the Euclidean distance squared between successive complex samples in the source arrays.

### NOTES ON USE

If you are comparing Euclidean distances then the square root of the regular function is an unnecessary overhead and the squared version of the function is equally useful but more efficient.

### CROSS REFERENCE

SCV\_EuclideanDistance, SCV\_EuclideanDistanceSquared,  
SCA\_EuclideanDistance, SDS\_EuclideanDistance, SDS\_EuclideanDistanceSquared,  
SDA\_EuclideanDistance, SDA\_EuclideanDistanceSquared

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
SLData_t SDS_EuclideanDistance (const SLData_t, Source #1 x-axis value
                                const SLData_t,           Source #1 y-axis value
                                const SLData_t,           Source #2 x-axis value
                                const SLData_t)           Source #2 y-axis value
```

**DESCRIPTION**

This function returns the Euclidean distance between two points given the provided x, y coordinates on a 2D plane.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SCV\_EuclideanDistance, SCV\_EuclideanDistanceSquared,  
SCA\_EuclideanDistance, SCA\_EuclideanDistanceSquared,  
SDS\_EuclideanDistanceSquared, SDA\_EuclideanDistance,  
SDA\_EuclideanDistanceSquared

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
SLData_t SDS_EuclideanDistanceSquared (const SLData_t, Source #1 x-axis value
                                       const SLData_t,           Source #1 y-axis value
                                       const SLData_t,           Source #2 x-axis value
                                       const SLData_t)            Source #2 y-axis value
```

**DESCRIPTION**

This function returns the Euclidean distance squared between two points given the provided x, y coordinates on a 2D plane.

**NOTES ON USE**

If you are comparing Euclidean distances then the square root of the regular function is an unnecessary overhead and the squared version of the function is equally useful but more efficient.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SCV\_EuclideanDistance, SCV\_EuclideanDistanceSquared,  
SCA\_EuclideanDistance, SCA\_EuclideanDistanceSquared, SDS\_EuclideanDistance,  
SDA\_EuclideanDistance, SDA\_EuclideanDistanceSquared

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLData\_t SDS\_EuclideanDistance (const SLData\_t \*, Pointer to source #1 x-axis values

|                       |                                    |
|-----------------------|------------------------------------|
| const SLData_t *,     | Pointer to source #1 y-axis values |
| const SLData_t *,     | Pointer to source #2 x-axis values |
| const SLData_t *,     | Pointer to source #2 y-axis values |
| SLData_t *,           | Pointer to destination             |
| const SLArrayIndex_t) | Number of samples                  |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function returns the Euclidean distance between two points given the provided x, y coordinates on a 2D plane, for all samples in arrays of data.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SCV\_EuclideanDistance, SCV\_EuclideanDistanceSquared,  
SCA\_EuclideanDistance, SCA\_EuclideanDistanceSquared, SDS\_EuclideanDistance,  
SDS\_EuclideanDistanceSquared, SDA\_EuclideanDistanceSquared



**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLData\_t SDS\_EuclideanDistanceSquared (const SLData\_t \*, Pointer to source #1 x-axis values

|                       |                                    |
|-----------------------|------------------------------------|
| const SLData_t *,     | Pointer to source #1 y-axis values |
| const SLData_t *,     | Pointer to source #2 x-axis values |
| const SLData_t *,     | Pointer to source #2 y-axis values |
| SLData_t *,           | Pointer to destination             |
| const SLArrayIndex_t) | Number of samples                  |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function returns the Euclidean distance squared between two points given the provided x, y coordinates on a 2D plane, for all samples in arrays of data.

**NOTES ON USE**

If you are comparing Euclidean distances then the square root of the regular function is an unnecessary overhead and the squared version of the function is equally useful but more efficient.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SCV\_EuclideanDistance, SCV\_EuclideanDistanceSquared,  
SCA\_EuclideanDistance, SCA\_EuclideanDistanceSquared, SDS\_EuclideanDistance,  
SDS\_EuclideanDistanceSquared, SDA\_EuclideanDistance

### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLChar\_t SDS\_ManchesterEncode (const SLChar\_t Input) Input bit

### DESCRIPTION

This function takes an input bit and applies Manchester encoding to generate an output dibit.

### NOTES ON USE

### CROSS REFERENCE

SDS\_ManchesterDecode, SDS\_ManchesterEncodeByte,  
SDS\_ManchesterDecodeByte

### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLChar\_t SDS\_ManchesterDecode (const SLChar\_t Input) Input dibit

### DESCRIPTION

This function takes an input dibit and applies Manchester decoding to generate an output bit.

### NOTES ON USE

This function returns 0x3 if the input dibit pair is invalid.

### CROSS REFERENCE

SDS\_ManchesterEncode, SDS\_ManchesterEncodeByte,  
SDS\_ManchesterDecodeByte

### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLFixData\_t SDS\_ManchesterEncodeByte (const SLChar\_t Input) Input byte

### DESCRIPTION

This function takes an input byte and applies Manchester encoding to each bit to generate an outputs 8 dibits.

### NOTES ON USE

### CROSS REFERENCE

SDS\_ManchesterEncode, SDS\_ManchesterDecode,  
SDS\_ManchesterDecodeByte

### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLFixData\_t SDS\_ManchesterDecodeByte (const SLFixData\_t Input)     Input dibits

### DESCRIPTION

This function takes an input sequence of 8 dibits and applies Manchester decoding to generate an output byte, which is stored in a data word of type SLFixData\_t.

### NOTES ON USE

This function returns SIGLIB\_ERROR if the input dibit pair is invalid.

### CROSS REFERENCE

SDS\_ManchesterEncode, SDS\_ManchesterDecode,  
SDS\_ManchesterEncodeByte

### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SIF_DetectNumericalWordSequence (SLFixData_t *, Ptr. to bit mask register
    SLFixData_t *,                      Detector state array
    SLArrayIndex_t,                    Word length
    SLArrayIndex_t)                   Synchronization sequence length
```

### DESCRIPTION

This function initializes the numerical word sequence detection function.

### NOTES ON USE

The state array must be as long as the sequence that is being detected.

### CROSS REFERENCE

SDS\_DetectNumericalWordSequence, SIF\_DetectNumericalBitSequence,  
SDS\_DetectNumericalBitSequence, SIF\_DetectCharacterSequence,  
SDS\_DetectCharacterSequence.

### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLFixData\_t SDS\_DetectNumericalWordSequence (SLFixData\_t, Input word  
SLFixData\_t \*, Synchronization sequence  
SLFixData\_t, Input bit mask  
SLFixData\_t \*, Detector state array  
SLArrayIndex\_t) Synchronization sequence length

### DESCRIPTION

This function detects the presence of a numerical words sequence in a stream of words that are passed to the function. It will return SIGLIB\_TRUE if the sequence is detected and SIGLIB\_FALSE if it is not detected.

This function will detect only the exact word pattern.

### NOTES ON USE

The function SIF\_DetectNumericalWordSequence must be called prior to calling this function.

### CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_DetectNumericalWordSequence, SIF\_DetectNumericalBitSequence,  
SDS\_DetectNumericalBitSequence, SIF\_DetectCharacterSequence,  
SDS\_DetectCharacterSequence.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

void SIF\_DetectNumericalBitSequence (SLFixData\_t \*,   Ptr. to bit mask register  
  SLFixData\_t \*,                     Detector state variable  
  SLArrayIndex\_t)                 Synchronization sequence length

**DESCRIPTION**

This function initializes the numerical bit sequence detection function.

**NOTES ON USE**

The state variable must be at least as long as the sequence that is being detected. The standard fixed point word length for SigLib is either 16 or 32 bits – please refer to the SigLib User’s Guide for further information. If an application requires the detection of bit sequences that are longer than the SigLib fixed point word length then the synchronization sequence must be split into multiple sequences with a maximum length equal to the chosen SigLib fixed point word length. The results of multiple calls to SDS\_DetectNumericalBitSequence can be combined using the AND (&) function.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SIF\_DetectNumericalWordSequence, SDS\_DetectNumericalWordSequence,  
SDS\_DetectNumericalBitSequence, SIF\_DetectCharacterSequence,  
SDS\_DetectCharacterSequence.



## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|   |                                   |
|---|-----------------------------------|
| SLArrayIndex_t SDS_DetectNumericalBitSequence (SLFixData_t, | Input word                        |
| SLFixData_t,  | Synchronization sequence          |
| SLFixData_t,  | Synchronization sequence bit mask |
| SLFixData_t *,  | Detector state variable           |
| SLArrayIndex_t)   | Input word length                 |

## DESCRIPTION

This function detects the presence of a numerical bit sequence in a stream of bits that can be spread across multiple input words. If the required sequence is detected it will return the bit index of the last bit in the sequence otherwise it will return `SIGLIB_SEQUENCE_NOT_DETECTED`. Please note, all bits are processed MSB first so bit offset 0 is the MSB in the received word (As per ITU-T Recommendation V.8).

This function will detect a given bit pattern and it does not need to be aligned on a specific word boundary.

## NOTES ON USE

The function `SIF_DetectNumericalBitSequence` must be called prior to calling this function please also read the notes for this function.

## CROSS REFERENCE

`SIF_DetectNumericalWordSequence`, `SDS_DetectNumericalWordSequence`, `SIF_DetectNumericalBitSequence`, `SIF_DetectCharacterSequence`, `SDS_DetectCharacterSequence`.

### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SIF_DetectCharacterSequence (SLChar_t *,   Detector state array  
                                SLArrayIndex_t Synchronization sequence length
```

### DESCRIPTION

This function initializes the character sequence detection function.

### NOTES ON USE

The state array must be as long as the sequence that is being detected.

### CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_DetectNumericalWordSequence, SDS\_DetectNumericalWordSequence,  
SIF\_DetectNumericalBitSequence, SDS\_DetectNumericalBitSequence,  
SDS\_DetectCharacterSequence.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLFixData\_t SDS\_DetectCharacterSequence (SLChar\_t,   Input character  
          SLChar\_t \*,                               Synchronization sequence  
          SLChar\_t \*,                               Detector state array  
          SLArrayIndex\_t)                         Synchronization sequence length

**DESCRIPTION**

This function detects the presence of an arbitrary character sequence it will return SIGLIB\_TRUE if the sequence is detected and SIGLIB\_FALSE if it is not detected.

**NOTES ON USE**

The function SIF\_DetectCharacterSequence must be called prior to calling this function.

This function is case sensitive.

You can use the character formatted or numerical sequence detection functions depending on which part of the modem it is required to detect the start of the frame.

For binary sequence detection the input characters should be the values '0' or '1' depending on the binary value the represent. For hexadecimal sequence detection the input characters should be the values '0' to '9' or 'A' to 'F' depending on the binary value the represent.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SIF\_DetectNumericalWordSequence, SDS\_DetectNumericalWordSequence,  
SIF\_DetectNumericalBitSequence, SDS\_DetectNumericalBitSequence,  
SIF\_DetectCharacterSequence.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLData\_t SDS\_ErrorVector (const SLComplexRect\_s,     Ideal point  
                          const SLComplexRect\_s)     Received point

**DESCRIPTION**

This function calculates the absolute vector difference between two vectors.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDS\_ErrorVectorMagnitudePercent, SDS\_ErrorVectorMagnitudeDecibels.

### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData\_t SDS\_ErrorVectorMagnitudePercent (const SLComplexRect\_s, Ideal point  
const SLComplexRect\_s) Received point

### DESCRIPTION

This function calculates the percentage vector difference between two vectors.

### NOTES ON USE

### CROSS REFERENCE

SDS\_ErrorVector, SDS\_ErrorVectorMagnitudeDecibels.

### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData\_t SDS\_ErrorVectorMagnitudeDecibels (const SLComplexRect\_s, Ideal point  
const SLComplexRect\_s)      Received point

### DESCRIPTION

This function calculates the absolute vector difference between two vectors and returns the result in dB.

### NOTES ON USE

### CROSS REFERENCE

SDS\_ErrorVector, SDS\_ErrorVectorMagnitudePercent.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLFixData\_t SDS\_ReverseDiBits (const SLPixData\_t)      Input di-bits

**DESCRIPTION**

This function reverses the order of the di-bit pair in the input value..

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
void SDS_QpskBitErrorCount (const SLFixData_t, Input di-bits
    const SLFixData_t,           Output data bits
    SLFixData_t *,               Pointer to bit count
    SLFixData_t *)               Pointer to bit error count
```

**DESCRIPTION**

This function calculates the running sum of the number of bits and the number of bit errors in the input QPSK di-bit sequence. The final bit error rate can be calculated using `SDS_BitErrorRate`.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

`SDS_BitErrorRate`.



**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLData\_t SDS\_BitErrorRate (const SLFixData\_t,   Bit count  
                              const SLFixData\_t)       Bit error count

**DESCRIPTION**

This function returns the bit error rate given the total number of bits and the number of bit errors.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

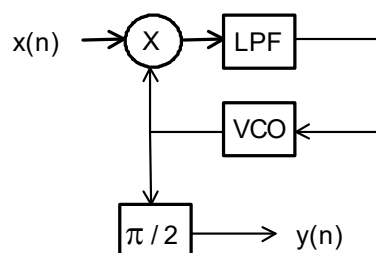
SDS\_QpskBitErrorCount, SDA\_BitErrorRate.

### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|                                       |  |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| void SIF_PhaseLockedLoop (SLData_t *, | VCO phase                              |
| SLData_t *,                           | VCO Fast sine look up table            |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                 | VCO Fast sine look up table size       |
| const SLData_t,                       | LPF cut-off frequency                  |
| SLData_t *,                           | Pointer to loop filter state           |
| const SLData_t *,                     | Pointer to loop filter coefficients    |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                     | Pointer to loop filter index           |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                 | Loop filter length                     |
| SLData_t *,                           | Pointer to Hilbert xform filter state  |
| const SLData_t *,                     | Pointer to Hilbert xform filter coeffs |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                     | Pointer to Hilbert xform filter index  |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                 | Hilbert xform filter length            |
| SLData_t *)                           | Pointer to delayed sample              |

### DESCRIPTION

This function initialises the phase locked loop (PLL) functions. The block diagram for the PLL is shown in the following diagram:



### NOTES ON USE

The filters are all FIR and must be of odd order.

### CROSS REFERENCE

SDS\_PhaseLockedLoop, SDA\_PhaseLockedLoop.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLData_t SDS_PhaseLockedLoop (const SLData_t, Source data
    SLData_t *, VCO phase
    const SLData_t, VCO modulation index
    SLData_t *, VCO Fast sine look up table
    const SLArrayIndex_t, VCO Fast sine look up table size
    const SLData_t, Carrier frequency
    SLData_t *, Pointer to loop filter state
    const SLData_t *, Pointer to loop filter coefficients
    SLArrayIndex_t *, Pointer to loop filter index
    const SLArrayIndex_t, Loop filter length
    SLData_t *, Pointer to Hilbert xform filter state
    const SLData_t *, Pointer to Hilbert xform filter coeffs
    SLArrayIndex_t *, Pointer to Hilbert xform filter index
    const SLArrayIndex_t, Hilbert xform filter length
    SLData_t *) Pointer to delayed sample
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function applies a continuous wave input to the phase locked loop and outputs the phase locked signal. This function uses the frequency modulator function to perform the Voltage Controlled Oscillator functionality.

## NOTES ON USE

The filters are all FIR and must be of odd order. The output is in-phase with the original input signal.

If this function proves to be unstable then the most likely cause is that the modulation index for the VCO is too large.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_PhaseLockedLoop, SDA\_PhaseLockedLoop.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_PhaseLockedLoop (const SLData_t *,   Source pointer
    SLData_t *,                               Destination pointer
    SLData_t *,                               VCO phase
    const SLData_t,                           VCO modulation index
    SLData_t *,                               VCO Fast sine look up table
    const SLArrayIndex_t,                     VCO Fast sine look up table size
    const SLData_t,                           Carrier frequency
    SLData_t *,                               Pointer to loop filter state
    const SLData_t *,                         Pointer to loop filter coefficients
    SLArrayIndex_t *,                         Pointer to loop filter index
    const SLArrayIndex_t,                     Loop filter length
    SLData_t *,                               Pointer to Hilbert xform filter state
    const SLData_t *,                         Pointer to Hilbert xform filter coeffs
    SLArrayIndex_t *,                         Pointer to Hilbert xform filter index
    const SLArrayIndex_t,                     Hilbert xform filter length
    SLData_t *,                               Pointer to delayed sample
    const SLArrayIndex_t)                     Sample size
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function applies a continuous wave input to the phase locked loop and outputs the phase locked signal. This function uses the frequency modulator function to perform the Voltage Controlled Oscillator functionality.

## NOTES ON USE

The filters are all FIR and must be of odd order. The output is in-phase with the original input signal.

If this function proves to be unstable then the most likely cause is that the modulation index for the VCO is too large.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_PhaseLockedLoop, SDS\_PhaseLockedLoop.

---

 PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|  |                                     |
|--|-------------------------------------|
| SL_Error_t SIF_CostasLoop (SLData_t *, | VCO phase                           |
| SLData_t ,                             | VCO fast sine look up table         |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                  | VCO fast sine look up table size    |
| const SLData_t,                        | LPF cut-off frequency               |
| SLData_t *,                            | Pointer to loop filter 1 state      |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                      | Pointer to loop filter 1 index      |
| SLData_t *,                            | Pointer to loop filter 2 state      |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                      | Pointer to loop filter 2 index      |
| SLData_t *,                            | Pointer to loop filter coefficients |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                  | Loop filter length                  |
| SLData_t *,                            | Pointer to loop filter state        |
| SLData_t *)                            | Pointer to delayed sample           |

## DESCRIPTION

This function initialises the Costas loop phase detector functions.

In the two functions SDA\_CostasLoop and SDS\_CostasLoop the SL\_CostasLoopFeedbackMode\_t parameter selects between the following phase detector options:

```
SIGLIB_COSTAS_LOOP_MULTIPLY_LOOP,
SIGLIB_COSTAS_LOOP_POLARITY_LOOP,
SIGLIB_COSTAS_LOOP_HARD_LIMITED_LOOP
```

## NOTES ON USE

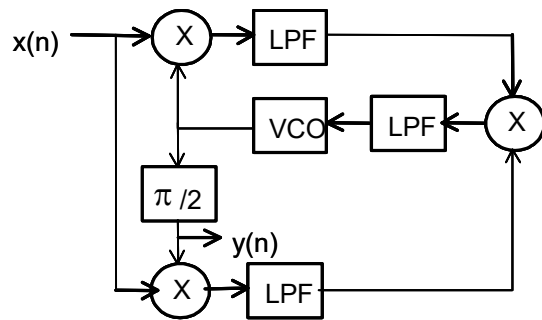
The loop filters 1 and 2 are both FIR and must be of odd order to ensure that the group delays are integer in length. The loop filter is a one pole filter, with a single coefficient and state. The output is in phase with the original signal.

This function uses the frequency modulator function to perform the Voltage Controlled Oscillator functionality. The VCO gain depends on the magnitudes of the input signal and also the filter gain. If the Costas loop becomes unstable then the usual cause is the VCO gain is too high.

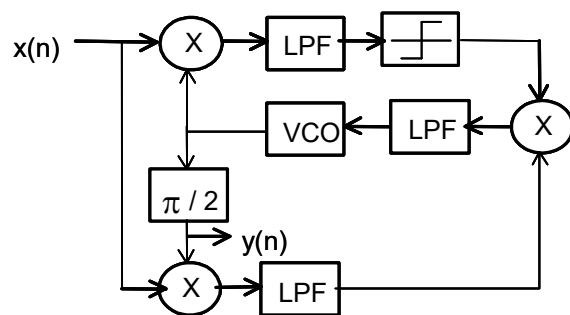
In order to allocate the Costas loop look up table it is necessary to use the SUF\_CostasLoopArrayAllocate() to malloc the look-up-table memory, rather than SUF\_VectorArrayAllocate().

The flow diagrams for the different phase detector modes are shown in the following diagrams:

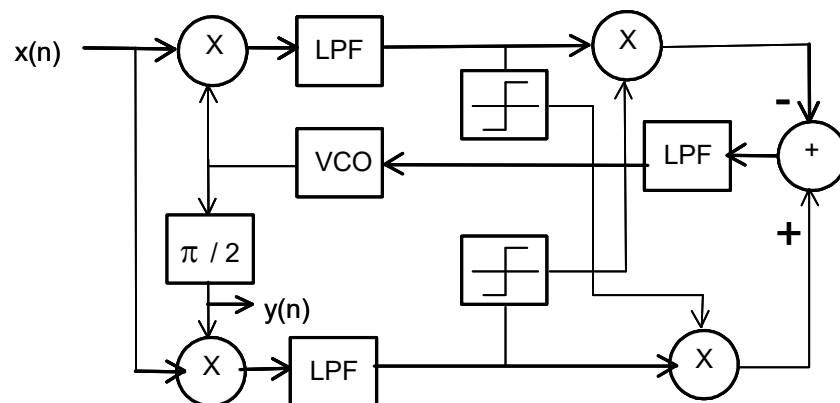
SIGLIB\_COSTAS\_LOOP\_MULTIPLY\_LOOP



SIGLIB\_COSTAS\_LOOP\_POLARITY\_LOOP



SIGLIB\_COSTAS\_LOOP\_HARD\_LIMITED\_LOOP



#### CROSS REFERENCE

SDS\_CostasLoop, SDA\_CostasLoop, SRF\_CostasLoop.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|  |                                     |
|--|-------------------------------------|
| SLData_t SDS_CostasLoop (const SLData_t, | Source data                         |
| SLData_t *,                              | VCO phase                           |
| const SLData_t,                          | VCO modulation index                |
| SLData_t *,                              | VCO fast sine look up table         |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                    | VCO fast sine look up table size    |
| const SLData_t,                          | Carrier frequency                   |
| SLData_t *,                              | Pointer to loop filter 1 state      |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                        | Pointer to loop filter 1 index      |
| SLData_t *,                              | Pointer to loop filter 2 state      |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                        | Pointer to loop filter 2 index      |
| const SLData_t *,                        | Pointer to loop filter coefficients |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                    | Loop filter length                  |
| SLData_t *,                              | Pointer to loop filter state        |
| const SLData_t,                          | Loop filter coefficient             |
| const enum SLCostasLoopFeedbackMode_t,   | Loop feedback mode                  |
| SLData_t *)                              | Pointer to delayed sample           |

## DESCRIPTION

This function applies a continuous wave input to the Costas loop and outputs the in-phase phase locked signal.

## NOTES ON USE

See SIF\_CostasLoop

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_CostasLoop, SDA\_CostasLoop, SRF\_CostasLoop.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_CostasLoop (const SLData_t *,   Source data pointer
                    SLData_t *,         VCO phase
                    const SLData_t,     VCO modulation index
                    SLData_t *,         VCO fast sine look up table
                    const SLArrayIndex_t, VCO fast sine look up table size
                    const SLData_t,     Carrier frequency
                    SLData_t *,         Pointer to loop filter 1 state
                    SLArrayIndex_t *,   Pointer to loop filter 1 index
                    SLData_t *,         Pointer to loop filter 2 state
                    SLArrayIndex_t *,   Pointer to loop filter 2 index
                    const SLData_t *,   Pointer to loop filter coefficients
                    const SLArrayIndex_t, Loop filter length
                    SLData_t *,         Pointer to loop filter state
                    const SLData_t,     Loop filter coefficient
                    const enum SLCostasLoopFeedbackMode_t, Loop feedback mode
                    SLData_t *,         Pointer to delayed sample
                    const SLArrayIndex_t) Sample size
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function applies a continuous wave input to the Costas loop and outputs the in-phase phase locked signal.

## NOTES ON USE

See SIF\_CostasLoop

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_CostasLoop, SDS\_CostasLoop, SRF\_CostasLoop.



**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|                                       |                                |
|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| SLError_t SRF_CostasLoop (SLData_t *, | VCO phase                      |
| SLData_t *,                           | Pointer to loop filter 1 state |
| SArrayIndex_t *,                      | Pointer to loop filter 1 index |
| SLData_t *,                           | Pointer to loop filter 2 state |
| SArrayIndex_t *,                      | Pointer to loop filter 2 index |
| const SArrayIndex_t,                  | Loop filter length             |
| SLData_t *,                           | Pointer to loop filter state   |
| SLData_t *)                           | Pointer to delayed sample      |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function resets the Costas loop phase detector functions, including the filter state arrays, without reinitializing the look up tables.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SIF\_CostasLoop, SDS\_CostasLoop, SDA\_CostasLoop.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
void SIF_180DegreePhaseDetect (SLData_t *,      Fast sine look up table phase
    SLData_t *,                               Pointer to fast sine look up table
    const SLArrayIndex_t,                     Fast sine look up table size
    const SLData_t,                           LPF cut-off frequency
    SLData_t *,                               Pointer to filter state array
    SLData_t *,                               Pointer to filter coefficients
    SLArrayIndex_t *,                         Pointer to filter index
    const SLArrayIndex_t,                     Filter length
    SLArrayIndex_t *)                         Pointer to sign of previous output
```

**DESCRIPTION**

This function initialises the 180 degree phase reversal detector function.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

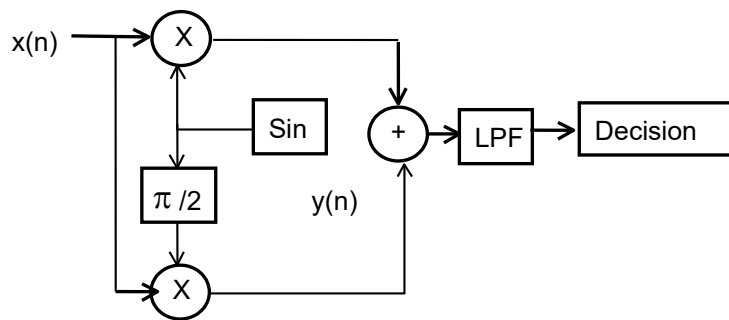
SDA\_180DegreePhaseDetect

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|   |                                    |
|---|------------------------------------|
| SLArrayIndex_t SDA_180DegreePhaseDetect (const SLData_t *, Src data pointer |                                    |
| SLData_t *,   | Destination data pointer           |
| SLData_t *,   | Fast sine look up table phase      |
| const SLData_t *,   | Pointer to fast sine look up table |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,   | Fast sine look up table size       |
| const SLData_t,   | Carrier frequency                  |
| SLData_t *,   | Pointer to filter state array      |
| const SLData_t *,   | Pointer to filter coefficients     |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,   | Pointer to filter index            |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,   | Filter length                      |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,   | Pointer to sign of previous output |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)   | Length of input array              |

## DESCRIPTION

This function implements a 180 degree phase reversal detector. The block diagram for the detector is shown in the following diagram:



This function stores the output of the Low Pass Filter and returns the location of the phase change in the array or SIGLIB\_NO\_PHASE\_CHANGE if no phase change was detected.

## NOTES ON USE

The exact location of the phase change will be delayed by the group delay of the filter.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_180DegreePhaseDetect

### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SIF_TriggerReverberator (SLArrayIndex_t *, Pointer to trigger counter
                             SLFixData_t *,      Pointer to trigger detected flag
                             SLFixData_t *)      Pointer to trigger updated flag
```

### DESCRIPTION

This function initialises the trigger reverberator function.

### NOTES ON USE

### CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_TriggerReverberator

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_TriggerReverberator (const SLData_t *, Pointer to source trigger sequence
    SLData_t *,                               Pointer to destination trigger sequence
    SLArrayIndex_t *,                         Pointer to trigger counter
    SLFixData_t *,                           Pointer to trigger detected flag
    SLFixData_t *,                           Pointer to trigger updated flag
    const SLArrayIndex_t,                     Nominal period of output clock sequence
    const SLArrayIndex_t)                     Length of trigger sequences
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function implements a timing reverberator which ensures a continuously running clock when the original input clock stops.

If the phase of the input clock stream changes then the output clock will re-synchronize to the source clock as follows:

If the source timing clock is late then the period of the output clock is increased by one sample.

If the source timing clock is early then the period of the output clock is decreased by one sample.

The trigger updated flag is used to ensure that the trigger timing is modified by a maximum of one sample per symbol period. This improves the performance in a noisy environment.

## NOTES ON USE

The function SIF\_TriggerReverberator must be called prior to using this function.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDS\_TriggerReverberator, SIF\_TriggerReverberator

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|   |   |
|---|---|
| SLData_t SDS_TriggerReverberator (const SLData_t *, | Source trigger sample                   |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                                   | Pointer to trigger counter              |
| SLFixData_t *,                                      | Pointer to trigger detected flag        |
| SLFixData_t *,                                      | Pointer to trigger updated flag         |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)                               | Nominal period of output clock sequence |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function implements a timing reverberator which ensures a continuously running clock when the original input clock stops.

If the phase of the input clock stream changes then the output clock will re-synchronize to the source clock as follows:

- If the source timing clock is late then the period of the output clock is increased by one sample.

- If the source timing clock is early then the period of the output clock is decreased by one sample.

The trigger updated flag is used to ensure that the trigger timing is modified by a maximum of one sample per symbol period. This improves the performance in a noisy environment.

**NOTES ON USE**

The function SIF\_TriggerReverberator must be called prior to using this function.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_TriggerReverberator, SIF\_TriggerReverberator

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLArrayIndex\_t SDA\_TriggerSelector (const SLData\_t \*, Source data sequence  
SLData\_t \*, Destination data sequence  
const SLData\_t \*, Trigger sequence  
const SLArrayIndex\_t) Length of source sequence

**DESCRIPTION**

This function selects an output sample depending on the value of the input clock. If the N<sup>th</sup> value in the trigger sequence has the value 1.0 then the corresponding value in the source data sequence is written to the destination array, otherwise no value is written to the output array.

This function returns the number of output samples that are written to the output array.

**NOTES ON USE****EXAMPLE**

Trigger sequence  
0.0, 1.0, 0.0, 1.0, 0.0, 0.0, 1.0, 0.0, 1.0, 0.0  
Input sequence  
0.0, 1.0, 2.0, 3.0, 4.0, 5.0, 6.0, 7.0, 8.0, 9.0  
Output sequence  
1.0, 3.0, 6.0, 8.0

**CROSS REFERENCE**

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|   |  |
|---|--|
| SL_Error_t SIF_EarlyLateGate (SLData_t *, | Pointer to matched filter signal         |
| SLData_t *,                               | Pointer to matched filter state array    |
| SLData_t *,                               | Pointer to matched filter coefficients   |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                         | Pointer to matched filter index          |
| SLData_t *,                               | Pointer to early gate state array        |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                         | Pointer to early gate delay index        |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                     | Early gate delay length                  |
| SLData_t *,                               | Pointer to loop filter state array       |
| SLData_t *,                               | Pointer to loop filter coefficients      |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                         | Pointer to loop filter index             |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                     | Loop filter length                       |
| const SLData_t,                           | Loop filter cut-off / centre frequency   |
| SLFixData_t *,                            | Pointer to pulse detector threshold flag |
| SLData_t *,                               | Pointer to zero crossing previous sample |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                         | Pointer to trigger counter               |
| SLFixData_t *,                            | Pointer to trigger detected flag         |
| SLFixData_t *,                            | Pointer to trigger updated flag          |
| const enum SLELGTriggerTiming_t,          | Trigger timing mode                      |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                         | Pointer to trigger latency               |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)                     | Samples per symbol                       |

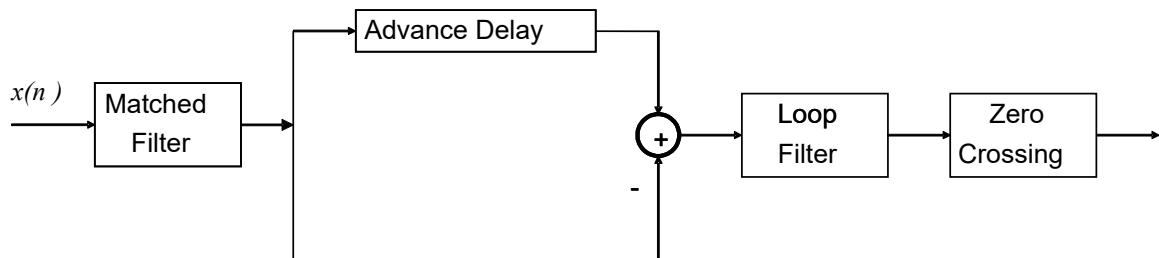
## DESCRIPTION

This function initialises the early-late gate timing function, including the matched filter, which is generated from the impulse response of a single symbol. The trigger timing mode parameter specifies the location of the timing pulse with respect to the symbol pulses. The options for the “trigger timing mode” parameter are as follows:

SIGLIB\_ELG\_TRIGGER\_START - Locate the trigger at the start of the symbol

SIGLIB\_ELG\_TRIGGER\_MIDDLE - Locate the trigger in the middle of the symbol

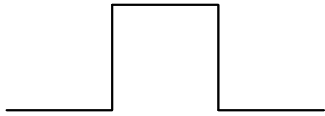
The early late gate timing error detector has the following flow diagram:



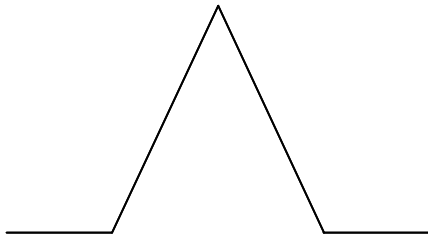
The following description describes how the Early Late Gate Timing Error Detector (ELG-TED) works.

For a given pulse:

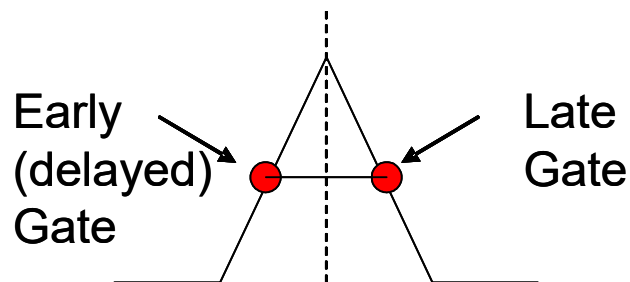




The cross correlation function is:



When the magnitude of the early and late gates matches then the centre location is that of the middle of the pulse, as shown:



In some applications it is required to detect the start of the pulse and in others (as shown above) it is necessary to detect the middle. This variation is supported through the use of the “trigger timing mode” parameter.

## NOTES ON USE

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_EarlyLateGate, SDA\_EarlyLateGateDebug, SDS\_EarlyLateGate, SIF\_EarlyLateGateSquarePulse, SDA\_EarlyLateGateSquarePulse, SDA\_EarlyLateGateSquarePulseDebug, SDS\_EarlyLateGateSquarePulse.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```

void SDA_EarlyLateGate (const SLData_t *,   Pointer to source array
                        SLData_t *,         Pointer to trigger output
                        SLData_t *,         Pointer to matched filter state array
                        SLData_t *,         Pointer to matched filter coefficients
                        SLArrayIndex_t *,   Pointer to matched filter index
                        SLData_t *,         Pointer to early gate state array
                        SLArrayIndex_t *,   Pointer to early gate delay index
                        const SLArrayIndex_t, Early gate delay length
                        SLData_t *,         Pointer to loop filter state array
                        SLData_t *,         Pointer to loop filter coefficients
                        SLArrayIndex_t *,   Pointer to loop filter index
                        const SLArrayIndex_t, Loop filter length
                        const SLData_t,     Noise threshold
                        SLFixData_t *,     Pointer to pulse detector threshold flag
                        SLData_t *,         Pointer to zero crossing previous sample
                        SLArrayIndex_t *,   Pointer to trigger counter
                        SLFixData_t *,     Pointer to trigger detected flag
                        SLFixData_t *,     Pointer to trigger updated flag
                        const SLArrayIndex_t, Samples per symbol
                        const SLArrayIndex_t) Source array length

```

## DESCRIPTION

This function implements the early-late gate timing function.

The signal is pre-filtered with a matched filter and then the result provided to the early late gate detector. The timing signal is not updated if the signal level is below the noise threshold parameter. The output is a pulse stream synchronized to the period of the input data stream. The trigger output is designed to be free running during a period of symbols where there is no magnitude level change.

## NOTES ON USE

The function SIF\_EarlyLateGate must be called prior to using this function. Please refer to the documentation for SIF\_EarlyLateGate for further implementation details.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_EarlyLateGate, SDA\_EarlyLateGateDebug, SDS\_EarlyLateGate,  
 SIF\_EarlyLateGateSquarePulse, SDA\_EarlyLateGateSquarePulse,  
 SDA\_EarlyLateGateSquarePulseDebug, SDS\_EarlyLateGateSquarePulse.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```

void SDA_EarlyLateGateDebug (const SLData_t *, Pointer to source array
    SLData_t *,                      Pointer to trigger output
    SLData_t *,                      Pointer to matched filter state array
    SLData_t *,                      Pointer to matched filter coefficients
    SLArrayIndex_t *,               Pointer to matched filter index
    SLData_t *,                      Pointer to early gate state array
    SLArrayIndex_t *,               Pointer to early gate delay index
    const SLArrayIndex_t,           Early gate delay length
    SLData_t *,                      Pointer to loop filter state array
    SLData_t *,                      Pointer to loop filter coefficients
    SLArrayIndex_t *,               Pointer to loop filter index
    const SLArrayIndex_t,           Loop filter length
    const SLData_t,                 Noise threshold
    SLFixData_t *,                  Pointer to pulse detector threshold flag
    SLData_t *,                      Pointer to zero crossing previous sample
    SLArrayIndex_t *,               Pointer to trigger counter
    SLFixData_t *,                  Pointer to trigger detected flag
    SLFixData_t *,                  Pointer to trigger updated flag
    SLData_t *,                      Pointer to matched filter output
    SLData_t *,                      Pointer to loop filter output
    const SLArrayIndex_t,           Samples per symbol
    const SLArrayIndex_t)           Source array length

```

## DESCRIPTION

This function implements the early-late gate timing function. The matched filter and loop filter outputs are stored for debugging.

The signal is pre-filtered with a matched filter and then the result provided to the early late gate detector. The timing signal is not updated if the signal level is below the noise threshold parameter. The output is a pulse stream synchronized to the period of the input data stream. The trigger output is designed to be free running during a period of symbols where there is no magnitude level change.

## NOTES ON USE

The function SIF\_EarlyLateGate must be called prior to using this function. Please refer to the documentation for SIF\_EarlyLateGate for further implementation details.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_EarlyLateGate, SDA\_EarlyLateGate, SDS\_EarlyLateGate,  
 SIF\_EarlyLateGateSquarePulse, SDA\_EarlyLateGateSquarePulse,  
 SDA\_EarlyLateGateSquarePulseDebug, SDS\_EarlyLateGateSquarePulse.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|   |  |
|---|--|
| SLData_t SDS_EarlyLateGate (const SLData_t, | Source data value                        |
| SLData_t *,                                 | Pointer to matched filter state array    |
| SLData_t *,                                 | Pointer to matched filter coefficients   |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                           | Pointer to matched filter index          |
| SLData_t *,                                 | Pointer to early gate state array        |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                           | Pointer to early gate delay index        |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                       | Early gate delay length                  |
| SLData_t *,                                 | Pointer to loop filter state array       |
| SLData_t *,                                 | Pointer to loop filter coefficients      |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                           | Pointer to loop filter index             |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                       | Loop filter length                       |
| const SLData_t,                             | Noise threshold                          |
| SLFixData_t *,                              | Pointer to pulse detector threshold flag |
| SLData_t *,                                 | Pointer to zero crossing previous sample |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                           | Pointer to trigger counter               |
| SLFixData_t *,                              | Pointer to trigger detected flag         |
| SLFixData_t *,                              | Pointer to trigger updated flag          |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)                       | Samples per symbol                       |

## DESCRIPTION

This function implements the early-late gate timing function on a per-sample basis.

The signal is pre-filtered with a matched filter and then the result provided to the early late gate detector. The timing signal is not updated if the signal level is below the noise threshold parameter. The output is a pulse stream synchronized to the period of the input data stream. The trigger output is designed to be free running during a period of symbols where there is no magnitude level change.

## NOTES ON USE

The function SIF\_EarlyLateGate must be called prior to using this function. Please refer to the documentation for SIF\_EarlyLateGate for further implementation details.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_EarlyLateGate, SDA\_EarlyLateGate, SDA\_EarlyLateGateDebug,  
SIF\_EarlyLateGateSquarePulse, SDA\_EarlyLateGateSquarePulse,  
SDA\_EarlyLateGateSquarePulseDebug, SDS\_EarlyLateGateSquarePulse.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

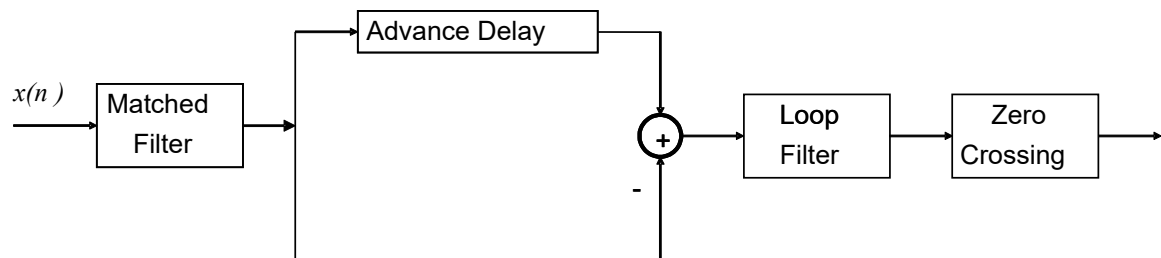
SLError\_t SIF\_EarlyLateGateSquarePulse (SLData\_t \*,    Pointer to matched filter state array  
     SLArrayIndex\_t \*,                                    Pointer to matched filter index  
     SLData\_t \*,    Pointer to matched filter sum  
     SLData\_t \*,    Pointer to early gate state array  
     SLArrayIndex\_t \*,                                    Pointer to early gate delay index  
     const SLArrayIndex\_t,                                Early gate delay length  
     SLData\_t \*,    Pointer to loop filter state array  
     SLData\_t \*,    Pointer to loop filter coefficients  
     SLArrayIndex\_t \*,                                    Pointer to loop filter index  
     const SLArrayIndex\_t,                                Loop filter length  
     const SLData\_t,                                      Loop filter cut-off / centre frequency  
     SLFixData\_t \*,                                      Pointer to pulse detector threshold flag  
     SLData\_t \*,    Pointer to zero crossing previous sample  
     SLArrayIndex\_t \*,                                    Pointer to trigger counter  
     SLFixData\_t \*,                                      Pointer to trigger detected flag  
     SLFixData\_t \*,                                      Pointer to trigger updated flag  
     const enum SLELGTriggerTiming\_t,                    Trigger timing mode  
     SLArrayIndex\_t \*,                                    Pointer to trigger latency  
     const SLArrayIndex\_t)

## DESCRIPTION

This function initialises the early-late gate timing function, including the matched filter. The matched filter is optimized for square pulse signals and uses a comb filter for the implementation. The trigger timing mode parameter specifies the location of the timing pulse with respect to the symbol pulses. The options for the trigger timing mode are as follows:

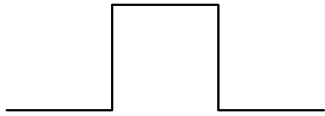
SIGLIB\_ELG\_TRIGGER\_START - Locate the trigger at the start of the symbol  
 SIGLIB\_ELG\_TRIGGER\_MIDDLE - Locate the trigger in the middle of the symbol

The early late gate timing error detector has the following flow diagram:

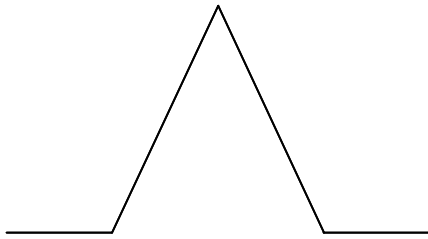


The following description describes how the Early Late Gate Timing Error Detector (ELG-TED) works.

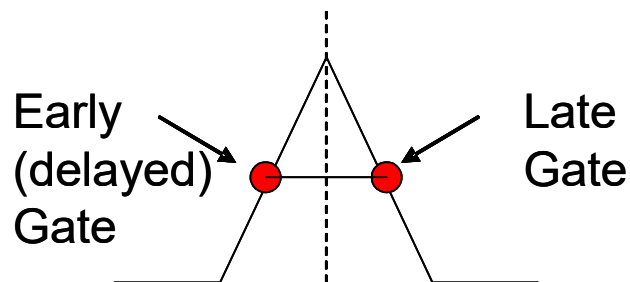
For a given pulse:



The cross correlation function is:



When the magnitude of the early and late gates matches then the centre location is that of the middle of the pulse, as shown:



In some applications it is required to detect the start of the pulse and in others (as shown above) it is necessary to detect the middle. This variation is supported through the use of the “trigger timing mode” parameter.

#### NOTES ON USE

#### CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_EarlyLateGate, SDA\_EarlyLateGate, SDA\_EarlyLateGateDebug,  
 SDS\_EarlyLateGate, SDA\_EarlyLateGateSquarePulse,  
 SDA\_EarlyLateGateSquarePulseDebug, SDS\_EarlyLateGateSquarePulse.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_EarlyLateGateSquarePulse (const SLData_t *,   Pointer to source data
    SLData_t *,                                     Pointer to trigger output
    SLData_t *,                                     Pointer to matched filter state array
    SLArrayIndex_t *,                             Pointer to matched filter index
    SLData_t *,                                     Pointer to matched filter sum
    SLData_t *,                                     Pointer to early gate state array
    SLArrayIndex_t *,                             Pointer to early gate delay index
    const SLArrayIndex_t,                         Early gate delay length
    SLData_t *,                                     Pointer to loop filter state array
    SLData_t *,                                     Pointer to loop filter coefficients
    SLArrayIndex_t *,                             Pointer to loop filter index
    const SLArrayIndex_t,                         Loop filter length
    const SLData_t,                               Noise threshold
    SLFixData_t *,                               Pointer to pulse detector threshold flag
    SLData_t *,                                   Pointer to zero crossing previous sample
    SLArrayIndex_t *,                             Pointer to trigger counter
    SLFixData_t *,                               Pointer to trigger detected flag
    SLFixData_t *,                               Pointer to trigger updated flag
    const SLArrayIndex_t,                         Samples per symbol
    const SLArrayIndex_t)                        Source array length
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function implements the early-late gate timing function.

The signal is pre-filtered with a matched filter and then the result provided to the early late gate detector. The timing signal is not updated if the signal level is below the noise threshold parameter. The output is a pulse stream synchronized to the period of the input data stream. The trigger output is designed to be free running during a period of symbols where there is no magnitude level change.

## NOTES ON USE

The function SIF\_EarlyLateGateSquarePulse must be called prior to using this function. Please refer to the documentation for SIF\_EarlyLateGateSquarePulse for further implementation details.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_EarlyLateGate, SDA\_EarlyLateGate, SDA\_EarlyLateGateDebug,  
SDS\_EarlyLateGate, SIF\_EarlyLateGateSquarePulse,  
SDA\_EarlyLateGateSquarePulseDebug, SDS\_EarlyLateGateSquarePulse.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_EarlyLateGateSquarePulseDebug (const SLData_t *,   Pointer to src. data
    SLData_t *,           Pointer to trigger output
    SLData_t *,           Pointer to matched filter state array
    SLArrayIndex_t *,     Pointer to matched filter index
    SLData_t *,           Pointer to matched filter sum
    SLData_t *,           Pointer to early gate state array
    SLArrayIndex_t *,     Pointer to early gate delay index
    const SLArrayIndex_t, Early gate delay length
    SLData_t *,           Pointer to loop filter state array
    SLData_t *,           Pointer to loop filter coefficients
    SLArrayIndex_t *,     Pointer to loop filter index
    const SLArrayIndex_t, Loop filter length
    const SLData_t,       Noise threshold
    SLFixData_t *,        Pointer to pulse detector threshold flag
    SLData_t *,           Pointer to zero crossing previous sample
    SLArrayIndex_t *,     Pointer to trigger counter
    SLFixData_t *,        Pointer to trigger detected flag
    SLFixData_t *,        Pointer to trigger updated flag
    SLData_t *,           Pointer to matched filter output
    SLData_t *,           Pointer to loop filter output
    const SLArrayIndex_t, Samples per symbol
    const SLArrayIndex_t) Source array length
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function implements the early-late gate timing function. The matched filter and loop filter outputs are stored for debugging.

The signal is pre-filtered with a matched filter and then the result provided to the early late gate detector. The timing signal is not updated if the signal level is below the noise threshold parameter. The output is a pulse stream synchronized to the period of the input data stream. The trigger output is designed to be free running during a period of symbols where there is no magnitude level change.

## NOTES ON USE

The function SIF\_EarlyLateGateSquarePulse must be called prior to using this function. Please refer to the documentation for SIF\_EarlyLateGateSquarePulse for further implementation details.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_EarlyLateGate, SDA\_EarlyLateGate, SDA\_EarlyLateGateDebug,  
SDS\_EarlyLateGate, SIF\_EarlyLateGateSquarePulse,  
SDA\_EarlyLateGateSquarePulse, SDS\_EarlyLateGateSquarePulse.



## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|  |  |
|--|--|
| SLData_t SDS_EarlyLateGateSquarePulse (const SLData_t, | Source data value                        |
| SLData_t *,  | Pointer to matched filter state array    |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                                      | Pointer to matched filter index          |
| SLData_t *,  | Pointer to matched filter sum            |
| SLData_t *,  | Pointer to early gate state array        |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                                      | Pointer to early gate delay index        |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                                  | Early gate delay length                  |
| SLData_t *,  | Pointer to loop filter state array       |
| SLData_t *,  | Pointer to loop filter coefficients      |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                                      | Pointer to loop filter index             |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                                  | Loop filter length                       |
| const SLData_t,  | Noise threshold                          |
| SLFixData_t *,   | Pointer to pulse detector threshold flag |
| SLData_t *,  | Pointer to zero crossing previous sample |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                                      | Pointer to trigger counter               |
| SLFixData_t *,   | Pointer to trigger detected flag         |
| SLFixData_t *,   | Pointer to trigger updated flag          |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)                                  | Samples per symbol                       |

## DESCRIPTION

This function implements the early-late gate timing function on a per-sample basis.

The signal is pre-filtered with a matched filter and then the result provided to the early late gate detector. The timing signal is not updated if the signal level is below the noise threshold parameter. The output is a pulse stream synchronized to the period of the input data stream. The trigger output is designed to be free running during a period of symbols where there is no magnitude level change.

## NOTES ON USE

The function SIF\_EarlyLateGateSquarePulse must be called prior to using this function. Please refer to the documentation for SIF\_EarlyLateGateSquarePulse for further implementation details.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_EarlyLateGate, SDA\_EarlyLateGate, SDA\_EarlyLateGateDebug,  
 SDS\_EarlyLateGate, SIF\_EarlyLateGateSquarePulse,  
 SDA\_EarlyLateGateSquarePulse, SDA\_EarlyLateGateSquarePulseDebug.

## Convolutional Encode and Viterbi Decode Functions (*viterbi.c*)

The convolutional encoder and Viterbi decoder functions include several sections of code that is conditionally compiled, depending on the value of certain defined constants that are located at the top of the source file (*viterbi.c*). In all cases, the `#define` statements should be set to '1' to enable the appropriate code and '0' to disable it.

For the Viterbi decoders, it may be necessary to normalise the error accumulation to avoid numerical overflow. This can be controlled using the following definitions:

```
K3_NORMALISE_ERROR
V32_NORMALISE_ERROR
```

The following conditional compilation switches also control the debug feedback, using `printf` statements:

|                                     |  |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| <code>DEBUG</code>                  | Global debug enable / disable switch   |
| <code>K3_DEBUG_ERROR_ACC</code>     | K=3 Viterbi decoder error accumulation |
| <code>K3_DEBUG_TRACE_BACK</code>    | K=3 Viterbi decoder trace back path    |
| <br>                                |  |
| <code>V32_DEBUG_CONV_ENC</code>     | V.32 convolutional encoder             |
| <code>V32_DEBUG_CHANNEL_DATA</code> | V.32 channel data                      |
| <code>V32_DEBUG_ERROR_ACC</code>    | Debug V.32 error accumulation          |
| <code>V32_DEBUG_TRACE_BACK</code>   | V.32 trace back path                   |

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

unsigned int SDS\_ConvEncoderK3 (unsigned SLChar\_t,   Input character  
                                  SLArrayIndex\_t \*)        Pointer to convolutional encoder state

**DESCRIPTION**

This function implements a K=3, rate 1/2 convolutional encoder on a source character (8 bits). The output is a short integer (16 bits), with two output bits for every input bit.

**NOTES ON USE**

The convolutional encoder state is a single word of type SLArrayIndex\_t.

Please also refer to the notes at the top of the convolutional encoder / Viterbi decoder section.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SIF\_ViterbiDecoderK3, SDS\_ViterbiDecoderK3.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|   |   |
|---|---|
| void SIF_ViterbiDecoderK3 (SLFixData_t *, | Bit counter                               |
| SLChar_t *,                               | Storage to build decoded bits into a byte |
| SLData_t *,                               | Accumulated error array                   |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                         | Survivor state history table              |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                         | State history array offset                |
| SLFixData_t *,                            | Trace back mode flag                      |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)                     | Trace back depth                          |

## DESCRIPTION

This function initialises the K=3, rate 1/2 Viterbi decoder function.

## NOTES ON USE

Bit counter parameter counts the bits into the output word so they are correctly aligned, this accounts for the delay through the decoder.

The survivor state history table is a two dimensional array of dimension: [TRACE\_BACK\_TABLE\_LENGTH][SIGLIB\_VITK3\_NUMBER\_OF\_STATES]. Where SIGLIB\_VITK3\_NUMBER\_OF\_STATES is defined by the SigLib library. The accumulated error array is of dimension SIGLIB\_VITK3\_NUMBER\_OF\_STATES.

The trace back mode flag parameter is set to SIGLIB\_TRUE when in trace back mode. The state history array offset parameter tracks the offset into the circular state history array.

Please also refer to the notes at the top of the convolutional encoder / Viterbi decoder section.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDS\_ConvEncoderK3, SDS\_ViterbiDecoderK3.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```

SLChar_t SDS_ViterbiDecoderK3 (SLData_t *,    Source data pointer
                               SLFixData_t *,    Bit counter
                               SLChar_t *,    Storage to build decoded bits into a byte
                               SLData_t *,    Accumulated error array
                               SLArrayIndex_t *, Survivor state history table
                               SLArrayIndex_t *, Offset into state history array
                               SLFixData_t *, Trace back mode flag
                               const SLArrayIndex_t) Trace back depth

```

## DESCRIPTION

This function implements a K=3, rate 1/2 Viterbi decoder on a short integer (16 bits) input. The output is a character (8 bits). Two input bits are used to generate every output bit.

## NOTES ON USE

Bit counter parameter counts the bits into the output word so they are correctly aligned, this accounts for the delay through the decoder.

The survivor state history table is a two dimensional array of dimension: [TRACE\_BACK\_TABLE\_LENGTH][SIGLIB\_VITK3\_NUMBER\_OF\_STATES]. Where SIGLIB\_VITK3\_NUMBER\_OF\_STATES is defined by the SigLib library. The accumulated error array is of dimension SIGLIB\_VITK3\_NUMBER\_OF\_STATES.

The trace back mode flag parameter is set to SIGLIB\_TRUE when in trace back mode. The state history array offset parameter tracks the offset into the circular state history array.

Please also refer to the notes at the top of the convolutional encoder / Viterbi decoder section.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDS\_ConvEncoderK3, SIF\_ViterbiDecoderK3.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLComplexRect\_s SDS\_ConvEncoderV32 (unsigned SLChar\_t, Input nibble  
SLArrayIndex\_t \*, Differential encoder state  
SLArrayIndex\_t \*) Convolutional encoder state

**DESCRIPTION**

This function implements a V.32 convolutional encoder on an source nibble (4 bits). The output is a complex number, which represents that positioning of the points in the V.32 constellation diagram. This function also implements the differential encoder functionality, which is part of the V.32 specification.

**NOTES ON USE**

The convolutional encoder state and differential encoder state are both single words of type SLArrayIndex\_t.

Please also refer to the notes at the top of the convolutional encoder / Viterbi decoder section.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SIF\_ViterbiDecoderV32, SDS\_ViterbiDecoderV32.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SIF_ViterbiDecoderV32 (SLData_t *, Accumulated error array
    SLArrayIndex_t *, Survivor state history table
    SLArrayIndex_t *, Offset into state history array
    SLFixData_t *, Trace back mode flag
    const SLArrayIndex_t) Trace back depth
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function initialises the V.32 Viterbi decoder function.

## NOTES ON USE

The survivor state history table is a two dimensional array of dimension:  
[TRACE\_BACK\_TABLE\_LENGTH][SIGLIB\_VITV32\_NUMBER\_OF\_STATES].  
Where SIGLIB\_VITV32\_NUMBER\_OF\_STATES is defined by the SigLib library.  
The accumulated error array is of dimension:  
SIGLIB\_VITV32\_NUMBER\_OF\_STATES.

The trace back mode flag parameter is set to SIGLIB\_TRUE when in trace back mode. The state history array offset parameter tracks the offset into the circular state history array.

Please also refer to the notes at the top of the convolutional encoder / Viterbi decoder section.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDS\_ConvEncoderV32, SDS\_ViterbiDecoderV32.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```

SLChar_t SDS_ViterbiDecoderV32 (SLComplexRect_s,   Channel data
    SLData_t *,                                     Accumulated error array
    SLArrayIndex_t *,                               Survivor state history table
    SLArrayIndex_t *,                               Offset into state history array
    SLArrayIndex_t *,                               Q4Q3 History table
    SLArrayIndex_t *,                               Differential decoder state
    SLFixData_t *,                                  Trace back mode flag
    const SLArrayIndex_t)                           Trace back depth

```

## DESCRIPTION

This function implements a V.32 Viterbi decoder on a complex source number, which represents that position of the received sample on the V.32 constellation diagram. The output is a nibble (4 bits). This function also implements the differential decoder functionality, which is part of the V.32 specification.

## NOTES ON USE

The survivor state history table and nearest Q4Q3 history array are both two dimensional arrays of dimension:  
 [TRACE\_BACK\_TABLE\_LENGTH][SIGLIB\_VITV32\_NUMBER\_OF\_STATES].  
 Where SIGLIB\_VITV32\_NUMBER\_OF\_STATES is defined by the SigLib library.  
 The accumulated error array is of dimension:  
 SIGLIB\_VITV32\_NUMBER\_OF\_STATES.

The differential decoder state is a single words of type SLArrayIndex\_t.

The trace back mode flag parameter is set to SIGLIB\_TRUE when in trace back mode. The state history array offset parameter tracks the offset into the circular state history array.

Please also refer to the notes at the top of the convolutional encoder / Viterbi decoder section.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDS\_ConvEncoderV32, SIF\_ViterbiDecoderV32.



## Analog Modulation Functions (*mod\_a.c*)

### SIF\_AmplitudeModulate

#### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SIF_AmplitudeModulate (SLData_t *, Carrier table pointer
                           SLArrayIndex_t *,           Carrier table index
                           const SLArrayIndex_t)        Modulator array length
```

#### DESCRIPTION

This function initialized the amplitude modulation functions SDA\_AmplitudeModulate and SDS\_AmplitudeModulate. These functions utilize a look up table for the carrier that represents an integer number of samples per cycle. For example, a carrier frequency of 200 KHz, with a sample rate of 1 MHz gives a look up table length of  $1e^6 / 2e^5 = 5$  samples.

If your application requires a carrier frequency that is not an integer number of samples in length then you are advised to use the XXX\_AmplitudeModulate2 functions.

#### NOTES ON USE

#### CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_AmplitudeModulate, SDS\_AmplitudeModulate,  
SIF\_AmplitudeModulate2, SDA\_AmplitudeModulate2, SDS\_AmplitudeModulate2.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
void SDA_AmplitudeModulate (const SLData_t *, Modulating signal source pointer
                           const SLData_t *, Carrier table pointer
                           SLData_t *, Modulated signal destination pointer
                           SLArrayIndex_t *, Carrier table index
                           const SLArrayIndex_t, Modulator array length
                           const SLArrayIndex_t) Sample array size
```

**DESCRIPTION**

This function amplitude modulates one signal with another, it can be identically used for modulation and demodulation.

**NOTES ON USE**

This function operates on an array oriented basis.

The function SIF\_AmplitudeModulate should be called prior to using this function. Please read the notes for SIF\_AmplitudeModulate.

This function can work in-place.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SIF\_AmplitudeModulate, SDS\_AmplitudeModulate,  
SIF\_AmplitudeModulate2, SDA\_AmplitudeModulate2, SDS\_AmplitudeModulate2.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLData\_t SDS\_AmplitudeModulate (const SLData\_t, Modulating signal source data  
const SLData\_t \*, Carrier table pointer  
SLArrayIndex\_t \*, Carrier table index  
const SLArrayIndex\_t) Modulator array length

**DESCRIPTION**

This function amplitude modulates one signal with another, it can be identically used for modulation and demodulation.

**NOTES ON USE**

This function operates on a per sample basis.

The function SIF\_AmplitudeModulate should be called prior to using this function. Please read the notes for SIF\_AmplitudeModulate.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SIF\_AmplitudeModulate, SDA\_AmplitudeModulate,  
SIF\_AmplitudeModulate2, SDA\_AmplitudeModulate2, SDS\_AmplitudeModulate2.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
void SIF_AmplitudeModulate2 (SLData_t *,          Carrier table pointer
                             SLData_t *,          Carrier table phase
                             const SLArrayIndex_t) Modulator array length
```

**DESCRIPTION**

This function initialized the amplitude modulation functions SDA\_AmplitudeModulate2 and SDS\_AmplitudeModulate2. These functions utilize a look up table for the carrier that represents a single over-sampled cosine wave form. The modulators step through the look up table with a phase integrator that is proportional to the carrier frequency normalized to a sampling rate of 1.0 Hz. The carrier phase uses a floating point variable so it can support a very large range of carrier frequencies with high accuracy.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SIF\_AmplitudeModulate, SDA\_AmplitudeModulate,  
SDS\_AmplitudeModulate, SDA\_AmplitudeModulate2, SDS\_AmplitudeModulate2.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
void SDA_AmplitudeModulate2 (const SLData_t *, Modulating signal source pointer
    const SLData_t *,           Carrier table pointer
    SLData_t *,                 Modulated signal destination pointer
    SLData_t *,                 Carrier table phase
    const SLData_t,             Carrier frequency
    const SLArrayIndex_t,       Modulator array length
    const SLArrayIndex_t)       Sample array size
```

**DESCRIPTION**

This function amplitude modulates one signal with another, it can be identically used for modulation and demodulation.

**NOTES ON USE**

The carrier frequency is normalized to 1.0 Hz.

This function operates on an array oriented basis.

The function SIF\_AmplitudeModulate2 should be called prior to using this function. Please read the notes for SIF\_AmplitudeModulate2.

This function can work in-place.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SIF\_AmplitudeModulate, SDA\_AmplitudeModulate,  
SDS\_AmplitudeModulate, SIF\_AmplitudeModulate2, SDS\_AmplitudeModulate2.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLData\_t SDS\_AmplitudeModulate2 (const SLData\_t, Modulating signal source data  
const SLData\_t \*, Carrier table pointer  
SLData\_t \*, Carrier table phase  
const SLData\_t, Carrier frequency  
const SLArrayIndex\_t) Modulator array length

**DESCRIPTION**

This function amplitude modulates one signal with another, it can be identically used for modulation and demodulation.

**NOTES ON USE**

The carrier frequency is normalized to 1.0 Hz.

This function operates on a per sample basis.

The function SIF\_AmplitudeModulate2 should be called prior to using this function. Please read the notes for SIF\_AmplitudeModulate2.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SIF\_AmplitudeModulate, SDA\_AmplitudeModulate,  
SDS\_AmplitudeModulate, SIF\_AmplitudeModulate2, SDA\_AmplitudeModulate2.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|   |                                   |
|---|-----------------------------------|
| SLError_t SIF_ComplexShift (SLData_t *, | Comb filter 1 pointer             |
| SLData_t *,                             | Comb filter 1 running sum         |
| SLData_t *,                             | Comb filter 2 pointer             |
| SLData_t *,                             | Comb filter 2 running sum         |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                       | Comb filter phase                 |
| SLData_t *,                             | Sine table pointer                |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                       | Sine table phase for mixer        |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                   | Length of comb filter             |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)                   | Length of demodulation sine table |

## DESCRIPTION

This function initializes the complex frequency shifting function.

## NOTES ON USE

This function initialises a table containing a sinusoidal waveform. This table consists of floating-point data values. For fixed point implementations it will be necessary to generate the tables with the appropriate data, which will depend on the length of the table and the CPU word length.

This function returns the error code from the SDA\_SignalGenerate() function that it calls.

## CROSS REFERENCE

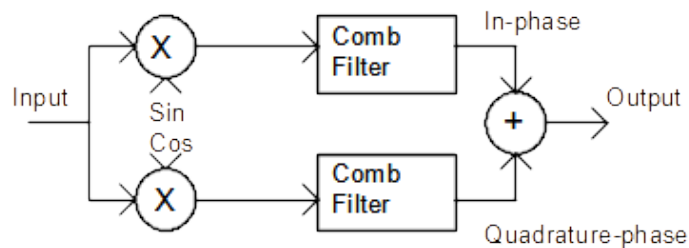
SDA\_ComplexShift.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_ComplexShift (const SLData_t *,Modulating signal pointer
    SLData_t *,                      Modulated signal destination pointer
    SLData_t *,                      Comb filter 1 pointer
    SLData_t *,                      Comb filter 1 running sum
    SLData_t *,                      Comb filter 2 pointer
    SLData_t *,                      Comb filter 2 running sum
    SLArrayIndex_t *,               Comb filter phase
    const SLData_t *,               Sine table pointer
    SLArrayIndex_t *,               Sine table phase for mixer
    const SLData_t,                 Mix frequency
    const SLArrayIndex_t,           Length of comb filter
    const SLArrayIndex_t,           Sine table length for mixer
    const SLArrayIndex_t)           Sample array length
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function performs a complex frequency shift with the following structure:



Sum can be Square magnitude sum, or Quadrature - In-phase, this routine uses square magnitude sum.

## NOTES ON USE

This function uses a single length N sine table. The cosine pointer index starts at (length >> 2) to account for the phase.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_ComplexShift.



### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData\_t SIF\_FrequencyModulate (SLData\_t \*,     Pointer to carrier phase  
                                  SLData\_t \*,             Pointer to LUT array  
                                  const SLArrayIndex\_t)     Table length

### DESCRIPTION

This function initializes the fast cosine look up table for the frequency modulation functions.

### NOTES ON USE

The array contains one complete cycle of a cosine wave (0 to  $2\pi$ ), with N samples.

### CROSS REFERENCE

SDS\_FrequencyModulate, SDA\_FrequencyModulate,  
SIF\_FrequencyModulateComplex, SDS\_FrequencyModulateComplex,  
SDA\_FrequencyModulateComplex.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLData_t SDS_FrequencyModulate (const SLData_t,  Modulating signal
                                const SLData_t,    Carrier frequency
                                const SLData_t,    Modulation index
                                SLData_t *,         Phase offset
                                const SLData_t *,   Fast sine look up table
                                const SLArrayIndex_t) Look up table size
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function frequency modulates a carrier signal with another. The modulation index specifies the frequency change per unit input amplitude change on the modulating signal.

The output phase is modified by the carrier frequency (normalized to 1.0 Hz) plus the product of the modulation index and the magnitude of the input signal.

This function can also be used as a voltage controlled oscillator (VCO / NCO).

## NOTES ON USE

This function can operate on individual samples and uses the fast sine wave look up table technique.

If this function proves to be unstable then the most likely cause is that the modulation index is too large.

The function SIF\_FrequencyModulate must be called prior to calling this function.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_FrequencyModulate, SDA\_FrequencyModulate,  
 SDA\_FrequencyDemodulate, SIF\_FrequencyModulateComplex,  
 SDS\_FrequencyModulateComplex, SDA\_FrequencyModulateComplex.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
void SDA_FrequencyModulate (const SLData_t *,   Modulating signal
                           SLData_t *,         Modulated signal destination pointer
                           const SLData_t ,     Carrier frequency
                           const SLData_t ,     Modulation index
                           SLData_t *,         Phase offset
                           const SLData_t *,     Fast sine look up table
                           const SLArrayIndex_t, Look up table size
                           const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length
```

**DESCRIPTION**

This function frequency modulates a carrier signal with another. The modulation index specifies the frequency change per unit input amplitude change on the modulating signal.

The output phase is modified by the carrier frequency (normalized to 1.0 Hz) plus the product of the modulation index and the magnitude of the input signal.

This function can also be used as a voltage controlled oscillator (VCO / NCO).

**NOTES ON USE**

This function can operate on separate source and destination arrays or the source and destination pointers can reference the same array, for in-place operation. It uses the fast sine wave look up table technique

If this function proves to be unstable then the most likely cause is that the modulation index is too large.

The function SIF\_FrequencyModulate must be called prior to calling this function.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SIF\_FrequencyModulate, SDS\_FrequencyModulate,  
SDA\_FrequencyDemodulate, SIF\_FrequencyModulateComplex,  
SDS\_FrequencyModulateComplex, SDA\_FrequencyModulateComplex.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|   |  |
|---|--|
| void SDA_FrequencyDemodulate (const SLData_t *, | Modulated signal                       |
| SLData_t *,                                     | Demodulated signal destination pointer |
| SLData_t *,                                     | Previous value of differential         |
| SLData_t *,                                     | Previous value of envelope             |
| const SLData_t,                                 | Envelope decay factor                  |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)                           | Array length                           |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function demodulates an FM signal using the direct method i.e. differentiate and envelope detect.

The function is required to maintain the signal magnitude and envelope magnitude to ensure continuous operation across array boundaries. This is achieved using the previous value of differential and previous value of envelope variables. It is also necessary to specify the envelope decay factor to define how aggressively the envelope tracks the signal.

**NOTES ON USE**

This function can operate on separate source and destination arrays or the source and destination pointers can reference the same array, for in-place operation.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SIF\_FrequencyModulate, SDS\_FrequencyModulate,  
SDA\_FrequencyModulate, SIF\_FrequencyModulateComplex,  
SDS\_FrequencyModulateComplex, SDA\_FrequencyModulateComplex.

### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SIF_FrequencyModulateComplex (SLData_t *,      Pointer to carrier phase  
    SLData_t *,      Pointer to LUT array  
    const SLArrayIndex_t)      Table length
```

### DESCRIPTION

This function initializes the fast cosine look up table for the complex frequency modulation functions.

### NOTES ON USE

The array contains one and one quarter of a cosine wave ( $0$  to  $5\pi/2$ ), with  $5*N/4$  samples.

### CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_FrequencyModulate, SDS\_FrequencyModulate,  
SDA\_FrequencyModulate, SDA\_FrequencyDemodulate,  
SDS\_FrequencyModulateComplex, SDA\_FrequencyModulateComplex.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
void SDS_FrequencyModulateComplex (const SLData_t,  Modulating signal source
                                   SLData_t *,      Real modulated signal destination
pointer                             SLData_t *,      Imaginary modulated signal destination
pointer                             const SLData_t,   Carrier frequency
                                   const SLData_t,   Modulation index
                                   SLData_t *,        Pointer to carrier phase
                                   const SLData_t *,  Fast sine / cosine look up table
                                   const SLArrayIndex_t) Look up table size
```

**DESCRIPTION**

This function frequency modulates a complex carrier signal (In-phase and quadrature) with another. The modulation index specifies the frequency change per unit input amplitude change on the modulating signal.

The output phase is modified by the carrier frequency (normalized to 1.0 Hz) plus the product of the modulation index and the magnitude of the input signal.

This function can also be used as a voltage controlled oscillator (VCO / NCO) to generate a complex I-Q signal.

**NOTES ON USE**

This function operates on individual samples and uses the fast sine/cosine wave look up table technique.

If this function proves to be unstable then the most likely cause is that the modulation index is too large.

The function SIF\_FrequencyModulateComplex must be called prior to calling this function.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SIF\_FrequencyModulate, SDS\_FrequencyModulate,  
SDA\_FrequencyModulate, SDA\_FrequencyDemodulate,  
SIF\_FrequencyModulateComplex, SDA\_FrequencyModulateComplex.

### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|  |  |
|--|--|
| void SDA_FrequencyModulateComplex (const SLData_t *,<br>source pointer<br>SLData_t *,<br>pointer<br>SLData_t *,<br>pointer<br>const SLData_t,<br>const SLData_t,<br>SLData_t *,<br>const SLData_t *,<br>const SLArrayIndex_t,<br>const SLArrayIndex_t) | Modulating signal<br><br>Real modulated signal destination<br><br>Imaginary modulated signal destination<br><br>Carrier frequency<br>Modulation index<br>Pointer to carrier phase<br>Fast cosine look up table<br>Look up table size<br>Array length |
|--|--|

### DESCRIPTION

This function frequency modulates a complex carrier signal (In-phase and quadrature) with another. The modulation index specifies the frequency change per unit input amplitude change on the modulating signal.

The output phase is modified by the carrier frequency (normalized to 1.0 Hz) plus the product of the modulation index and the magnitude of the input signal.

This function can also be used as a voltage controlled oscillator (VCO / NCO) to generate a complex I-Q signal.

### NOTES ON USE

This function operates on separate source and destination arrays or the source and destination pointers can reference the same array, for in-place operation. It uses the fast sine wave look up table technique

If this function proves to be unstable then the most likely cause is that the modulation index is too large.

The function SIF\_FrequencyModulateComplex must be called prior to calling this function.

### CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_FrequencyModulate, SDS\_FrequencyModulate,  
 SDA\_FrequencyModulate, SDA\_FrequencyDemodulate,  
 SIF\_FrequencyModulateComplex, SDS\_FrequencyModulateComplex.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
void SDA_DeltaModulate (const SLData_t *,      Input data pointer
                        SLData_t *,            Destination data pointer
                        SLData_t *,            Current integrator sum
                        const SLData_t,         Delta
                        const SLArrayIndex_t)   Array length
```

**DESCRIPTION**

This function delta modulates an input signal. The delta modulation index “delta” specifies the fixed increment or decrement on the current integrator sum. The "current integrator sum" parameter is used to maintain continuity over consecutive arrays.

**NOTES ON USE**

This function can operate on separate source and destination arrays or the source and destination pointers can reference the same array, for in-place operation.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_DeltaDemodulate, SDA\_DeltaModulate2



**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
void SDA_DeltaDemodulate (const SLData_t *,    Input data pointer
                          SLData_t *,          Destination data pointer
                          SLData_t *,          Current integrator sum
                          const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length
```

**DESCRIPTION**

This function demodulates an input delta modulated signal generated by either SDA\_DeltaModulate or SDA\_DeltaModulate2. The “current integrator sum” is used to maintain continuity over consecutive arrays.

**NOTES ON USE**

This function can operate on separate source and destination arrays or the source and destination pointers can reference the same array, for in-place operation.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_DeltaModulate, SDA\_DeltaModulate2

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
void SDA_DeltaModulate2 (const SLData_t *,      Input data pointer
                        SLData_t *,            Destination data pointer
                        SLData_t *,            Current integrator sum
                        const SLData_t,         Integration maximum value
                        const SLArrayIndex_t)   Array length
```

**DESCRIPTION**

This function delta modulates an input signal. The integration maximum value parameter specifies the largest increment that can be applied to the current integrator sum. The “current integrator sum” parameter is used to maintain continuity over consecutive arrays.

**NOTES ON USE**

This function can operate on separate source and destination arrays or the source and destination pointers can reference the same array, for in-place operation.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_DeltaDemodulate, SDA\_DeltaModulate

#### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|  |  |
|--|--|
| SLError_t SIF_CostasQamDemodulate (SLData_t *, | VCO phase                                  |
| SLData_t *,                                    | VCO look up table                          |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                          | VCO look up table size                     |
| const SLData_t,                                | Low-pass filter cut-off frequency          |
| SLData_t *,                                    | Pointer to loop filter 1 state             |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                              | Pointer to loop filter 1 index             |
| SLData_t *,                                    | Pointer to loop filter 2 state             |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                              | Pointer to loop filter 2 index             |
| SLData_t *,                                    | Pointer to loop filter coefficients        |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                          | Loop filter length                         |
| SLData_t *,                                    | Pointer to loop filter state               |
| SLData_t *,                                    | Pointer to delayed sample                  |
| SLData_t *,                                    | Pointer to matched filter state array      |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                              | Pointer to matched filter index            |
| SLData_t *,                                    | Pointer to matched filter sum              |
| SLData_t *,                                    | Pointer to early gate state array          |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                              | Pointer to early gate delay index          |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                          | Early gate delay length                    |
| SLData_t *,                                    | Pointer to loop filter state array         |
| SLData_t *,                                    | Pointer to loop filter coefficients        |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                              | Pointer to loop filter index               |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                          | Loop filter length                         |
| const SLData_t,                                | Loop filter cut-off / centre frequency     |
| SLFixData_t *,                                 | Pointer to pulse detector threshold flag   |
| SLData_t *,                                    | Pointer to zero crossing previous sample   |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                              | Pointer to trigger counter                 |
| SLFixData_t *,                                 | Pointer to trigger detected flag           |
| SLFixData_t *,                                 | Pointer to trigger updated flag            |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                              | Pointer to Early-late gate trigger latency |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                          | Samples per symbol                         |
| SLData_t *,                                    | Pointer to ELG real output                 |
| synchronization delay state array              |  |
| SLData_t *,                                    | Pointer to ELG imaginary output            |
| synchronization delay state array              |  |
| SLArrayIndex_t *)                              | Pointer to ELG synch. delay index          |

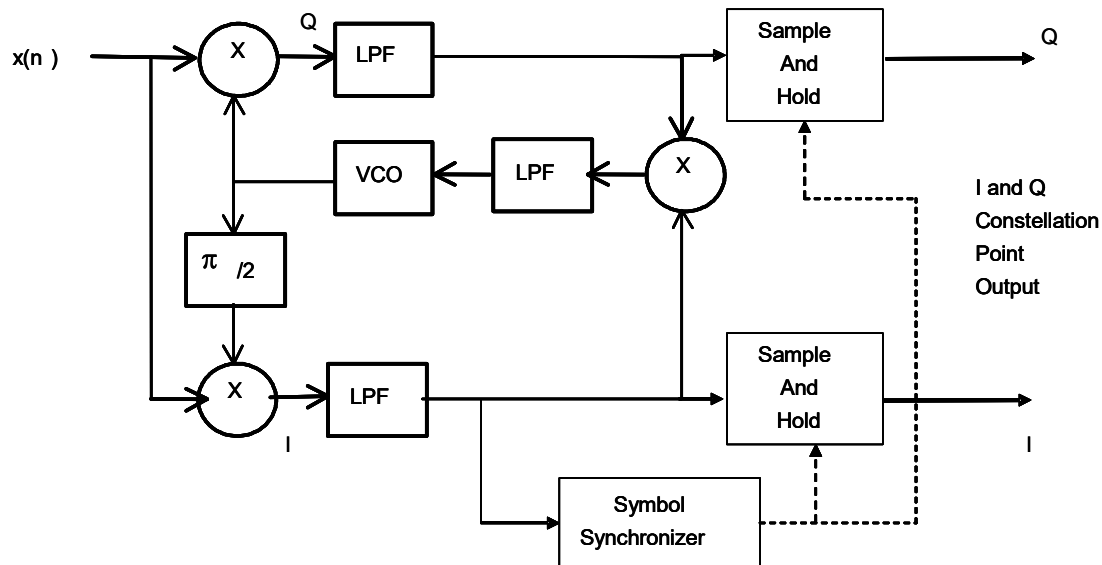
#### DESCRIPTION

This function initialises the SDS\_CostasQamDemodulate, SDS\_CostasQamDemodulateDebug, SDA\_CostasQamDemodulate and SDA\_CostasQamDemodulateDebug functions.

The Costas Loop based QAM demodulation functions are the preferred functions for demodulating any type of QAM based modulation, including BPSK, QPSK (4-QAM),

DQPSK,  $\pi/4$ DQPSK, 8-PSK and any other QAM variation. The demodulation functions actually return the demodulated IQ sample for each symbol and these can be decoded to give the desired output bit sequence.

The following diagram shows the structure of the Costas loop QAM demodulator:



The Costas loop supports all of the phase error detector modes of the standard Costas loop functions but this diagram has been simplified for clarity.

The Costas loop is used to extract the remote carrier synchronization and the symbol synchronizer (an Early-late-gate Timing Error Detector) locks to the remote symbol timing. The symbol synchronizer also uses the SDS\_TriggerReverberator function to ensure that the early-late gate trigger continues even when the symbol magnitude does not vary.

## NOTES ON USE

When decoding an arbitrary sequence of data there are a few considerations to be made with respect to the timing and synchronization. The first is that it may be necessary to have separate Costas loop gains for the acquisition and tracking modes. The second consideration is that it is common to have to search for a synchronization sequence of received symbols. Although SigLib supports both array and sample oriented versions of the Costas loop QAM demodulation functions, both of these requirements are typically more easily handled when the per-sample function is used (SDS\_CostasQamDemodulate).

The Costas loop is responsible for the acquisition of the carrier frequency. It is a feedback loop that uses the error between the received carrier phase and the internal carrier signal phase (generated by the Voltage Controlled Oscillator -VCO). When using the Costas Loop it is typical to acquire a rough estimate very quickly and then track the actual frequency more accurately and more slowly. The way to do this is to use two different values for the VCO feedback parameter - one for acquisition and one for tracking. The feedback value is just a gain that is applied to the VCO input to change the rate at which the Costas loop tracks the phase of the incoming signal. If this value is too small then it won't acquire the phase and if it is too big then it will become unstable. Swapping between acquisition and tracking mode requires knowledge of how close to synchronization the Costas loop is and this is typically done by looking at the error magnitude in the demodulated symbol.

The SDS\_CostasQamDemodulate, SDS\_CostasQamDemodulateDebug, SDA\_CostasQamDemodulate and SDA\_CostasQamDemodulateDebug functions use the Costas loop and Early-late gate square pulse synchronization functions. For further details, please read the SIF\_CostasLoop, SDS\_CostasLoop, SDA\_CostasLoop, SIF\_EarlyLateGateSquarePulse, SDS\_EarlyLateGateSquarePulse and SDS\_TriggerReverberator function documentation.

In order to allocate the Costas loop look up table it is necessary to use the SUF\_CostasLoopArrayAllocate() to malloc the look-up-table memory, rather than SUF\_VectorArrayAllocate().

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDS\_CostasQamDemodulate, SDS\_CostasQamDemodulateDebug,  
SDA\_CostasQamDemodulate, SDA\_CostasQamDemodulateDebug.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|   |   |
|---|---|
| SLArrayIndex_t SDS_CostasQamDemodulate (const SLData_t, | Source data sample                        |
| SLData_t *,   | Pointer to real destination symbol point  |
| SLData_t *,   | Pointer to imag. destination symbol point |
| SLData_t *,   | VCO phase                                 |
| const SLData_t,   | VCO modulation index                      |
| SLData_t *,   | VCO look up table                         |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                                   | VCO look up table size                    |
| const SLData_t,   | Carrier frequency                         |
| SLData_t *,   | Pointer to loop filter 1 state            |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                                       | Pointer to loop filter 1 index            |
| SLData_t *,   | Pointer to loop filter 2 state            |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                                       | Pointer to loop filter 2 index            |
| const SLData_t *,                                       | Pointer to loop filter coefficients       |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                                   | Loop filter length                        |
| SLData_t *,   | Pointer to loop filter state              |
| const SLData_t,   | Loop filter coefficient                   |
| const enum SLCostasLoopFeedbackMode_t,                  | Loop feedback mode                        |
| SLData_t *,   | Pointer to delayed sample                 |
| SLData_t *,   | Pointer to matched filter state array     |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                                       | Pointer to matched filter index           |
| SLData_t *,   | Pointer to matched filter sum             |
| SLData_t *,   | Pointer to early gate state array         |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                                       | Pointer to early gate delay index         |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                                   | Early gate delay length                   |
| SLData_t *,   | Pointer to loop filter state array        |
| SLData_t *,   | Pointer to loop filter coefficients       |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                                       | Pointer to loop filter index              |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                                   | Loop filter length                        |
| const SLData_t,   | Loop filter cut-off / centre frequency    |
| SLFixData_t *,  | Pointer to pulse detector threshold flag  |
| SLData_t *,   | Pointer to zero crossing previous sample  |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                                       | Pointer to trigger counter                |
| SLFixData_t *,  | Pointer to trigger detected flag          |
| SLFixData_t *,  | Pointer to trigger updated flag           |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                                   | Samples per symbol                        |
| SLData_t *,   | Pointer to ELG real output                |
| synchronization delay state array                       |   |
| SLData_t *,   | Pointer to ELG imaginary output           |
| synchronization delay state array                       |   |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                                       | Pointer to ELG synch. delay index         |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)                                   | ELG output synchronization delay length   |

## DESCRIPTION

This function implements the Costas loop QAM demodulator on an individual sample. It will output a single IQ sample if one has been decoded.

## NOTES ON USE

For further information on the Costas loop QAM demodulator functions please refer to the SIF\_CostasQamDemodulate documentation.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_CostasQamDemodulate, SDS\_CostasQamDemodulateDebug,  
SDA\_CostasQamDemodulate, SDA\_CostasQamDemodulateDebug.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLArrayIndex_t SDS_CostasQamDemodulateDebug (const SLData_t, Src. sample
    SLData_t *,
    SLData_t *,
    SLData_t *,
    const SLData_t,
    SLData_t *,
    const SLArrayIndex_t,
    const SLData_t,
    SLData_t *,
    SLArrayIndex_t *,
    SLData_t *,
    SLArrayIndex_t *,
    const SLData_t *,
    const SLArrayIndex_t,
    SLData_t *,
    const SLData_t,
    const enum SLCostasLoopFeedbackMode_t,
    SLData_t *,
    SLData_t *,
    SLArrayIndex_t *,
    SLData_t *,
    SLData_t *,
    SLArrayIndex_t *,
    const SLArrayIndex_t,
    SLData_t *,
    SLData_t *,
    SLArrayIndex_t *,
    const SLArrayIndex_t,
    const SLData_t,
    SLFixData_t *,
    SLData_t *,
    SLArrayIndex_t *,
    SLFixData_t *,
    SLFixData_t *,
    const SLArrayIndex_t,
    SLData_t *,
    synchronization delay state array
    SLData_t *,
    synchronization delay state array
    SLArrayIndex_t *,
    const SLArrayIndex_t,
    SLData_t *,
    SLData_t *,
    SLData_t *,
    SLArrayIndex_t *)
```

Pointer to real destination symbol point  
 Pointer to imag. destination symbol point  
 VCO phase  
 VCO modulation index  
 VCO look up table  
 VCO look up table size  
 Carrier frequency  
 Pointer to loop filter 1 state  
 Pointer to loop filter 1 index  
 Pointer to loop filter 2 state  
 Pointer to loop filter 2 index  
 Pointer to loop filter coefficients  
 Loop filter length  
 Pointer to loop filter state  
 Loop filter coefficient  
 Loop feedback mode  
 Pointer to delayed sample  
 Pointer to matched filter state array  
 Pointer to matched filter index  
 Pointer to matched filter sum  
 Pointer to early gate state array  
 Pointer to early gate delay index  
 Early gate delay length  
 Pointer to loop filter state array  
 Pointer to loop filter coefficients  
 Pointer to loop filter index  
 Loop filter length  
 Loop filter cut-off / centre frequency  
 Pointer to pulse detector threshold flag  
 Pointer to zero crossing previous sample  
 Pointer to trigger counter  
 Pointer to trigger detected flag  
 Pointer to trigger updated flag  
 Samples per symbol  
 Pointer to ELG real output  
 Pointer to ELG imaginary output  
 Pointer to ELG synch. delay index  
 ELG output synchronization delay length  
 Pointer to debug real filter output  
 Pointer to debug imaginary filter output  
 Pointer to debug ELG trigger output  
 Pointer to debug ELG trigger count

## DESCRIPTION

This function implements the Costas loop QAM demodulator on an individual sample. It will output a single IQ sample if one has been decoded.



## NOTES ON USE

For further information on the Costas loop QAM demodulator functions please refer to the `SIF_CostasQamDemodulate` documentation.

This function also saves the real and imaginary (I and Q) output samples from the Costas loop low-pass filters along with the early-late gate trigger so that this information can be used to analyze the performance of the demodulator.

## CROSS REFERENCE

`SIF_CostasQamDemodulate`, `SDS_CostasQamDemodulate`,  
`SDA_CostasQamDemodulate`, `SDA_CostasQamDemodulateDebug`.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLArrayIndex\_t SDA\_CostasQamDemodulate (const SLData\_t \*, Source data ptr.  
 SLData\_t \*, Real destination data pointer  
 SLData\_t \*, Imaginary destination data pointer  
 SLData\_t \*, VCO phase  
 const SLData\_t, VCO modulation index  
 SLData\_t \*, VCO look up table  
 const SLArrayIndex\_t, VCO look up table size  
 const SLData\_t, Carrier frequency  
 SLData\_t \*, Pointer to loop filter 1 state  
 SLArrayIndex\_t \*, Pointer to loop filter 1 index  
 SLData\_t \*, Pointer to loop filter 2 state  
 SLArrayIndex\_t \*, Pointer to loop filter 2 index  
 const SLData\_t \*, Pointer to loop filter coefficients  
 const SLArrayIndex\_t, Loop filter length  
 SLData\_t \*, Pointer to loop filter state  
 const SLData\_t, Loop filter coefficient  
 const enum SLCostasLoopFeedbackMode\_t, Loop feedback mode  
 SLData\_t \*, Pointer to delayed sample  
 SLData\_t \*, Pointer to matched filter state array  
 SLArrayIndex\_t \*, Pointer to matched filter index  
 SLData\_t \*, Pointer to matched filter sum  
 SLData\_t \*, Pointer to early gate state array  
 SLArrayIndex\_t \*, Pointer to early gate delay index  
 const SLArrayIndex\_t, Early gate delay length  
 SLData\_t \*, Pointer to loop filter state array  
 SLData\_t \*, Pointer to loop filter coefficients  
 SLArrayIndex\_t \*, Pointer to loop filter index  
 const SLArrayIndex\_t, Loop filter length  
 const SLData\_t, Loop filter cut-off / centre frequency  
 SLFixData\_t \*, Pointer to pulse detector threshold flag  
 SLData\_t \*, Pointer to zero crossing previous sample  
 SLArrayIndex\_t \*, Pointer to trigger counter  
 SLFixData\_t \*, Pointer to trigger detected flag  
 SLFixData\_t \*, Pointer to trigger updated flag  
 const SLArrayIndex\_t, Samples per symbol  
 SLData\_t \*, Pointer to ELG real output  
 synchronization delay state array  
 SLData\_t \*, Pointer to ELG imaginary output  
 synchronization delay state array  
 SLArrayIndex\_t \*, Pointer to ELG synch. delay index  
 const SLArrayIndex\_t, ELG output synchronization delay length  
 const SLArrayIndex\_t) Source array length

## DESCRIPTION

This function implements the Costas loop QAM demodulator on an array of input samples. It will output an arbitrary number of IQ samples depending on how many are decoded in the data stream. The return value is the number of decoded IQ constellation points in the output array.

## NOTES ON USE

For further information on the Costas loop QAM demodulator functions please refer to the `SIF_CostasQamDemodulate` documentation.

## CROSS REFERENCE

`SIF_CostasQamDemodulate`, `SDS_CostasQamDemodulate`,  
`SDS_CostasQamDemodulateDebug`, `SDA_CostasQamDemodulateDebug`.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```

SLArrayIndex_t SDA_CostasQamDemodulateDebug (const SLData_t *, Src. ptr.
    SLData_t *,           Real destination data pointer
    SLData_t *,           Imaginary destination data pointer
    SLData_t *,           VCO phase
    const SLData_t,       VCO modulation index
    SLData_t *,           VCO look up table
    const SLArrayIndex_t, VCO look up table size
    const SLData_t,       Carrier frequency
    SLData_t *,           Pointer to loop filter 1 state
    SLArrayIndex_t *,     Pointer to loop filter 1 index
    SLData_t *,           Pointer to loop filter 2 state
    SLArrayIndex_t *,     Pointer to loop filter 2 index
    const SLData_t *,     Pointer to loop filter coefficients
    const SLArrayIndex_t, Loop filter length
    SLData_t *,           Pointer to loop filter state
    const SLData_t,       Loop filter coefficient
    const enum SLCostasLoopFeedbackMode_t, Loop feedback mode
    SLData_t *,           Pointer to delayed sample
    SLData_t *,           Pointer to matched filter state array
    SLArrayIndex_t *,     Pointer to matched filter index
    SLData_t *,           Pointer to matched filter sum
    SLData_t *,           Pointer to early gate state array
    SLArrayIndex_t *,     Pointer to early gate delay index
    const SLArrayIndex_t, Early gate delay length
    SLData_t *,           Pointer to loop filter state array
    SLData_t *,           Pointer to loop filter coefficients
    SLArrayIndex_t *,     Pointer to loop filter index
    const SLArrayIndex_t, Loop filter length
    const SLData_t,       Loop filter cut-off / centre frequency
    SLFixData_t *,        Pointer to pulse detector threshold flag
    SLData_t *,           Pointer to zero crossing previous sample
    SLArrayIndex_t *,     Pointer to trigger counter
    SLFixData_t *,        Pointer to trigger detected flag
    SLFixData_t *,        Pointer to trigger updated flag
    const SLArrayIndex_t, Samples per symbol
    SLData_t *,           Pointer to ELG real output
synchronization delay state array
    SLData_t *,           Pointer to ELG imaginary output
synchronization delay state array
    SLArrayIndex_t *,     Pointer to ELG synch. delay index
    const SLArrayIndex_t, ELG output synchronization delay length
    const SLArrayIndex_t, Source array length
    SLData_t *,           Pointer to debug real filter output
    SLData_t *,           Pointer to debug imaginary filter output
    SLData_t *)           Pointer to debug ELG trigger output

```

## DESCRIPTION

This function implements the Costas loop QAM demodulator on an array of input samples. It will output an arbitrary number of IQ samples depending on how many are

decoded in the data stream. The return value is the number of decoded IQ constellation points in the output array.

## NOTES ON USE

For further information on the Costas loop QAM demodulator functions please refer to the `SIF_CostasQamDemodulate` documentation.

This function also saves the real and imaginary (I and Q) output samples from the Costas loop low-pass filters along with the early-late gate trigger so that this information can be used to analyze the performance of the demodulator.

## CROSS REFERENCE

`SIF_CostasQamDemodulate`, `SDS_CostasQamDemodulate`,  
`SDS_CostasQamDemodulateDebug`, `SDA_CostasQamDemodulate`.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

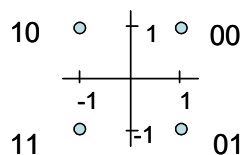
|                                    |   |
|------------------------------------|---|
| void SIF_QpskModulate (SLData_t *, | Carrier table pointer                                     |
| const SLData_t,                    | Carrier phase increment per sample<br>(radians / $2\pi$ ) |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,              | Carrier sine table length                                 |
| SLData_t *,                        | Carrier phase pointer                                     |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                  | Sample clock pointer                                      |
| SLComplexRect_s *,                 | Magnitude pointer   |
| SLData_t *,                        | RRCF Tx I delay pointer                                   |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                  | RRCF Tx I Filter Index pointer                            |
| SLData_t *,                        | RRCF Tx Q delay pointer                                   |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                  | RRCF Tx Q Filter Index pointer                            |
| SLData_t *,                        | RRCF coefficients pointer                                 |
| const SLData_t,                    | RRCF Period   |
| const SLData_t,                    | RRCF Roll off   |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,              | RRCF length   |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)              | RRCF enable / disable switch                              |

## DESCRIPTION

This function initialises the QPSK modulation function SDA\_QpskModulate and also for the optional square root raised cosine filter.

## NOTES ON USE

The carrier sinusoid table length must be large enough to provide the required frequency resolution for the application. The sine and cosine carriers are generated from an overlapped 5/4 sine table and generate the 4 points on the constellation diagram with equal real and imaginary magnitudes i.e. they are on the 45° points, as shown in the following diagram:



Note : Uses bit ordering as per ITU-T V.8

It is possible to arbitrarily rotate the constellation diagram by re-generating the 5/4 sine table with a different phase offset, after this function has returned.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_QpskModulate

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|   |                                |
|---|--------------------------------|
| void SDA_QpskModulate (const SLFixData_t, | Source data di-bit             |
| SLData_t *,                               | Destination array              |
| const SLData_t *,                         | Carrier table pointer          |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                     | Carrier sine table length      |
| SLData_t *,                               | Carrier phase pointer          |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                         | Sample clock pointer           |
| SLComplexRect_s *,                        | Magnitude pointer              |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                     | Carrier table increment        |
| const SLFixData_t,                        | Samples per symbol             |
| SLData_t *,                               | RRCF Tx I delay pointer        |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                         | RRCF Tx I Filter Index pointer |
| SLData_t *,                               | RRCF Tx Q delay pointer        |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                         | RRCF Tx Q Filter Index pointer |
| SLData_t *,                               | RRCF coefficients pointer      |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                     | RRCF length                    |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)                     | RRCF enable / disable switch   |

## DESCRIPTION

This function QPSK modulates one symbol of the carrier with a di-bit of source data.

## NOTES ON USE

The Destination array length must be a modulo of the number of samples per symbol.

SIF\_QpskModulate must be called prior to using this function.

The SigLib QPSK functions use a simple mapping of the input nibble to the transmitted constellation point. This mapping allows a flexible re-mapping of the points for the required application. For details on differentially encoding the data, see the SDS\_QpskDifferentialEncode function.

This function processes the data word, least significant bit first.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_QpskModulate, SDA\_QpskDemodulate, SDA\_QpskDemodulateDebug

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION


|                                      |   |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| void SIF_QpskDemodulate (SLData_t *, | Carrier table pointer                                     |
| const SLData_t,                      | Carrier phase increment per sample<br>(radians / $2\pi$ ) |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                | Carrier sine table length                                 |
| SLData_t *,                          | Carrier phase pointer                                     |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                    | Sample clock pointer                                      |
| SLComplexRect_s *,                   | Magnitude pointer   |
| SLData_t *,                          | RRCF Rx I delay pointer                                   |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                    | RRCF Rx I Filter Index pointer                            |
| SLData_t *,                          | RRCF Rx Q delay pointer                                   |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                    | RRCF Rx Q Filter Index pointer                            |
| SLData_t *,                          | RRCF coefficients pointer                                 |
| const SLData_t,                      | RRCF Period   |
| const SLData_t,                      | RRCF Roll off   |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                | RRCF length   |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)                | RRCF enable / disable switch                              |

## DESCRIPTION

This function initialises the QPSK demodulation function SDA\_QpskDemodulate.

The function provides for the initialisation of an optional square root raised cosine filter.

## NOTES ON USE

 This function is provided for compatibility reasons. The preferred method for demodulating BPSK/QPSK/QAM signals is to use the CostasQamDemodulate functions.

The carrier sinusoid table length must be large enough to provide the required frequency resolution for the application. The sine and cosine carriers are generated from an overlapped 5/4 sine table and generate the 4 points on the constellation diagram with equal real and imaginary magnitudes i.e. they are on the 45° points. It is possible to arbitrarily rotate the constellation diagram by re-generating the 5/4 sine table with a different phase offset, after this function has returned.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_QpskModulate, SDA\_QpskDemodulate, SDA\_QpskDemodulateDebug




## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLFixData_t SDA_QpskDemodulate (const SLData_t *,    Source array
                                const SLData_t *,    Carrier table pointer
                                const SLArrayIndex_t, Carrier sine table length
                                SLData_t *,          Carrier phase pointer
                                SLArrayIndex_t *,     Sample clock pointer
                                SLComplexRect_s *,    Magnitude pointer
                                const SLArrayIndex_t, Carrier table increment
                                const SIFixData_t,    Samples per symbol
                                SLData_t *,          RRCF Rx I delay pointer
                                SLArrayIndex_t *,     RRCF Rx I Filter Index pointer
                                SLData_t *,          RRCF Rx Q delay pointer
                                SLArrayIndex_t *,     RRCF Rx Q Filter Index pointer
                                SLData_t *,          RRCF coefficients pointer
                                const SLArrayIndex_t, RRCF length
                                const SLArrayIndex_t) RRCF enable / disable switch
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function QPSK demodulates the data stream and returns the demodulated di-bit.

## NOTES ON USE

 This function is provided for compatibility reasons. The preferred method for demodulating BPSK/QPSK/QAM signals is to use the CostasQamDemodulate functions.

SIF\_QpskDemodulate must be called prior to using this function.

The Source array length must be a modulo of the number of samples per symbol.

The SigLib QPSK functions use a simple mapping of the input nibble to the transmitted constellation point. This mapping allows a flexible re-mapping of the points for the required application. For details on differentially decoding the data, see the SDS\_QpskDifferentialDecode function.

This function processes the data word, least significant bit first.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_QpskDemodulate, SDA\_QpskModulate, SDA\_QpskDemodulateDebug


## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|  |                                |
|--|--------------------------------|
| SLFixData_t SDA_QpskDemodulateDebug (const SLData_t *, | Source pointer                 |
| const SLData_t *,                                      | Carrier table pointer          |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                                  | Carrier sine table length      |
| SLData_t *,  | Carrier phase pointer          |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                                      | Sample clock pointer           |
| SLComplexRect_s *,                                     | Magnitude pointer              |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                                  | Carrier table increment        |
| const SLFixData_t,                                     | Samples per symbol             |
| SLData_t *,  | RRCF Rx I delay pointer        |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                                      | RRCF Rx I Filter Index pointer |
| SLData_t *,  | RRCF Rx Q delay pointer        |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                                      | RRCF Rx Q Filter Index pointer |
| SLData_t *,  | RRCF Coeffs pointer            |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                                  | RRCF length                    |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                                  | RRCF enable / disable switch   |
| SLData_t *,  | Eye samples pointer            |
| SLComplexRect_s *)                                     | Constellation points pointer   |

## DESCRIPTION

This function QPSK demodulates the data stream and returns the demodulated di-bit, whilst also providing additional debug information - an eye diagram and a constellation diagram.

## NOTES ON USE

 This function is provided for compatibility reasons. The preferred method for demodulating BPSK/QPSK/QAM signals is to use the CostasQamDemodulate functions.

SIF\_QpskDemodulate must be called prior to using this function.

The Source array length and the eye samples Destination array length must be a modulo of the number of samples per symbol. The constellation point returns a single point per symbol.

The SigLib QPSK functions use a simple mapping of the input nibble to the transmitted constellation point. This mapping allows a flexible re-mapping of the points for the required application. For details on differentially decoding the data, see the SDS\_QpskDifferentialDecode function.

This function processes the data word, least significant bit first.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_QpskDemodulate, SDA\_QpskModulate, SDA\_QpskDemodulateDebug

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLFixData\_t SDS\_QpskDifferentialEncode (const SLPixData\_t, Transmit di-bit  
SLFixData\_t \*) Previous transmit quadrant pointer

**DESCRIPTION**

This function differentially encodes the input di-bit for the QPSK modulation function and returns the encoded di-bit.

**NOTES ON USE**

Differential encoding is used to overcome phase errors in the receiver i.e. "false lock".

The SigLib QPSK functions use a simple mapping of the input di-bit to the transmitted constellation point. This mapping allows a flexible re-mapping of the points for the required application.

This function processes the data word, least significant bit first.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_QpskModulate, SDA\_QpskDemodulate, SDA\_QpskDemodulateDebug,  
SDS\_QpskDifferentialDecode, SIF\_DifferentialEncoder, SDS\_DifferentialEncode,  
SDS\_DifferentialDecode, SUF\_DifferentialEncoderArrayAllocate



# Differential Encoder Introduction

The differential encoder and decoder functions use look-up-tables to efficiently encode and decode the source words. The encoder and decoder lookup tables can be created for any arbitrary mapping function. The look-up tables are 2D arrays, with the following square structure:

|       |  |               |   |   |   |
|-------|--|---------------|---|---|---|
|       |  | Previous Word |   |   |   |
|       |  | +-----        |   |   |   |
|       |  |               | . |   |   |
| Input |  |               | . |   |   |
| Word  |  |               |   | . |   |
|       |  |               |   |   | . |
|       |  |               |   |   |   |

As an example, the following look-up-tables implement the V series QPSK standard differential encoder / decoder functions:

Encoder:

1, 3, 0, 2,  
3, 2, 1, 0,  
0, 1, 2, 3,  
2, 0, 3, 1

Decoder:

2, 3, 0, 1,  
0, 2, 1, 3,  
3, 1, 2, 0,  
1, 0, 3, 2

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
void SIF_DifferentialEncoder (SLArrayIndex_t *,  Pointer to encoder look-up-table
SLArrayIndex_t *,                               Pointer to decoder look-up-table
const SLFixData_t)                             Word length to encode / decode
```

**DESCRIPTION**

This function generates the encoder and decoder look-up-tables for the following encoding function, with the given number of bits for the input and output words:

$$y[n] = (x[n] - x[n-1]) \% M$$

**NOTES ON USE**

Differential encoding is used to overcome phase errors in the receiver i.e. "false lock".

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_QpskModulate, SDA\_QpskDemodulate, SDA\_QpskDemodulateDebug,  
SDS\_QpskDifferentialEncode, SDS\_DifferentialEncode, SDS\_DifferentialDecode,  
SUF\_DifferentialEncoderArrayAllocate

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|  |                                |
|--|--------------------------------|
| SLFixData_t SDS_DifferentialEncode (const SLFixData_t, Source word to encode |                                |
| SLFixData_t *,   | Encoder / decoder table        |
| const SLFixData_t,   | Word length to encode / decode |
| const SLFixData_t,   | Bit mask for given word length |
| SLFixData_t *)   | Previously encoded word        |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function differentially encodes the input data according to the mapping in the supplied look-up-table.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_QpskModulate, SDA\_QpskDemodulate, SDA\_QpskDemodulateDebug,  
SDS\_QpskDifferentialEncode, SDS\_QpskDifferentialDecode,  
SIF\_DifferentialEncoder, SDS\_DifferentialDecode,  
SUF\_DifferentialEncoderArrayAllocate

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|  |                                |
|--|--------------------------------|
| SLFixData_t SDS_DifferentialDecode (const SLFixData_t, Source word to encode |                                |
| SLFixData_t *,   | Encoder / decoder table        |
| const SLFixData_t,   | Word length to encode / decode |
| const SLFixData_t,   | Bit mask for given word length |
| SLFixData_t *)   | Previously decoded word        |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function differentially decodes the data according to the mapping in the supplied look-up-table..

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_QpskModulate, SDA\_QpskDemodulate, SDA\_QpskDemodulateDebug,  
SDS\_QpskDifferentialEncode, SIF\_DifferentialEncoder, SDS\_DifferentialEncode,  
SUF\_DifferentialEncoderArrayAllocate



**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|                                   |                                    |
|-----------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| void SIF_FskModulate (SLData_t *, | Carrier sinusoid table             |
| const SLData_t,                   | Carrier phase increment per sample |
|                                   | (radians / $2\pi$ )                |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)             | Sine table length                  |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function initialises the FSK modulation and demodulation functions SDA\_FskModulate and SDA\_FskDemodulate. This function also initialises the continuous phase FSK modulation and function SDA\_CpfskModulate.

**NOTES ON USE**

The carrier sinusoid table length must be large enough to provide the required frequency resolution for the application.

This function processes the data word, LSB first.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_FskModulateByte, SDA\_FskDemodulateByte,  
SDA\_CpfskModulateByte, SDA\_FskModulate, SDA\_FskDemodulate,  
SDA\_CpfskModulate

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_FskModulateByte (SLFixData_t, Source data byte
    SLData_t *,                Destination data pointer
    const SLData_t *,          Carrier sinusoid table
    SLData_t *,                Level '1' carrier phase
    SLData_t *,                Level '0' carrier phase
    const SLData_t,            Level '1' carrier phase increment
    const SLData_t,            Level '0' carrier phase increment
    const SLFixData_t,         Samples per symbol
    const SLArrayIndex_t)      Sine table length
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function FSK modulates one signal with a data stream, specified in the source byte. The function modulates a '1' bit or a '0' bit to the specified frequency.

## NOTES ON USE

The Destination array length must be equal to or greater than the number of samples per symbol x the number of bits in the binary input word. This function modulates a single cosine wave.

SIF\_FskModulate must be called prior to using this function.

The phase parameters must be initialised to SIGLIB\_ZERO in the calling function.

This function processes the data word, LSB first.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_FskModulate, SDA\_FskDemodulateByte, SDA\_CpfskModulateByte,  
SDA\_FskModulate, SDA\_FskDemodulate, SDA\_CpfskModulate


## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLFixData_t SDA_FskDemodulateByte (const SLData_t *, Source data pointer
    const SLData_t *,           Level '1' filter pointer
    const SLData_t *,           Level '0' filter pointer
    const SLArrayIndex_t,       Filter length
    const SLFixData_t)          Samples per symbol
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function demodulates an FSK or a continuous phase FSK data stream and returns the demodulated byte.

## NOTES ON USE

 This function is provided for compatibility reasons. The preferred method for demodulating BPSK/QPSK/QAM signals is to use the CostasQamDemodulate functions.

The filters are band pass filters centred on the frequencies of the two carrier signals. These can be generated by using the function SIF\_FirBandPassFilter. SIF\_FirBandPassFilter generates a linear phase filter so the delay through the filter is equal to the middle sample in the coefficient array. So if the filter is 27 coefficients long then the middle sample is number 14 – C index 13. This should be used to align the input data with the output demodulated symbol – a phase offset to the input data may have to be used to correctly align the output symbols.

This function processes the data word, LSB first.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_FskModulate, SDA\_FskModulateByte, SDA\_CpfskModulateByte,  
SDA\_FskModulate, SDA\_FskDemodulate, SDA\_CpfskModulate

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_CpfskModulateByte (SLFixData_t,      Source data byte
                           SLData_t *,        Destination data pointer
                           const SLData_t *,   Carrier sinusoid table
                           SLData_t *,        Carrier phase
                           const SLData_t,     Level '1' carrier phase increment
                           const SLData_t,     Level '0' carrier phase increment
                           const SLFixData_t,   Samples per symbol
                           const SLArrayIndex_t) Sine table length
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function FSK modulates one signal with a data stream, specified in the source byte and maintains the phase across the symbol boundaries. The function modulates a '1' bit or a '0' bit to the specified frequency.

## NOTES ON USE

The Destination array length must be equal to or greater than the number of samples per symbol x the number of bits in the binary input word. This function modulates a single cosine wave.

SIF\_FskModulate must be called prior to using this function.

The phase parameter must be initialised to SIGLIB\_ZERO in the calling function.

This function processes the data word, LSB first.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_FskModulate, SDA\_FskModulateByte, SDA\_FskDemodulateByte,  
SDA\_FskModulate, SDA\_FskDemodulate, SDA\_CpfskModulate

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|                                    |                                   |
|------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| void SDA_FskModulate (SLFixData_t, | Source data bit                   |
| SLData_t *,                        | Destination data pointer          |
| const SLData_t *,                  | Carrier sinusoid table            |
| SLData_t *,                        | Level '1' carrier phase           |
| SLData_t *,                        | Level '0' carrier phase           |
| const SLData_t,                    | Level '1' carrier phase increment |
| const SLData_t,                    | Level '0' carrier phase increment |
| const SLFixData_t,                 | Samples per symbol                |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)              | Sine table length                 |

## DESCRIPTION

This function FSK modulates one signal with a data bit, specified in the source bit. The function modulates a '1' bit or a '0' bit to the specified frequency.

## NOTES ON USE

The Destination array length must be equal to or greater than the number of samples per symbol. This function modulates a single cosine wave.

SIF\_FskModulate must be called prior to using this function.

The phase parameters must be initialised to SIGLIB\_ZERO in the calling function.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_FskModulate, SDA\_FskModulateByte, SDA\_FskDemodulateByte,  
SDA\_CpfskModulateByte, SDA\_FskDemodulate, SDA\_CpfskModulate

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLFixData_t SDA_FskDemodulate (const SLData_t *,      Source data pointer
                               const SLData_t *,      Level '1' filter pointer
                               const SLData_t *,      Level '0' filter pointer
                               const SLArrayIndex_t,   Filter length
                               const SLFixData_t)      Samples per symbol
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function demodulates an FSK or a continuous phase FSK data stream and returns the demodulated bit.

## NOTES ON USE



This function is provided for compatibility reasons. The preferred method for demodulating BPSK/QPSK/QAM signals is to use the CostasQamDemodulate functions.

The filters are band pass filters centred on the frequencies of the two carrier signals. These can be generated by using the function SIF\_FirBandPassFilter. SIF\_FirBandPassFilter generates a linear phase filter so the delay through the filter is equal to the middle sample in the coefficient array. So if the filter is 27 coefficients long then the middle sample is number 14 – C index 13. This should be used to align the input data with the output demodulated symbol – a phase offset to the input data may have to be used to correctly align the output symbols.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_FskModulate, SDA\_FskModulateByte, SDA\_FskDemodulateByte,  
SDA\_CpfskModulateByte, SDA\_FskModulate, SDA\_CpfskModulate

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|                                      |                                   |
|--------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| void SDA_CpfskModulate (SLFixData_t, | Source data bit                   |
| SLData_t *,                          | Destination data pointer          |
| const SLData_t *,                    | Carrier sinusoid table            |
| SLData_t *,                          | Carrier phase                     |
| const SLData_t,                      | Level '1' carrier phase increment |
| const SLData_t,                      | Level '0' carrier phase increment |
| const SLFixData_t,                   | Samples per symbol                |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)                | Sine table length                 |

## DESCRIPTION

This function FSK modulates one signal with a data bit, specified in the source bit and maintains the phase across the symbol boundaries. The function modulates a '1' bit or a '0' bit to the specified frequency.

## NOTES ON USE

The Destination array length must be equal to or greater than the number of samples per symbol. This function modulates a single cosine wave.

SIF\_FskModulate must be called prior to using this function.

The phase parameter must be initialised to SIGLIB\_ZERO in the calling function.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_FskModulate, SDA\_FskModulateByte, SDA\_FskDemodulateByte,  
SDA\_CpfskModulateByte, SDA\_FskModulate, SDA\_FskDemodulate

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|                                     |   |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| void SIF_Qam16Modulate (SLData_t *, | Carrier table pointer                                     |
| const SLData_t,                     | Carrier phase increment per sample<br>(radians / $2\pi$ ) |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,               | Carrier sine table length                                 |
| SLData_t *,                         | Carrier phase pointer                                     |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                   | Sample clock pointer                                      |
| SLComplexRect_s *,                  | Magnitude pointer   |
| SLData_t *,                         | RRCF Tx. I delay pointer                                  |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                   | RRCF Tx. I Filter Index pointer                           |
| SLData_t *,                         | RRCF Tx. Q delay pointer                                  |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                   | RRCF Tx. Q Filter Index pointer                           |
| SLData_t *,                         | RRCF coefficients pointer                                 |
| const SLData_t,                     | RRCF Period   |
| const SLData_t,                     | RRCF Roll off   |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,               | RRCF length   |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)               | RRCF enable / disable switch                              |

## DESCRIPTION

This function initialises the QAM-16 modulation function SDA\_Qam16Modulate. The function provides for the initialisation of an optional square root raised cosine filter.

The QAM-16 modulation and demodulation functions use the following bit mapping for the constellation diagram.

|       |     |  |     |     |
|-------|-----|--|-----|-----|
| 0x0   | 0x1 |  | 0x2 | 0x3 |
|       |     |  |     |     |
| 0x4   | 0x5 |  | 0x6 | 0x7 |
| ----- |     |  |     |     |
| 0x8   | 0x9 |  | 0xa | 0xb |
|       |     |  |     |     |
| 0xc   | 0xd |  | 0xe | 0xf |

Different QAM-16 variations can be supported by remapping the bit appropriately.

## NOTES ON USE

The carrier sinusoid table length must be large enough to provide the required frequency resolution for the application.

The carrier frequency parameter should be normalised to 1.0 Hz, as with most SigLib functions.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_Qam16Modulate



## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|  |                                |
|--|--------------------------------|
| void SDA_Qam16Modulate (const SLFixData_t, | Source data nibble             |
| SLData_t *,                                | Destination array              |
| const SLData_t *,                          | Carrier table pointer          |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                      | Carrier sine table length      |
| SLData_t *,                                | Carrier phase pointer          |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                          | Sample clock pointer           |
| SLComplexRect_s *,                         | Magnitude pointer              |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                      | Carrier table increment        |
| const SLFixData_t,                         | Samples per symbol             |
| SLData_t *,                                | RRCF Tx I delay pointer        |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                          | RRCF Tx I Filter Index pointer |
| SLData_t *,                                | RRCF Tx Q delay pointer        |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                          | RRCF Tx Q Filter Index pointer |
| SLData_t *,                                | RRCF coefficients pointer      |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                      | RRCF length                    |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)                      | RRCF enable / disable switch   |

## DESCRIPTION

This function QAM-16 modulates one symbol of the carrier with a nibble of source data.

## NOTES ON USE

The Destination array length must be a modulo of the number of samples per symbol.

SIF\_Qam16Modulate must be called prior to using this function.

The SigLib QAM-16 functions use a simple mapping of the input nibble to the transmitted constellation point. This mapping allows a flexible re-mapping of the points for the required application. For details on differentially encoding the data, see the SDA\_Qam16DifferentialEncode function.

This function processes the data word, least significant bit first.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_Qam16Modulate, SDA\_Qam16Demodulate,  
SDA\_Qam16DemodulateDebug

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SIF_Qam16Demodulate (SLData_t *, Carrier table pointer
    const SLData_t, Carrier phase increment per sample
                        (radians /  $2\pi$ )
    const SLArrayIndex_t, Carrier sine table length
    SLData_t *, Carrier phase pointer
    SLArrayIndex_t *, Sample clock pointer
    SLComplexRect_s *, Magnitude pointer
    SLData_t *, RRCF Rx I delay pointer
    SLArrayIndex_t *, RRCF Rx I Filter Index pointer
    SLData_t *, RRCF Rx Q delay pointer
    SLArrayIndex_t *, RRCF Rx Q Filter Index pointer
    SLData_t *, RRCF coefficients pointer
    const SLData_t, RRCF Period
    const SLData_t, RRCF Roll off
    const SLArrayIndex_t, RRCF length
    const SLArrayIndex_t) RRCF enable / disable switch
```

## DESCRIPTION


This function initialises the QAM-16 demodulation function SDA\_Qam16Demodulate. The function provides for the initialisation of an optional square root raised cosine filter.

The QAM-16 modulation and demodulation functions use the following bit mapping for the constellation diagram.

|       |     |  |     |     |
|-------|-----|--|-----|-----|
| 0x0   | 0x1 |  | 0x2 | 0x3 |
|       |     |  |     |     |
| 0x4   | 0x5 |  | 0x6 | 0x7 |
| ----- |     |  |     |     |
| 0x8   | 0x9 |  | 0xa | 0xb |
|       |     |  |     |     |
| 0xc   | 0xd |  | 0xe | 0xf |

Different QAM-16 variations can be supported by remapping the bit appropriately.

## NOTES ON USE

 This function is provided for compatibility reasons. The preferred method for demodulating BPSK/QPSK/QAM signals is to use the CostasQamDemodulate functions.

The carrier sinusoid table length must be large enough to provide the required frequency resolution for the application.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_Qam16Modulate, SDA\_Qam16Demodulate,  
SDA\_Qam16DemodulateDebug


## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLFixData_t SDA_Qam16Demodulate (const SLData_t *, Source array
    const SLData_t *,           Carrier table pointer
    const SLArrayIndex_t,       Carrier sine table length
    SLData_t *,                 Carrier phase pointer
    SLArrayIndex_t *,           Sample clock pointer
    SLComplexRect_s *,          Magnitude pointer
    const SLArrayIndex_t,       Carrier table increment
    const SLPixData_t,          Samples per symbol
    SLData_t *,                 RRCF Rx I delay pointer
    SLArrayIndex_t *,           RRCF Rx I Filter Index pointer
    SLData_t *,                 RRCF Rx Q delay pointer
    SLArrayIndex_t *,           RRCF Rx Q Filter Index pointer
    SLData_t *,                 RRCF coefficients pointer
    const SLArrayIndex_t,       RRCF length
    const SLArrayIndex_t)       RRCF enable / disable switch
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function QAM-16 demodulates the data stream and returns the demodulated nibble.

## NOTES ON USE

 This function is provided for compatibility reasons. The preferred method for demodulating BPSK/QPSK/QAM signals is to use the CostasQamDemodulate functions.

SIF\_Qam16Demodulate must be called prior to using this function.

The Source array length must be a modulo of the number of samples per symbol.

The SigLib QAM-16 functions use a simple mapping of the input nibble to the transmitted constellation point. This mapping allows a flexible re-mapping of the points for the required application. For details on differentially decoding the data, see the SDA\_Qam16DifferentialDecode function.

This function processes the data word, least significant bit first.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_Qam16Demodulate, SDA\_Qam16Modulate,  
SDA\_Qam16DemodulateDebug


## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|   |                                |
|---|--------------------------------|
| SLFixData_t SDA_Qam16DemodulateDebug (const SLData_t *, | Source pointer                 |
| const SLData_t *,                                       | Carrier table pointer          |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                                   | Carrier sine table length      |
| SLData_t *,   | Carrier phase pointer          |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                                       | Sample clock pointer           |
| SLComplexRect_s *,                                      | Magnitude pointer              |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                                   | Carrier table increment        |
| const SLFixData_t,                                      | Samples per symbol             |
| SLData_t *,   | RRCF Rx I delay pointer        |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                                       | RRCF Rx I Filter Index pointer |
| SLData_t *,   | RRCF Rx Q delay pointer        |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                                       | RRCF Rx Q Filter Index pointer |
| SLData_t *,   | RRCF Coeffs pointer            |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                                   | RRCF length                    |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                                   | RRCF enable / disable switch   |
| SLData_t *,   | Eye samples pointer            |
| SLComplexRect_s *)                                      | Constellation points pointer   |

## DESCRIPTION

This function QAM-16 demodulates the data stream and returns the demodulated nibble, whilst also providing additional debug information - an eye diagram and a constellation diagram.

## NOTES ON USE

 This function is provided for compatibility reasons. The preferred method for demodulating BPSK/QPSK/QAM signals is to use the CostasQamDemodulate functions.

SIF\_Qam16Demodulate must be called prior to using this function.

The Source array length and the eye samples array length must be a modulo of the number of samples per symbol. The constellation point returns a single point per symbol.

The SigLib QAM-16 functions use a simple mapping of the input nibble to the transmitted constellation point. This mapping allows a flexible re-mapping of the points for the required application. For details on differentially decoding the data, see the SDA\_Qam16DifferentialDecode function.

This function processes the data word, least significant bit first.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_Qam16Demodulate, SDA\_Qam16Modulate, SDA\_Qam16DemodulateDebug

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLFixData\_t SDA\_Qam16DifferentialEncode (const SLPixData\_t, Tx nibble  
SLFixData\_t \*) Previous Tx nibble pointer

**DESCRIPTION**

This function differentially encodes the input nibble for the QAM-16 modulation function and returns the encoded nibble.

**NOTES ON USE**

Differential encoding is used to overcome phase errors in the receiver i.e. "false lock".

The SigLib QAM-16 functions use a simple mapping of the input nibble to the transmitted constellation point. This mapping allows a flexible re-mapping of the points for the required application.

This function processes the data word, least significant bit first.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_Qam16Modulate, SDA\_Qam16Demodulate,  
SDA\_Qam16DemodulateDebug, SDA\_Qam16DifferentialDecode

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|   |                            |
|---|----------------------------|
| SLFixData_t SDA_Qam16DifferentialDecode (const SLFixData_t, | Mapped                     |
| Rx nibble   |                            |
| SLFixData_t *)  | Previous Rx nibble pointer |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function differentially decodes the input nibble (returned from the QAM-16 demodulation function) and returns the decoded nibble.

**NOTES ON USE**

Differential encoding is used to overcome phase errors in the receiver i.e. "false lock".

The SigLib QAM-16 functions use a simple mapping of the input nibble to the transmitted constellation point. This mapping allows a flexible re-mapping of the points for the required application.

This function processes the data word, least significant bit first.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_Qam16Modulate, SDA\_Qam16Demodulate,  
SDA\_Qam16DemodulateDebug, SDA\_Qam16DifferentialEncode

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|                                    |   |
|------------------------------------|---|
| void SIF_BpskModulate (SLData_t *, | Pointer to carrier table                                  |
| const SLData_t,                    | Carrier phase increment per sample<br>(radians / $2\pi$ ) |
| SLData_t *,                        | Pointer to the sample count                               |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)              | Carrier table length                                      |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function initialises the BPSK modulation functions SDA\_BpskModulate and SDA\_BpskModulateByte.

**NOTES ON USE**

The carrier sinusoid table length must be large enough to provide the required frequency resolution for the application.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_BpskModulate, SDA\_BpskModulateByte, SIF\_BpskDemodulate, SDA\_BpskDemodulate, SDA\_BpskDemodulateDebug.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|                                     |                                 |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| void SDA_BpskModulate (SLFixData_t, | Modulating bit                  |
| SLData_t *,                         | Modulated signal                |
| const SLData_t *,                   | Carrier table pointer           |
| SLData_t *,                         | Carrier phase pointer           |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,               | Samples per symbol              |
| const SLData_t,                     | Carrier phase increment pointer |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)               | Sine table size                 |

## DESCRIPTION

This function BPSK modulates one signal with a data stream, specified in the source bit. The function modulates a '1' bit or a '0' bit to the required phase.

## NOTES ON USE

The Destination array length must be equal to or greater than the number of samples per bit. This function modulates a single cosine wave.

SIF\_BpskModulate must be called prior to using this function.

The phase parameters must be initialised to SIGLIB\_ZERO in the calling function.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_BpskModulate, SDA\_BpskModulateByte, SIF\_BpskDemodulate, SDA\_BpskDemodulate, SDA\_BpskDemodulateDebug.



**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|  |                                 |
|--|---------------------------------|
| void SDA_BpskModulateByte (SLArrayIndex_t, | Modulating byte                 |
| SLData_t *,                                | Modulated signal                |
| const SLData_t *,                          | Carrier table pointer           |
| SLData_t *,                                | Carrier phase pointer           |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                      | Samples per symbol              |
| const SLData_t,                            | Carrier phase increment pointer |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)                      | Sine table size                 |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function BPSK modulates one signal with a data stream, specified in the source byte. The function modulates a '1' bit or a '0' bit to the required phase.

**NOTES ON USE**

The Destination array length must be equal to or greater than the number of samples per symbol x the number of bits in the binary input word. This function modulates a single cosine wave.

SIF\_BpskModulate must be called prior to using this function.

The phase parameters must be initialised to SIGLIB\_ZERO in the calling function.

This function processes the data word, LSB first.


**CROSS REFERENCE**

SIF\_BpskModulate, SDA\_BpskModulate, SIF\_BpskDemodulate,  
SDA\_BpskDemodulate, SDA\_BpskDemodulateDebug.

|                                      |                                     |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| void SIF_BpskDemodulate (SLData_t *, | VCO phase                           |
| SLData_t ,                           | VCO Fast sine look up table         |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                | VCO Fast sine look up table size    |
| const SLData_t,                      | Carrier phase increment per sample  |
|                                      | (radians / $2\pi$ )                 |
| SLData_t *,                          | Pointer to loop filter 1 state      |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                    | Pointer to loop filter 1 index      |
| SLData_t *,                          | Pointer to loop filter 2 state      |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                    | Pointer to loop filter 2 index      |
| SLData_t *,                          | Pointer to loop filter coefficients |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                | Loop filter length                  |
| SLData_t *,                          | Pointer to loop filter state        |
| SLData_t *,                          | Pointer to delayed sample           |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                    | Pointer to Rx sample clock          |
| SLData_t *)                          | Pointer to sample sum               |

This function initialises the BPSK demodulation functions SDA\_BpskDemodulate and SDA\_BpskDemodulateDebug. The BPSK demodulation functions use a Costas loop, the block diagram for the Costas loop is shown in the following diagram:

## NOTES ON USE

 This function is provided for compatibility reasons. The preferred method for demodulating BPSK/QPSK/QAM signals is to use the `CostasQamDemodulate` functions.

The loop filters 1 and 2 are both FIR and must be of odd order. The loop filter is a one pole filter, with a single coefficient and state.

One issue that is critical to demodulating a data stream is knowing when an individual symbol starts and stops. The filters within the Costas loop of the demodulator have delays that must be accounted for. This is handled in the receive sample clock parameter. In order to find out what the exact timing of the symbols is it is handy to use the `SDA_BpskDemodulateDebug` function, which saves the output of the real path Costas loop filter.

In order to allocate the Costas loop look up table it is necessary to use the `SUF_CostasLoopArrayAllocate()` to malloc the look-up-table memory, rather than `SUF_VectorArrayAllocate()`.

## CROSS REFERENCE

`SIF_BpskModulate`, `SDA_BpskModulate`, `SDA_BpskModulateByte`,  
`SDA_BpskDemodulate`, `SDA_BpskDemodulateDebug`.


## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|   |                                     |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| SLFixData_t SDA_BpskDemodulate (const SLData_t *, | Source data pointer                 |
| SLData_t *,                                       | VCO phase                           |
| const SLData_t,                                   | VCO modulation index                |
| SLData_t *,                                       | VCO Fast sine look up table         |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                             | VCO Fast sine look up table size    |
| const SLData_t,                                   | Carrier frequency                   |
| SLData_t *,                                       | Pointer to loop filter 1 state      |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                                 | Pointer to loop filter 1 index      |
| SLData_t *,                                       | Pointer to loop filter 2 state      |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                                 | Pointer to loop filter 2 index      |
| const SLData_t *,                                 | Pointer to loop filter coefficients |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                             | Loop filter length                  |
| SLData_t *,                                       | Pointer to loop filter state        |
| const SLData_t,                                   | Loop filter coefficient             |
| SLData_t *,                                       | Pointer to delayed sample           |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                             | Sample size                         |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                                 | Pointer to Rx sample clock          |
| SLData_t *)                                       | Pointer to sample sum               |

## DESCRIPTION

This function BPSK demodulates one symbol of the source signal and returns the demodulated bit.

## NOTES ON USE

 This function is provided for compatibility reasons. The preferred method for demodulating BPSK/QPSK/QAM signals is to use the CostasQamDemodulate functions.

SIF\_BpskDemodulate must be called prior to using this function.

This function uses the Costas loop function. For further details, please read the SIF\_CostasLoop, SDS\_CostasLoop and SDA\_CostasLoop function documentation.

In order to allocate the Costas loop look up table it is necessary to use the SUF\_CostasLoopArrayAllocate() to malloc the look-up-table memory, rather than SUF\_VectorArrayAllocate().

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_BpskModulate, SDA\_BpskModulateByte, SIF\_BpskDemodulate, SDA\_BpskDemodulateDebug.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|  |                                      |
|--|--------------------------------------|
| SLFixData_t SDA_BpskDemodulateDebug (const SLData_t *, | Source data pointer                  |
| SLData_t *,  | VCO phase                            |
| const SLData_t,  | VCO modulation index                 |
| SLData_t *,  | VCO Fast sine look up table          |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                                  | VCO Fast sine look up table size     |
| const SLData_t,  | Carrier frequency                    |
| SLData_t *,  | Pointer to loop filter 1 state       |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                                      | Pointer to loop filter 1 index       |
| SLData_t *,  | Pointer to loop filter 2 state       |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                                      | Pointer to loop filter 2 index       |
| const SLData_t *,                                      | Pointer to loop filter coefficients  |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                                  | Loop filter length                   |
| SLData_t *,  | Pointer to loop filter state         |
| const SLData_t,  | Loop filter coefficient              |
| SLData_t *,  | Pointer to delayed sample            |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                                  | Sample size                          |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                                      | Pointer to Rx sample clock           |
| SLData_t *,  | Pointer to sample sum                |
| SLData_t *)  | Pointer to Costas loop filter output |

## DESCRIPTION

This function BPSK demodulates one symbol of the source signal and returns the demodulated bit. It also provides the output of the real path loop filter output, which can be used to extract the symbol timing, which is used in the sample counter to decide when the individual symbols start and stop.

## NOTES ON USE



This function is provided for compatibility reasons. The preferred method for demodulating BPSK/QPSK/QAM signals is to use the CostasQamDemodulate functions.

SIF\_BpskDemodulate must be called prior to using this function.

This function uses the Costas loop. For further details, please read the SIF\_CostasLoop, SDS\_CostasLoop and SDA\_CostasLoop function documentation.

In order to allocate the Costas loop look up table it is necessary to use the SUF\_CostasLoopArrayAllocate() to malloc the look-up-table memory, rather than SUF\_VectorArrayAllocate().

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_BpskModulate, SDA\_BpskModulateByte, SIF\_BpskDemodulate, SDA\_BpskDemodulate.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|                                    |   |
|------------------------------------|---|
| void SIF_DpskModulate (SLData_t *, | Pointer to carrier table                                  |
| const SLData_t,                    | Carrier phase increment per sample<br>(radians / $2\pi$ ) |
| SLData_t *,                        | Pointer to the sample count                               |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,              | Sine carrier table length                                 |
| SLData_t *)                        | Pointer to modulation phase value                         |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function initialises the DPSK modulation functions SDA\_DpskModulate and SDA\_DpskModulateByte.

DPSK uses the following phase changes for '0' or '1' bits:

- 0 - Phase change 180 degrees
- 1 - Phase change 0 degrees

**NOTES ON USE**

The carrier sinusoid table length must be large enough to provide the required frequency resolution for the application.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_DpskModulate, SDA\_DpskModulateByte, SIF\_DpskDemodulate, SDA\_DpskDemodulate, SDA\_DpskDemodulateDebug.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|                                     |                                   |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| void SDA_DpskModulate (SLFixData_t, | Modulating bit                    |
| SLData_t *,                         | Modulated signal                  |
| const SLData_t *,                   | Carrier table pointer             |
| SLData_t *,                         | Carrier phase pointer             |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,               | Samples per symbol                |
| const SLData_t,                     | Carrier phase increment pointer   |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,               | Sine carrier table length         |
| SLData_t *)                         | Pointer to modulation phase value |

## DESCRIPTION

This function DPSK modulates one signal with a data stream, specified in the source bit. The function modulates a '1' bit or a '0' bit to the required phase.

## NOTES ON USE

The Destination array length must be equal to or greater than the number of samples per bit. This function modulates a single cosine wave.

SIF\_DpskModulate must be called prior to using this function.

The phase parameters must be initialised to SIGLIB\_ZERO in the calling function.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_DpskModulate, SDA\_DpskModulateByte, SIF\_DpskDemodulate,  
SDA\_DpskDemodulate, SDA\_DpskDemodulateDebug.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|   |                                   |
|---|-----------------------------------|
| void SDA_DpskModulateByte (SLFixData_t, | Modulating byte                   |
| SLData_t *,                             | Modulated signal                  |
| const SLData_t *,                       | Carrier table pointer             |
| SLData_t *,                             | Carrier phase pointer             |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                   | Samples per symbol                |
| const SLData_t,                         | Carrier phase increment pointer   |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                   | Sine carrier table length         |
| SLData_t *)                             | Pointer to modulation phase value |

## DESCRIPTION

This function DPSK modulates one signal with a data stream, specified in the source byte. The function modulates a '1' bit or a '0' bit to the required phase.

## NOTES ON USE

The Destination array length must be equal to or greater than the number of samples per symbol x the number of bits in the binary input word. This function modulates a single cosine wave.

SIF\_DpskModulate must be called prior to using this function.

The phase parameters must be initialised to SIGLIB\_ZERO in the calling function.

This function processes the data word, LSB first.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_DpskModulate, SDA\_DpskModulate, SIF\_DpskDemodulate,  
SDA\_DpskDemodulate, SDA\_DpskDemodulateDebug.



## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|                                      |                                     |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| void SIF_DpskDemodulate (SLData_t *, | VCO phase                           |
| SLData_t ,                           | VCO Fast sine look up table         |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                | VCO Fast sine look up table size    |
| const SLData_t,                      | Carrier phase increment per sample  |
|                                      | (radians / $2\pi$ )                 |
| SLData_t *,                          | Pointer to loop filter 1 state      |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                    | Pointer to loop filter 1 index      |
| SLData_t *,                          | Pointer to loop filter 2 state      |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                    | Pointer to loop filter 2 index      |
| SLData_t *,                          | Pointer to loop filter coefficients |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                | Loop filter length                  |
| SLData_t *,                          | Pointer to loop filter state        |
| SLData_t *,                          | Pointer to delayed sample           |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                    | Pointer to Rx sample clock          |
| SLData_t *)                          | Pointer to sample sum               |

## DESCRIPTION

This function initialises the function SDA\_DpskDemodulate. DPSK modulates the phase by 180 degrees for a binary '0' or 0 degrees for a binary '1'.

## NOTES ON USE



This function is provided for compatibility reasons. The preferred method for demodulating BPSK/QPSK/QAM signals is to use the CostasQamDemodulate functions.

The loop filters 1 and 2 are both FIR and must be of odd order. The loop filter is a one pole filter, with a single coefficient and state.

One issue that is critical to demodulating a data stream is knowing when an individual symbol starts and stops. The filters within the Costas loop of the demodulator have delays that must be accounted for. This is handled in the receive sample clock parameter. In order to find out what the exact timing of the symbols is it is handy to use the SDA\_DpskDemodulateDebug function, which saves the output of the real path Costas loop filter.

In order to allocate the Costas loop look up table it is necessary to use the SUF\_CostasLoopArrayAllocate() to malloc the look-up-table memory, rather than SUF\_VectorArrayAllocate().

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_DpskModulate, SDA\_DpskModulate, SDA\_DpskModulateByte, SDA\_DpskDemodulate, SDA\_DpskDemodulateDebug.


## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|   |                                     |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| SLFixData_t SDA_DpskDemodulate (const SLData_t *, | Source data pointer                 |
| SLData_t *,                                       | VCO phase                           |
| const SLData_t,                                   | VCO modulation index                |
| SLData_t *,                                       | VCO Fast sine look up table         |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                             | VCO Fast sine look up table size    |
| const SLData_t,                                   | Carrier frequency                   |
| SLData_t *,                                       | Pointer to loop filter 1 state      |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                                 | Pointer to loop filter 1 index      |
| SLData_t *,                                       | Pointer to loop filter 2 state      |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                                 | Pointer to loop filter 2 index      |
| const SLData_t *,                                 | Pointer to loop filter coefficients |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                             | Loop filter length                  |
| SLData_t *,                                       | Pointer to loop filter state        |
| const SLData_t,                                   | Loop filter coefficient             |
| SLData_t *,                                       | Pointer to delayed sample           |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                             | Sample size                         |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                                 | Pointer to receive sample clock     |
| SLData_t *)                                       | Pointer to sample sum               |

## DESCRIPTION

This function DPSK demodulates one symbol of the source signal and returns the demodulated bit.

## NOTES ON USE

 This function is provided for compatibility reasons. The preferred method for demodulating BPSK/QPSK/QAM signals is to use the CostasQamDemodulate functions.

SIF\_DpskDemodulate must be called prior to using this function.

This function uses the Costas loop function. For further details, please read the SIF\_CostasLoop, SDS\_CostasLoop and SDA\_CostasLoop function documentation.

In order to allocate the Costas loop look up table it is necessary to use the SUF\_CostasLoopArrayAllocate() to malloc the look-up-table memory, rather than SUF\_VectorArrayAllocate().

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_DpskModulate, SDA\_DpskModulateByte, SIF\_DpskDemodulate, SDA\_DpskDemodulate, SDA\_DpskDemodulateDebug.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|  |                                     |
|--|-------------------------------------|
| SLFixData_t SDA_DpskDemodulateDebug (const SLData_t *, | Source data pointer                 |
| SLData_t *,  | VCO phase                           |
| const SLData_t,  | VCO modulation index                |
| SLData_t *,  | VCO Fast sine look up table         |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                                  | VCO Fast sine look up table size    |
| const SLData_t,  | Carrier frequency                   |
| SLData_t *,  | Pointer to loop filter 1 state      |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                                      | Pointer to loop filter 1 index      |
| SLData_t *,  | Pointer to loop filter 2 state      |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                                      | Pointer to loop filter 2 index      |
| const SLData_t *,                                      | Pointer to loop filter coefficients |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                                  | Loop filter length                  |
| SLData_t *,  | Pointer to loop filter state        |
| const SLData_t,  | Loop filter coefficient             |
| SLData_t *,  | Pointer to delayed sample           |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                                  | Sample size                         |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                                      | Pointer to Rx sample clock          |
| SLData_t *,  | Previous received sample sum        |
| SLData_t *)  | Pointer to filter output data       |

## DESCRIPTION

This function DPSK demodulates one symbol of the source signal and returns the demodulated bit. This function also returns the output of the internal filter for debugging information.

## NOTES ON USE



This function is provided for compatibility reasons. The preferred method for demodulating BPSK/QPSK/QAM signals is to use the CostasQamDemodulate functions.

SIF\_DpskDemodulate must be called prior to using this function.

This function uses the Costas loop function. For further details, please read the SIF\_CostasLoop, SDS\_CostasLoop and SDA\_CostasLoop function documentation.

In order to allocate the Costas loop look up table it is necessary to use the SUF\_CostasLoopArrayAllocate() to malloc the look-up-table memory, rather than SUF\_VectorArrayAllocate().

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_DpskModulate, SDA\_DpskModulateByte, SIF\_DpskDemodulate, SDA\_DpskDemodulate, SDA\_DpskDemodulateDebug.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SIF_PiByFourDQpskModulate (SLData_t *,   Carrier table pointer
                                const SLData_t,   Carrier phase increment per sample
                                                (radians /  $2\pi$ )
                                const SLArrayIndex_t,   Carrier sine table length
                                SLData_t *,   Carrier phase pointer
                                SLArrayIndex_t *,   Sample clock pointer
                                SLComplexRect_s *,   Magnitude pointer
                                SLData_t *,   RRCF Tx. I delay pointer
                                SLArrayIndex_t *,   RRCF Tx. I Filter Index pointer
                                SLData_t *,   RRCF Tx. Q delay pointer
                                SLArrayIndex_t *,   RRCF Tx. Q Filter Index pointer
                                SLData_t *,   RRCF coefficients pointer
                                const SLData_t,   RRCF Period
                                const SLData_t,   RRCF Roll off
                                const SLArrayIndex_t,   RRCF length
                                const SLArrayIndex_t,   RRCF enable / disable switch
                                SLArrayIndex_t *)   Pointer to previous output symbol for
differential coding
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function initialises the  $\pi/4$  Differential QPSK modulation function SDA\_PiByFourDQpskModulate.

The function provides for the initialisation of an optional square root raised cosine filter.

## NOTES ON USE

The carrier sinusoid table length must be large enough to provide the required frequency resolution for the application.

The carrier frequency parameter should be normalised to 1.0 Hz, as with most SigLib functions.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_PiByFourDQpskModulate

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_PiByFourDQpskModulate (const SLFixData_t, Source data di-bit
    SLData_t *,                               Destination array
    const SLData_t *,                           Carrier table pointer
    const SLArrayIndex_t,                       Carrier sine table length
    SLData_t *,                               Carrier phase pointer
    SLArrayIndex_t *,                           Sample clock pointer
    SLComplexRect_s *,                          Magnitude pointer
    const SLArrayIndex_t,                       Carrier table increment
    const SLFixData_t,                          Samples per symbol
    SLData_t *,                               RRCF Tx I delay pointer
    SLArrayIndex_t *,                           RRCF Tx I Filter Index pointer
    SLData_t *,                               RRCF Tx Q delay pointer
    SLArrayIndex_t *,                           RRCF Tx Q Filter Index pointer
    SLData_t *,                               RRCF coefficients pointer
    const SLArrayIndex_t,                       RRCF length
    const SLArrayIndex_t,                       RRCF enable / disable switch
    SLArrayIndex_t *)                           Pointer to previous output symbol for
differential coding
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function  $\pi/4$  Differential QPSK modulates one symbol of the carrier with a di-bit of source data.

## NOTES ON USE

The Destination array length must be a modulo of the number of samples per symbol.

SIF\_PiByFourDQpskModulate must be called prior to using this function.

This function processes the data word, least significant bit first.

## CROSS REFERENCE

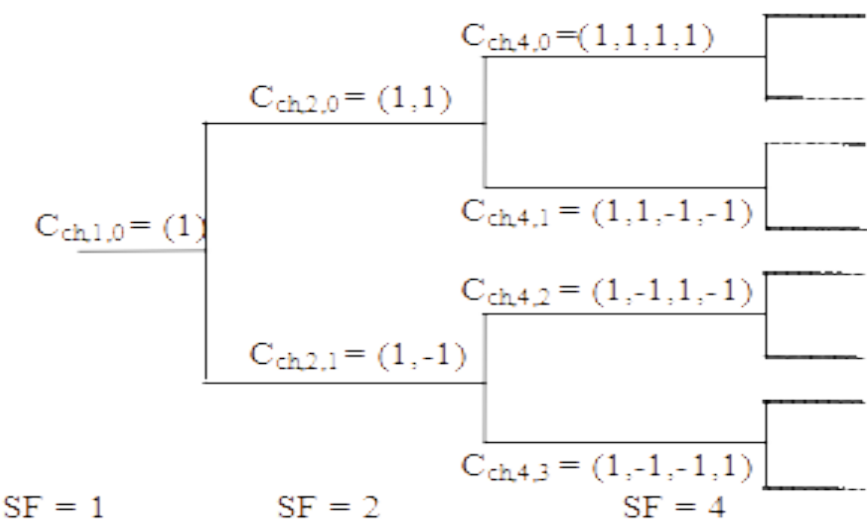
SIF\_PiByFourDQpskModulate

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDS_ChannelizationCode (SLData_t *,Channelization code array
    const SLArrayIndex_t,           Spreading factor
    const SLArrayIndex_t)           Channelization code index
```

DESCRIPTION

This function generate the 3GPP 25.141 UMTS compliant channelization code for the given spreading factor and code index, as shown in the following diagram:



NOTES ON USE

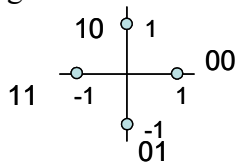
CROSS REFERENCE

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_ComplexQPSKSpread (const SLFixData_t,      Source sample
                             SLComplexRect_s *,      Pointer to destination array
                             const SLData_t *,        In-phase channelization code
                             const SLData_t *,        Quadrature-phase channelization code
                             const SLData_t,          In-phase weighting value
                             const SLData_t,          Quadrature-phase weighting value
                             const SLComplexRect_s *, Complex scrambling code
                             const SLArrayIndex_t)     Spreading factor
```

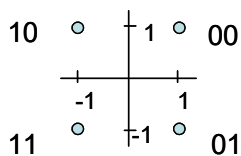
## DESCRIPTION

This function performs QPSK channelization, weighting, spreading and scrambling according to 3GPP 25.141 on a single di-bit pair. The input di-bits are mapped to the four complex points: (1, 0), (0, 1), (-1, 0) and (0, -1), as shown in the following diagram:



Note : Uses bit ordering as per ITU-T V.8

With the output dibits arranged on the points: (1, 1), (-1, 1), (-1, -1) and (1, -1), as follows:



Note : Uses bit ordering as per ITU-T V.8

## NOTES ON USE

The output from this function are the magnitudes of the I, Q carriers, which must be modulated using a function such as SDA\_QpskModulate.

## CROSS REFERENCE

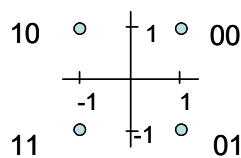
SDA\_ComplexQPSKDeSpread, SDA\_QpskModulate, SDA\_QpskDemodulate.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLFixData_t SDA_ComplexQPSKDeSpread (const SLComplexRect_s *,
                                     Pointer to source array
                                     const SLData_t *,
                                     In-phase channelization code
                                     const SLData_t *,
                                     Quadrature-phase channelization code
                                     const SLData_t,
                                     In-phase weighting value
                                     const SLData_t,
                                     Quadrature-phase weighting value
                                     const SLComplexRect_s *,
                                     Complex scrambling code
                                     SLData_t *,
                                     Demodulator error array
                                     const SLArrayIndex_t)
                                     Spreading factor
```

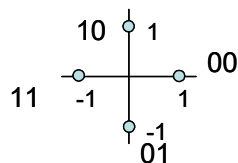
## DESCRIPTION

This function performs QPSK de-scrambling, de-spreading de-weighting and de-channelization according to 3GPP 25.141 and generates a single di-bit output pair. The input di-bits are arranged on the four complex points: (1, 1), (-1, 1), (-1, -1) and (1, -1), as shown in the following diagram:



Note : Uses bit ordering as per ITU-T V.8

With the output dibits arranged on the points: (1, 0), (0, 1), (-1, 0) and (0, -1) as per:



Note : Uses bit ordering as per ITU-T V.8

## NOTES ON USE

The input to this function are the magnitudes of the I, Q carriers, which must be demodulated at the front end using a function such as SDA\_QpskDemodulate.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_ComplexQPSKSpread, SDA\_QpskModulate, SDA\_QpskDemodulate.



## Modem Utility Functions (modem.c)

### SUF\_AsyncCharacterLength

#### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLArrayIndex_t SUF_AsyncCharacterLength (  
    const SLArrayIndex_t,      Number of bits in the data word  
    const enum SLParity_t,     Parity type  
    const SLArrayIndex_t)      Number of stop bits
```

#### DESCRIPTION

This function returns the length of an asynchronous character that is made up of the start, data, parity and stop bits.

#### NOTES ON USE

The parity types supported are as follows:

```
SIGLIB_NO_PARITY,  
SIGLIB_EVEN_PARITY,  
SIGLIB_ODD_PARITY
```

#### CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_SyncToAsyncConverter, SDA\_AsyncToSyncConverter.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

`SLArrayIndex_t SDA_SyncToAsyncConverter (const SLUInt8_t *,   Ptr. to src. data  
          SLUInt8_t *,                    Pointer to destination data  
          const SLArrayIndex_t,           Number of bits in the data word  
          const enum SLParity_t,          Parity type  
          const SLArrayIndex_t,          Number of stop bits  
          const SLArrayIndex_t)          Source array length`

**DESCRIPTION**

This function converts a synchronous data stream to an asynchronous one via the addition of start, parity and stop bits.

The output is packed into 8 bit bytes, regardless of the number of data bits in the input byte.

**NOTES ON USE**

The parity types supported are as follows:

`SIGLIB_NO_PARITY,  
SIGLIB_EVEN_PARITY,  
SIGLIB_ODD_PARITY`

This function has been tested with:

Parity = Even, Odd and None

Stop bits = 0, 1 and 2

Data bits per asynchronous word = 7, 8, 9, 10 and 11

If the output data sequence does not fill an integer number of output bytes then the unused bits in the final byte are filled with stop bits.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SUF\_AsyncCharacterLength, SDA\_AsyncToSyncConverter.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

**SLArrayIndex\_t SDA\_AsyncToSyncConverter** (**const SLUInt8\_t \***, **Ptr. to src. data**  
**SLUInt8\_t \***, **Pointer to destination data**  
**const SLArrayIndex\_t**, **Number of bits in the data word**  
**const enum SLParity\_t**, **Parity type**  
**SLArrayIndex\_t \***, **Pointer to parity error flag**  
**const SLArrayIndex\_t**) **Source array length**

**DESCRIPTION**

This function converts an asynchronous data stream to a asynchronous one via the removal of start, parity and stop bits.

**NOTES ON USE**

The parity types supported are as follows:

**SIGLIB\_NO\_PARITY,**  
**SIGLIB\_EVEN\_PARITY,**  
**SIGLIB\_ODD\_PARITY**

This function has been tested with:

Parity = Even, Odd and None

Stop bits = 0, 1 and 2

Data bits per asynchronous word = 7, 8, 9, 10 and 11

This function does not look for a specific number of stop bits because it supports stop bit deletion in the transmitter. This is used for rate matching. The parity error flag will return -1 if no parity errors were detected or the location of the byte, in the frame, if a parity error was detected.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

**SUF\_AsyncCharacterLength** , **SDA\_SyncToAsyncConverter**.

### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SIF\_AsyncAddRemoveStopBits (SLArrayIndex\_t \*) Pointer to counter for adding and removing stop bits

### DESCRIPTION

This function initialises the functions that are used for adding and removing stop bits from an asynchronous bit stream.

### NOTES ON USE

### CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_SyncToAsyncConverter, SDA\_AsyncToSyncConverter,  
SDA\_AsyncRemoveStopBits, SDA\_AsyncAddStopBits.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLArrayIndex_t SDA_AsyncRemoveStopBits (const SLUInt8_t *, Pointer to src. data
    SLUInt8_t *,                               Pointer to destination data
    const SLArrayIndex_t,                       Number of bits in the data word
    const enum SLParity_t,                       Parity type
    const SLArrayIndex_t,                       Ratio of stop bits removed
    SLArrayIndex_t *,                           Pointer to stop bits removed counter
    const SLArrayIndex_t)                      Source array length
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function removes a given ratio of stop bits. If the RemoveRatio parameter is set to N then 1:N stop bits are removed. If N = 1 then all stop bits are removed.

A common requirement for asynchronous to synchronous converters in a modem is to add or remove a given ratio of the stop bits to allow for clock rate variations.

Please note: if you remove 1:N stop bits and then add 1:(N-1) you will not return to exactly the same sequence that you started with. This is because the stop bit add and remove functions work on ratios so there is no guarantee that stop bits will be replaced in their original locations only that the final number is the same.

## NOTES ON USE

The parity types supported are as follows:

```
SIGLIB_NO_PARITY,
SIGLIB_EVEN_PARITY,
SIGLIB_ODD_PARITY
```

This function requires an integer number of characters to be stored in the source array.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_SyncToAsyncConverter, SDA\_AsyncToSyncConverter,  
SIF\_AsyncAddRemoveStopBits, SDA\_AsyncAddStopBits.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|   |                                    |
|---|------------------------------------|
| SLArrayIndex_t SDA_AsyncAddStopBits (const SLUInt8_t *, | Pointer to src. data               |
| SLUInt8_t *,  | Pointer to destination data        |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                                   | Number of bits in the data word    |
| const enum SLParity_t,                                  | Parity type                        |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                                   | Ratio of stop bits added           |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                                       | Pointer to stop bits added counter |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)                                   | Source array length                |

## DESCRIPTION

This function adds a given ratio of stop bits. If the AddRatio parameter is set to N then 1 new stop bit will be added after N stop bits have been received.

If N = 1 then every other output stop bit will be a new one.

A common requirement for asynchronous to synchronous converters in a modem is to add or remove a given ratio of the stop bits to allow for clock rate variations.

Please note: if you remove 1:N stop bits and then add 1:(N-1) you will not return to exactly the same sequence that you started with. This is because the stop bit add and remove functions work on ratios so there is no guarantee that stop bits will be replaced in their original locations only that the final number is the same.

## NOTES ON USE

The parity types supported are as follows:

```
SIGLIB_NO_PARITY,  
SIGLIB_EVEN_PARITY,  
SIGLIB_ODD_PARITY
```

This function requires an integer number of characters to be stored in the source array.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_SyncToAsyncConverter, SDA\_AsyncToSyncConverter,  
SIF\_AsyncAddRemoveStopBits, SDA\_AsyncRemoveStopBits.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLArrayIndex\_t SDA\_DecreaseWordLength (const SLUInt8\_t \*, Pointer to src. data  
SLUInt8\_t \*, Pointer to destination data  
const SLArrayIndex\_t, Input word length  
const SLArrayIndex\_t, Output word length  
const SLArrayIndex\_t) Source array length

**DESCRIPTION**

This function decreases the length of the binary words in the input stream.

Only the desired  $N$  bits in the output word length are significant the remainder are set to 0.

In modem applications it is commonly necessary to transmit symbols with different numbers of bits. For example 16QAM uses 4 bits per symbol. The function SDA\_DecreaseWordLength will take an input sequence with a given word length and reduce it to a sequence with a shorter word length while still retaining the same total number of bits in the overall sequence.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_IncreaseWordLength.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLArrayIndex\_t SDA\_IncreaseWordLength (const SLUInt8\_t \*,   Pointer to src. data  
                  SLUInt8\_t \*,                            Pointer to destination data  
                  const SLArrayIndex\_t,                Input word length  
                  const SLArrayIndex\_t,                Output word length  
                  const SLArrayIndex\_t)                Source array length

**DESCRIPTION**

This function increases the length of the binary words in the input stream.

Only the desired  $N$  bits in the output word length are significant the remainder are set to 0.

In modem applications it is commonly necessary to transmit symbols with different numbers of bits. For example 16QAM uses 4 bits per symbol. The function SDA\_DecreaseWordLength will take an input sequence with a given word length and reduce it to a sequence with a shorter word length while still retaining the same total number of bits in the overall sequence.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_DecreaseWordLength.



## PRBS (prbs.c)

## SDS\_Scrambler1417

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLFixData_t SDS_Scrambler1417(const SLEnterprise_t, Source byte  
                                SLUInt32 t*) Shift register
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function executes a self synchronising Pseudo Random Binary Sequence (PRBS) Cyclic Redundancy Check (CRC) scrambler having the generating polynomial:  $1 + x^{-14} + x^{-17}$ .

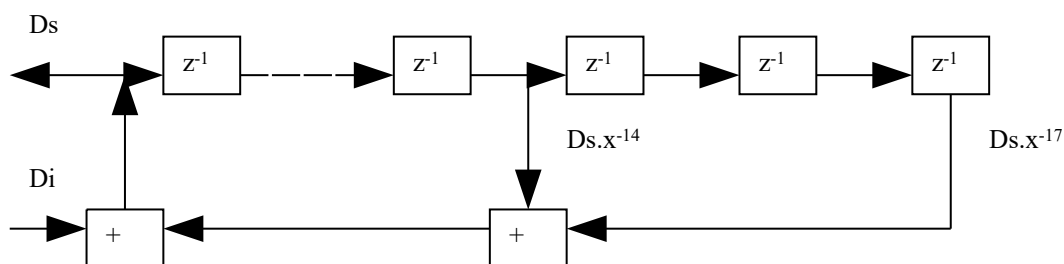
$$D_S = D_i + D_{S,X^{-14}} + D_{S,X^{-17}}$$

$D_s$  is the data sequence at the output of the scrambler

$D_i$  is the data sequence applied to the scrambler

+ denotes modulo 2 addition

. denotes binary multiplication.



## NOTES ON USE

The input data is handled least significant bit first. The scrambled byte is returned from the function.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDS\_Descrambler1417.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLFixData\_t SDS\_Descrambler1417 (const SLFixData\_t, Source byte  
SLUInt32\_t \*) Shift register

## DESCRIPTION

This function executes a self synchronising Pseudo Random Binary Sequence (PRBS) Cyclic Redundancy Check (CRC) de-scrambler having the generating polynomial:  $1 + x^{-14} + x^{-17}$ .

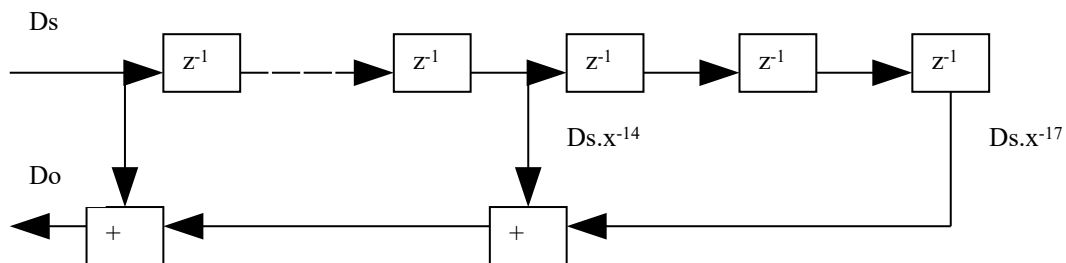
$$Do = Ds (1 + x^{-14} + x^{-17})$$

Ds is the data sequence at the output of the scrambler

Do is the data sequence applied to the scrambler

+ denotes modulo 2 addition

. denotes binary multiplication.



## NOTES ON USE

The input data is handled least significant bit first. The de-scrambled byte is returned from the function

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDS\_Scrambler1417.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|  |                            |
|--|----------------------------|
| SLFixData_t SDS_Scrambler1417WithInversion (const SLFixData_t, | Source byte                |
| SLUInt32_t *,  | Shift register             |
| SLFixData_t *,   | Ones bit count pointer     |
| SLFixData_t *)   | Bit inversion flag pointer |

## DESCRIPTION

This function executes a self synchronising Pseudo Random Binary Sequence (PRBS) Cyclic Redundancy Check (CRC) scrambler having the generating polynomial:  $1 + x^{14} + x^{17}$ .

$$D_s = D_i + D_s \cdot x^{-14} + D_s \cdot x^{-17}$$

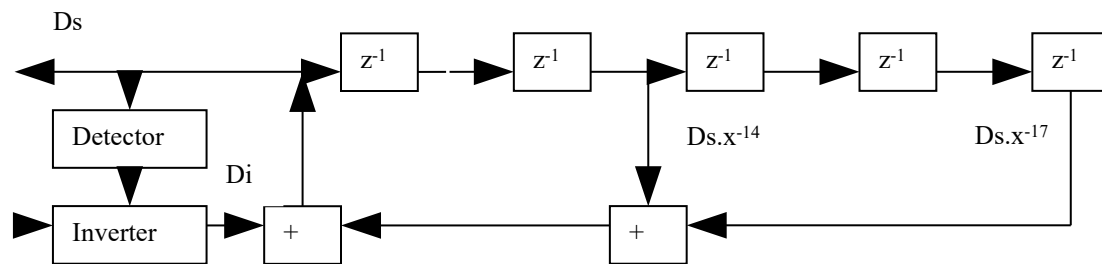
$D_s$  is the data sequence at the output of the scrambler

$D_i$  is the data sequence applied to the scrambler

$+$  denotes modulo 2 addition

$\cdot$  denotes binary multiplication.

This function detects a sequence of 64 consecutive ones at the output of the scrambler ( $D_s$ ) and, if detected, inverts the next input to the scrambler ( $D_i$ ). The counter is reset to zero.



## NOTES ON USE

The input data is handled least significant bit first. The scrambled byte is returned from the function.

The ones bit count and bit inversion flag parameters should be initialised to zero.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDS\_Descrambler1417WithInversion.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLFixData\_t SDS\_Descrambler1417WithInversion (const SLFixData\_t, Source  
byte

|                |                            |
|----------------|----------------------------|
| SLUInt32_t *,  | Shift register             |
| SLFixData_t *, | Ones bit count pointer     |
| SLFixData_t *) | Bit inversion flag pointer |

## DESCRIPTION

This function executes a self synchronising Pseudo Random Binary Sequence (PRBS) Cyclic Redundancy Check (CRC) de-scrambler having the generating polynomial:  $1 + x^{-14} + x^{-17}$ .

$$Do = Ds (1 + x^{-14} + x^{-17})$$

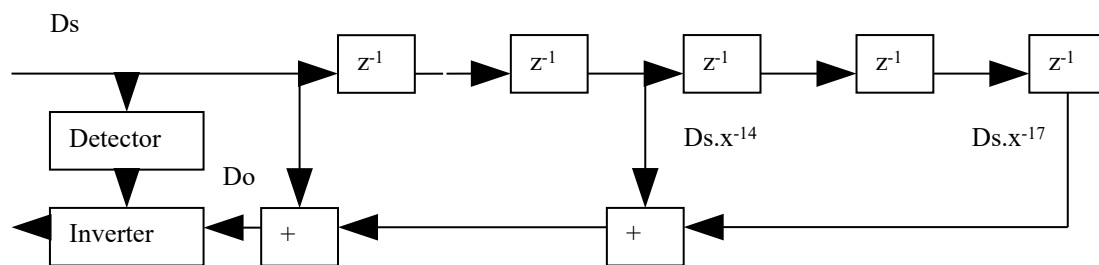
Ds is the data sequence at the output of the scrambler

Do is the data sequence applied to the scrambler

+ denotes modulo 2 addition

. denotes binary multiplication.

This function detects a sequence of 64 consecutive ones at the input to the de-scrambler (Ds) and, if detected, inverts the next output from the de-scrambler (Do). The counter is reset to zero.



## NOTES ON USE

The input data is handled least significant bit first. The de-scrambled byte is returned from the function

The ones bit count and bit inversion flag parameters should be initialised to zero.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDS\_Scrambler1417WithInversion.



## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLFixData\_t SDS\_Descrambler1823 (const SLFixData\_t, Source byte  
 SLUInt32\_t \*) Shift register

## DESCRIPTION

This function executes a self synchronising Pseudo Random Binary Sequence (PRBS) Cyclic Redundancy Check (CRC) de-scrambler having the generating polynomial:  $1 + x^{-18} + x^{-23}$ .

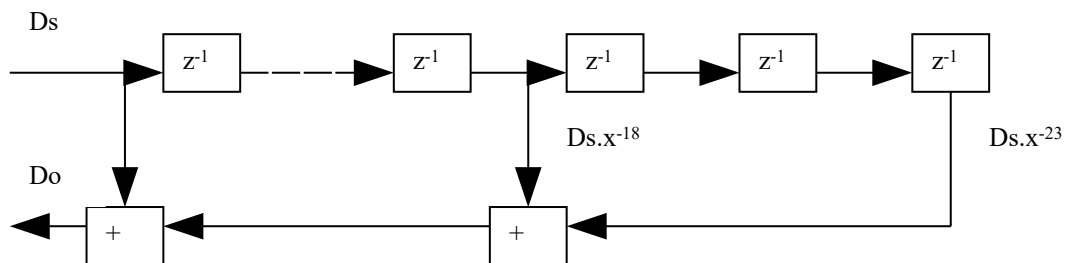
$$Do = Ds (1 + x^{-18} + x^{-23})$$

Ds is the data sequence at the output of the scrambler

Do is the data sequence applied to the scrambler

+ denotes modulo 2 addition

. denotes binary multiplication.



## NOTES ON USE

The input data is handled least significant bit first. The de-scrambled byte is returned from the function

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDS\_Scrambler1823.



## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLFixData\_t SDS\_Descrambler523 (const SLFixData\_t, Source byte  
SLUInt32\_t \*) Shift register

## DESCRIPTION

This function executes a self synchronising Pseudo Random Binary Sequence (PRBS) Cyclic Redundancy Check (CRC) de-scrambler having the generating polynomial:  $1 + x^{-5} + x^{-23}$ .

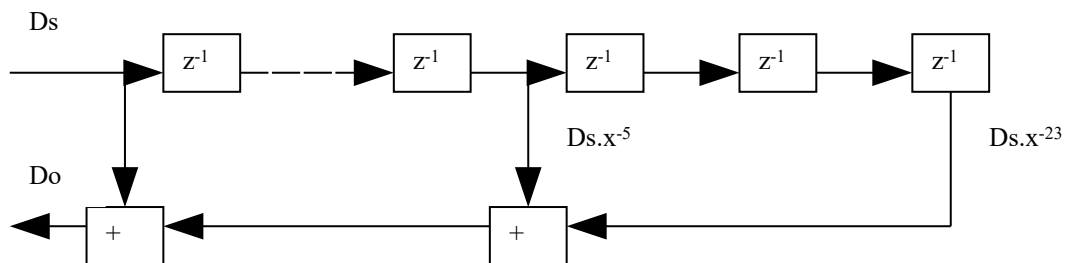
$$Do = Ds (1 + x^{-5} + x^{-23})$$

Ds is the data sequence at the output of the scrambler

Do is the data sequence applied to the scrambler

+ denotes modulo 2 addition

. denotes binary multiplication.



## NOTES ON USE

The input data is handled least significant bit first. The de-scrambled byte is returned from the function

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDS\_Scrambler1823.



## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLFixData\_t SDS\_ScramblerDescramblerPN9 (const SLFixData\_t, Source byte  
SLUInt32\_t \*) Shift register

## DESCRIPTION

This function executes a Pseudo Random Binary Sequence (PRBS) scrambler / descrambler having the generating polynomial:  $x^9 + x^4 + 1$ .

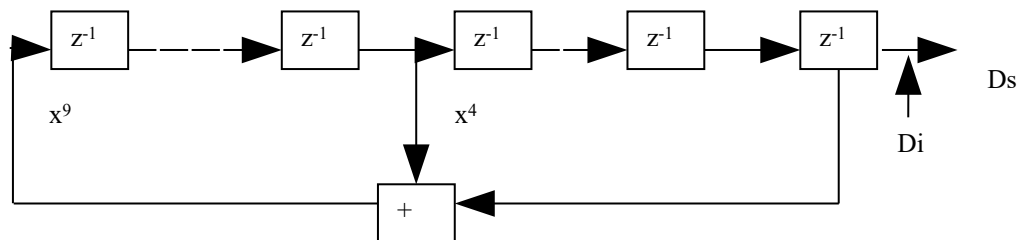
$$D_s = D_i (x^9 + x^4 + 1)$$

$D_s$  is the data sequence at the output of the scrambler

$D_i$  is the data sequence applied to the scrambler

$+$  denotes modulo 2 addition

$.$  denotes binary multiplication.



## NOTES ON USE

The input data is handled least significant bit first. The scrambled / de-scrambled byte is returned from the function

## CROSS REFERENCE

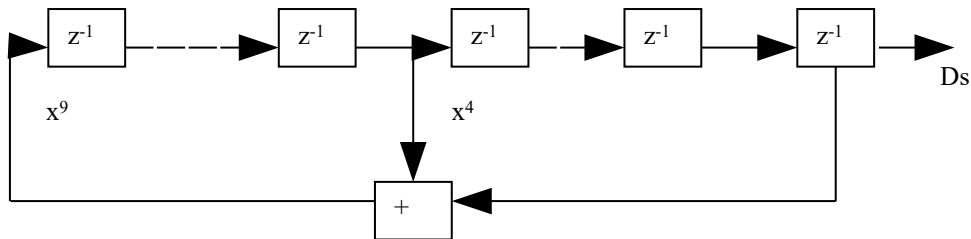
SDS\_SequenceGeneratorPN9, SDS\_ScramblerDescramblerPN15,  
SDS\_SequenceGeneratorPN15.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLFixData\_t SDS\_SequenceGeneratorPN9 (SLUInt32\_t \*)      Shift register

## DESCRIPTION

This function generates a Pseudo Random Binary Sequence (PRBS) with a generating polynomial:  $x^9 + x^4 + 1$ .



## NOTES ON USE

The shift register contents should be initialized with the seed value prior to calling this function.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDS\_ScramblerDescramblerPN9, SDS\_ScramblerDescramblerPN15,  
SDS\_SequenceGeneratorPN15.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLFixData\_t SDS\_ScramblerDescramblerPN15 (const SLFixData\_t, Source byte  
SLUInt32\_t \*) Shift register

## DESCRIPTION

This function executes a Pseudo Random Binary Sequence (PRBS) scrambler / descrambler having the generating polynomial:  $x^{15} + x^{14} + 1$ .

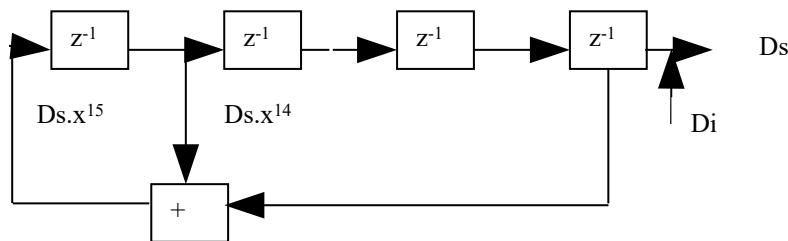
$$D_s = D_i (x^{15} + x^{14} + 1)$$

$D_s$  is the data sequence at the output of the scrambler

$D_i$  is the data sequence applied to the scrambler

$+$  denotes modulo 2 addition

$.$  denotes binary multiplication.



## NOTES ON USE

The input data is handled least significant bit first. The scrambled / de-scrambled byte is returned from the function

## CROSS REFERENCE

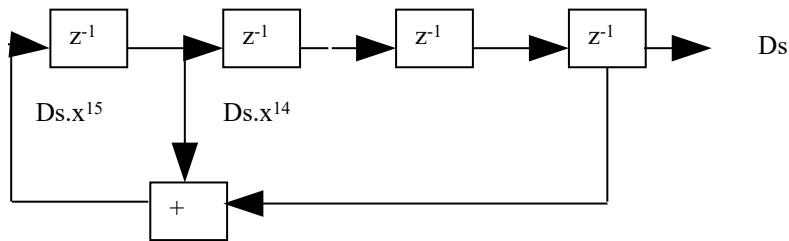
SDS\_SequenceGeneratorPN9, SDS\_ScramblerDescramblerPN9,  
SDS\_SequenceGeneratorPN15.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLFixData\_t SDS\_SequenceGeneratorPN15 (SLUInt32\_t \*)      Shift register

## DESCRIPTION

This function generates a Pseudo Random Binary Sequence (PRBS) with a generating polynomial:  $x^{15} + x^{14} + 1$ .



## NOTES ON USE

The shift register contents should be initialized with the seed value prior to calling this function.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDS\_ScramblerDescramblerPN9, SDS\_SequenceGeneratorPN9,  
SDS\_ScramblerDescramblerPN15.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLFixData\_t SDS\_ScramblerDescramblergCRC24 (const SLFixData\_t, Source byte  
 SLUInt32\_t \*) Shift register

## DESCRIPTION

This function executes a Pseudo Random Binary Sequence (PRBS) scrambler / descrambler having the 3GPP UMTS compliant generating polynomial:

$$gCRC24(D) = D^{24} + D^{23} + D^6 + D^5 + D + 1.$$

Where :

$$D_s = D_i (D^{24} + D^{23} + D^6 + D^5 + D + 1)$$

$D_s$  is the data sequence at the output of the scrambler

$D_i$  is the data sequence applied to the scrambler

$+$  denotes modulo 2 addition

$.$  denotes binary multiplication.

## NOTES ON USE

The input data is handled least significant bit first. The scrambled / de-scrambled byte is returned from the function

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDS\_SequenceGeneratorgCRC24, SDS\_ScramblerDescramblergCRC16,  
 SDS\_SequenceGeneratorgCRC16, SDS\_ScramblerDescramblergCRC12,  
 SDS\_SequenceGeneratorgCRC12, SDS\_ScramblerDescramblergCRC8 ,  
 SDS\_SequenceGeneratorgCRC8.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLFixData\_t SDS\_SequenceGeneratorgCRC24 (SLUInt32\_t \*)    Shift register

**DESCRIPTION**

This function generates a Pseudo Random Binary Sequence (PRBS) with a 3GPP UMTS compliant generating polynomial:

$$gCRC24(D) = D^{24} + D^{23} + D^6 + D^5 + D + 1.$$

**NOTES ON USE**

The shift register contents should be initialized with the seed value prior to calling this function.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDS\_ScramblerDescramblergCRC24, SDS\_ScramblerDescramblergCRC16,  
SDS\_SequenceGeneratorgCRC16, SDS\_ScramblerDescramblergCRC12,  
SDS\_SequenceGeneratorgCRC12, SDS\_ScramblerDescramblergCRC8 ,  
SDS\_SequenceGeneratorgCRC8.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLFixData\_t SDS\_ScramblerDescramblergCRC16 (const SLFixData\_t, Source byte  
 SLUInt32\_t \*) Shift register

## DESCRIPTION

This function executes a Pseudo Random Binary Sequence (PRBS) scrambler / descrambler having the 3GPP UMTS compliant generating polynomial:

$$gCRC16(D) = D^{16} + D^{12} + D^5 + 1.$$

Where :

$$D_s = D_i (D^{16} + D^{12} + D^5 + 1)$$

$D_s$  is the data sequence at the output of the scrambler

$D_i$  is the data sequence applied to the scrambler

$+$  denotes modulo 2 addition

$.$  denotes binary multiplication.

## NOTES ON USE

The input data is handled least significant bit first. The scrambled / de-scrambled byte is returned from the function

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDS\_ScramblerDescramblergCRC24, SDS\_SequenceGeneratorgCRC24,  
 SDS\_SequenceGeneratorgCRC16, SDS\_ScramblerDescramblergCRC12,  
 SDS\_SequenceGeneratorgCRC12, SDS\_ScramblerDescramblergCRC8 ,  
 SDS\_SequenceGeneratorgCRC8.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLFixData\_t SDS\_SequenceGeneratorgCRC16 (SLUInt32\_t \*)    Shift register

**DESCRIPTION**

This function generates a Pseudo Random Binary Sequence (PRBS) with a 3GPP UMTS compliant generating polynomial:

$$gCRC16(D) = D^{16} + D^{12} + D^5 + 1.$$

**NOTES ON USE**

The shift register contents should be initialized with the seed value prior to calling this function.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDS\_ScramblerDescramblergCRC24, SDS\_SequenceGeneratorgCRC24,  
SDS\_ScramblerDescramblergCRC16, SDS\_ScramblerDescramblergCRC12,  
SDS\_SequenceGeneratorgCRC12, SDS\_ScramblerDescramblergCRC8 ,  
SDS\_SequenceGeneratorgCRC8.



## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLFixData\_t SDS\_ScramblerDescramblergCRC12 (const SLFixData\_t, Source byte  
SLUInt32\_t \*) Shift register

## DESCRIPTION

This function executes a Pseudo Random Binary Sequence (PRBS) scrambler / descrambler having the 3GPP UMTS compliant generating polynomial:

$$gCRC24(D) = D^{12} + D^{11} + D^3 + D^2 + D + 1.$$

Where :

$$D_s = D_i (D^{12} + D^{11} + D^3 + D^2 + D + 1)$$

$D_s$  is the data sequence at the output of the scrambler

$D_i$  is the data sequence applied to the scrambler

$+$  denotes modulo 2 addition

$.$  denotes binary multiplication.

## NOTES ON USE

The input data is handled least significant bit first. The scrambled / de-scrambled byte is returned from the function

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDS\_ScramblerDescramblergCRC24, SDS\_SequenceGeneratorgCRC24,  
SDS\_ScramblerDescramblergCRC16, SDS\_SequenceGeneratorgCRC16,  
SDS\_SequenceGeneratorgCRC12, SDS\_ScramblerDescramblergCRC8 ,  
SDS\_SequenceGeneratorgCRC8.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLFixData\_t SDS\_SequenceGeneratorCRC12 (SLUInt32\_t \*)    Shift register

**DESCRIPTION**

This function generates a Pseudo Random Binary Sequence (PRBS) with a 3GPP UMTS compliant generating polynomial:

$$gCRC12(D) = D^{12} + D^{11} + D^3 + D^2 + D + 1.$$

**NOTES ON USE**

The shift register contents should be initialized with the seed value prior to calling this function.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDS\_ScramblerDescramblerCRC24, SDS\_SequenceGeneratorCRC24,  
SDS\_ScramblerDescramblerCRC16, SDS\_SequenceGeneratorCRC16,  
SDS\_ScramblerDescramblerCRC12, SDS\_ScramblerDescramblerCRC8 ,  
SDS\_SequenceGeneratorCRC8.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLFixData\_t SDS\_ScramblerDescramblergCRC8 (const SLFixData\_t, Source byte  
SLUInt32\_t \*) Shift register

## DESCRIPTION

This function executes a Pseudo Random Binary Sequence (PRBS) scrambler / descrambler having the 3GPP UMTS compliant generating polynomial:

$$gCRC8(D) = D^8 + D^7 + D^4 + D^3 + D + 1.$$

Where :

$$D_s = D_i (D^8 + D^7 + D^4 + D^3 + D + 1)$$

$D_s$  is the data sequence at the output of the scrambler

$D_i$  is the data sequence applied to the scrambler

$+$  denotes modulo 2 addition

$.$  denotes binary multiplication.

## NOTES ON USE

The input data is handled least significant bit first. The scrambled / de-scrambled byte is returned from the function

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDS\_ScramblerDescramblergCRC24, SDS\_SequenceGeneratorgCRC24,  
SDS\_ScramblerDescramblergCRC16, SDS\_SequenceGeneratorgCRC16,  
SDS\_ScramblerDescramblergCRC12, SDS\_SequenceGeneratorgCRC12,  
SDS\_SequenceGeneratorgCRC8.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLFixData\_t SDS\_SequenceGeneratorCRC8 (SLUInt32\_t \*)      Shift register

**DESCRIPTION**

This function generates a Pseudo Random Binary Sequence (PRBS) with a 3GPP UMTS compliant generating polynomial:

$$gCRC8(D) = D^8 + D^7 + D^4 + D^3 + D + 1.$$

**NOTES ON USE**

The shift register contents should be initialized with the seed value prior to calling this function.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDS\_ScramblerDescramblerCRC24, SDS\_SequenceGeneratorCRC24,  
SDS\_ScramblerDescramblerCRC16, SDS\_SequenceGeneratorCRC16,  
SDS\_ScramblerDescramblerCRC12, SDS\_SequenceGeneratorCRC12,  
SDS\_ScramblerDescramblerCRC8.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDS_LongCodeGenerator3GPPDL (SLComplexRect_s *,    Pointer to
destination array
    SLUInt32_t *,                                X shift register
    SLUInt32_t *,                                Y shift register
    const SLArrayIndex_t)                        Output array length
```

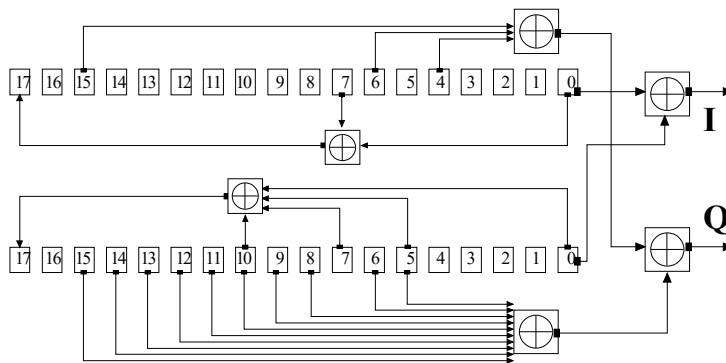
## DESCRIPTION

This function generates a 3GPP downlink long code PN sequence using the generating polynomials:

X sequence:  $X^{18} + X^7 + 1$

Y sequence:  $X^{18} + X^{10} + X^7 + X^5 + 1$

The diagram for the 3GPP downlink long code generator is:



The binary values are mapped to balanced output signals as follows:

Binary value = 0 - Output = +1

Binary value = 1 - Output = -1

## NOTES ON USE

The shift register contents should be initialized with the seed value prior to calling this function.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDS\_LongCodeGenerator3GPPUL.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDS_LongCodeGenerator3GPPUL (SLComplexRect_s *,   Pointer to
destination array
    SLUInt32_t *,                                     X shift register
    SLUInt32_t *,                                     Y shift register
    const SLArrayIndex_t)                             Output array length
```

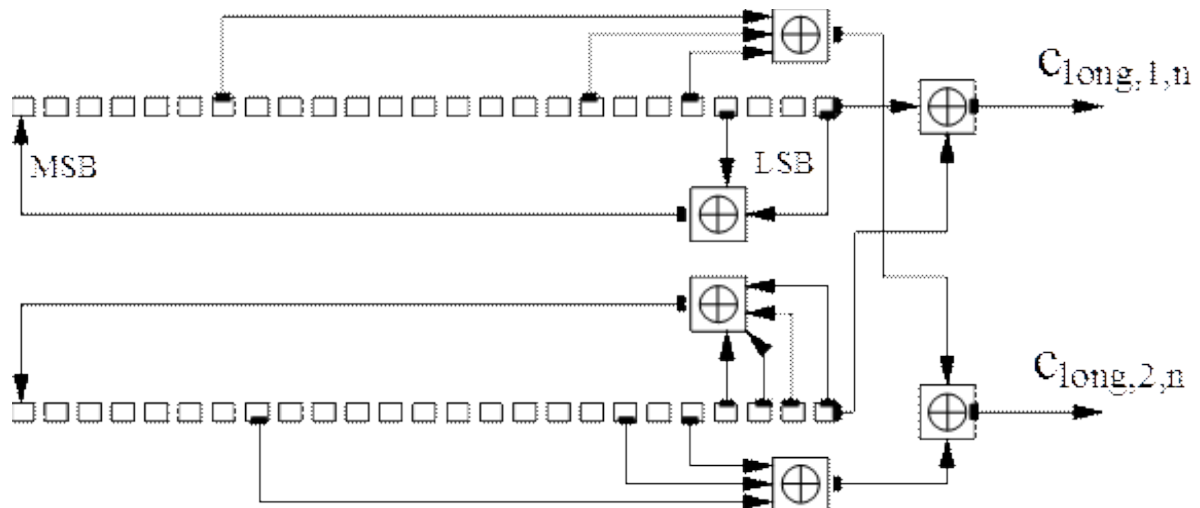
## DESCRIPTION

This function generates a 3GPP uplink long code PN sequence using the generating polynomials:

X sequence:  $X^{25} + X^3 + 1$

Y sequence:  $X^{25} + X^3 + X^2 + X + 1$

The diagram for the 3GPP uplink long code generator is:



The binary values are mapped to balanced output signals as follows:

Binary value = 0 - Output = +1

Binary value = 1 - Output = -1

## NOTES ON USE

The shift register contents should be initialized with the seed value prior to calling this function.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDS\_LongCodeGenerator3GPPDL.

#### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|                                       |  |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| void SDA_Multiplex (const SLData_t *, | Pointer to source multiplexed array      |
| const SLData_t *,                     | Input data for frame sample index        |
| SLData_t *,                           | Pointer to destination multiplexed array |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                 | Frame sample index to insert data        |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                 | Number of frames in array                |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)                 | Number of samples in frame               |

#### DESCRIPTION

This function inserts the new data into the selected frame index.

#### NOTES ON USE

This function overwrites the data in the selected frame index in the multiplexed stream.

#### CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_Demultiplex, SDA\_MuxN, SDA\_DemuxN.

### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|   |                                     |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| void SDA_Demultiplex (const SLData_t *, | Pointer to source multiplexed array |
| SLData_t *,                             | Pointer to destination array        |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                   | Frame sample index to extract       |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                   | Number of frames in array           |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)                   | Number of samples in frame          |

### DESCRIPTION

This function extracts the data from the selected frame index.

### NOTES ON USE

### CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_Multiplex, SDA\_Mux*N*, SDA\_Demux*N*.



## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLData_t SDA_MuxN (const SLData_t *,   Source array pointer 1
                    .
                    .
                    const SLData_t *,   Source array pointer N
                    SLData_t *,         Destination array pointer
                    const SLArrayIndex_t) Source array length
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function multiplexes  $N$  channels of data into one single channel.

## NOTES ON USE

The destination array will be  $N$  times the length of the source arrays.

$2 \leq N \leq 8$ .

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_Multiplex, SDA\_Demultiplex, SDA\_DemuxN.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLData_t SDA_DemuxN (const SLData_t *,      Source array pointer
                     SLData_t *,           Destination array pointer 1
                     .
                     .
                     SLData_t *,           Destination array pointer N
                     const SLArrayIndex_t) Destination array length
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function de-multiplex  $N$  channels of data from the one single channel.

## NOTES ON USE

The source array will be  $N$  times the length of the destination arrays.

$2 \leq N \leq 8$ .

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_Multiplex, SDA\_Demultiplex, SDA\_MuxN.

## Decimation And Interpolation Functions (*decint.c*)

### SIF\_Decimate

#### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SIF\_Decimate (SLArrayIndex\_t \*)      Pointer to decimation index register

#### DESCRIPTION

This function initialises the decimation function SDA\_Decimate and initialises the index register to zero.

#### NOTES ON USE

#### CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_Interpolate, SDA\_FilterAndDecimate, SDA\_InterpolateAndFilter,  
SDA\_ResampleLinear

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|                                      |                               |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| void SDA_Decimate (const SLData_t *, | Pointer to source array       |
| SLData_t *,                          | Pointer to destination array  |
| const SLFixData_t,                   | Decimation ratio              |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                    | Pointer to source array index |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)                | Source array length           |

## DESCRIPTION

This function decimates the sample rate of the data by the given ratio.

## NOTES ON USE

This function supports decimation across contiguous arrays through the use of the source array index parameter, which must be initialised to zero before calling this function.

This function will work in-place.

This function does not low pass pre-filter the source data. This should be performed using the FIR filter functions.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_Decimate, SDA\_Interpolate, SDA\_FilterAndDecimate,  
SDA\_InterpolateAndFilter, SDA\_ResampleLinear

### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SIF\_Interpolate (SLArrayIndex\_t \*)    Pointer to interpolation index register

### DESCRIPTION

This function initialises the interpolation function SDA\_Interpolate and initialises the index register to zero.

### NOTES ON USE

### CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_Interpolate, SDA\_FilterAndDecimate, SDA\_InterpolateAndFilter,  
SDA\_ResampleLinear

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|   |                                    |
|---|------------------------------------|
| void SDA_Interpolate (const SLData_t *, | Pointer to source array            |
| SLData_t *,                             | Pointer to destination array       |
| const SLFixData_t,                      | Interpolation ratio                |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                       | Pointer to destination array index |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)                   | Destination array length           |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function interpolates the sample rate of the data by the given ratio.

**NOTES ON USE**

This function supports interpolation across contiguous arrays through the use of the destination array index parameter.

This function does NOT work in-place.

This function does not low pass post-filter the interpolated data. This should be performed using the FIR filter functions.

This function does not verify that there is sufficient data in the source array to avoid overrun.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SIF\_Interpolate, SDA\_Decimate, SDA\_FilterAndDecimate,  
SDA\_InterpolateAndFilter, SDA\_ResampleLinear

### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SIF_FilterAndDecimate (SLData_t *,   Pointer to filter state array  
                           const SLArrayIndex_t)   Filter length
```

### DESCRIPTION

This function initialises the SDA\_FilterAndDecimate function.

### NOTES ON USE

### CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_Interpolate, SDA\_Decimate, SDA\_FilterAndDecimate,  
SDA\_InterpolateAndFilter, SDA\_ResampleLinear

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
void SDA_FilterAndDecimate (const SLData_t *,   Pointer to source array
                           SLData_t *,         Pointer to destination array
                           const SLFixData_t,   Decimation ratio
                           SLArrayIndex_t *,    Pointer to source array index
                           SLData_t *,          Pointer to filter state array
                           const SLData_t *,    Pointer to filter coefficients
                           SLArrayIndex_t *,    Pointer to filter offset register
                           const SLArrayIndex_t, Filter length
                           const SLArrayIndex_t) Source array length
```

**DESCRIPTION**

This function pre-filters the source data using the supplied filter coefficients and decimates the sample rate of the data by the given ratio.

**NOTES ON USE**

This function supports decimation across contiguous arrays through the use of the source array index parameter.

This function will work in-place.

The FIR filter should be linear phase filter to maintain the phase relationships of all the frequencies in the signal being decimated.

The decimation ratio must be an integer value.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_Interpolate, SDA\_Decimate, SIF\_FilterAndDecimate,  
SDA\_InterpolateAndFilter, SDA\_ResampleLinear



### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SIF_InterpolateAndFilter (SLData_t *, Pointer to filter state array  
    const SLArrayIndex_t)          Filter length
```

### DESCRIPTION

This function initialises the SDA\_InterpolateAndFilter function.

### NOTES ON USE

### CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_Decimate, SDA\_Interpolate, SDA\_FilterAndDecimate,  
SDA\_InterpolateAndFilter, SDA\_ResampleLinear, SDS\_InterpolateQuadratic1D,  
SDS\_InterpolateQuadraticBSpline1D, SDS\_InterpolateQuadraticLagrange1D

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|  |                                    |
|--|------------------------------------|
| void SDA_InterpolateAndFilter (const SLData_t *, | Pointer to source array            |
| SLData_t *,                                      | Pointer to destination array       |
| const SLFixData_t,                               | Interpolation ratio                |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                                | Pointer to destination array index |
| SLData_t *,                                      | Pointer to filter state array      |
| const SLData_t *,                                | Pointer to filter coefficients     |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                                | Pointer to filter offset register  |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                            | Filter length                      |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)                            | Destination array length           |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function interpolates the sample rate of the data by the given ratio and low pass post-filters the destination data using the supplied filter coefficients.

**NOTES ON USE**

This function supports interpolation across contiguous arrays through the use of the destination array index parameter.

This function does NOT work in-place.

This function does not verify that there is sufficient data in the source array to avoid overrun of that array.

The FIR filter should be linear phase filter to maintain the phase relationships of all the frequencies in the signal being interpolated.

The interpolation ratio must be an integer value.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_Decimate, SDA\_Interpolate, SDA\_FilterAndDecimate,  
SIF\_InterpolateAndFilter, SDA\_ResampleLinear, SDS\_InterpolateQuadratic1D,  
SDS\_InterpolateQuadraticBSpline1D, SDS\_InterpolateQuadraticLagrange1D

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

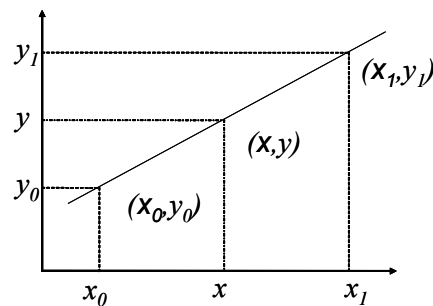
```
SLArrayIndex_t SDA_ResampleLinear (const SLData_t *, Source array pointer
    SLData_t *,                               Destination array pointer
    const SLData_t,                           New sample period
    const SLArrayIndex_t)                     Source array length
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function uses linear interpolation to resample the data in the source array. The input sample rate is normalized to 1.0 Hz and the new sample period is relative to the normalized input sample rate. The following table shows the range of numbers that are used for the new sample period for both interpolation and decimation:

|                                      |       |
|--------------------------------------|-------|
| Decimation (sample rate decrease)    | > 1.0 |
| Interpolation (sample rate increase) | < 1.0 |

The interpolation operation is summarized in the following diagram:



The interpolated y value is calculate using the following equation:

$$y = y_0 + \frac{x - x_0}{x_1 - x_0} (y_1 - y_0)$$

This function returns the number of re-sampled output data points.

## NOTES ON USE

This function is not designed for use in streaming applications, where the SDA\_FilterAndDecimate and SDA\_InterpolateAndFilter functions are much more appropriate.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_Decimate, SDA\_Interpolate, SDA\_FilterAndDecimate,  
SIF\_InterpolateAndFilter, SDA\_InterpolateAndFilter,  
SDA\_ResampleLinearNSamples, SDA\_ResampleSinc,  
SIF\_ResampleLinearContiguous and SDA\_ResampleLinearContiguous,  
SDS\_InterpolateQuadratic1D, SDS\_InterpolateQuadraticBSpline1D,  
SDS\_InterpolateQuadraticLagrange1D

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

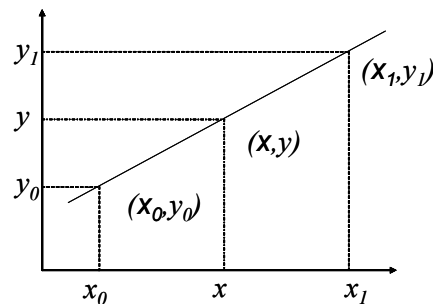
SLArrayIndex\_t SDA\_ResampleLinearNSamples (const SLData\_t \*, Source pointer  
 SLData\_t \*, Destination array pointer  
 const SLData\_t, New sample period  
 const SLArrayIndex\_t, Source array length  
 const SLArrayIndex\_t) Destination array length

## DESCRIPTION

This function uses linear interpolation to resample the data in the source array. The input sample rate is normalized to 1.0 Hz and the new sample period is relative to the normalized input sample rate. The following table shows the range of numbers that are used for the new sample period for both interpolation and decimation:

|                                      |       |
|--------------------------------------|-------|
| Decimation (sample rate decrease)    | > 1.0 |
| Interpolation (sample rate increase) | < 1.0 |

The interpolation operation is summarized in the following diagram:



The interpolated y value is calculate using the following equation:

$$y = y_0 + \frac{x - x_0}{x_1 - x_0} (y_1 - y_0)$$

The function only outputs N samples. If the re-sampling shortens the array then it is zero padded. If the re-sampling lengthens the array then it is truncated. This function returns the number of re-sampled output valid data points – i.e. if the output array contains 100 data samples and 50 zero padded samples then this function will return 100.

## NOTES ON USE

This function is not designed for use in streaming applications, where the SDA\_FilterAndDecimate and SDA\_InterpolateAndFilter functions are much more appropriate.

## CROSS REFERENCE

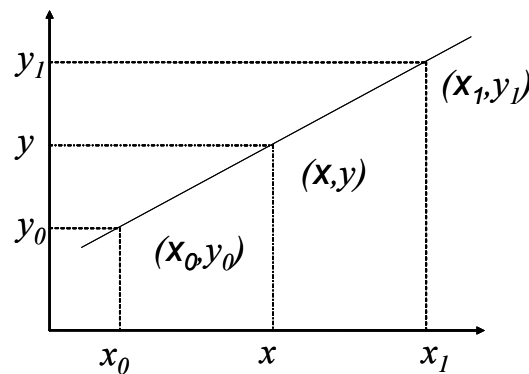
SDA\_Decimate, SDA\_Interpolate, SDA\_FilterAndDecimate,  
 SIF\_InterpolateAndFilter, SDA\_InterpolateAndFilter,  
 SDA\_ResampleLinearNSamples, SDA\_ResampleSinc,  
 SIF\_ResampleLinearContiguous and SDA\_ResampleLinearContiguous,  
 SDS\_InterpolateQuadratic1D, SDS\_InterpolateQuadraticBSpline1D,  
 SDS\_InterpolateQuadraticLagrange1D

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData\_t SDA\_InterpolateLinear1D (const SLData\_t \*, Y Source array pointer  
const SLData\_t, Input x value  
const SLArrayIndex\_t) Source array length

## DESCRIPTION

This function uses linear interpolation to calculate the interpolated value of  $y$ , for a given  $x$ . The source  $y$  samples are stored in the source array, with the array index being the  $x$  value and the interpolated value is the return value from the function. The interpolation operation is summarized in the following diagram:



The interpolated  $y$  value is calculate using the following equation:

$$y = y_0 + \frac{x - x_0}{x_1 - x_0} (y_1 - y_0)$$

## NOTES ON USE

If the input  $x$  value is beyond the length of the  $y$  input array then this function will return SIGLIB\_ZERO.

## CROSS REFERENCE

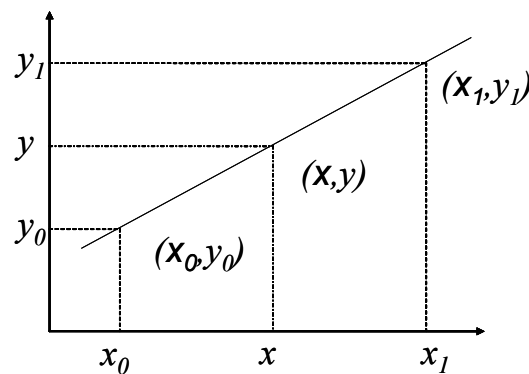
SDA\_Decimate, SDA\_Interpolate, SDA\_FilterAndDecimate,  
SIF\_InterpolateAndFilter, SDA\_InterpolateAndFilter, SDA\_ResampleLinear,  
SDA\_InterpolateLinear2D, SDS\_InterpolateQuadratic1D,  
SDS\_InterpolateQuadraticBSpline1D, SDS\_InterpolateQuadraticLagrange1D

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLData_t SDA_InterpolateLinear2D (const SLData_t *,    X Source array pointer
                                const SLData_t *,      Pointer to Y source array
                                const SLData_t,         Input x value
                                const SLArrayIndex_t)    Source array length
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function uses linear interpolation to calculate the interpolated value of  $y$ , for a given  $x$ . The  $x$  and  $y$  samples are stored in separate arrays and the interpolated value is the return value from the function. The interpolation operation is summarized in the following diagram:



The interpolated  $y$  value is calculate using the following equation:

$$y = y_0 + \frac{x - x_0}{x_1 - x_0} (y_1 - y_0)$$

## NOTES ON USE

If the input  $x$  value lies outside the magnitude range of the  $x$  input array then this function will return SIGLIB\_ZERO.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_Decimate, SDA\_Interpolate, SDA\_FilterAndDecimate,  
SIF\_InterpolateAndFilter, SDA\_InterpolateAndFilter, SDA\_ResampleLinear,  
SDA\_InterpolateLinear1D, SDS\_InterpolateQuadratic1D,  
SDS\_InterpolateQuadraticBSpline1D, SDS\_InterpolateQuadraticLagrange1D

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|                                    |                               |
|------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| void SIF_ResampleSinc (SLData_t *, | Pointer to sinc look up table |
| SLData_t *,                        | Pointer to phase gain         |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,              | Number of adjacent samples    |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)              | Look up table length          |

## DESCRIPTION

This function initializes the SDA\_ResampleSinc function with a sinc ( $\sin(x)/x$ ) look up table. Please refer to the documentation for SIF\_QuickSinc for further details.

## NOTES ON USE

Sinc interpolation allows a linear time or frequency axis to be rescaled into another linear or even a logarithmic axis. The error in these functions is  $< 1\%$  as long as the signal frequency is  $< 0.3 F_s$ . The function assumes all values outside the source array are 0.0

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_Decimate, SDA\_Interpolate, SDA\_FilterAndDecimate,  
SIF\_InterpolateAndFilter, SDA\_InterpolateAndFilter, SIF\_ResampleSincContiguous,  
SIF\_ResampleWindowedSincContiguous and SDA\_ResampleSincContiguous,  
SDS\_InterpolateQuadratic1D, SDS\_InterpolateQuadraticBSpline1D,  
SDS\_InterpolateQuadraticLagrange1D

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SIF_ResampleWindowedSinc (SLData_t *,    Pointer to sinc look up table
    SLData_t *,                               Pointer to phase gain
    const SLArrayIndex_t,                     Number of adjacent samples
    SLData_t *,                               Pointer to window LUT array
    const enum SLWindow_t,                     Window type
    const SLData_t,                           Window coefficient
    const SLArrayIndex_t)                     Look up table length
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function initializes the SDA\_ResampleSinc function with a windowed sinc ( $\sin(x)/x$ ) look up table. Please refer to the documentation for SIF\_QuickSinc and SIF\_Window for further details.

## NOTES ON USE

Sinc interpolation allows a linear time or frequency axis to be rescaled into another linear or even a logarithmic axis. The error in these functions is  $< 1\%$  as long as the signal frequency is  $< 0.3 F_s$ . The function assumes all values outside the source array are 0.0

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_Decimate, SDA\_Interpolate, SDA\_FilterAndDecimate, SIF\_InterpolateAndFilter, SDA\_InterpolateAndFilter, SIF\_ResampleSincContiguous, SIF\_ResampleWindowedSincContiguous and SDA\_ResampleSincContiguous, SDS\_InterpolateQuadratic1D, SDS\_InterpolateQuadraticBSpline1D, SDS\_InterpolateQuadraticLagrange1D



## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

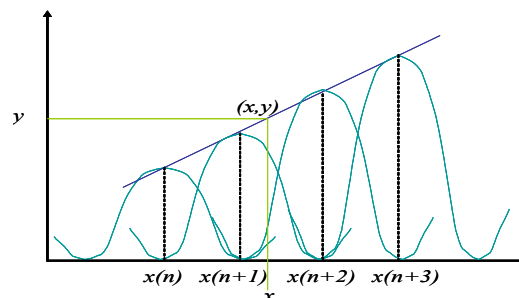
|  |                               |
|--|-------------------------------|
| SLArrayIndex_t SDA_ResampleSinc (const SLData_t *, | Pointer to src. array         |
| SLData_t *,  | Pointer to destination array  |
| const SLData_t *,                                  | Pointer to sinc look up table |
| const SLData_t,                                    | Look up table phase gain      |
| const SLData_t,                                    | New sample period             |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                              | Number of adjacent samples    |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)                              | Source array length           |

## DESCRIPTION

This function uses sinc ( $\sin(x)/x$ ) interpolation to resample the data in the source array. The input sample rate is normalized to 1.0 Hz and the new sample period is relative to the normalized input sample rate. The following table shows the range of numbers that are used for the new sample period for both interpolation and decimation:

|                                      |       |
|--------------------------------------|-------|
| Decimation (sample rate decrease)    | > 1.0 |
| Interpolation (sample rate increase) | < 1.0 |

The interpolation operation is summarized in the following diagram where the interpolated point is generated from the summations of the number of adjacent samples specified in the parameter list:



This function returns the number of re-sampled output data points.

## NOTES ON USE

This function uses the quick sinc look up table for calculating the sinc function. You must call either SIF\_ResampleSinc or SIF\_ResampleWindowedSinc before calling this function.

This function is not designed for use in streaming applications, where the SDA\_FilterAndDecimate and SDA\_InterpolateAndFilter functions are much more appropriate.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_Decimate, SDA\_Interpolate, SDA\_FilterAndDecimate, SIF\_InterpolateAndFilter, SDA\_InterpolateAndFilter, SDA\_ResampleLinear, SDA\_ResampleSincNSamples, SIF\_ResampleSincContiguous, SIF\_ResampleWindowedSincContiguous and SDA\_ResampleSincContiguous, SDS\_InterpolateQuadratic1D, SDS\_InterpolateQuadraticBSpline1D, SDS\_InterpolateQuadraticLagrange1D

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

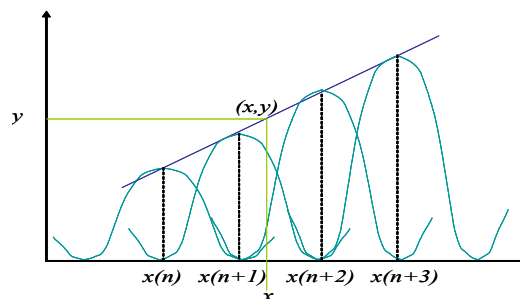
|  |                               |
|--|-------------------------------|
| SLArrayIndex_t SDA_ResampleSincNSamples (const SLData_t *, | Ptr. to src. array            |
| SLData_t *,  | Pointer to destination array  |
| const SLData_t *,  | Pointer to sinc look up table |
| const SLData_t,  | Look up table phase gain      |
| const SLData_t,  | New sample period             |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                                      | Number of adjacent samples    |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                                      | Source array length           |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)                                      | Destination array length      |

## DESCRIPTION

This function uses sinc ( $\sin(x)/x$ ) interpolation to resample the data in the source array. The input sample rate is normalized to 1.0 Hz and the new sample period is relative to the normalized input sample rate. The following table shows the range of numbers that are used for the new sample period for both interpolation and decimation:

|                                      |       |
|--------------------------------------|-------|
| Decimation (sample rate decrease)    | > 1.0 |
| Interpolation (sample rate increase) | < 1.0 |

The interpolation operation is summarized in the following diagram where the interpolated point is generated from the summations of the number of adjacent samples specified in the parameter list:



The function only outputs N samples. If the re-sampling shortens the array then it is zero padded. If the re-sampling lengthens the array then it is truncated. This function returns the number of re-sampled output valid data points – i.e. if the output array contains 100 data samples and 50 zero padded samples then this function will return 100.

## NOTES ON USE

This function uses the quick sinc look up table for calculating the sinc function. You must call either `SIF_ResampleSinc` or `SIF_ResampleWindowedSinc` before calling this function.

This function is not designed for use in streaming applications, where the `SDA_FilterAndDecimate` and `SDA_InterpolateAndFilter` functions are much more appropriate.

## CROSS REFERENCE

`SDA_Decimate`, `SDA_Interpolate`, `SDA_FilterAndDecimate`,  
`SIF_InterpolateAndFilter`, `SDA_InterpolateAndFilter`, `SDA_ResampleLinear`,  
`SDA_ResampleSinc`, `SIF_ResampleSincContiguous`,  
`SIF_ResampleWindowedSincContiguous` and `SDA_ResampleSincContiguous`,  
`SDS_InterpolateQuadratic1D`, `SDS_InterpolateQuadraticBSpline1D`,  
`SDS_InterpolateQuadraticLagrange1D`

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|  |                               |
|--|-------------------------------|
| void SIF_InterpolateSinc1 (SLData_t *, | Pointer to sinc look up table |
| SLData_t *,                            | Pointer to phase gain         |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                  | Number of adjacent samples    |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)                  | Look up table length          |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function initializes the SDA\_InterpolateSinc1 function with a sinc ( $\sin(x)/x$ ) look up table. Please refer to the documentation for SIF\_QuickSinc for further details.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_InterpolateLinear1D, SDA\_InterpolateLinear2D and  
SDA\_InterpolateSinc1D, SDS\_InterpolateQuadratic1D,  
SDS\_InterpolateQuadraticBSpline1D, SDS\_InterpolateQuadraticLagrange1D

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
void SIF_InterpolateWindowedSinc1D (SLData_t *,   Pointer to sinc look up table
    SLData_t *,                               Pointer to phase gain
    const SLArrayIndex_t,                     Number of adjacent samples
    SLData_t *,                               Pointer to window LUT array
    const enum SLWindow_t,                     Window type
    const SLData_t,                           Window coefficient
    const SLArrayIndex_t)                     Look up table length
```

**DESCRIPTION**

This function initializes the SDA\_InterpolateSinc1D function with a windowed sinc ( $\sin(x)/x$ ) look up table. Please refer to the documentation for SIF\_QuickSinc and SIF\_Window for further details.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

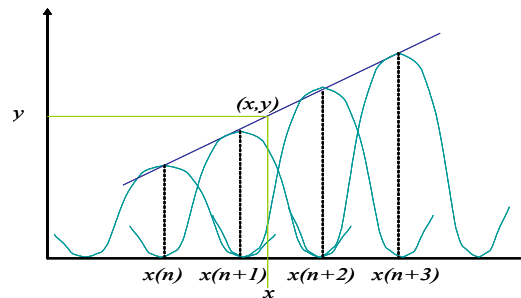
SDA\_InterpolateLinear1D, SDA\_InterpolateLinear2D and  
SDA\_InterpolateSinc1D, SDS\_InterpolateQuadratic1D,  
SDS\_InterpolateQuadraticBSpline1D, SDS\_InterpolateQuadraticLagrange1D

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLData_t SDA_InterpolateSinc1D (const SLData_t *,      Pointer to 'y' source array
                                const SLData_t,        Input 'x' value
                                SLData_t *,            Pointer to sinc look up table
                                const SLData_t,        Look up table phase gain
                                const SLArrayIndex_t,   Number of adjacent samples
                                const SLArrayIndex_t)   Source array length
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function uses sinc ( $\sin(x)/x$ ) interpolation to calculate the interpolated value of  $y$ , for a given  $x$ . The source  $y$  samples are located in the source array, with the array index being the  $x$  value and the interpolated value is the return value from the function. The interpolation operation is summarized in the following diagram where the interpolated point is generated from the summations of the number of adjacent samples specified in the parameter list:



## NOTES ON USE

This function uses the quick sinc look up table for calculating the sinc function.

You must call either SIF\_InterpolateSinc1 or SIF\_InterpolateWindowedSinc1 before calling this function.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_InterpolateLinear1D, SDA\_InterpolateLinear2D and  
 SIF\_InterpolateSinc1D, SDS\_InterpolateQuadratic1D,  
 SDS\_InterpolateQuadraticBSpline1D, SDS\_InterpolateQuadraticLagrange1D

### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SIF_ResampleLinearContiguous (SLData_t *, Pointer to previous X value  
                                   SLData_t *)           Pointer to previous Y value
```

### DESCRIPTION

This function initializes the SDA\_ResampleLinearContiguous function.

### NOTES ON USE

### CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_Decimate, SDA\_Interpolate, SDA\_FilterAndDecimate,  
SIF\_InterpolateAndFilter, SDA\_InterpolateAndFilter, SIF\_ResampleSinc,  
SIF\_ResampleWindowedSinc, SDA\_ResampleSinc and SDA\_ResampleLinear,  
SDS\_InterpolateQuadratic1D, SDS\_InterpolateQuadraticBSpline1D,  
SDS\_InterpolateQuadraticLagrange1D

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

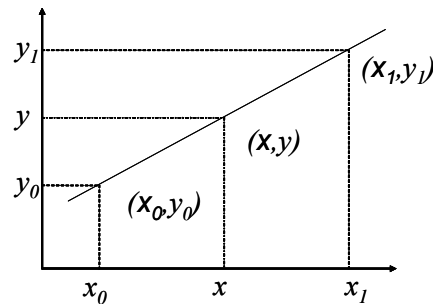
SLArrayIndex\_t SDA\_ResampleLinearContiguous (const SLData\_t \*,     Pointer to  
Y source array  
          SLData\_t \*,                             Pointer to destination array  
          SLData\_t \*,                             Pointer to previous X value  
          SLData\_t \*,                             Pointer to previous Y value  
          const SLData\_t,                         New sampling period  
          const SLArrayIndex\_t)                 Source array length

## DESCRIPTION

This function uses linear interpolation to resample the data in the source array. The input sample rate is normalized to 1.0 Hz and the new sample period is relative to the normalized input sample rate. The following table shows the range of numbers that are used for the new sample period for both interpolation and decimation:

|                                      |       |
|--------------------------------------|-------|
| Decimation (sample rate decrease)    | > 1.0 |
| Interpolation (sample rate increase) | < 1.0 |

The interpolation operation is summarized in the following diagram:



The interpolated y value is calculate using the following equation:

$$y = y_0 + \frac{x - x_0}{x_1 - x_0} (y_1 - y_0)$$

This function returns the number of re-sampled output data points.

## NOTES ON USE

This function is not designed for use in streaming applications, where the SDA\_FilterAndDecimate and SDA\_InterpolateAndFilter functions are much more appropriate.

This function operates contiguously across array boundaries.

The function SIF\_ResampleLinearContiguous must be called before calling this function.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_Decimate, SDA\_Interpolate, SDA\_FilterAndDecimate,  
SIF\_InterpolateAndFilter, SDA\_InterpolateAndFilter and  
SIF\_ResampleLinearContiguous, SDS\_InterpolateQuadratic1D,  
SDS\_InterpolateQuadraticBSpline1D, SDS\_InterpolateQuadraticLagrange1D



## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SIF_ResampleSincContiguous (SLData_t *,    Pointer to previous X value
                                SLData_t *,    Pointer to LUT array
                                SLData_t *,    Pointer to data history array
                                SLData_t *,    Pointer to sinc LUT phase gain
                                const SLArrayIndex_t, Number of adjacent samples
                                const SLArrayIndex_t) Sinc look up table length
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function initializes the SDA\_ResampleSincContiguous function with a sinc ( $\sin(x)/x$ ) look up table. Please refer to the documentation for SIF\_QuickSinc for further details.

## NOTES ON USE

Sinc interpolation allows a linear time or frequency axis to be rescaled into another linear or even a logarithmic axis. The error in these functions is  $< 1\%$  as long as the signal frequency is  $< 0.3 F_s$ . The function assumes all values outside the source array are 0.0

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_Decimate, SDA\_Interpolate, SDA\_FilterAndDecimate,  
 SIF\_InterpolateAndFilter, SDA\_InterpolateAndFilter, SIF\_ResampleSinc,  
 SIF\_ResampleWindowedSinc and SDA\_ResampleSinc,  
 SDS\_InterpolateQuadratic1D, SDS\_InterpolateQuadraticBSpline1D,  
 SDS\_InterpolateQuadraticLagrange1D

### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|  |   |
|--|---|
| void SIF_ResampleWindowedSincContiguous (SLData_t *,<br>X value<br>SLData_t *,<br>SLData_t *,<br>SLData_t *,<br>const SLArrayIndex_t,<br>SLData_t *,<br>const enum SLWindow_t,<br>const SLData_t,<br>const SLArrayIndex_t) | Pointer to previous<br><br>Pointer to LUT array<br>Pointer to data history array<br>Pointer to sinc LUT phase gain<br>Number of adjacent samples<br>Pointer to window LUT array<br>Window type<br>Window coefficient<br>Sinc look up table length |
|--|---|

### DESCRIPTION

This function initializes the SDA\_ResampleSincContiguous function with a windowed sinc ( $\sin(x)/x$ ) look up table. Please refer to the documentation for SIF\_QuickSinc and SIF\_Window for further details.

### NOTES ON USE

Sinc interpolation allows a linear time or frequency axis to be rescaled into another linear or even a logarithmic axis. The error in these functions is  $< 1\%$  as long as the signal frequency is  $< 0.3 F_s$ . The function assumes all values outside the source array are 0.0

### CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_Decimate, SDA\_Interpolate, SDA\_FilterAndDecimate,  
 SIF\_InterpolateAndFilter, SDA\_InterpolateAndFilter, SIF\_ResampleSinc,  
 SIF\_ResampleWindowedSinc and SDA\_ResampleSinc,  
 SDS\_InterpolateQuadratic1D, SDS\_InterpolateQuadraticBSpline1D,  
 SDS\_InterpolateQuadraticLagrange1D

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

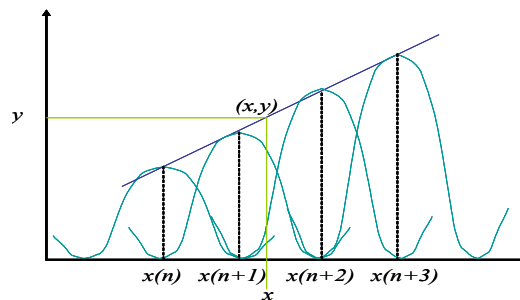
|  |                                |
|--|--------------------------------|
| SLArrayIndex_t SDA_ResampleSincContiguous (const SLData_t *, | Pointer to Y source array      |
| SLData_t *,  | Pointer to destination array   |
| SLData_t *,  | Pointer to previous X value    |
| SLData_t *,  | Pointer to LUT array           |
| SLData_t *,  | Pointer to data history array  |
| SLData_t *,  | Pointer to sinc LUT phase gain |
| const SLData_t,  | New sampling period            |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,  | Number of adjacent samples     |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)  | Source array length            |

## DESCRIPTION

This function uses sinc ( $\sin(x)/x$ ) interpolation to resample the data in the source array. The input sample rate is normalized to 1.0 Hz and the new sample period is relative to the normalized input sample rate. The following table shows the range of numbers that are used for the new sample period for both interpolation and decimation:

|                                      |       |
|--------------------------------------|-------|
| Decimation (sample rate decrease)    | > 1.0 |
| Interpolation (sample rate increase) | < 1.0 |

The interpolation operation is summarized in the following diagram where the interpolated point is generated from the summations of the number of adjacent samples specified in the parameter list:



This function returns the number of re-sampled output data points.

## NOTES ON USE

This function uses the quick sinc look up table for calculating the sinc function. You must call either `SIF_ResampleSincContiguous` or `SIF_ResampleWindowedSincContiguous` before calling this function.

This function is not designed for use in streaming applications, where the `SDA_FilterAndDecimate` and `SDA_InterpolateAndFilter` functions are much more appropriate.

This function operates contiguously across array boundaries.

## CROSS REFERENCE

`SDA_Decimate`, `SDA_Interpolate`, `SDA_FilterAndDecimate`,  
`SIF_InterpolateAndFilter`, `SDA_InterpolateAndFilter`, `SIF_ResampleSinc`,  
`SIF_ResampleWindowedSinc` and `SDA_ResampleSinc`,  
`SDS_InterpolateQuadratic1D`, `SDS_InterpolateQuadraticBSpline1D`,  
`SDS_InterpolateQuadraticLagrange1D`

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData\_t SDS\_InterpolateQuadratic1D (const SLData\_t, x(0) input sample magnitude

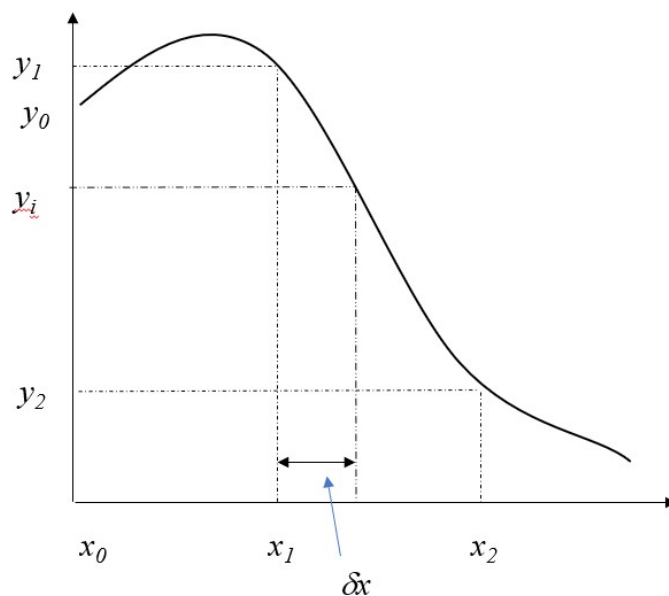
|                 |                             |
|-----------------|-----------------------------|
| const SLData_t, | x(1) input sample magnitude |
| const SLData_t, | x(2) input sample magnitude |
| const SLData_t) | Delta x                     |

## DESCRIPTION

This function uses 2<sup>nd</sup> order quadratic spline interpolation to interpolate the  $y$  value for a given  $x$  input.

The  $x$  value is a delta of the distance between the previous known  $x$  sample and the subsequent  $x$  sample and has a range  $0 \leq \delta x \leq 1$ .

The following diagram shows the  $\delta x$  used to calculate the output interpolated  $y$  value.



## NOTES ON USE

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_Decimate, SDA\_Interpolate, SDA\_FilterAndDecimate,  
 SIF\_InterpolateAndFilter, SDA\_InterpolateAndFilter, SIF\_ResampleSinc,  
 SIF\_ResampleWindowedSinc, SDA\_ResampleSinc,  
 SDS\_InterpolateQuadraticLagrange1D and SDS\_InterpolateQuadraticBSpline1D

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData\_t SDS\_InterpolateQuadraticBSpline1D (const SLData\_t, x(0) input sample magnitude

const SLData\_t,  
const SLData\_t,  
const SLData\_t)

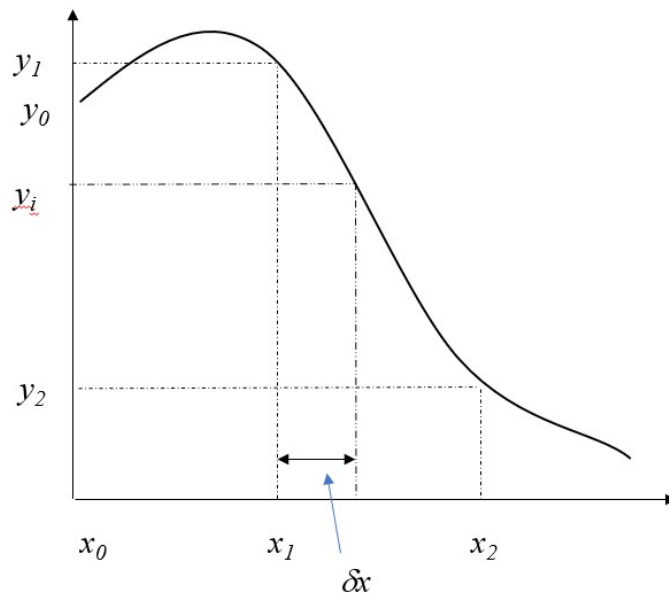
x(1) input sample magnitude  
x(2) input sample magnitude  
Delta x

## DESCRIPTION

This function uses 2<sup>nd</sup> order quadratic B-Spline interpolation to interpolate the  $y$  value for a given  $x$  input.

The  $x$  value is a delta of the distance between the previous known  $x$  sample and the subsequent  $x$  sample and has a range  $0 \leq \delta x \leq 1$ .

The following diagram shows the  $\delta x$  used to calculate the output interpolated  $y$  value.



## NOTES ON USE

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_Decimate, SDA\_Interpolate, SDA\_FilterAndDecimate,  
SIF\_InterpolateAndFilter, SDA\_InterpolateAndFilter, SIF\_ResampleSinc,  
SIF\_ResampleWindowedSinc, SDS\_InterpolateQuadratic1D,  
SDS\_InterpolateQuadraticLagrange1D and SDA\_ResampleSinc

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData\_t SDS\_InterpolateQuadraticLagrange1D (const SLData\_t, x(0) input sample magnitude

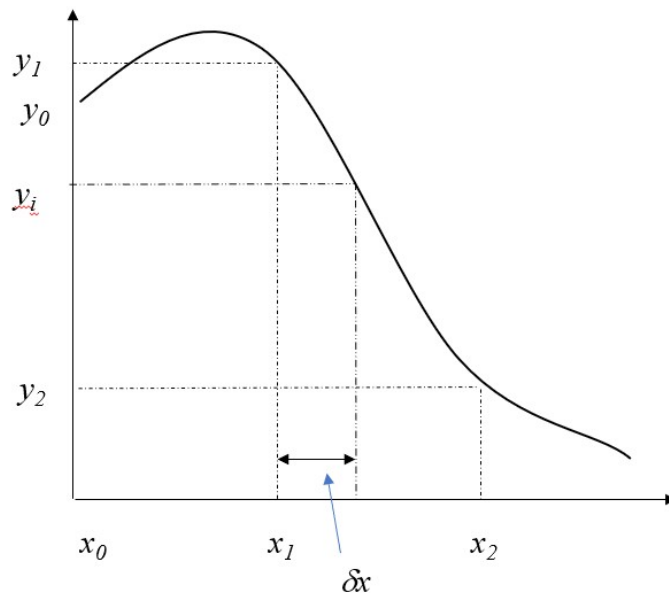
|                 |                             |
|-----------------|-----------------------------|
| const SLData_t, | x(1) input sample magnitude |
| const SLData_t, | x(2) input sample magnitude |
| const SLData_t) | Delta x                     |

## DESCRIPTION

This function uses 2<sup>nd</sup> order quadratic Lagrange interpolation to interpolate the  $y$  value for a given  $x$  input.

The  $x$  value is a delta of the distance between the previous known  $x$  sample and the subsequent  $x$  sample and has a range  $0 \leq \delta x \leq 1$ .

The following diagram shows the  $\delta x$  used to calculate the output interpolated  $y$  value.



## NOTES ON USE

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_Decimate, SDA\_Interpolate, SDA\_FilterAndDecimate, SIF\_InterpolateAndFilter, SDA\_InterpolateAndFilter, SIF\_ResampleSinc, SIF\_ResampleWindowedSinc, SDS\_InterpolateQuadratic1D, SDS\_InterpolateQuadraticBSpline1D and SDA\_ResampleSinc

## DTMF Functions (*dtmf.c*)

These function generate and detect standard DTMF tones, according to the following table:

| Freq. (Hz) | 1209 | 1336 | 1477 | 1633 |
|------------|------|------|------|------|
| <b>697</b> | 1    | 2    | 3    | A    |
| <b>770</b> | 4    | 5    | 6    | B    |
| <b>852</b> | 7    | 8    | 9    | C    |
| <b>941</b> | *    | 0    | #    | D    |

This functions accept or return the SigLib key codes. These key codes are a mapping of the standard keys, according to the following table:

| Standard keys | SigLib mapping |
|---------------|----------------|
| 1 2 3 A       | 0 1 2 3        |
| 4 5 6 B       | 4 5 6 7        |
| 7 8 9 C       | 8 9 10 11      |
| * 0 # D       | 12 13 14 15    |

SigLib includes functions for encoding and decoding the mapping. In addition to the key codes, SigLib functions also return status information from the detector functions. Further details are included with the appropriate functions.

The SigLib DTMF detection functionality is based on the Goertzel algorithm (the most popular technique for this application). The output of the Goertzel filters pass into a decision logic section which selects the most appropriate DTMF tone from the received signal. The ‘detect and validate’ function also includes a threshold level so that the detector will not give spurious results when low level noise is received. The standard example analyses the primary 8 DTMF frequencies and does not look at harmonics (a simple modification). The decision is dependent on the magnitudes of these primary frequencies.

The Goertzel filters process discrete arrays of data and while the standard length for 8 kHz sampling is 102 samples. Faster sampling rates will require proportionately longer arrays and possible modification of the scaling in the decision logic section. If a different sample rate or array length is required then it is necessary to ensure that the filter centre frequencies and array length provide an integer number of cycles to minimise edge effects.

The DTMF detector frequencies in the file *siglib\_constants.h* do not align exactly with the ITU standard frequencies. These frequencies have deliberately been chosen to avoid the edge effects usually associated with DFTs processing non integer numbers of cycles in a sinusoid. They are the nearest whole frequencies to those defined by the ITU when using a 102 sample input array.

When developing a DTMF detection algorithm the best place to start is to use the \\SigLib\\Examples\\DTMF\\Wav.c or \\SigLib\\Examples\\gen\_dtmf.c examples, which are designed to be processor independent and processes real DTMF tones stored in a .wav file with an 8 kHz sample rate. gen\_dtmf.c takes an input specification from the file ‘dtmf.txt’ and generates DTMF sequences from this specification prior to



trying to detect the tones. Long sequences of DTMF tones can be generated by modification of 'dtmf.txt' without any modification of the source code.

There are several primary issues to consider when detecting DTMF tones:

- The period of the tone being detected - the standard example uses 100 ms.
- The scaling of the input signal - the standard examples use 16 bit signed numbers.
- The sample rate - the standard example uses 8 kHz sampling.

While the standard SigLib DTMF algorithms are very robust and have been used, unmodified in many applications, our libraries have not been tested against any standards and we make no claims that they conform to any specification. It may be necessary to modify the decision logic section to meet specific application requirements.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|                                    |  |
|------------------------------------|--|
| void SIF_DtmfGenerate (SLData_t *, | Pointer to DTMF generator coefficients |
| const SLData_t)                    | Sample rate                            |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function initialises the DTMF signal generation function.

The DTMF generator coefficient table is an array of length SIGLIB\_DTMF\_FTABLE\_LENGTH. The values in this array are initialised in this function.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_DtmfGenerate

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|   |  |
|---|--|
| SLError_t SDA_DtmfGenerate (SLData_t *, | Destination array pointer              |
| const SLFixData_t,                      | Key code                               |
| const SLData_t,                         | Half peak output signal magnitude      |
| SLData_t *,                             | Pointer to DTMF generator coefficients |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)                   | Array length                           |

## DESCRIPTION

This function generates standard DTMF tones and takes as its input the SigLib key codes. The output magnitude can be modified to suite the application.

## NOTES ON USE

The function SIF\_DtmfGenerate must be called prior to using this function.

The DTMF generator coefficient table is an array of length  
SIGLIB\_DTMF\_FTABLE\_LENGTH.

The parameter described as “Half peak output signal magnitude” defines the magnitude of each of the composite signals that make up the DTMF tone. I.E. The total output signal magnitude can be twice this magnitude.

This function returns: SIGLIB\_ERROR if the user supplies an incorrect key code, otherwise it returns SIGLIB\_NO\_ERROR.

The SigLib key code can be generated from the ASCII code using the function  
SUF\_AsciiToKeyCode.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_DtmfGenerate, SIF\_DtmfDetect, SDA\_DtmfDetect,  
SUF\_AsciiToKeyCode, SUF\_KeyCodeToAscii

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|                                  |                            |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------|
| void SIF_DtmfDetect (SLData_t *, | Filter state array pointer |
| const SLData_t,                  | Sample rate                |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)            | Array length               |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function initialises the DTMF signal generation function.

The state array is used by the Goertzel filter during the detection process, it should be of length SIGLIB\_DTMF\_STATE\_LENGTH. The array contents are initialised to zero by this function.

The array length parameter specifies the length of the array containing the data that will be detected.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_DtmfDetect, SUF\_EstimateBPFILTERLength, SUF\_EstimateBPFILTERError

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLStatus_t SDA_DtmfDetect (SLData_t *, Source array pointer
                           SLData_t *, Detection filter state array pointer
                           const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function detects standard DTMF tones and returns the following information:

- The key code, which can be converted to the ASCII code using the function `SUF_KeyCodeToAscii`.
- `SIGLIB_NO_DTMF_SIGNAL` – Indicates that the signal is above the threshold but no DTMF signal has been detected.

## NOTES ON USE

The function `SIF_DtmfDetect` must be called prior to using this function.

The filter state array parameter is a pointer to the state array for the Goertzel filter used in the detector.

## CROSS REFERENCE

`SIF_DtmfGenerate`, `SDA_DtmfGenerate`, `SIF_DtmfDetect`,  
`SDA_DtmfDetectAndValidate`, `SUF_AsciiToKeyCode`, `SUF_KeyCodeToAscii`,  
`SUF_EstimateBPFILTERLength`, `SUF_EstimateBPFILTERError`

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLStatus_t SDA_DtmfDetectAndValidate (SLData_t *,    Source array pointer
    SLData_t *,    Filter state array pointer
    const SLData_t, Threshold for signal energy
    SLStatus_t *, Previous key code pointer
    SLFixData_t *, Key code run length pointer
    SLFixData_t *, Key code registration flag pointer
    const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function detects standard DTMF tones and returns the key code. This function validates the detected signal and returns the following information:

- The key code, which can be converted to the ASCII code using the function `SUF_KeyCodeToAscii`.
- `SIGLIB_NO_SIGNAL_PRESENT` – Indicates that the signal level is below the threshold.
- `SIGLIB_NO_DTMF_SIGNAL` – Indicates that the signal is above the threshold but no DTMF signal has been detected.
- `SIGLIB_DTMF_CONTINUATION` - Indicates that the signal is the same code as the previous one. This can be used along with the key code run length when trying to detect the length of a tone.

## NOTES ON USE

The function `SIF_DtmfDetect` must be called prior to using this function. The filter state array parameter is a pointer to the state array for the Goertzel filter used in the detector. The threshold parameter is used to detect whether there is any signal present or not. This value should be set to a signal energy level that is slightly higher than the channel noise floor.

The previous key code parameter is used by the function to indicate what was the previously detected key. This should be initialised to `SIGLIB_NO_DTMF_SIGNAL`. The key code run length parameter is used in the function to count and return the length of the DTMF tone in number of sample arrays. The key code registration flag parameter is used by the function to register when a detected key is a continuation of a previous one. This should be initialised to `SIGLIB_FALSE`.

## CROSS REFERENCE

`SIF_DtmfGenerate`, `SDA_DtmfGenerate`, `SIF_DtmfDetect`, `SDA_DtmfDetect`, `SUF_AsciiToKeyCode`, `SUF_KeyCodeToAscii`, `SUF_EstimateBPFILTERLength`, `SUF_EstimateBPFILTERError`

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLFixData\_t SUF\_AsciiToKeyCode (SLFixData\_t)      ASCII key code

**DESCRIPTION**

This function translates ASCII key codes to SigLib key codes.

**NOTES ON USE**

An invalid key code is returned as error code SIGLIB\_NO\_DTMF\_KEY.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SIF\_DtmfGenerate, SDA\_DtmfGenerate, SIF\_DtmfDetect, SDA\_DtmfDetect,  
SUF\_KeyCodeToAscii

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLFixData\_t SUF\_KeyCodeToAscii (SLFixData\_t)      ASCII key code

DESCRIPTION

This function translates SigLib key codes to ASCII key codes.

NOTES ON USE

An invalid key code is returned as error code SIGLIB\_NO\_DTMF\_KEY.

CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_DtmfGenerate, SDA\_DtmfGenerate, SIF\_DtmfDetect, SDA\_DtmfDetect,  
SUF\_AsciiToKeyCode



## **SPEECH PROCESSING FUNCTIONS (*speech.c*)**

---

### **SIF\_PreEmphasisFilter**

#### **PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

void SIF\_PreEmphasisFilter (SLData\_t \*)    Pointer to filter state

#### **DESCRIPTION**

This function initialises the speech processing pre-emphasis filter function SDA\_PreEmphasisFilter ().

#### **NOTES ON USE**

#### **CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_PreEmphasisFilter, SIF\_DeEmphasisFilter, SDA\_DeEmphasisFilter.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
void SDA_PreEmphasisFilter (SLData_t *, Pointer to source array
    SLData_t *, Pointer to destination array
    const SLData_t, Filter coefficient
    SLData_t *, Pointer to filter state
    const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length
```

**DESCRIPTION**

This function implements a speech processing pre-emphasis filter.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SIF\_PreEmphasisFilter, SIF\_DeEmphasisFilter, SDA\_DeEmphasisFilter.

### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SIF\_DeEmphasisFilter (SLData\_t \*)    Pointer to filter state

### DESCRIPTION

This function initialises the speech processing de-emphasis filter function SDA\_DeEmphasisFilter ().

### NOTES ON USE

### CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_PreEmphasisFilter, SDA\_PreEmphasisFilter, SDA\_DeEmphasisFilter.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|  |                              |
|--|------------------------------|
| void SDA_DeEmphasisFilter (SLData_t *, | Pointer to source array      |
| SLData_t *,                            | Pointer to destination array |
| const SLData_t,                        | Filter coefficient           |
| SLData_t *,                            | Pointer to filter state      |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)                  | Array length                 |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function implements a speech processing pre-emphasis filter.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SIF\_PreEmphasisFilter, SDA\_PreEmphasisFilter, SIF\_DeEmphasisFilter.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
void SDA_AdpcmEncoder (const SLData_t *,      Pointer to source array
                      SLData_t *,            Pointer to destination array
                      const SLArrayIndex_t)   Array length
```

**DESCRIPTION**

This function applies a one bit per sample ADPCM encoder to an individual frame of data. The previous sample is used as the estimate for the next sample.

**NOTES ON USE**

This function uses the following adaptive step size algorithm:

- If the estimate is lower than the input then double the step size and transmit +1
- If the estimate is higher than the input then restart with the default step size and transmit 0

The first sample in the destination frame is the first sample of the input frame so that transmission errors do not propagate beyond a single frame.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_AdpcmEncoderDebug, SDA\_AdpcmDecoder.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
void SDA_AdpcmEncoderDebug (const SLData_t *,      Pointer to source array
                           SLData_t *,           Pointer to destination array
                           SLData_t *,           Pointer to estimate array
                           const SLArrayIndex_t)  Array length
```

**DESCRIPTION**

This function applies a one bit per sample ADPCM encoder to an individual frame of data. The previous sample is used as the estimate for the next sample.

**NOTES ON USE**

This function uses the following adaptive step size algorithm:

- If the estimate is lower than the input then double the step size and transmit +1
- If the estimate is higher than the input then restart with the default step size and transmit 0

The first sample in the destination frame is the first sample of the input frame so that transmission errors do not propagate beyond a single frame.

This function saves the estimate array so that it can be compared to the output of the decoder - they should be identical.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_AdpcmEncoder, SDA\_AdpcmDecoder.

### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_AdpcmDecoder (const SLData_t *,      Pointer to source array
                      SLData_t *,            Pointer to destination array
                      const SLArrayIndex_t)   Array length
```

### DESCRIPTION

This function applies a one bit per sample ADPCM decoder to an individual frame of data. The previous sample is used as the estimate for the next sample.

### NOTES ON USE

### CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_AdpcmEncoder, SDA\_AdpcmEncoderDebug.

## MINIMUM AND MAXIMUM FUNCTIONS (*minmax.c*)

### SDA\_Max

---

#### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData\_t SDA\_Max (const SLData\_t \*,     Array pointer  
                  const SLArrayIndex\_t)     Array length

#### DESCRIPTION

This function returns the maximum data value in the array.

#### NOTES ON USE

#### CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_Multiply, SDA\_Divide, SDA\_Min, SDA\_Scale, SDA\_AbsMax,  
SDA\_AbsMin, SDA\_Middle, SDA\_MaxIndex, SDA\_AbsMaxIndex,  
SDA\_MinIndex, SDA\_AbsMinIndex, SDA\_LocalMax, SDA\_LocalAbsMax,  
SDA\_LocalMin, SDA\_LocalAbsMin, SDA\_NLargest, SDA\_NSmallest.



**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLData\_t SDA\_AbsMax (const SLData\_t \*, Array pointer  
const SLArrayIndex\_t)                      Array length

**DESCRIPTION**

This function returns the maximum absolute data value in the array.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_Multiply, SDA\_Divide, SDA\_Max, SDA\_Min, SDA\_Scale,  
SDA\_AbsMin, SDA\_Middle, SDA\_MaxIndex, SDA\_AbsMaxIndex,  
SDA\_MinIndex, SDA\_AbsMinIndex, SDA\_LocalMax, SDA\_LocalAbsMax,  
SDA\_LocalMin, SDA\_LocalAbsMin, SDA\_NLargest, SDA\_NSmallest.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLData\_t SDA\_Min (const SLData\_t \*,     Array pointer  
                  const SLArrayIndex\_t)     Array length

**DESCRIPTION**

This function returns the minimum data value in the array.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_Multiply, SDA\_Divide, SDA\_Max, SDA\_Scale, SDA\_AbsMax,  
SDA\_AbsMin, SDA\_Middle, SDA\_MaxIndex, SDA\_AbsMaxIndex,  
SDA\_MinIndex, SDA\_AbsMinIndex, SDA\_LocalMax, SDA\_LocalAbsMax,  
SDA\_LocalMin, SDA\_LocalAbsMin, SDA\_NLargest, SDA\_NSmallest.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLData\_t SDA\_AbsMin (const SLData\_t \*, Array pointer  
const SLArrayIndex\_t)                      Array length

**DESCRIPTION**

This function returns the minimum absolute data value in the array.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_Multiply, SDA\_Divide, SDA\_Max, SDA\_Min, SDA\_Scale,  
SDA\_AbsMax, SDA\_Middle, SDA\_MaxIndex, SDA\_AbsMaxIndex,  
SDA\_MinIndex, SDA\_AbsMinIndex, SDA\_LocalMax, SDA\_LocalAbsMax,  
SDA\_LocalMin, SDA\_LocalAbsMin, SDA\_NLargest, SDA\_NSmallest.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLData\_t SDA\_Middle (const SLData\_t \*,   Array pointer  
                    const SLArrayIndex\_t)   Array length

**DESCRIPTION**

This function returns the middle data value in the array.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_Multiply, SDA\_Divide, SDA\_Max, SDA\_Min, SDA\_Scale,  
SDA\_AbsMax, SDA\_AbsMin, SDA\_MaxIndex, SDA\_AbsMaxIndex,  
SDA\_MinIndex, SDA\_AbsMinIndex, SDA\_LocalMax, SDA\_LocalAbsMax,  
SDA\_LocalMin, SDA\_LocalAbsMin, SDA\_NLargest, SDA\_NSmallest.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLData\_t SDA\_Range (const SLData\_t \*,     Array pointer  
                    const SLArrayIndex\_t)     Array length

**DESCRIPTION**

This function returns the range of the values in the array. I.E. the difference between the maximum and the minimum values.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_Multiply, SDA\_Divide, SDA\_Max, SDA\_Min, SDA\_Middle,  
SDA\_Scale, SDA\_AbsMax, SDA\_AbsMin, SDA\_MaxIndex, SDA\_AbsMaxIndex,  
SDA\_MinIndex, SDA\_AbsMinIndex, SDA\_LocalMax, SDA\_LocalAbsMax,  
SDA\_LocalMin, SDA\_LocalAbsMin, SDA\_NLargest, SDA\_NSmallest.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLArrayIndex\_t SDA\_MaxIndex (const SLData\_t \*,       Array pointer  
                                  const SLArrayIndex\_t)       Array length

**DESCRIPTION**

This function returns the location of the maximum data value in the array.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_Multiply, SDA\_Divide, SDA\_Max, SDA\_Min, SDA\_Scale,  
SDA\_AbsMax, SDA\_AbsMin, SDA\_Middle, SDA\_AbsMaxIndex, SDA\_MinIndex,  
SDA\_AbsMinIndex, SDA\_NLargest, SDA\_NSmallest.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLArrayIndex\_t SDA\_AbsMaxIndex (const SLData\_t \*,   Array pointer  
                                  const SLArrayIndex\_t)       Array length

**DESCRIPTION**

This function returns the location of the maximum absolute data value in the array.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_Multiply, SDA\_Divide, SDA\_Max, SDA\_Min, SDA\_AbsMax,  
SDA\_Scale, SDA\_AbsMin, SDA\_Middle, SDA\_MaxIndex, SDA\_MinIndex,  
SDA\_AbsMinIndex, SDA\_NLargest, SDA\_NSmallest.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLArrayIndex\_t SDA\_MinIndex (const SLData\_t \*,           Array pointer  
                              const SLArrayIndex\_t)       Array length

**DESCRIPTION**

This function returns the location of the minimum data value in the array.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_Multiply, SDA\_Divide, SDA\_Max, SDA\_Scale, SDA\_AbsMax,  
SDA\_Min, SDA\_AbsMin, SDA\_Middle, SDA\_MaxIndex, SDA\_AbsMaxIndex,  
SDA\_AbsMinIndex, SDA\_NLargest, SDA\_NSmallest.



**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLArrayIndex\_t SDA\_AbsMinIndex (const SLData\_t \*,     Array pointer  
                                  const SLArrayIndex\_t)         Array length

**DESCRIPTION**

This function returns the location of the minimum absolute data value in the array.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_Multiply, SDA\_Divide, SDA\_Max, SDA\_Min, SDA\_AbsMin,  
SDA\_Scale, SDA\_AbsMax, SDA\_Middle, SDA\_MaxIndex, SDA\_AbsMaxIndex,  
SDA\_MinIndex, SDA\_NLargest, SDA\_NSmallest.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|                                   |          |
|-----------------------------------|----------|
| SLData_t SDS_Max (const SLData_t, | Sample 1 |
| const SLData_t)                   | Sample 2 |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function returns the maximum value of the two samples.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_Max, SDA\_Min, SDA\_Scale, SDA\_AbsMax, SDA\_AbsMin,  
SDA\_MaxIndex, SDA\_AbsMaxIndex, SDA\_MinIndex, SDA\_AbsMinIndex,  
SDA\_NLargest, SDA\_NSmallest.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLData\_t SDS\_AbsMax (const SLData\_t,   Sample 1  
                      const SLData\_t)   Sample 2

**DESCRIPTION**

This function returns the maximum absolute value of the two samples.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_Max, SDA\_Min, SDA\_Scale, SDA\_AbsMax, SDA\_AbsMin,  
SDA\_MaxIndex, SDA\_AbsMaxIndex, SDA\_MinIndex, SDA\_AbsMinIndex,  
SDA\_NLargest, SDA\_NSmallest.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|                                   |          |
|-----------------------------------|----------|
| SLData_t SDS_Min (const SLData_t, | Sample 1 |
| const SLData_t)                   | Sample 2 |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function returns the minimum value of the two samples.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_Max, SDA\_Min, SDA\_Scale, SDA\_AbsMax, SDA\_AbsMin,  
SDA\_MaxIndex, SDA\_AbsMaxIndex, SDA\_MinIndex, SDA\_AbsMinIndex,  
SDA\_NLargest, SDA\_NSmallest.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLData\_t SDS\_AbsMin (const SLData\_t,     Sample 1  
                      const SLData\_t)     Sample 2

**DESCRIPTION**

This function returns the minimum absolute value of the two samples.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_Max, SDA\_Min, SDA\_Scale, SDA\_AbsMax, SDA\_AbsMin,  
SDA\_MaxIndex, SDA\_AbsMaxIndex, SDA\_MinIndex, SDA\_AbsMinIndex,  
SDA\_NLargest, SDA\_NSmallest.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLData_t SDA_LocalMax (const SLData_t *pSrc,  Pointer to source array
                      const SLArrayIndex_t,    Location
                      const SLArrayIndex_t,    Number (N) of samples to search either
side of centre
                      const SLArrayIndex_t)    Array length
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function returns the maximum data value in a small section of an array. The section is defined as the region around (*N* samples either side of) a centre location. E.g. If the location is 15 and *N* is 10 then the function will search the 21 samples centred on the 15<sup>th</sup> sample in the array.

## NOTES ON USE

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_Max, SDA\_AbsMax, SDA\_AbsMin, SDA\_Middle, SDA\_MaxIndex, SDA\_AbsMaxIndex, SDA\_MinIndex, SDA\_AbsMinIndex, SDA\_LocalMax, SDA\_LocalAbsMax, SDA\_LocalMin, SDA\_LocalAbsMin, SDA\_NLargest, SDA\_NSmallest.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLData_t SDA_LocalAbsMax (const SLData_t *pSrc,    Pointer to source array
                        const SLArrayIndex_t,      Location
                        const SLArrayIndex_t,      Number (N) of samples to search either
side of centre
                        const SLArrayIndex_t)      Array length
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function returns the maximum of the absolute data values within in a small section of an array. The section is defined as the region around (*N* samples either side of) a centre location. E.g. If the location is 15 and *N* is 10 then the function will search the 21 samples centred on the 15<sup>th</sup> sample in the array.

## NOTES ON USE

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_Max, SDA\_AbsMax, SDA\_AbsMin, SDA\_Middle, SDA\_MaxIndex, SDA\_AbsMaxIndex, SDA\_MinIndex, SDA\_AbsMinIndex, SDA\_LocalMax, SDA\_LocalMin, SDA\_LocalAbsMin, SDA\_NLargest, SDA\_NSmallest.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData\_t SDA\_LocalMin (const SLData\_t \*pSrc,   Pointer to source array  
                  const SLArrayIndex\_t,        Location  
                  const SLArrayIndex\_t,        Number ( $N$ ) of samples to search either  
side of centre  
                  const SLArrayIndex\_t)        Array length

## DESCRIPTION

This function returns the maximum data value in a small section of an array. The section is defined as the region around ( $N$  samples either side of) a centre location. E.g. If the location is 15 and  $N$  is 10 then the function will search the 21 samples centred on the 15<sup>th</sup> sample in the array.

## NOTES ON USE

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_Max, SDA\_AbsMax, SDA\_AbsMin, SDA\_Middle, SDA\_MaxIndex,  
SDA\_AbsMaxIndex, SDA\_MinIndex, SDA\_AbsMinIndex, SDA\_LocalMax,  
SDA\_LocalAbsMax, SDA\_LocalAbsMin, SDA\_NLargest, SDA\_NSmallest.



## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData\_t SDA\_LocalAbsMin (const SLData\_t \*pSrc,      Pointer to source array  
                                 const SLArrayIndex\_t,      Location  
                                 const SLArrayIndex\_t,      Number ( $N$ ) of samples to search either  
side of centre  
                                 const SLArrayIndex\_t)      Array length

## DESCRIPTION

This function returns the minimum of the absolute data values within a small section of an array. The section is defined as the region around ( $N$  samples either side of) a centre location. E.g. If the location is 15 and  $N$  is 10 then the function will search the 21 samples centred on the 15<sup>th</sup> sample in the array.

## NOTES ON USE

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_Max, SDA\_AbsMax, SDA\_AbsMin, SDA\_Middle, SDA\_MaxIndex,  
SDA\_AbsMaxIndex, SDA\_MinIndex, SDA\_AbsMinIndex, SDA\_LocalMax,  
SDA\_LocalAbsMax, SDA\_LocalMin, SDA\_LocalAbsMin, SDA\_NLargest,  
SDA\_NSmallest.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|                                  |                           |
|----------------------------------|---------------------------|
| void SDA_Max2 (const SLData_t *, | Source array pointer #1   |
| const SLData_t *,                | Source array pointer #2   |
| SLData_t *,                      | Destination array pointer |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)            | Array lengths             |

**DESCRIPTION**

For each sample in the source arrays, this function selects the maximum value and store it in the destination array.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_Max, SDA\_AbsMax, SDA\_Min, SDA\_AbsMin, SDA\_AbsMax2, SDA\_Min2, SDA\_AbsMin2, SDA\_NLargest, SDA\_NSmallest.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|                                     |                           |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| void SDA_AbsMax2 (const SLData_t *, | Source array pointer #1   |
| const SLData_t *,                   | Source array pointer #2   |
| SLData_t *,                         | Destination array pointer |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)               | Array lengths             |

**DESCRIPTION**

For each sample in the source arrays, this function selects the maximum of the absolute values and store it in the destination array.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_Max, SDA\_AbsMax, SDA\_Min, SDA\_AbsMin, SDA\_Max2, SDA\_SignedAbsMax2, SDA\_Min2, SDA\_AbsMin2, SDA\_NLargest, SDA\_NSmallest.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
void SDA_SignedAbsMax2 (const SLData_t *,      Source array pointer #1
                        const SLData_t *,      Source array pointer #2
                        SLData_t *,            Destination array pointer
                        const SLArrayIndex_t)   Array lengths
```

**DESCRIPTION**

For each sample in the source arrays, select the maximum of the absolute value and store the corresponding original value (including sign) in the destination array.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_Max, SDA\_AbsMax, SDA\_Min, SDA\_AbsMin, SDA\_Max2,  
SDA\_Min2, SDA\_AbsMin2, SDA\_NLargest, SDA\_NSmallest.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|                                  |                           |
|----------------------------------|---------------------------|
| void SDA_Min2 (const SLData_t *, | Source array pointer #1   |
| const SLData_t *,                | Source array pointer #2   |
| SLData_t *,                      | Destination array pointer |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)            | Array lengths             |

**DESCRIPTION**

For each sample in the source arrays, this function selects the minimum value and store it in the destination array.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_Max, SDA\_AbsMax, SDA\_Min, SDA\_AbsMin, SDA\_Max2, SDA\_AbsMax2, SDA\_AbsMin2, SDA\_NLargest, SDA\_NSmallest.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|                                     |                           |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| void SDA_AbsMin2 (const SLData_t *, | Source array pointer #1   |
| const SLData_t *,                   | Source array pointer #2   |
| SLData_t *,                         | Destination array pointer |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)               | Array lengths             |

**DESCRIPTION**

For each sample in the source arrays, this function selects the minimum of the absolute values and store it in the destination array.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_Max, SDA\_AbsMax, SDA\_Min, SDA\_AbsMin, SDA\_SignedAbsMin2, SDA\_Max2, SDA\_AbsMax2, SDA\_Min2, SDA\_NLargest, SDA\_NSmallest.

### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_SignedAbsMin2 (const SLData_t *,      Source array pointer #1
                        const SLData_t *,      Source array pointer #2
                        SLData_t *,            Destination array pointer
                        const SLArrayIndex_t)   Array lengths
```

### DESCRIPTION

For each sample in the source arrays, select the minimum of the absolute value and store the corresponding original value (including sign) in the destination array.

### NOTES ON USE

### CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_Max, SDA\_AbsMax, SDA\_Min, SDA\_AbsMin, SDA\_Max2,  
SDA\_Min2, SDA\_AbsMin2, SDA\_NLargest, SDA\_NSmallest.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|                                      |                             |
|--------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| void SDA_PeakHold (const SLData_t *, | Source array pointer        |
| SLData_t *,                          | Peak array pointer          |
| const SLData_t,                      | Peak decay rate             |
| SLData_t *,                          | Previous peak value pointer |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)                | Array lengths               |

## DESCRIPTION

This function calculates the envelope of the signal using a decaying peak hold. The decay can be set on the peak signal, to enable it to follow decreasing signals. The pseudo code for the algorithm used is:

```
If (input > peak)  
    peak = input;  
peak *= decay rate;
```

## NOTES ON USE

The “pointer to previous peak value” parameter is used so that the function is re-entrant and so that multiple streams can be processed simultaneously. It should be initialised to zero or other suitable value before calling this function. When the peak array is initialized to zero this algorithm only works on positive numbers.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_PeakHoldPerSample

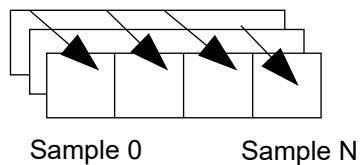


**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
void SDA_PeakHoldPerSample (const SLData_t *, Source array pointer
    SLData_t *,                               Output peak array pointer
    const SLData_t,                           Peak decay rate
    const SLArrayIndex_t)                     Array lengths
```

**DESCRIPTION**

This function calculates a "per sample" peak hold across successive arrays, the decay can be set on the peak signal, to enable it to follow the envelope of the signal. The following diagram shows how the system is configured:

**NOTES ON USE**

The array holding the peak values should be maintained in the calling function so that the data can be passed to SDA\_PeakHoldPerSample () on the next iteration.

You are advised to clear the peak array to zero, for example using SDA\_Clear () function, before calling SDA\_PeakHoldPerSample () for the first time.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_PeakHold

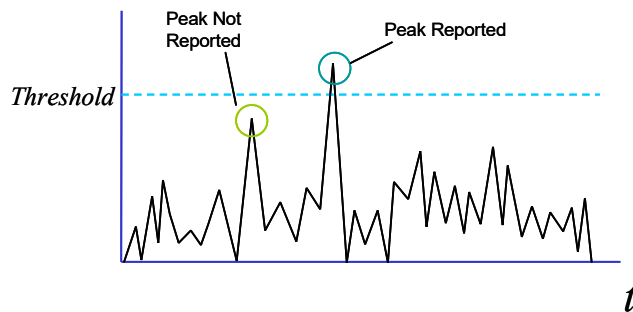
**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLArrayIndex\_t SDA\_DetectFirstPeakOverThreshold (const SLData\_t \*, Pointer to  
source array  
const SLData\_t, Threshold over which peak will be detected  
const SLArrayIndex\_t) Array length

**DESCRIPTION**

This function returns the index of the first peak in an array that is over the given threshold. This function is commonly used with the FFT function for tracking the fundamental frequency in a signal.

The operation of this function is showed in the following diagram.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
void SDS_Round (const SLData_t,      Data sample
                 const enum SLRoundingMode_t)  Rounding mode
```

**DESCRIPTION**

This function rounds the sample to an integer, according to the rounding mode parameter which may take one of the following parameters:

```
SIGLIB_ROUND_UP,  
SIGLIB_ROUND_TO_NEAREST,  
SIGLIB_ROUND_DOWN,  
SIGLIB_ROUND_TO_ZERO,  
SIGLIB_ROUND_AWAY_FROM_ZERO.
```

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_Round

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|  |                           |
|--|---------------------------|
| <code>void SDA_Round (const SLData_t *,</code> | Source array pointer      |
| <code>SLData_t *,</code>                       | Destination array pointer |
| <code>const enum SLRoundingMode_t,</code>      | Rounding mode             |
| <code>const SLArrayIndex_t)</code>             | Array length              |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function rounds the samples in the array to integers, according to the rounding mode parameter which may take one of the following parameters:

```
SIGLIB_ROUND_UP,  
SIGLIB_ROUND_TO_NEAREST,  
SIGLIB_ROUND_DOWN,  
SIGLIB_ROUND_TO_ZERO,  
SIGLIB_ROUND_AWAY_FROM_ZERO.
```

**NOTES ON USE**

The source and destination pointers can point to the same array.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDS\_Round

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData\_t SDS\_Clip (const SLData\_t,           Input sample  
                  const SLData\_t,           Value to clip to  
                  const enum SLClipMode\_t)   Direction to clip signal

## DESCRIPTION

This function clips (I.E. clamps) the data sample to a given value, depending on the clip mode:

| Clip Mode              | Description  |
|------------------------|--|
| SIGLIB_CLIP_ABOVE      | Clip any values above the clip level   |
| SIGLIB_CLIP_BELOW      | Clip any values below the clip level   |
| SIGLIB_CLIP_BOTH       | Clip any values above the clip level and any below the negative of the clip level                                |
| SIGLIB_CLIP_BOTH_BELOW | Clip any positive values below the clip level and any negative values above the negative of the given clip level |

## NOTES ON USE

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_Clip, SDS\_Threshold, SDA\_Threshold, SDS\_SoftThreshold, SDA\_SoftThreshold, SDS\_ThresholdAndClamp, SDA\_ThresholdAndClamp, SDS\_Clamp, SDA\_Clamp, SDA\_TestOverThreshold, SDA\_TestAbsOverThreshold, SDS\_SetMinValue, SDA\_SetMinValue.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_Clip (const SLData_t *,           Source array pointer
               SLData_t *,               Destination array pointer
               const SLData_t,           Clip level
               const enum SLClipMode_t,   Direction to clip signal
               const SLArrayIndex_t)      Array length
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function clips (I.E. clamps) the data in the array to a given value, depending on the clip mode:

| Clip Mode              | Description  |
|------------------------|--|
| SIGLIB_CLIP_ABOVE      | Clip any values above the clip level   |
| SIGLIB_CLIP_BELOW      | Clip any values below the clip level   |
| SIGLIB_CLIP_BOTH       | Clip any values above the clip level and any below the negative of the clip level                                |
| SIGLIB_CLIP_BOTH_BELOW | Clip any positive values below the clip level and any negative values above the negative of the given clip level |

## NOTES ON USE

This function can operate on separate source and destination arrays or the source and destination pointers can reference the same array, for in-place operation.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDS\_Clip, SDS\_Threshold, SDA\_Threshold, SDS\_SoftThreshold, SDA\_SoftThreshold, SDS\_ThresholdAndClamp, SDA\_ThresholdAndClamp, SDS\_Clamp, SDA\_Clamp, SDA\_TestOverThreshold, SDA\_TestAbsOverThreshold, SDS\_SetMinValue, SDA\_SetMinValue.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
void SDS_Threshold (const SLData_t,      Input sample
                   const SLData_t,      Threshold
                   const enum SLThresholdMode_t)  Threshold type
```

**DESCRIPTION**

This function applies a threshold to the sample. If the input is  $\geq$  the threshold then it is passed to the output array, otherwise the output is set to zero.

The two types of threshold function are: `SIGLIB_SINGLE_SIDED_THOLD` and `SIGLIB_DOUBLE_SIDED_THOLD` where single sided sets values less than the threshold value to zero. The double sided threshold sets values between the threshold value and minus the threshold value to zero. All other values are left unchanged.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDS\_Clip, SDA\_Clip, SDA\_Threshold, SDS\_SoftThreshold, SDA\_SoftThreshold, SDS\_ThresholdAndClamp, SDA\_ThresholdAndClamp, SDS\_Clamp, SDA\_Clamp, SDA\_TestOverThreshold, SDA\_TestAbsOverThreshold, SDS\_SetMinValue, SDA\_SetMinValue.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|                                       |                           |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| void SDA_Threshold (const SLData_t *, | Source array pointer      |
| SLData_t *,                           | Destination array pointer |
| const SLData_t,                       | Threshold                 |
| const enum SLThresholdMode_t,         | Threshold type            |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)                 | Array length              |

## DESCRIPTION

This function applies a threshold to the samples in the array. If the input is  $\geq$  the threshold then it is passed to the output array, otherwise the output is set to zero.

The two types of threshold function are: SIGLIB\_SINGLE\_SIDED\_THOLD and SIGLIB\_DOUBLE\_SIDED\_THOLD where single sided sets values less than the threshold value to zero. The double sided threshold sets values between the threshold value and minus the threshold value to zero. All other values are left unchanged.

## NOTES ON USE

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDS\_Clip, SDA\_Clip, SDS\_Threshold, SDS\_SoftThreshold,  
SDA\_SoftThreshold, SDS\_ThresholdAndClamp, SDA\_ThresholdAndClamp,  
SDS\_Clamp, SDA\_Clamp, SDA\_TestOverThreshold, SDA\_TestAbsOverThreshold,  
SDS\_SetMinValue, SDA\_SetMinValue.



**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
void SDS_SoftThreshold (const SLData_t,   Input sample  
                        const SLData_t)   Threshold
```

**DESCRIPTION**

This function applies a “soft threshold” to the sample. The soft threshold sets values between the threshold value and minus the threshold value to zero. All other values have the threshold value subtracted from them. This operation removes the amplitude discontinuity that is present in the double-sided threshold function.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDS\_Clip, SDA\_Clip, SDS\_Threshold, SDA\_Threshold,  
SDA\_SoftThreshold, SDS\_ThresholdAndClamp, SDA\_ThresholdAndClamp,  
SDS\_Clamp, SDA\_Clamp, SDA\_TestOverThreshold, SDA\_TestAbsOverThreshold,  
SDS\_SetMinValue, SDA\_SetMinValue.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|   |                           |
|---|---------------------------|
| void SDA_SoftThreshold (const SLData_t *, | Source array pointer      |
| SLData_t *,                               | Destination array pointer |
| const SLData_t,                           | Threshold                 |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)                     | Array length              |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function applies a “soft threshold” to the samples in the array. The soft threshold sets values between the threshold value and minus the threshold value to zero. All other values have the threshold value subtracted from them. This operation removes the amplitude discontinuity that is present in the double-sided threshold function.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDS\_Clip, SDA\_Clip, SDS\_Threshold, SDA\_Threshold, SDS\_SoftThreshold, SDS\_ThresholdAndClamp, SDA\_ThresholdAndClamp, SDS\_Clamp, SDA\_Clamp, SDA\_TestOverThreshold, SDA\_TestAbsOverThreshold, SDS\_SetMinValue, SDA\_SetMinValue.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
void SDS_ThresholdAndClamp (const SLData_t *, Input value
                           const SLData_t,           Threshold
                           const SLData_t,           Clamp level
                           const enum SLThresholdMode_t) Threshold type
```

**DESCRIPTION**

This function applies a threshold to the sample. If the input is  $\geq$  than the threshold then it is set to the clamp value, otherwise the output is set to zero.

The two types of threshold function are: `SIGLIB_SINGLE_SIDED_THOLD` and `SIGLIB_DOUBLE_SIDED_THOLD` where single sided sets values less than the threshold value to zero. The double sided threshold sets values between the threshold value and minus the threshold value to zero. All other values are set to the clamp value.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDS\_Clip, SDA\_Clip, SDS\_Threshold, SDA\_Threshold, SDS\_SoftThreshold, SDA\_SoftThreshold, SDA\_ThresholdAndClamp, SDS\_Clamp, SDA\_Clamp, SDA\_TestOverThreshold, SDA\_TestAbsOverThreshold, SDS\_SetMinValue, SDA\_SetMinValue.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
void SDA_ThresholdAndClamp (const SLData_t *, Source array pointer
    SLData_t *,                Destination array pointer
    const SLData_t,            Threshold
    const SLData_t,            Clamp level
    const enum SLThresholdMode_t, Threshold type
    const SLArrayIndex_t)      Array length
```

**DESCRIPTION**

This function applies a threshold to the samples in the array. If the input is  $\geq$  than the threshold then it is set to the clamp value, otherwise the output is set to zero.

The two types of threshold function are: `SIGLIB_SINGLE_SIDED_THOLD` and `SIGLIB_DOUBLE_SIDED_THOLD` where single sided sets values less than the threshold value to zero. The double sided threshold sets values between the threshold value and minus the threshold value to zero. All other values are set to the clamp value.

**NOTES ON USE**

This function is very useful for creating a data mask that can be applied to other arrays. For example, setting the clamp level to 1 creates a mask where values above the threshold are 1 and all other values are 0. Then multiplying the second array by the mask will only provide samples in the mask frame through.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDS\_Clip, SDA\_Clip, SDS\_Threshold, SDA\_Threshold, SDS\_SoftThreshold, SDA\_SoftThreshold, SDS\_ThresholdAndClamp, SDS\_Clamp, SDA\_Clamp, SDA\_TestOverThreshold, SDA\_TestAbsOverThreshold, SDS\_SetMinValue, SDA\_SetMinValue.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|                                   |                |
|-----------------------------------|----------------|
| void SDS_Clamp (const SLData_t *, | Input sample   |
| const SLData_t,                   | Threshold      |
| const SLData_t,                   | Clamp value    |
| const enum SLThresholdMode_t)     | Threshold type |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function thresholds the sample. If the level is above the threshold then set the value to the clamping value. The two types of clamping function are: SIGLIB\_SINGLE\_SIDED\_THOLD and SIGLIB\_DOUBLE\_SIDED\_THOLD where single sided sets values above the threshold value to the clamping value. The double sided threshold sets values above the threshold value and below the negative of the threshold value to the clamping value or minus the clamping value respectively. All other values are left unchanged.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDS\_Clip, SDA\_Clip, SDS\_Threshold, SDA\_Threshold, SDS\_SoftThreshold, SDA\_SoftThreshold, SDS\_ThresholdAndClamp, SDA\_ThresholdAndClamp, SDA\_Clamp, SDA\_TestOverThreshold, SDA\_TestAbsOverThreshold, SDS\_SetMinValue, SDA\_SetMinValue.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|                                   |                           |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------------|
| void SDA_Clamp (const SLData_t *, | Source array pointer      |
| SLData_t *,                       | Destination array pointer |
| const SLData_t,                   | Threshold                 |
| const SLData_t,                   | Clamp value               |
| const enum SLThresholdMode_t,     | Threshold type            |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)             | Array length              |

## DESCRIPTION

This function thresholds the samples in the array. If the level is above the threshold then set the value to the clamping value. The two types of clamping function are: SIGLIB\_SINGLE\_SIDED\_THOLD and SIGLIB\_DOUBLE\_SIDED\_THOLD where single sided sets values above the threshold value to the clamping value. The double sided threshold sets values above the threshold value and below the negative of the threshold value to the clamping value or minus the clamping value respectively. All other values are left unchanged.

## NOTES ON USE

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDS\_Clip, SDA\_Clip, SDS\_Threshold, SDA\_Threshold, SDS\_SoftThreshold, SDA\_SoftThreshold, SDS\_ThresholdAndClamp, SDA\_ThresholdAndClamp, SDS\_Clamp, SDA\_TestOverThreshold, SDA\_TestAbsOverThreshold, SDS\_SetMinValue, SDA\_SetMinValue.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLArrayIndex\_t SDA\_TestOverThreshold (const SLData\_t \*, Source array pointer  
const SLData\_t, Threshold  
const SLArrayIndex\_t) Array length

**DESCRIPTION**

This function tests the thresholds of the samples in the array. If any sample in the array is over the threshold level then this function will return the location of the first sample that is greater than the threshold. If there are no samples greater than the threshold then this function will return: SIGLIB\_SIGNAL\_NOT\_PRESENT.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDS\_Clip, SDA\_Clip, SDS\_Threshold, SDA\_Threshold, SDS\_SoftThreshold, SDA\_SoftThreshold, SDS\_ThresholdAndClamp, SDA\_ThresholdAndClamp, SDS\_Clamp, SDA\_Clamp, SDA\_TestAbsOverThreshold, SDS\_SetMinValue, SDA\_SetMinValue.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLArrayIndex\_t SDA\_TestAbsOverThreshold (const SLData\_t \*, Source pointer  
const SLData\_t, Threshold  
const SLArrayIndex\_t) Array length

**DESCRIPTION**

This function tests the absolute thresholds of the samples in the array. If the absolute value of any sample in the array is over the threshold level then this function will return the location of the first sample that has an absolute value greater than the threshold. If there are no samples greater than the threshold then this function will return: SIGLIB\_SIGNAL\_NOT\_PRESENT.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDS\_Clip, SDA\_Clip, SDS\_Threshold, SDA\_Threshold, SDS\_SoftThreshold, SDA\_SoftThreshold, SDS\_ThresholdAndClamp, SDA\_ThresholdAndClamp, SDS\_Clamp, SDA\_Clamp, SDA\_TestOverThreshold, SDS\_SetMinValue, SDA\_SetMinValue.



**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|                                       |                           |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| void SDA_SelectMax (const SLData_t *, | Source array pointer 1    |
| const SLData_t *,                     | Source array pointer 2    |
| SLData_t *,                           | Destination array pointer |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)                 | Sample array length       |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function selects the maximum level from either array 1 or array 2 and place it in the destination array.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_SelectMin, SDA\_SelectMagnitudeSquaredMax,  
SDA\_SelectMagnitudeSquaredMin

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|                                       |                           |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| void SDA_SelectMin (const SLData_t *, | Source array pointer 1    |
| const SLData_t *,                     | Source array pointer 2    |
| SLData_t *,                           | Destination array pointer |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)                 | Sample array length       |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function selects the minimum level from either array 1 or array 2 and place it in the destination array.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_SelectMax, SDA\_SelectMagnitudeSquaredMax,  
SDA\_SelectMagnitudeSquaredMin

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
void SDA_SelectMagnitudeSquaredMax (const SLData_t *,      Real Source 1  
    const SLData_t *,      Imaginary source array 1 pointer  
    const SLData_t *,      Real source array 2 pointer  
    const SLData_t *,      Imaginary source array 2 pointer  
    SLData_t *,            Real destination array pointer  
    SLData_t *,            Imaginary destination array pointer  
    const SLArrayIndex_t)   Sample array length
```

**DESCRIPTION**

This function selects the maximum magnitude squared level from either arrays 1 (real + complex) or arrays 2 (real + complex) and place it in the destination arrays (real + complex).

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_SelectMax, SDA\_SelectMin, SDA\_SelectMagnitudeSquaredMin

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

void SDA\_SelectMagnitudeSquaredMin (const SLData\_t \*, Real src. array 1  
pointer  
    const SLData\_t \*,                   Imaginary source array 1 pointer  
    const SLData\_t \*,                   Real source array 2 pointer  
    const SLData\_t \*,                   Imaginary source array 2 pointer  
    SLData\_t \*,                         Real destination array pointer  
    SLData\_t \*,                         Imaginary destination array pointer  
    const SLArrayIndex\_t)             Sample array length

**DESCRIPTION**

This function selects the minimum magnitude squared level from either arrays 1 (real + complex) or arrays 2 (real + complex) and place it in the destination arrays (real + complex).

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_SelectMax, SDA\_SelectMin, SDA\_SelectMagnitudeSquaredMax

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

void SDS\_SetMinValue (const SLData\_t,     Input Sample  
                      const SLData\_t)     Minimum value

**DESCRIPTION**

This function sets the minimum sample value i.e.:

    if the value is positive (or zero) and below the minimum value then it is set to the minimum value

    if the value is negative and above the minimum value then it is set to the negative of the minimum value

    otherwise the value is unchanged

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

    SDS\_Clip, SDA\_Clip, SDS\_Threshold, SDA\_Threshold, SDS\_SoftThreshold, SDA\_SoftThreshold, SDS\_ThresholdAndClamp, SDA\_ThresholdAndClamp, SDS\_Clamp, SDA\_Clamp, SDA\_TestOverThreshold, SDA\_TestAbsOverThreshold, SDA\_SetMinValue.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
void SDA_SetMinValue (const SLData_t *, Pointer to source array
                      SLData_t *,           Pointer to destination array
                      const SLData_t,       Minimum value
                      const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length
```

**DESCRIPTION**

This function sets the minimum value in the source array i.e.:

if the value is positive (or zero) and below the minimum value then it is set to the minimum value

if the value is negative and above the minimum value then it is set to the negative of the minimum value

otherwise the value is unchanged

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDS\_Clip, SDA\_Clip, SDS\_Threshold, SDA\_Threshold, SDS\_SoftThreshold, SDA\_SoftThreshold, SDS\_ThresholdAndClamp, SDA\_ThresholdAndClamp, SDS\_Clamp, SDA\_Clamp, SDA\_TestOverThreshold, SDA\_TestAbsOverThreshold, SDS\_SetMinValue.

### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData\_t SDA\_PeakToAverageRatio (const SLData\_t \*,   Pointer to source data  
                                  const SLArrayIndex\_t)       Array length

### DESCRIPTION

This function returns the ratio of the peak value to the average value of the input scalar data.

### NOTES ON USE

### CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_Max, SDA\_Mean, SDA\_PeakToAveragePowerRatio,  
SDA\_PeakToAveragePowerRatioDB, SDA\_PeakToAverageRatioComplex,  
SDA\_PeakToAveragePowerRatioComplex,  
SDA\_PeakToAveragePowerRatioComplexDB

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLData\_t SDA\_PeakToAveragePowerRatio (const SLData\_t \*, Pointer to source  
const SLArrayIndex\_t) Array length

**DESCRIPTION**

This function returns the ratio of the peak power to the average power of the input scalar data.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_Max, SDA\_Mean, SDA\_PeakToAverageRatio,  
SDA\_PeakToAveragePowerRatioDB, SDA\_PeakToAverageRatioComplex,  
SDA\_PeakToAveragePowerRatioComplex,  
SDA\_PeakToAveragePowerRatioComplexDB



**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLData\_t SDA\_PeakToAveragePowerRatioDB (const SLData\_t \*, Pointer to source  
const SLArrayIndex\_t) Array length

**DESCRIPTION**

This function returns the ratio of the peak power to the average power, in dB, of the input scalar data.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_Max, SDA\_Mean, SDA\_PeakToAverageRatio,  
SDA\_PeakToAveragePowerRatio, SDA\_PeakToAverageRatioComplex,  
SDA\_PeakToAveragePowerRatioComplex,  
SDA\_PeakToAveragePowerRatioComplexDB

### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData\_t SDA\_PeakToAverageRatioComplex (const SLData\_t \*, Pointer to real source array

const SLData\_t \*,

const SLArrayIndex\_t)

Pointer to imaginary source array

Array length

### DESCRIPTION

This function returns the ratio of the peak value to the average value of the input complex data.

### NOTES ON USE

### CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_Max, SDA\_Mean, SDA\_PeakToAverageRatio,  
SDA\_PeakToAveragePowerRatio, SDA\_PeakToAveragePowerRatioDB,  
SDA\_PeakToAveragePowerRatioComplex,  
SDA\_PeakToAveragePowerRatioComplexDB

### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData\_t SDA\_PeakToAveragePowerRatioComplex (const SLData\_t \*, Pointer to real source array

const SLData\_t \*,

const SLArrayIndex\_t)

Pointer to imaginary source array

Array length

### DESCRIPTION

This function returns the ratio of the peak power to the average power of the input complex data.

### NOTES ON USE

### CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_Max, SDA\_Mean, SDA\_PeakToAverageRatio,  
SDA\_PeakToAveragePowerRatio, SDA\_PeakToAveragePowerRatioDB,  
SDA\_PeakToAverageRatioComplex, SDA\_PeakToAveragePowerRatioComplexDB

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|  |                                   |
|--|-----------------------------------|
| SLData_t SDA_PeakToAveragePowerRatioComplexDB (const SLData_t *, |                                   |
| Pointer to real source array                                     |                                   |
| const SLData_t *,  | Pointer to imaginary source array |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)  | Array length                      |

## DESCRIPTION

This function returns the ratio of the peak power to the average power, in dB, of the input complex data.

## NOTES ON USE

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_Max, SDA\_Mean, SDA\_PeakToAverageRatio,  
SDA\_PeakToAveragePowerRatio, SDA\_PeakToAveragePowerRatioDB,  
SDA\_PeakToAverageRatioComplex, SDA\_PeakToAveragePowerRatioComplex

### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_MovePeakTowardsDeadBand (const SLData_t *,   Pointer to source array
                                   SLData_t *,         Pointer to destination array
                                   const SLArrayIndex_t, Dead-band low-point
                                   const SLArrayIndex_t, Dead-band high-point
                                   const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length
```

### DESCRIPTION

This function locates the peak value and then shifts all of the data so that the peak moves towards the dead-band. The function accepts a dead-band, within which the data is not shifted.

This function shifts the peak by one location on each iteration.

### NOTES ON USE

### CROSS REFERENCE

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

void SIF\_Envelope (SLData\_t \*)                      Pointer to filter state variable

**DESCRIPTION**

This function initializes the envelope detection function.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDS\_Envelope, SDA\_Envelope, SIF\_EnvelopeRMS, SDS\_EnvelopeRMS,  
SDA\_EnvelopeRMS, SIF\_EnvelopeHilbert, SDS\_EnvelopeHilbert,  
SDA\_EnvelopeHilbert

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLData_t SDS_Envelope (const SLData_t,   Source sample
                        const SLData_t,   Attack coefficient
                        const SLData_t,   Decay coefficient
                        SLData_t *)       Pointer to filter state variable
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function generates an envelope of the input sequence using a single one-pole filter.

## NOTES ON USE

A larger one pole filter coefficient leads to a smoother response but may miss high frequency artefacts.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_Envelope, SDA\_Envelope, SIF\_EnvelopeRMS, SDS\_EnvelopeRMS,  
SDA\_EnvelopeRMS, SIF\_EnvelopeHilbert, SDS\_EnvelopeHilbert,  
SDA\_EnvelopeHilbert

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|                                      |                                  |
|--------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| void SDA_Envelope (const SLData_t *, | Pointer to source array          |
| SLData_t *,                          | Pointer to destination array     |
| const SLData_t,                      | Attack coefficient               |
| const SLData_t,                      | Decay coefficient                |
| SLData_t *,                          | Pointer to filter state variable |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)                | Input array length               |

## DESCRIPTION

This function generates an envelope of the input sequence using a single one-pole filter.

## NOTES ON USE

A larger one pole filter coefficient leads to a smoother response but may miss high frequency artefacts.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_Envelope, SDS\_Envelope, SIF\_EnvelopeRMS, SDS\_EnvelopeRMS, SDA\_EnvelopeRMS, SIF\_EnvelopeHilbert, SDS\_EnvelopeHilbert, SDA\_EnvelopeHilbert



### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SIF\_EnvelopeRMS (SLData\_t \*)      Pointer to filter state variable

### DESCRIPTION

This function initializes the envelope detection function, with RMS.

### NOTES ON USE

### CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_Envelope, SDS\_Envelope, SDA\_Envelope, SDS\_EnvelopeRMS,  
SDA\_EnvelopeRMS, SIF\_EnvelopeHilbert, SDS\_EnvelopeHilbert,  
SDA\_EnvelopeHilbert

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLData\_t SDS\_EnvelopeRMS (const SLData\_t,     Source sample  
                          const SLData\_t,        Attack coefficient  
                          const SLData\_t,        Decay coefficient  
                          SLData\_t \*)            Pointer to filter state variable

**DESCRIPTION**

This function generates an envelope of the input sequence using a single one-pole filter, with RMS.

**NOTES ON USE**

A larger one pole filter coefficient leads to a smoother response but may miss high frequency artefacts.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SIF\_Envelope, SDS\_Envelope, SDA\_Envelope, SIF\_EnvelopeRMS,  
SDA\_EnvelopeRMS, SIF\_EnvelopeHilbert, SDS\_EnvelopeHilbert,  
SDA\_EnvelopeHilbert

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
void SDA_EnvelopeRMS (const SLData_t *,      Pointer to source array
                     SLData_t *,           Pointer to destination array
                     const SLData_t,       Attack coefficient
                     const SLData_t,       Decay coefficient
                     SLData_t *,           Pointer to filter state variable
                     const SLArrayIndex_t) Input array length
```

**DESCRIPTION**

This function generates an envelope of the input sequence using a single one-pole filter, with RMS.

**NOTES ON USE**

A larger one pole filter coefficient leads to a smoother response but may miss high frequency artefacts.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SIF\_Envelope, SDS\_Envelope, SDA\_Envelope, SIF\_EnvelopeRMS,  
SDS\_EnvelopeRMS, SIF\_EnvelopeHilbert, SDS\_EnvelopeHilbert,  
SDA\_EnvelopeHilbert

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|                                       |   |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| void SIF_EnvelopeHilbert (SLData_t *, | Pointer to Hilbert transform filter       |
| coefficient array                     |   |
| SLData_t *,                           | Pointer to filter state array             |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                     | Pointer to filter index                   |
| SLData_t *,                           | Pointer to filter delay compensator array |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                 | Filter length                             |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                 | Filter group delay                        |
| SLData_t *)                           | Pointer to one-pole state variable        |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function initializes the envelope detection function using the Hilbert transform.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SIF\_Envelope, SDS\_Envelope, SDA\_Envelope, SIF\_EnvelopeRMS,  
SDS\_EnvelopeRMS, SDA\_EnvelopeRMS SDS\_EnvelopeHilbert,  
SDA\_EnvelopeHilbert

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLData_t SDS_EnvelopeHilbert (const SLData_t,   Source sample
                             const SLData_t *,   Pointer to Hilbert transform filter
                             coefficient array
                             SLData_t *,         Pointer to filter state array
                             SLArrayIndex_t *,    Pointer to filter index
                             SLData_t *,         Pointer to filter delay compensator array
                             SLArrayIndex_t *,    Pointer to delay index
                             const SLArrayIndex_t, Filter length
                             const SLArrayIndex_t, Filter group delay
                             const SLData_t,      One pole filter coefficient
                             SLData_t *)          Pointer to one-pole state variable
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function generates an envelope of the input sequence, where the envelope is the absolute maximum of the signal and the Hilbert transformed signal. The absolute maximum is then one-pole filtered to smooth the response.

## NOTES ON USE

Critical parameters for this function are the filter length and the one-pole filter coefficient.

Longer filter lengths are required for lower frequency signals but this leads to a longer group delay.

A larger one pole filter coefficient leads to a smoother response but may miss high frequency artefacts.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_Envelope, SDS\_Envelope, SDA\_Envelope, SIF\_EnvelopeRMS,  
SDS\_EnvelopeRMS, SDA\_EnvelopeRMS, SIF\_EnvelopeHilbert,  
SDA\_EnvelopeHilbert

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|   |   |
|---|---|
| void SDA_EnvelopeHilbert (const SLData_t *, | Pointer to source array                   |
| SLData_t *,                                 | Pointer to destination array              |
| const SLData_t *,                           | Pointer to Hilbert transform filter       |
| coefficient array                           |   |
| SLData_t *,                                 | Pointer to filter state array             |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                           | Pointer to filter index                   |
| SLData_t *,                                 | Pointer to temp. analytical signal array  |
| SLData_t *,                                 | Pointer to filter delay compensator array |
| SLData_t *,                                 | Pointer to temporary delay array          |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                       | Filter length                             |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                       | Filter group delay                        |
| const SLData_t,                             | One pole filter coefficient               |
| SLData_t *,                                 | Pointer to one-pole state variable        |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)                       | Input array length                        |

## DESCRIPTION

This function generates an envelope of the input sequence, where the envelope is the absolute maximum of the signal and the Hilbert transformed signal. The absolute maximum is then one-pole filtered to smooth the response.

## NOTES ON USE

Critical parameters for this function are the filter length and the one-pole filter coefficient.

Longer filter lengths are required for lower frequency signals but this leads to a longer group delay.

A larger one pole filter coefficient leads to a smoother response but may miss high frequency artefacts.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_Envelope, SDS\_Envelope, SDA\_Envelope, SIF\_EnvelopeRMS,  
SDS\_EnvelopeRMS, SDA\_EnvelopeRMS, SIF\_EnvelopeHilbert,  
SDS\_EnvelopeHilbert

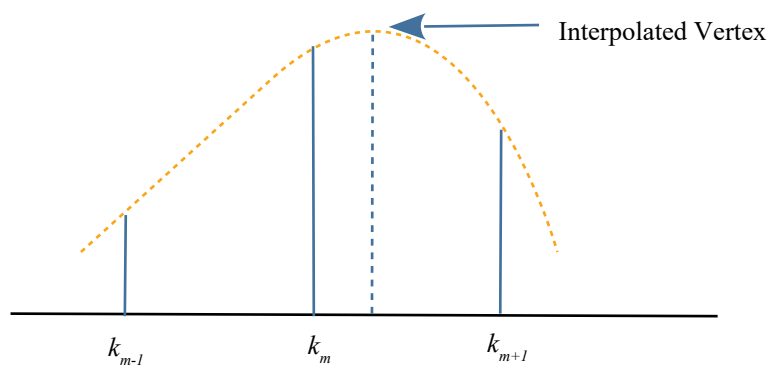
## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLData_t SDS_InterpolateThreePointQuadraticVertexMagnitude (const SLData_t, y0
    const SLData_t,          y1
    const SLData_t)          y2
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function returns the y-axis magnitude of the vertex (positive or negative) generated from the three points,  $y_0$ ,  $y_1$  and  $y_2$ , assuming the x-axis values are  $x_0=0$ ,  $x_1=1$ ,  $x_2=2$ .

The function uses quadratic interpolation, as shown in the following diagram.



## NOTES ON USE

It is important that  $k_m$  is the largest positive or smallest negative value in the sequence.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDS\_InterpolateThreePointQuadraticVertexLocation,  
 SDS\_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticVertexMagnitude,  
 SDS\_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticVertexLocation,  
 SDA\_InterpolateThreePointQuadraticVertexMagnitude,  
 SDA\_InterpolateThreePointQuadraticVertexLocation,  
 SDA\_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticVertexMagnitude,  
 SDA\_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticVertexLocation,  
 SDA\_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticPeakVertexMagnitude,  
 SDA\_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticPeakVertexLocation

## SDS\_InterpolateThreePointQuadraticVertexLocation

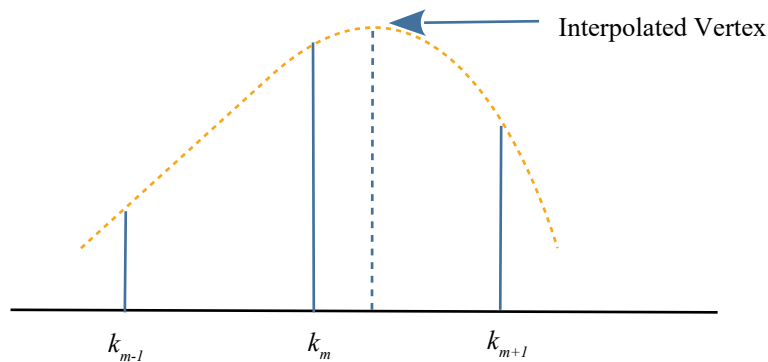
### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLData_t SDS_InterpolateThreePointQuadraticVertexLocation (const SLData_t, y0
const SLData_t, y1
const SLData_t) y2
```

### DESCRIPTION

This function returns the x-axis location of the vertex (positive or negative) generated from the three points,  $y_0$ ,  $y_1$  and  $y_2$ , assuming the x-axis values are  $x_0=0$ ,  $x_1=1$ ,  $x_2=2$ .

The function uses quadratic interpolation, as shown in the following diagram.



### NOTES ON USE

It is important that  $k_m$  is the largest positive or smallest negative value in the sequence.

### CROSS REFERENCE

SDS\_InterpolateThreePointQuadraticVertexMagnitude,  
SDS\_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticVertexMagnitude,  
SDS\_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticVertexLocation,  
SDA\_InterpolateThreePointQuadraticVertexMagnitude,  
SDA\_InterpolateThreePointQuadraticVertexLocation,  
SDA\_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticVertexMagnitude,  
SDA\_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticVertexLocation,  
SDA\_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticPeakVertexMagnitude,  
SDA\_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticPeakVertexLocation



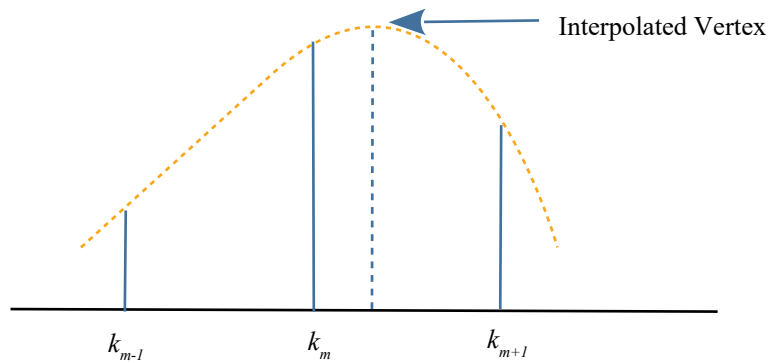
## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLData_t SDS_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticVertexMagnitude (const
SLData_t,      x0
    const SLData_t,      y0
    const SLData_t,      x1
    const SLData_t,      y1
    const SLData_t,      x2
    const SLData_t,      y2)
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function returns the y-axis magnitude of the vertex (positive or negative) generated from the three arbitrary points,  $x_0/y_0$ ,  $x_1/y_1$  and  $x_2/y_2$ .

The function uses quadratic interpolation, as shown in the following diagram.



## NOTES ON USE

It is important that  $k_m$  is the largest positive or smallest negative value in the sequence.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDS\_InterpolateThreePointQuadraticVertexMagnitude,  
SDS\_InterpolateThreePointQuadraticVertexLocation,  
SDS\_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticVertexLocation,  
SDA\_InterpolateThreePointQuadraticVertexMagnitude,  
SDA\_InterpolateThreePointQuadraticVertexLocation,  
SDA\_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticVertexMagnitude,  
SDA\_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticVertexLocation,  
SDA\_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticPeakVertexMagnitude,  
SDA\_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticPeakVertexLocation

## SDS\_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticVertexLocation

---

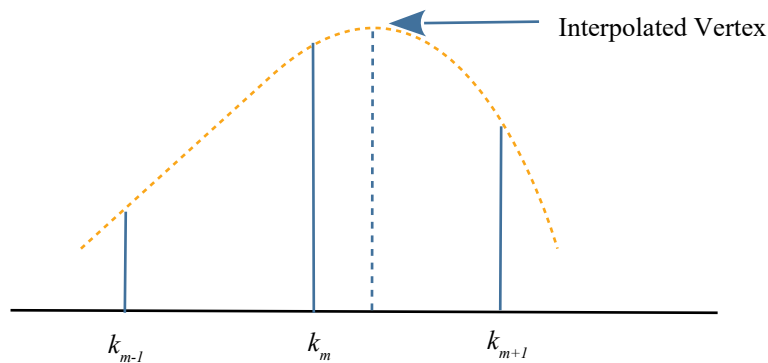
### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLData_t SDS_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticVertexLocation (const
SLData_t,      x0
    const SLData_t,      y0
    const SLData_t,      x1
    const SLData_t,      y1
    const SLData_t,      x2
    const SLData_t,      y2)
```

### DESCRIPTION

This function returns the x-axis location of the vertex (positive or negative) generated from the three arbitrary points,  $x_0/y_0$ ,  $x_1/y_1$  and  $x_2/y_2$ .

The function uses quadratic interpolation, as shown in the following diagram.



### NOTES ON USE

It is important that  $k_m$  is the largest positive or smallest negative value in the sequence.

### CROSS REFERENCE

SDS\_InterpolateThreePointQuadraticVertexMagnitude,  
 SDS\_InterpolateThreePointQuadraticVertexLocation,  
 SDS\_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticVertexMagnitude,  
 SDA\_InterpolateThreePointQuadraticVertexMagnitude,  
 SDA\_InterpolateThreePointQuadraticVertexLocation,  
 SDA\_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticVertexMagnitude,  
 SDA\_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticVertexLocation,  
 SDA\_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticPeakVertexMagnitude,  
 SDA\_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticPeakVertexLocation

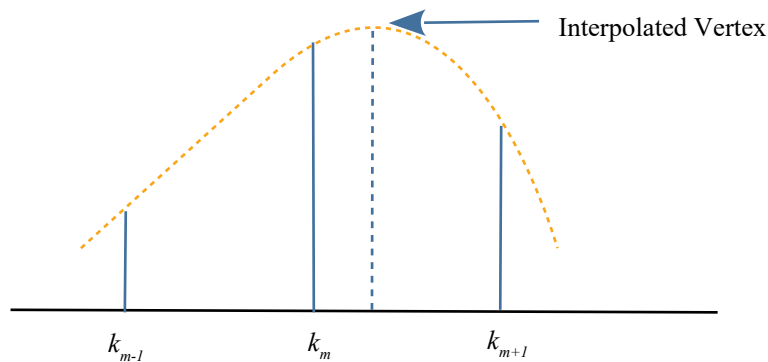
**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLData\_t SDA\_InterpolateThreePointQuadraticVertexMagnitude (const SLData\_t \*)  
Pointer to source array

**DESCRIPTION**

This function returns the y-axis magnitude of the vertex (positive or negative) generated from the three points,  $y_0$ ,  $y_1$  and  $y_2$ , located in the source array indices 0, 1 and 2.

The function uses quadratic interpolation, as shown in the following diagram.

**NOTES ON USE**

It is important that  $k_m$  is the largest positive or smallest negative value in the sequence.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDS\_InterpolateThreePointQuadraticVertexMagnitude,  
SDS\_InterpolateThreePointQuadraticVertexLocation,  
SDS\_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticVertexMagnitude,  
SDS\_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticVertexLocation,  
SDA\_InterpolateThreePointQuadraticVertexLocation,  
SDA\_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticVertexMagnitude,  
SDA\_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticVertexLocation,  
SDA\_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticPeakVertexMagnitude,  
SDA\_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticPeakVertexLocation

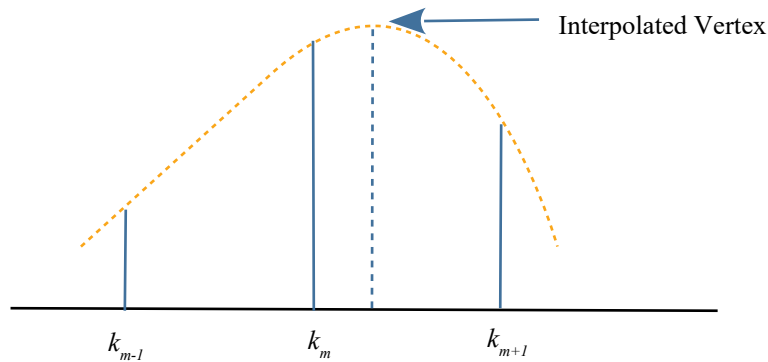
**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLData\_t SDA\_InterpolateThreePointQuadraticVertexLocation (const SLData\_t \*)  
 Pointer to source array

**DESCRIPTION**

This function returns the x-axis location of the vertex (positive or negative) generated from the three points,  $y_0$ ,  $y_1$  and  $y_2$ , located in the source array indices 0, 1 and 2.

The function uses quadratic interpolation, as shown in the following diagram.



**NOTES ON USE**

It is important that  $k_m$  is the largest positive or smallest negative value in the sequence.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDS\_InterpolateThreePointQuadraticVertexMagnitude,  
 SDS\_InterpolateThreePointQuadraticVertexLocation,  
 SDS\_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticVertexMagnitude,  
 SDS\_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticVertexLocation,  
 SDA\_InterpolateThreePointQuadraticVertexMagnitude,  
 SDA\_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticVertexMagnitude,  
 SDA\_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticVertexLocation,  
 SDA\_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticPeakVertexMagnitude,  
 SDA\_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticPeakVertexLocation

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

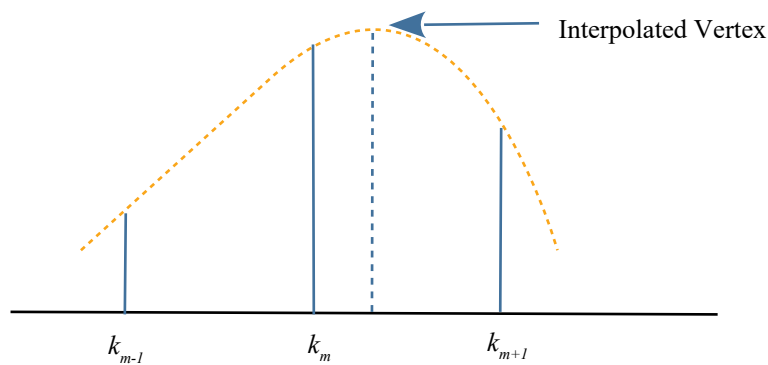
```
SLData_t SDA_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticVertexMagnitude (
    const SLData_t *,           Pointer to source array
    const SLArrayIndex_t)       Array length
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function returns the y-axis magnitude of the vertex (positive or negative) generated from the three arbitrary points,  $x_0/y_0$ ,  $x_1/y_1$  and  $x_2/y_2$ .

The function first searches the array for the index of the absolute peak value which is selected to be the  $x_1$  value.  $X_0$  is the previous value and  $x_2$  is the subsequent value in the source array. The associated  $y_0$ ,  $y_1$  and  $y_2$  values are calculated from the array index of the peak location.

The function uses quadratic interpolation, as shown in the following diagram.



## NOTES ON USE

It is important that  $k_m$  is the largest positive or smallest negative value in the sequence.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDS\_InterpolateThreePointQuadraticVertexMagnitude,  
 SDS\_InterpolateThreePointQuadraticVertexLocation,  
 SDS\_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticVertexMagnitude,  
 SDS\_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticVertexLocation,  
 SDA\_InterpolateThreePointQuadraticVertexMagnitude,  
 SDA\_InterpolateThreePointQuadraticVertexLocation,  
 SDA\_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticVertexLocation,  
 SDA\_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticPeakVertexMagnitude,  
 SDA\_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticPeakVertexLocation

### SDA\_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticVertexLocation

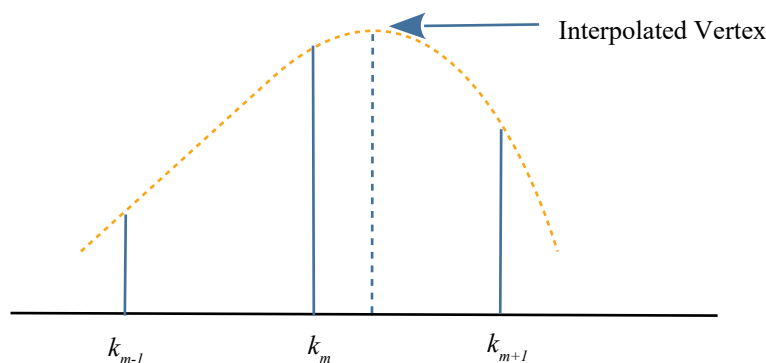
|                       |                         |
|-----------------------|-------------------------|
| const SLData_t *,     | Pointer to source array |
| const SLArrayIndex t) | Array length            |

## DESCRIPTION

This function returns the x-axis location of the vertex (positive or negative) generated from the three arbitrary points, x0/y0, x1/y1 and x2/y2.

The function first searches the array for the index of the absolute peak value which is selected to be the x1 value. X0 is the previous value and x2 is the subsequent value in the source array. The associated y0, y1 and y2 values are calculated from the array index of the peak location.

The function uses quadratic interpolation, as shown in the following diagram.



## NOTES ON USE

It is important that  $k_m$  is the largest positive or smallest negative value in the sequence.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDS\_InterpolateThreePointQuadraticVertexMagnitude,  
SDS\_InterpolateThreePointQuadraticVertexLocation,  
SDS\_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticVertexMagnitude,  
SDS\_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticVertexLocation,  
SDA\_InterpolateThreePointQuadraticVertexMagnitude,  
SDA\_InterpolateThreePointQuadraticVertexLocation,  
SDA\_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticVertexMagnitude,  
SDA\_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticPeakVertexMagnitude,  
SDA\_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticPeakVertexLocation

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

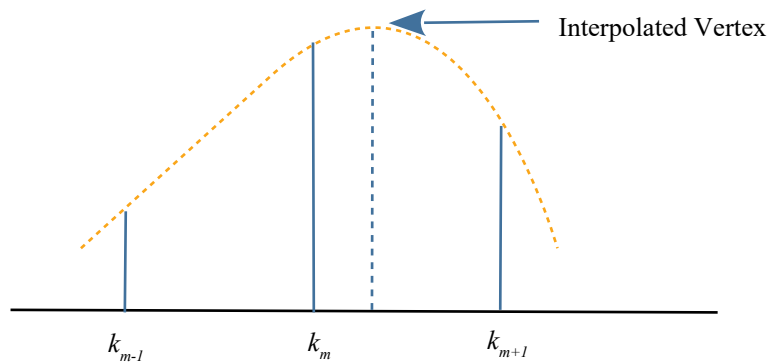
```
SLData_t SDA_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticPeakVertexMagnitude (
    const SLData_t *,           Pointer to source array
    const SLArrayIndex_t)       Array length
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function returns the y-axis magnitude of the vertex (positive only) generated from the three arbitrary points,  $x_0/y_0$ ,  $x_1/y_1$  and  $x_2/y_2$ .

The function first searches the array for the index of the peak value which is selected to be the  $x_1$  value.  $X_0$  is the previous value and  $x_2$  is the subsequent value in the source array. The associated  $y_0$ ,  $y_1$  and  $y_2$  values are calculated from the array index of the peak location.

The function uses quadratic interpolation, as shown in the following diagram.



## NOTES ON USE

It is important that  $k_m$  is the largest positive or smallest negative value in the sequence.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDS\_InterpolateThreePointQuadraticVertexMagnitude,  
 SDS\_InterpolateThreePointQuadraticVertexLocation,  
 SDS\_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticVertexMagnitude,  
 SDS\_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticVertexLocation,  
 SDA\_InterpolateThreePointQuadraticVertexMagnitude,  
 SDA\_InterpolateThreePointQuadraticVertexLocation,  
 SDA\_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticVertexMagnitude,  
 SDA\_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticVertexLocation,  
 SDA\_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticPeakVertexLocation

## SDA\_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticPeakVertexLocation

---

### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

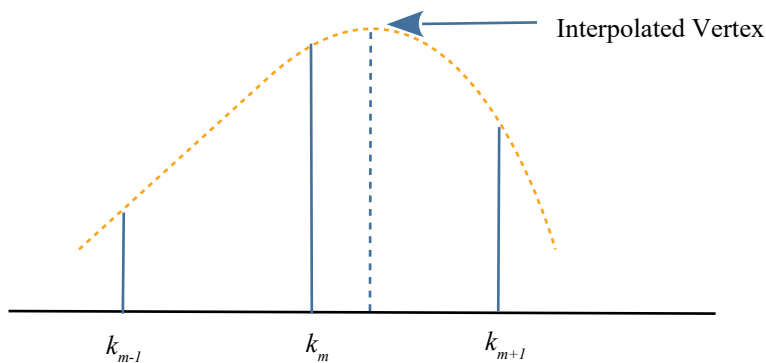
```
SLData_t SDA_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticPeakVertexLocation (
    const SLData_t *,           Pointer to source array
    const SLArrayIndex_t)       Array length
```

### DESCRIPTION

This function returns the x-axis location of the vertex (positive only) generated from the three arbitrary points,  $x_0/y_0$ ,  $x_1/y_1$  and  $x_2/y_2$ .

The function first searches the array for the index of the peak value which is selected to be the  $x_1$  value.  $X_0$  is the previous value and  $x_2$  is the subsequent value in the source array. The associated  $y_0$ ,  $y_1$  and  $y_2$  values are calculated from the array index of the peak location.

The function uses quadratic interpolation, as shown in the following diagram.



### NOTES ON USE

It is important that  $k_m$  is the largest positive or smallest negative value in the sequence.

### CROSS REFERENCE

SDS\_InterpolateThreePointQuadraticVertexMagnitude,  
 SDS\_InterpolateThreePointQuadraticVertexLocation,  
 SDS\_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticVertexMagnitude,  
 SDS\_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticVertexLocation,  
 SDA\_InterpolateThreePointQuadraticVertexMagnitude,  
 SDA\_InterpolateThreePointQuadraticVertexLocation,  
 SDA\_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticVertexMagnitude,  
 SDA\_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticVertexLocation,  
 SDA\_InterpolateArbitraryThreePointQuadraticPeakVertexMagnitude



**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLData\_t SDA\_FirstMinVertex (const SLData\_t \*, Array pointer  
const SLArrayIndex\_t)                      Array length

**DESCRIPTION**

This function returns the first minimum vertex value in an array.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_Multiply, SDA\_Divide, SDA\_Max, SDA\_Min, SDA\_Scale,  
SDA\_AbsMax, SDA\_AbsMin, SDA\_Middle, SDA\_MaxIndex, SDA\_AbsMaxIndex,  
SDA\_MinIndex, SDA\_AbsMinIndex, SDA\_LocalMax, SDA\_LocalAbsMax,  
SDA\_LocalMin, SDA\_LocalAbsMin, SDA\_FirstMinVertex,  
SDA\_FirstMinVertexPos, SDA\_FirstMaxVertex, SDA\_FirstMaxVertexPos,  
SDA\_NLargest, SDA\_NSmallest.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLData\_t SDA\_FirstMinVertexPos (const SLData\_t \*,     Array pointer  
                                  const SLArrayIndex\_t)     Array length

**DESCRIPTION**

This function returns the index of the first minimum vertex in an array.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_Multiply, SDA\_Divide, SDA\_Max, SDA\_Min, SDA\_Scale,  
SDA\_AbsMax, SDA\_AbsMin, SDA\_Middle, SDA\_MaxIndex, SDA\_AbsMaxIndex,  
SDA\_MinIndex, SDA\_AbsMinIndex, SDA\_LocalMax, SDA\_LocalAbsMax,  
SDA\_LocalMin, SDA\_LocalAbsMin, SDA\_FirstMinVertex, SDA\_FirstMaxVertex,  
SDA\_FirstMaxVertexPos, SDA\_NLargest, SDA\_NSmallest.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLData\_t SDA\_FirstMaxVertex (const SLData\_t \*, Array pointer  
const SLArrayIndex\_t)                      Array length

**DESCRIPTION**

This function returns the first maximum vertex value in an array.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_Multiply, SDA\_Divide, SDA\_Max, SDA\_Min, SDA\_Scale,  
SDA\_AbsMax, SDA\_AbsMin, SDA\_Middle, SDA\_MaxIndex, SDA\_AbsMaxIndex,  
SDA\_MinIndex, SDA\_AbsMinIndex, SDA\_LocalMax, SDA\_LocalAbsMax,  
SDA\_LocalMin, SDA\_LocalAbsMin, SDA\_FirstMinVertex,  
SDA\_FirstMinVertexPos, SDA\_FirstMaxVertexPos, SDA\_NLargest,  
SDA\_NSmallest.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLData\_t SDA\_FirstMaxVertexPos (const SLData\_t \*,     Array pointer  
                                  const SLArrayIndex\_t)     Array length

**DESCRIPTION**

This function returns the index of the first maximum vertex in an array.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_Multiply, SDA\_Divide, SDA\_Max, SDA\_Min, SDA\_Scale,  
SDA\_AbsMax, SDA\_AbsMin, SDA\_Middle, SDA\_MaxIndex, SDA\_AbsMaxIndex,  
SDA\_MinIndex, SDA\_AbsMinIndex, SDA\_LocalMax, SDA\_LocalAbsMax,  
SDA\_LocalMin, SDA\_LocalAbsMin, SDA\_FirstMinVertexPos,  
SDA\_FirstMaxVertex, SDA\_NLargest, SDA\_NSmallest.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|                                      |                              |
|--------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| void SDA_NLargest (const SLData_t *, | Pointer to source array      |
| SLData_t *,                          | Pointer to destination array |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                | Source array length          |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)                | Number of values to find     |

## DESCRIPTION

This function returns the first N largest values in the source array, the order is largest to smallest.

This algorithm supports duplicate numbers.

## NOTES ON USE

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_Multiply, SDA\_Divide, SDA\_Max, SDA\_Min, SDA\_Scale,  
SDA\_AbsMax, SDA\_AbsMin, SDA\_Middle, SDA\_MaxIndex, SDA\_AbsMaxIndex,  
SDA\_MinIndex, SDA\_AbsMinIndex, SDA\_LocalMax, SDA\_LocalAbsMax,  
SDA\_LocalMin, SDA\_LocalAbsMin, SDA\_FirstMinVertexPos,  
SDA\_FirstMaxVertex, SDA\_FirstMaxVertexPos, SDA\_NLargest, SDA\_NSmallest.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|                                       |                              |
|---------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| void SDA_NSmallest (const SLData_t *, | Pointer to source array      |
| SLData_t *,                           | Pointer to destination array |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                 | Source array length          |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)                 | Number of values to find     |

## DESCRIPTION

This function returns the first N smallest values in the source array, the order is smallest to largest.

This algorithm supports duplicate numbers.

## NOTES ON USE

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_Multiply, SDA\_Divide, SDA\_Max, SDA\_Min, SDA\_Scale,  
SDA\_AbsMax, SDA\_AbsMin, SDA\_Middle, SDA\_MaxIndex, SDA\_AbsMaxIndex,  
SDA\_MinIndex, SDA\_AbsMinIndex, SDA\_LocalMax, SDA\_LocalAbsMax,  
SDA\_LocalMin, SDA\_LocalAbsMin, SDA\_FirstMinVertexPos,  
SDA\_FirstMaxVertex, SDA\_FirstMaxVertexPos, SDA\_NLargest, SDA\_NSmallest.

#### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|                                    |                           |
|------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| void SDA_Divide (const SLData_t *, | Source array pointer      |
| const SLData_t,                    | Divisor                   |
| SLData_t *,                        | Destination array pointer |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)              | Array length              |

#### DESCRIPTION

This function divides all entries in the array of data by a scalar value.

#### NOTES ON USE

This function can operate on separate source and destination arrays or the source and destination pointers can reference the same array, for in-place operation.

#### CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_Divide2, SDA\_Multiply, SDA\_Max, SDA\_Min, SDA\_Scale,  
SDA\_AbsMax, SDA\_AbsMin.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|                                     |                           |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| void SDA_Divide2 (const SLData_t *, | Source array pointer 1    |
| const SLData_t *,                   | Source array pointer 2    |
| SLData_t *,                         | Destination array pointer |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)               | Array lengths             |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function divides one vector array by another, entry by entry, place the results in a third array, the destination array may be one of the source arrays.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_Divide, SDA\_Multiply, SDA\_Multiply2, SDA\_Max, SDA\_Min, SDA\_Scale.



**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|                                      |                           |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| void SDA_Multiply (const SLData_t *, | Source array pointer      |
| const SLData_t,                      | Scalar multiplier         |
| SLData_t *,                          | Destination array pointer |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)                | Array length              |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function multiplies all entries in the array of data by a scalar value.

**NOTES ON USE**

This function can operate on separate source and destination arrays or the source and destination pointers can reference the same array, for in-place operation.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_Divide, SDA\_Max, SDA\_Min, SDA\_Scale, SDA\_ComplexMultiply2,  
SDA\_Multiply2, SDA\_RealDotProduct, SDA\_ComplexDotProduct.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|                                       |                           |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| void SDA_Multiply2 (const SLData_t *, | Source array pointer 1    |
| const SLData_t *,                     | Source array pointer 2    |
| SLData_t *,                           | Destination array pointer |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)                 | Array lengths             |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function multiplies two arrays together, entry by entry, place the results in a third array, the destination array may be one of the source arrays.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_Divide, SDA\_Divide2, SDA\_Multiply, SDA\_Max, SDA\_Min, SDA\_Scale, SDA\_Multiply, SDA\_ComplexMultiply2, SDA\_RealDotProduct, SDA\_ComplexDotProduct.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
void SDS_ComplexMultiply (const SLData_t,      Real source 1
                          const SLData_t,      Imaginary source 1
                          const SLData_t,      Real source 2
                          const SLData_t,      Imaginary source 2
                          SLData_t *,          Real result
                          SLData_t *)          Imaginary result
```

**DESCRIPTION**

This function multiplies the contents of one complex variable by another - the real and imaginary components are stored in separate memory locations.

$$(a + jb) * (c + jd) = (ac - bd) + j(ad + bc)$$

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDS\_ComplexInverse, SDS\_ComplexDivide, SDA\_ComplexRectMultiply,  
SDA\_ComplexRectDivide, SCV\_Multiply, SCV\_Inverse, SCV\_Divide.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|  |                  |
|--|------------------|
| void SDS_ComplexInverse (const SLData_t, | Real source      |
| const SLData_t,                          | Imaginary source |
| SLData_t *,                              | Real result      |
| SLData_t *)                              | Imaginary result |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function inverts the complex variable - the real and imaginary components are stored in separate memory locations.

$$1/(a + jb) = (a - jb) / (a^2 + b^2)$$

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_ComplexInverse, SDS\_ComplexMultiply, SDS\_ComplexDivide,  
SDA\_ComplexRectMultiply, SDA\_ComplexRectDivide, SCV\_Multiply,  
SCV\_Inverse, SCV\_Divide.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_ComplexInverse (const SLData_t *,      Pointer to real source array 1
                        const SLData_t *,      Pointer to imaginary source array 1
                        SLData_t *,            Pointer to real destination array
                        SLData_t *,            Pointer to imaginary destination array
                        const SLArrayIndex_t)    Array lengths
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function inverts the complex values in the source array - the real and imaginary components are stored in separate arrays.

$$1/(a + jb) = (a - jb) / (a^2 + b^2)$$

## NOTES ON USE

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDS\_ComplexInverse, SDS\_ComplexMultiply, SDS\_ComplexDivide,  
 SDA\_ComplexRectMultiply, SDA\_ComplexRectDivide, SCV\_Multiply,  
 SCV\_Inverse, SCV\_Divide.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDS_ComplexDivide (const SLData_t, Numerator source 1
    const SLData_t,           Numerator source 1
    const SLData_t,           Denominator source 2
    const SLData_t,           Denominator source 2
    SLData_t *,               Real result
    SLData_t *)              Imaginary result
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function divides the contents of one complex variable by another - the real and imaginary components are stored in separate memory locations.

$$1/(a + jb) = (a - jb) / (a^2 + b^2)$$

$$(a + jb) * (c + jd) = (ac - bd) + j(ad + bc)$$

## NOTES ON USE

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDS\_ComplexMultiply, SDS\_ComplexInverse, SDA\_ComplexRectMultiply, SDA\_ComplexRectDivide, SCV\_Multiply, SCV\_Inverse, SCV\_Divide.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
void SDA_ComplexScalarMultiply (const SLData_t *,      Real source array 1
                                const SLData_t *,      Imaginary source array 1 pointer
                                const SLData_t,         Scalar multiplier
                                SLData_t *,             Real destination array pointer
                                SLData_t *,             Imaginary destination array pointer
                                const SLArrayIndex_t)    Array length
```

**DESCRIPTION**

This function multiplies the contents of the complex arrays by the scalar value.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_Divide, SDA\_Divide2, SDA\_Multiply, SDA\_Max, SDA\_Min, SDA\_Scale, SDA\_Multiply2, SDA\_ComplexMultiply2, SDA\_RealDotProduct, SDA\_ComplexDotProduct.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
void SDA_ComplexMultiply2 (const SLData_t *,   Real source array 1
                           const SLData_t *,   Imaginary source array 1 pointer
                           const SLData_t *,   Real source array 2 pointer
                           const SLData_t *,   Imaginary source array 2 pointer
                           SLData_t *,         Real destination array pointer
                           SLData_t *,         Imaginary destination array pointer
                           const SLArrayIndex_t) Array lengths
```

**DESCRIPTION**

This function complex multiplies two vectors together, entry by entry, place the results in a third array, using the following equation:

$$(a + jb).(c + jd) = (ac - bd) + j(ad + bc)$$

**NOTES ON USE**

The destination array may be any of the source arrays.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_Divide, SDA\_Divide2, SDA\_Multiply, SDA\_Max, SDA\_Min, SDA\_Scale, SDA\_Multiply2, SDA\_ComplexScalarMultiply, SDA\_RealDotProduct, SDA\_ComplexDotProduct.



**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

void SDA\_ComplexScalarDivide (const SLData\_t \*, Pointer to real numerator source array

|                       |   |
|-----------------------|---|
| const SLData_t *,     | Pointer to imag. numerator source array |
| const SLData_t,       | Scalar divisor                          |
| SLData_t *,           | Pointer to real destination array       |
| SLData_t *,           | Pointer to imaginary destination array  |
| const SLArrayIndex_t) | Array lengths                           |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function divides the complex vector arrays by the divisor.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_Divide, SDA\_Divide2, SDA\_Multiply, SDA\_Max, SDA\_Min, SDA\_Scale, SDA\_Multiply2, SDA\_ComplexDivide2, SDA\_RealDotProduct, SDA\_ComplexDotProduct.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
void SDA_ComplexDivide2 (const SLData_t *, Pointer to real numerator source array
                        const SLData_t *,      Pointer to imag. numerator source array
                        const SLData_t *,      Pointer to real denominator source array
                        const SLData_t *,      Pointer to imag denominator source array
                        SLData_t *,            Pointer to real destination array
                        SLData_t *,            Pointer to imaginary destination array
                        const SLArrayIndex_t)  Array lengths
```

**DESCRIPTION**

This function complex divides the numerator vector by the denominator.

**NOTES ON USE**

The destination array may be either of the source arrays.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_Divide, SDA\_Divide2, SDA\_Multiply, SDA\_Max, SDA\_Min,  
SDA\_Scale, SDA\_Multiply2, SDA\_ComplexScalarDivide, SDA\_RealDotProduct,  
SDA\_ComplexDotProduct.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData\_t SDA\_RealDotProduct (const SLData\_t \*, Source vector 1 pointer  
const SLData\_t \*, Source vector 2 pointer  
const SLArrayIndex\_t) Vector lengths

## DESCRIPTION

This function returns the vector dot product of the two real vectors, using the following equation:

$$(x, y) = \sum_{i=1}^N x_i \cdot y_i$$

This operation is also sometimes referred to as the *inner product*.

## NOTES ON USE

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_Divide, SDA\_Divide2, SDA\_Multiply, SDA\_Max, SDA\_Min,  
SDA\_Scale, SDA\_Multiply, SDA\_Multiply2, SDA\_ComplexMultiply2  
SDA\_ComplexDotProduct.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLComplexRect\_s SDA\_ComplexDotProduct (const SLData\_t \*, Real src. vector 1 ptr.

|                       |                                   |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------------|
| const SLData_t *,     | Imaginary source vector 1 pointer |
| const SLData_t *,     | Real source vector 2 pointer      |
| const SLData_t *,     | Imaginary source vector 2 pointer |
| const SLArrayIndex_t) | Vector lengths                    |

## DESCRIPTION

This function returns the vector dot product of the two complex vectors, using the following equation:

$$(x, y) = \sum_{i=1}^N x_i \cdot \overline{y_i}$$

This operation is also sometimes referred to as the *inner product*.

$\overline{y}$  is the complex conjugate of the  $y$  vector

## NOTES ON USE

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_Divide, SDA\_Divide2, SDA\_Multiply, SDA\_Max, SDA\_Min, SDA\_Scale, SDA\_Multiply, SDA\_Multiply2, SDA\_ComplexMultiply2, SDA\_RealDotProduct.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|  |                                      |
|--|--------------------------------------|
| void SDA_SumAndDifference (const SLData_t *, | Source array pointer 1               |
| const SLData_t *,                            | Source array pointer 2               |
| SLData_t *,                                  | Sum destination array pointer        |
| SLData_t *,                                  | Difference destination array pointer |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)                        | Array length                         |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function returns the sum and difference between the samples in the two arrays.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_AddN, SDA\_Subtract2



**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|   |                               |
|---|-------------------------------|
| void SDA_WeightedSum (const SLData_t *, | Source array pointer 1        |
| const SLData_t *,                       | Source array pointer 2        |
| SLData_t *,                             | Destination array pointer     |
| SLData_t,                               | Weighting factor for vector 1 |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)                   | Array length                  |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function adds the contents of one array to the other and place the results in a third. The values in array 1 are pre-multiplied by a constant weighting value. i.e.:  
$$\text{Destination}[i] = (\text{Weight} * \text{Source1}[i]) + \text{Source2}[i].$$

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|                                       |                           |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| void SDA_Subtract2 (const SLData_t *, | Source array pointer 1    |
| const SLData_t *,                     | Source array pointer 2    |
| SLData_t *,                           | Destination array pointer |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)                 | Array length              |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function subtracts the contents of one array from the other and place the results in a third.

i.e. Destination = Source1 - Source2.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_AddN



**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|                                 |                           |
|---------------------------------|---------------------------|
| void SDA_Add (const SLData_t *, | Source array pointer      |
| const SLData_t,                 | Offset value              |
| SLData_t *,                     | Destination array pointer |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)           | Array length              |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function adds the scalar offset to each value in an array.

**NOTES ON USE**

This function can operate on separate source and destination arrays or the source and destination pointers can reference the same array, for in-place operation.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_PositiveOffset, SDA\_NegativeOffset

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLData\_t SDA\_PositiveOffset (const SLData\_t \*,   Pointer to source array  
                              SLData\_t \*,                Pointer to destination array  
                              const SLArrayIndex\_t)       Array length

**DESCRIPTION**

This function adds an offset to the data to ensure that all the values are positive and the smallest value is zero.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_Add, SDA\_NegativeOffset

### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData\_t SDA\_NegativeOffset (const SLData\_t \*, Pointer to source array  
SLData\_t \*, Pointer to destination array  
const SLArrayIndex\_t) Array length

### DESCRIPTION

This function adds an offset to the data to ensure that all the values are negative and the largest value is zero.

### NOTES ON USE

### CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_Add, SDA\_PositiveOffset

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|                                    |                           |
|------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| void SDA_Negate (const SLData_t *, | Source array pointer      |
| SLData_t *,                        | Destination array pointer |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)              | Array length              |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function negates all entries in the array of data.

**NOTES ON USE**

The source and destination pointers can point to the same array.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|                                     |                           |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| void SDA_Inverse (const SLData_t *, | Source data pointer       |
| SLData_t *,                         | Destination array pointer |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)               | Array length              |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function returns the reciprocal of the data in the array.

**NOTES ON USE**

The source and destination pointers can point to the same location.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|                                    |                           |
|------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| void SDA_Square (const SLData_t *, | Source data pointer       |
| SLData_t *,                        | Destination array pointer |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)              | Array length              |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function returns the square of the data in the array.

**NOTES ON USE**

The source and destination pointers can point to the same location.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|                                  |                           |
|----------------------------------|---------------------------|
| void SDA_Sqrt (const SLData_t *, | Source data pointer       |
| SLData_t *,                      | Destination array pointer |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)            | Array length              |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function returns the square root of the data in the array.

**NOTES ON USE**

The source and destination pointers can point to the same location.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|  |                              |
|--|------------------------------|
| void SDA_Difference (const SLData_t *, | Pointer to source array 1    |
| const SLData_t *,                      | Pointer to source array 2    |
| SLData_t *,                            | Pointer to destination array |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)                  | Array length                 |

### DESCRIPTION

This function returns the differences of the data in the two arrays. The difference value is always positive.

### NOTES ON USE

The source and destination pointers can point to the same location.

### CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_SumOfDifferences



**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLData\_t SDA\_SumOfDifferences (const SLData\_t \*,      Pointer to source array 1  
                                 const SLData\_t \*,      Pointer to source array 2  
                                 const SLArrayIndex\_t)      Array length

**DESCRIPTION**

This function returns the sum of the differences of the data in the two arrays. The difference value is always positive.

**NOTES ON USE**

The source and destination pointers can point to the same location.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_Difference

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|                                   |                     |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------|
| void SDS_Roots (const SLData_t a, | a value             |
| const SLData_t b,                 | b value             |
| const SLData_t c,                 | c value             |
| SLData_t *Root1,                  | Pointer to root # 1 |
| SLData_t *Root2)                  | Pointer to root # 2 |

## DESCRIPTION

This function returns the real roots of the bi-quadratic equation:

$$ax^2 + bx + c = 0$$

The polynomial factors are given by the equation:

$$Roots = \frac{-b \pm \sqrt{b^2 - 4ac}}{2a}$$

## NOTES ON USE

The values a, b and c must be real numbers, as must the roots. If the values of a, b and c will lead to complex roots then the function will return SIGLIB\_DOMAIN\_ERROR, otherwise the function returns SIGLIB\_NO\_ERROR.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SCV\_Roots

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLData\_t SDS\_Factorial (const SLData\_t Input)     Input value

**DESCRIPTION**

This function returns the factorial of the input value.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDS\_Permutations , SDS\_Combinations

### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData\_t SDS\_Permutations (const SLData\_t n,     Set size  
                              const SLData\_t k)       Selection size

### DESCRIPTION

This function returns the number of permutations (arrangements) of n items taking k at a time, which is represented as  ${}^n\text{P}_k$ .

### NOTES ON USE

### CROSS REFERENCE

SDS\_Factorial, SDS\_Combinations

### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData\_t SDS\_Combinations (const SLData\_t n,   Set size  
                              const SLData\_t k)       Selection size

### DESCRIPTION

This function returns the number of combinations of n items taking k at a time, which is represented as  ${}^nC_k$ .

### NOTES ON USE

### CROSS REFERENCE

SDS\_Factorial, SDS\_Permutations

### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|   |                              |
|---|------------------------------|
| void SIF_OverlapAndAddLinear (SLData_t *, | Pointer to the value used to |
| in(de)crement between the two arrays      |                              |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)                     | Array length                 |

### DESCRIPTION

This function initializes the linear overlap and add function.

### NOTES ON USE

### CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_OverlapAndAddLinear, SDA\_OverlapAndAddLinearWithClip,  
SDA\_OverlapAndAddArbitrary, SDA\_OverlapAndAddArbitraryWithClip

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
void SDA_OverlapAndAddLinear (const SLData_t *,      Ptr. to source array 1
                             const SLData_t *,      Pointer to source array 2
                             SLData_t *,           Pointer to destination array
                             const SLData_t,        Increment / decrement value
                             const SLArrayIndex_t)  Array length
```

**DESCRIPTION**

This function performs a linear overlap and add of the data in the two arrays. The data linearly ramps between the values in one array to the values in the second.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SIF\_OverlapAndAddLinear, SDA\_OverlapAndAddLinearWithClip,  
SDA\_OverlapAndAddArbitrary, SDA\_OverlapAndAddArbitraryWithClip

### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA\_OverlapAndAddLinearWithClip (const SLData\_t \*,     Pointer to source array 1  
const SLData\_t \*,     Pointer to source array 2  
SLData\_t \*,     Pointer to destination array  
const SLData\_t,     Threshold limiting value  
const SLData\_t,     Increment / decrement value  
const SLArrayIndex\_t)     Array length

### DESCRIPTION

This function performs a linear overlap and add of the data in the two arrays. The data linearly ramps between the values in one array to the values in the second.

This function also applies a threshold and ensures that the addition operation does not overflow.

### NOTES ON USE

### CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_OverlapAndAddLinear, SDA\_OverlapAndAddLinear,  
SDA\_OverlapAndAddArbitrary, SDA\_OverlapAndAddArbitraryWithClip



### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_OverlapAndAddArbitrary (const SLData_t *,   Ptr. to source array 1
                                const SLData_t *,   Pointer to source array 2
                                const SLData_t *,   Pointer to window function array
                                SLData_t *,         Pointer to destination array
                                const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length
```

### DESCRIPTION

This function performs an overlap and add of the data in the two arrays. The inter-array scaling function is performed by the data supplied in the windowing array.

### NOTES ON USE

### CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_OverlapAndAddLinear, SDA\_OverlapAndAddLinear,  
SDA\_OverlapAndAddLinearWithClip, SDA\_OverlapAndAddArbitraryWithClip.

### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA\_OverlapAndAddArbitraryWithClip (const SLData\_t \*, Pointer to source array 1

|                       |                                  |
|-----------------------|----------------------------------|
| const SLData_t *,     | Pointer to source array 2        |
| const SLData_t *,     | Pointer to window function array |
| SLData_t *,           | Pointer to destination array     |
| const SLData_t,       | Threshold limiting value         |
| const SLArrayIndex_t) | Array length                     |

### DESCRIPTION

This function performs an overlap and add of the data in the two arrays. The inter-array scaling function is performed by the data supplied in the windowing array.

This function also applies a threshold and ensures that the addition operation does not overflow.

### NOTES ON USE

### CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_OverlapAndAddLinear, SDA\_OverlapAndAddLinear,  
SDA\_OverlapAndAddLinearWithClip, SDA\_OverlapAndAddArbitrary.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLData\_t SDS\_DegreesToRadians (const SLData\_t)      Angle in degrees

**DESCRIPTION**

This function converts and angle in degrees to radians.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_DegreesToRadians, SDS\_RadiansToDegrees, SDA\_RadiansToDegrees.

### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_DegreesToRadians (const SLData_t *,   Pointer to source array
                          SLData_t *,         Pointer to destination array
                          const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length
```

### DESCRIPTION

This function converts an array of angles in degrees to radians.

### NOTES ON USE

### CROSS REFERENCE

SDS\_DegreesToRadians, SDS\_RadiansToDegrees, SDA\_RadiansToDegrees.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData\_t SDS\_RadiansToDegrees (const SLData\_t)      Angle in radians

DESCRIPTION

This function converts and angle in radians to degrees.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDS\_DegreesToRadians, SDA\_DegreesToRadians, SDA\_RadiansToDegrees.

### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_RadiansToDegrees (const SLData_t *,   Pointer to source array
                           SLData_t *,         Pointer to destination array
                           const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length
```

### DESCRIPTION

This function converts an array of angles in radians to degrees.

### NOTES ON USE

### CROSS REFERENCE

SDS\_DegreesToRadians, SDA\_DegreesToRadians, SDS\_RadiansToDegrees.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

void SDS\_DetectNaN (const SLData\_t)      Source sample

**DESCRIPTION**

This function checks if the sample is NaN or +/- infinity.

It returns either:

    0 if the value is either: NaN or +/- infinity

    -1 if the value is NOT NaN or +/- infinity

**NOTES ON USE**

This function does not work with the same logic as isinfinite ().

It uses the same logic as SDA\_DetectNaN(), which returns the location of the first NaN in the array.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

    SDA\_DetectNaN

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLArrayIndex\_t SDA\_DetectNaN (const SLData\_t \*,      Source array pointer  
   const SLArrayIndex\_t)      Source array length

**DESCRIPTION**

This function checks if any of the samples in the array are NaN or +/- infinity.

It returns either:

- The location of the first element that is either: NaN or +/- infinity
- 1 if the value is NOT NaN or +/- infinity

**NOTES ON USE**

This function does not work with the same logic as isinfinite ().

**CROSS REFERENCE**

    SDS\_DetectNaN



#### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|                                    |                               |
|------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| void SDA_Rotate (const SLData_t *, | Source array pointer          |
| SLData_t *,                        | Destination array pointer     |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,              | Number of bins to rotate data |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)              | Array length                  |

#### DESCRIPTION

This function rotates the data in the array by n samples from left to right. For right to left rotation, the number of rotation steps must be set to  $(\text{Length} - N)$ , where N is the required number of steps.

#### NOTES ON USE

This function does not support in-place operation.

#### CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_Reverse

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|                                     |                           |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| void SDA_Reverse (const SLData_t *, | Source array pointer      |
| SLData_t *,                         | Destination array pointer |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)               | Array length              |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function reverses the order of the data in the array i.e. it reflects the values around the centre value(s).

**NOTES ON USE**

This function can operate on separate source and destination arrays or the source and destination pointers can reference the same array.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_Rotate

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|                                       |                           |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| SLData_t SDA_Scale (const SLData_t *, | Source array pointer      |
| SLData_t *,                           | Destination array pointer |
| const SLData_t,                       | Maximum scaled value      |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)                 | Array length              |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function scales, or normalize, the largest absolute data value in the array equal to the maximum scaled value, all other entries in the array will be scaled accordingly.

**NOTES ON USE**

If the largest absolute value in the array is negative, then this (absolute value) will be used to scale the array. The function returns the scalar value, used to scale the data.

This function can operate on separate source and destination arrays or the source and destination pointers can reference the same array, for in-place operation.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_Multiply, SDA\_Divide, SDA\_Max, SDA\_Min, SDA\_AbsMax, SDA\_AbsMin.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLData\_t SDA\_MeanSquare (const SLData\_t \*,     Source array pointer  
                          const SLArrayIndex\_t)     Array length

**DESCRIPTION**

This function returns the mean square value of the samples in the array i.e.:

$$\frac{\sum_{n=0}^{N-1} x(n)^2}{N}$$

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_RootMeanSquare

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLData_t SDA_MeanSquareError (const SLData_t *,      Source pointer 1
                             const SLData_t *,      Source pointer 2
                             const SLArrayIndex_t,   Inverse of the array length
                             const SLArrayIndex_t)   Array length
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function returns the mean square error of the samples in the arrays, using the following equation:

$$MSE = \frac{1}{L} \sum_{n=0}^{L-1} (X(n) - Y(n))^2$$

## NOTES ON USE

The “inverse of array length” parameter is used to avoid having to perform a divide operation within the function. This improves run-time performance.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_MeanSquare

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLData\_t SDA\_RootMeanSquare (const SLData\_t \*,       Source pointer  
                                  const SLArrayIndex\_t)       Array length

**DESCRIPTION**

This function returns the root mean square value of the samples in the array i.e.:

$$V_{RMS} = \sqrt{\frac{\sum_{n=0}^{N-1} x(n)^2}{N}}$$

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_MeanSquare

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_Magnitude (const SLData_t *,   Real data source pointer
                    const SLData_t *,   Imaginary data source pointer
                    SLData_t *,         Destination array pointer
                    const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function performs the following operation:

$$|X[k]| = \sqrt{X[k] \cdot X^*[k]}$$

Which is mathematically the same as:

$$\text{Magnitude} = \sqrt{\text{Real}^2 + \text{Imaginary}^2}$$

for all values in the real and complex arrays.

## NOTES ON USE

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_LogMagnitude, SDA\_MagnitudeSquared, SDA\_PhaseWrapped,  
SDA\_PhaseUnWrapped, SDS\_Magnitude, SDS\_MagnitudeSquared and SDS\_Phase.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_MagnitudeSquared (const SLData_t *,   Real data source pointer
                           const SLData_t *,   Imaginary data source pointer
                           SLData_t *,         Destination array pointer
                           const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function performs the following operation:

$$|X[k]|^2 = X[k] \cdot X^*[k]$$

Which is mathematically the same as:

$$\text{Magnitude}^2 = \text{Real}^2 + \text{Imaginary}^2$$

for all values in the real and complex arrays.

## NOTES ON USE

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_LogMagnitude, SDA\_Magnitude, SDA\_PhaseWrapped,  
SDA\_PhaseUnWrapped, SDS\_Magnitude, SDS\_MagnitudeSquared and SDS\_Phase.



## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData\_t SDS\_Magnitude (const SLData\_t, Real data value  
const SLData\_t \*) Imaginary data value

## DESCRIPTION

This function returns the magnitude of the input using the following equation:

$$|X[k]| = \sqrt{X[k] \cdot X^*[k]}$$

Which is mathematically the same as:

$$\text{Magnitude} = \sqrt{\text{Real}^2 + \text{Imaginary}^2}$$

## NOTES ON USE

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_Magnitude, SDA\_MagnitudeSquared, SDA\_PhaseWrapped,  
SDA\_PhaseUnWrapped, SDS\_MagnitudeSquared and SDS\_Phase.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData\_t SDS\_MagnitudeSquared (const SLData\_t,       Real data value  
                                   const SLData\_t \*)       Imaginary data value

## DESCRIPTION

This function returns the magnitude squared value of the input using the following equation:

$$|X[k]|^2 = X[k] \cdot X^*[k]$$

Which is mathematically the same as:

$$\text{Magnitude}^2 = \text{Real}^2 + \text{Imaginary}^2$$

## NOTES ON USE

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_Magnitude, SDA\_MagnitudeSquared, SDA\_PhaseWrapped,  
 SDA\_PhaseUnWrapped, SDS\_Magnitude and SDS\_Phase.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData\_t SDS\_Phase (const SLData\_t,      Real data sample  
const SLData\_t \*)                      Imaginary data sample

## DESCRIPTION

This function returns the phase of the complex vector, according to the following equation:

$$Angle = a \tan 2(imag, real) = \tan^{-1} \left( \frac{imag}{real} \right)$$

## NOTES ON USE

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_PhaseWrapped, SDA\_PhaseUnWrapped, SDA\_Magnitude,  
SDA\_PhaseUnWrap, SDS\_Magnitude, SDS\_MagnitudeSquared.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_PhaseWrapped (const SLData_t *,      Real source pointer
                      const SLData_t *,      Imaginary source pointer
                      SLData_t *,            Destination phase array pointer
                      const SLArrayIndex_t)   Array length
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function calculates the phase of a signal from a complex vector, according to the following equation:

$$Angle = a \tan 2(imag, real) = \tan^{-1} \left( \frac{imag}{real} \right)$$

The phase output of this function is wrapped between  $-\pi$  and  $+\pi$ .

## NOTES ON USE

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_PhaseUnWrapped, SDA\_Magnitude, SDA\_MagnitudeSquared,  
SDA\_PhaseUnWrap, SDS\_Magnitude, SDS\_MagnitudeSquared and SDS\_Phase.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_PhaseUnWrapped (const SLData_t *,    Real source pointer
                        const SLData_t *,      Imaginary source pointer
                        SLData_t *,            Destination phase array pointer
                        const SLArrayIndex_t)   Array length
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function calculates the phase of a signal from a complex vector, according to the following equation:

$$Angle = a \tan 2(imag, real) = \tan^{-1} \left( \frac{imag}{real} \right)$$

The phase output of this function is NOT wrapped between  $-\pi$  and  $+\pi$ .

## NOTES ON USE

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_PhaseWrapped, SDA\_Magnitude, SDA\_MagnitudeSquared,  
SDA\_PhaseUnWrap, SDS\_Magnitude, SDS\_MagnitudeSquared and SDS\_Phase.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_MagnitudeAndPhaseWrapped (const SLData_t *,   Real source pointer
                                   const SLData_t *,   Imaginary source pointer
                                   SLData_t *,          Magnitude destination pointer
                                   SLData_t *,          Phase destination pointer
                                   const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function calculates the magnitude and phase of a signal from a complex vector, according to the following equations:

$$\text{Magnitude} = \sqrt{\text{Real}^2 + \text{Imaginary}^2}$$

$$\text{Angle} = \arctan 2(\text{imag}, \text{real}) = \tan^{-1} \left( \frac{\text{imag}}{\text{real}} \right)$$

The phase output of this function is wrapped between  $-\pi$  and  $+\pi$ .

## NOTES ON USE

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_PhaseUnWrapped, SDA\_Magnitude, SDA\_MagnitudeSquared, SDA\_PhaseUnWrap, SDS\_Magnitude, SDS\_MagnitudeSquared and SDS\_Phase.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_MagnitudeAndPhaseUnWrapped (const SLData_t *,   Real source pointer
                                     const SLData_t *,       Imaginary source pointer
                                     SLData_t *,             Magnitude destination pointer
                                     SLData_t *,             Phase destination pointer
                                     const SLArrayIndex_t)    Array length
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function calculates the magnitude and phase of a signal from a complex vector, according to the following equations:

$$\text{Magnitude} = \sqrt{\text{Real}^2 + \text{Imaginary}^2}$$

$$\text{Angle} = \arctan 2(\text{imag}, \text{real}) = \tan^{-1} \left( \frac{\text{imag}}{\text{real}} \right)$$

The phase output of this function is NOT wrapped between  $-\pi$  and  $+\pi$ .

## NOTES ON USE

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_PhaseWrapped, SDA\_Magnitude, SDA\_MagnitudeSquared, SDA\_PhaseUnWrap, SDS\_Magnitude, SDS\_MagnitudeSquared and SDS\_Phase.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
void SDA_MagnitudeSquaredAndPhaseWrapped (const SLData_t *, Real src. ptr.  
    const SLData_t *,           Imaginary source pointer  
    SLData_t *,                 Magnitude squared destination pointer  
    SLData_t *,                 Phase destination pointer  
    const SLArrayIndex_t)       Array length
```

**DESCRIPTION**

This function calculates the magnitude squared and phase of a signal from a complex vector, according to the following equations:

$$\text{Magnitude}^2 = \text{Real}^2 + \text{Imaginary}^2$$

$$\text{Angle} = \text{atan2}(\text{imag}, \text{real}) = \tan^{-1} \left( \frac{\text{imag}}{\text{real}} \right)$$

The phase output of this function is wrapped between  $-\pi$  and  $+\pi$ .

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_PhaseUnWrapped, SDA\_Magnitude, SDA\_MagnitudeSquared,  
SDA\_PhaseUnWrap, SDS\_Magnitude, SDS\_MagnitudeSquared and SDS\_Phase.



**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
void SDA_MagnitudeSquaredAndPhaseUnWrapped (const SLData_t *, Real src. ptr.  
      const SLData_t *,           Imaginary source pointer  
      SLData_t *,                 Magnitude squared destination pointer  
      SLData_t *,                 Phase destination pointer  
      const SLArrayIndex_t)       Array length
```

**DESCRIPTION**

This function calculates the magnitude squared and phase of a signal from a complex vector, according to the following equations:

$$\text{Magnitude}^2 = \text{Real}^2 + \text{Imaginary}^2$$

$$\text{Angle} = \text{atan2}(\text{imag}, \text{real}) = \tan^{-1} \left( \frac{\text{imag}}{\text{real}} \right)$$

The phase output of this function is NOT wrapped between  $-\pi$  and  $+\pi$ .

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_PhaseWrapped, SDA\_Magnitude, SDA\_MagnitudeSquared,  
SDA\_PhaseUnWrap, SDS\_Magnitude, SDS\_MagnitudeSquared and SDS\_Phase.

### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_PhaseWrap (const SLData_t *,   Source phase pointer  
                   SLData_t *,         Destination phase array pointer  
                   const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length
```

### DESCRIPTION

This function returns the phase of the signal wrapped between  $-\pi \leq \phi \leq +\pi$ .

### NOTES ON USE

### CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_PhaseUnWrap, SDA\_PhaseWrapped and SDA\_PhaseUnWrapped

### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_PhaseUnWrap (const SLData_t *,      Source phase pointer  
                     SLData_t *,          Destination phase array pointer  
                     const SLArrayIndex_t)  Array length
```

### DESCRIPTION

This function returns the unwrapped phase of the signal.

### NOTES ON USE

### CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_PhaseWrap, SDA\_PhaseWrapped and SDA\_PhaseUnWrapped

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLData\_t SDS\_Log2 (const SLData\_t)      Source number

**DESCRIPTION**

This function returns the Logarithm of a number, to base 2.

**NOTES ON USE**

This function includes error detection to avoid SDS\_Log2(0). SDS\_Log2Macro() implements the same functionality but without the error detection overhead.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDS\_Log2Macro, SDA\_Log2, SDS\_LogN, SDA\_LogN,  
SDA\_LogDistribution

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|                                  |                              |
|----------------------------------|------------------------------|
| void SDA_Log2 (const SLData_t *, | Pointer to source array      |
| SLData_t *,                      | Pointer to destination array |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)            | Array length                 |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function returns the Logarithm of the numbers in the source array, to base 2.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDS\_Log2, SDS\_LogN, SDA\_LogN, SDA\_LogDistribution

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|                                    |               |
|------------------------------------|---------------|
| SLData_t SDS_LogN (const SLData_t, | Source number |
| const SLData_t)                    | Base number   |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function returns the Logarithm of a number, to base N.

**NOTES ON USE**

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDS\_Log2, SDA\_Log2, SDA\_LogN, SDA\_LogDistribution

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|                                  |                              |
|----------------------------------|------------------------------|
| void SDA_LogN (const SLData_t *, | Pointer to source array      |
| SLData_t *,                      | Pointer to destination array |
| const SLData_t,                  | Base number                  |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)            | Array length                 |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function returns the Logarithm of the numbers in the source array, to base N.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDS\_Log2, SDA\_Log2, SDS\_LogN, SDA\_LogDistribution

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|                                       |                              |
|---------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| void SDA_LogDistribution (SLData_t *, | Pointer to destination array |
| const SLData_t,                       | Start value                  |
| const SLData_t,                       | End value                    |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)                 | Number of steps              |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function generates a sequence with a logarithmic distribution.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDS\_Log2, SDA\_Log2, SDS\_LogN, SDA\_LogN



**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|                                  |                           |
|----------------------------------|---------------------------|
| void SDA_Copy (const SLData_t *, | Source array pointer      |
| SLData_t *,                      | Destination array pointer |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)            | Array length              |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function copies the contents of one array of data into another array, with a fixed increment of one memory location between samples.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_CopyWithStride, SIF\_CopyWithOverlap, SDA\_CopyWithOverlap,  
SIF\_CopyWithIndex, SDA\_CopyWithIndex

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
void SDA_CopyWithStride (const SLData_t *,      Source array pointer
                        const SLArrayIndex_t,    Source array stride
                        SLData_t *,             Destination array pointer
                        const SLArrayIndex_t,    Destination array stride
                        const SLArrayIndex_t)    Array length
```

**DESCRIPTION**

This function copies the contents of one array of data into another array, with a different stride (pointer address increment) for each vector pointer.

**NOTES ON USE**

This function is very useful when performing image processing or multi-dimensional operations that require the processing to be performed on separate dimensions. For example performing an operation on a column in an image.

It is often more efficient (especially in C) to extract that information from an array, process it and put it back than process the data in-place.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_Copy, SIF\_CopyWithOverlap, SDA\_CopyWithOverlap, SIF\_CopyWithIndex, SDA\_CopyWithIndex

### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SIF\_CopyWithOverlap (SLArrayIndex\_t \*)    Pointer to source array index

### DESCRIPTION

This function initializes the copy with overlap function.

### NOTES ON USE

### CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_Copy, SDA\_CopyWithStride, SDA\_CopyWithOverlap, SIF\_CopyWithIndex,  
SDA\_CopyWithIndex

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLArrayIndex_t SDA_CopyWithOverlap (const SLData_t *, Pointer to source data
    SLData_t *,                               Pointer to destination array
    SLData_t *,                               Pointer to overlap array
    SLArrayIndex_t *,                         Pointer to source array index
    const SLArrayIndex_t,                     Source array length
    const SLArrayIndex_t,                     Overlap length
    const SLArrayIndex_t)                     Destination array length
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function copies successive arrays of length "destination array length" of data from the source array to the destination array. For each successive copy, this function ensures that there are "overlap length" of samples overlapped between the successive destination arrays.

The return value from this function is the source array index so that it can be tested to see if the value is greater than or equal to the source array length, in which case, the output array is incomplete and further data must be placed in the array to fill it.

## NOTES ON USE

The value returned in the "source array index" parameter indicates the completion state of the function. It will return the following values:

|   |   |
|---|---|
| "Returned value" >= "Source array length"     | The full "Destination array length" of data has NOT been copied. You will need to call this function again with a new source array of data.             |
| 0 <= "Returned value" < "Source array length" | The full "Destination array length" of data has been copied correctly.  |
| "Returned value" < 0                          | There is overlapping data from the previous source array that is required in the output array – this data will have been stored in the "overlap array". |

The function SIF\_CopyWithOverlap () should be called prior to calling this function.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_Copy, SDA\_CopyWithStride, SIF\_CopyWithOverlap, SIF\_CopyWithIndex, SDA\_CopyWithIndex

### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SIF\_CopyWithIndex (SLArrayIndex\_t \*)      Pointer to source array index

### DESCRIPTION

This function initializes the copy with index function.

### NOTES ON USE

### CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_Copy, SDA\_CopyWithStride, SIF\_CopyWithOverlap,  
SDA\_CopyWithOverlap, SDA\_CopyWithIndex

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLArrayIndex_t SDA_CopyWithIndex (const SLData_t *,  Pointer to source data
    SLData_t *,                                Pointer to destination array
    SLArrayIndex_t *,                          Pointer to source array index
    const SLArrayIndex_t,                      Source array length
    const SLArrayIndex_t,                      Stride length
    const SLArrayIndex_t)                     Destination array length
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function copies successive arrays of length "destination array length" of data from the source array to the destination array. For each successive copy, this function ensures that there are "stride length" of samples indexed into the source array and copied to the successive destination arrays.

The return value from this function is the number of samples copied from the source array to the destination array.

If copyLength < dstLength then the destination array is zero padded.

## NOTES ON USE

It is important that the source array length is greater than or equal to the destination array length.

The function SIF\_CopyWithIndex () should be called prior to calling this function.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_Copy, SDA\_CopyWithStride, SIF\_CopyWithOverlap,  
SDA\_CopyWithOverlap, SIF\_CopyWithIndex

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|                                     |                           |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| void SDA_20Log10 (const SLData_t *, | Source array pointer      |
| SLData_t *,                         | Destination array pointer |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)               | Array length              |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function scales all array entries by  $20 * \log_{10}$ , to give a dB output.

**NOTES ON USE**

This function can operate on separate source and destination arrays or the source and destination pointers can reference the same array, for in-place operation.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_LogMagnitude and SDA\_10Log10

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|                                     |                           |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| void SDA_10Log10 (const SLData_t *, | Source array pointer      |
| SLData_t *,                         | Destination array pointer |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)               | Array length              |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function scales all array entries by  $10 * \log_{10}$ , to give a dB output.

**NOTES ON USE**

This function can operate on separate source and destination arrays or the source and destination pointers can reference the same array, for in-place operation.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_LogMagnitude and SDA\_20Log10



## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_LogMagnitude (const SLData_t *,   Real source array pointer
                      const SLData_t *,   Imaginary source array pointer
                      SLData_t *,         Destination array pointer
                      const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function calculates the log magnitude of the complex data, using the following equation:

$$y(n) = 10 * \log_{10}(real^2 + imag^2) = 20 * \log_{10}\left(\sqrt{real^2 + imag^2}\right)$$

## NOTES ON USE

This function can operate on separate source and destination arrays or the source and destination pointers can reference the same array, for in-place operation.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_Magnitude, SDA\_MagnitudeSquared, SDA\_10Log10 and SDA\_20Log10

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_LogMagnitudeAndPhaseWrapped (const SLData_t *,   Real src. ptr.
    const SLData_t *,                               Imaginary source pointer
    SLData_t *,                                     Magnitude destination pointer
    SLData_t *,                                     Phase destination pointer
    const SLArrayIndex_t)                          Array length
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function calculates the log magnitude and phase of a signal from a complex vector, according to the following equations:

$$y(n) = 10 * \log_{10}(real^2 + imag^2) = 20 * \log_{10}\left(\sqrt{real^2 + imag^2}\right)$$

$$Angle = \arctan 2(imag, real) = \tan^{-1} \left( \frac{imag}{real} \right)$$

The phase output of this function is wrapped between  $-\pi$  and  $+\pi$ .

## NOTES ON USE

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_PhaseUnWrapped, SDA\_Magnitude, SDA\_MagnitudeSquared,  
SDA\_PhaseUnWrap, SDS\_Magnitude, SDS\_MagnitudeSquared and SDS\_Phase.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_LogMagnitudeAndPhaseUnWrapped (const SLData_t *,   Real src. ptr.
    const SLData_t *,           Imaginary source pointer
    SLData_t *,                 Magnitude destination pointer
    SLData_t *,                 Phase destination pointer
    const SLArrayIndex_t)       Array length
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function calculates the log magnitude and phase of a signal from a complex vector, according to the following equations:

$$y(n) = 10 * \log_{10}(real^2 + imag^2) = 20 * \log_{10}\left(\sqrt{real^2 + imag^2}\right)$$

$$Angle = \arctan 2(imag, real) = \tan^{-1} \left( \frac{imag}{real} \right)$$

The phase output of this function is NOT wrapped between  $-\pi$  and  $+\pi$ .

## NOTES ON USE

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_PhaseWrapped, SDA\_Magnitude, SDA\_MagnitudeSquared,  
SDA\_PhaseUnWrap, SDS\_Magnitude, SDS\_MagnitudeSquared and SDS\_Phase.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|                                      |                           |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| void SDA_Lengthen (const SLData_t *, | Source array pointer      |
| SLData_t *,                          | Destination array pointer |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                | Source array length       |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)                | Destination array length  |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function copies the contents of one array into another longer array, extend the data with zero. This operation is also known as zero padding.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SIF\_ReSize and SDA\_ReSize

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|                                     |                           |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| void SDA_Shorten (const SLData_t *, | Source array pointer      |
| SLData_t *,                         | Destination array pointer |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)               | Destination array length  |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function copies the contents of one array into another shorter array, discard the excess data.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SIF\_ReSize and SDA\_ReSize

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

void SIF\_ReSize (SLArrayIndex\_t \*)      Pointer to state array length

**DESCRIPTION**

This function initializes the SDA\_ReSize function.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_Lengthen, SDA\_Shorten, SDA\_ReSize, SDA\_ReSizeInput and  
SDA\_ReSizeOutput

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|  |                               |
|--|-------------------------------|
| SLArrayIndex_t SDA_ReSize (const SLData_t *, | Pointer to source array       |
| SLData_t *,                                  | Pointer to destination array  |
| SLData_t *,                                  | Pointer to state array        |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                            | Pointer to state array length |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                        | Source array length           |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)                        | Destination array length      |

## DESCRIPTION

This function appends the input data to the end of the data in the state array, that was carried over from the last iteration. If the resulting data set is long enough to fill the output array then this amount of data is copied to the output array and the state array updated. If there is not enough data in the state array then all the data is maintained in the state array and the Destination array length is 0 samples long.

This function maintains contiguous data streams across input and output array boundaries.

## NOTES ON USE

The function SIF\_ReSize must be called prior to calling this function.

It is important to ensure that the state array is long enough to hold all overlap data required by the application. For performance reasons, this function does not check the size of the state array against the amount of data that needs to be stored inside.

This function does not work in-place.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_Lengthen, SDA\_Shorten, SIF\_ReSize, SDA\_ReSizeInput and SDA\_ReSizeOutput

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
SLArrayIndex_t SDA_ReSizeInput (const SLData_t *,    Pointer to source array
                                SLData_t *,          Pointer to state array
                                SLArrayIndex_t *,      Pointer to state array length
                                const SLArrayIndex_t) Source array length
```

**DESCRIPTION**

This function appends the input data to the end of the data in the state array, that was carried over from the last iteration.

This function maintains contiguous data streams across input and output array boundaries.

**NOTES ON USE**

The function SIF\_ReSize must be called prior to calling this function.

It is important to ensure that the state array is long enough to hold all overlap data required by the application. For performance reasons, this function does not check the size of the state array against the amount of data that needs to be stored inside.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_Lengthen, SDA\_Shorten, SIF\_ReSize, SDA\_ReSize and  
SDA\_ReSizeOutput



## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLArrayIndex_t SDA_ReSizeOutput (SLData_t *, Pointer to destination array
    SLData_t *,                      Pointer to state array
    SLArrayIndex_t *,                Pointer to state array length
    const SLArrayIndex_t)           Destination array length
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function resizes the output array. If the data set in the state array long enough to fill the output array then the “destination array length” data is copied to the output array and any remaining data is maintained in the state array. If there is not enough data in the state array then the destination array length is 0 samples long.

This function maintains contiguous data streams across input and output array boundaries.

## NOTES ON USE

The function SIF\_ReSize must be called prior to calling this function.

It is important to ensure that the state array is long enough to hold all overlap data required by the application. For performance reasons, this function does not check the size of the state array against the amount of data that needs to be stored inside.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_Lengthen, SDA\_Shorten, SIF\_ReSize, SDA\_ReSize and  
SDA\_ReSizeInput

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|                            |               |
|----------------------------|---------------|
| void SDA_Fill (SLData_t *, | Array pointer |
| const SLData_t,            | Fill value    |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)      | Array length  |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function fills all the entries in an array with a scalar value.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|                             |               |
|-----------------------------|---------------|
| void SDA_Clear (SLData_t *, | Array pointer |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)       | Array length  |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function clears the contents of the array to zero.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

These functions generate a histogram of the source data where the destination array length defines the number of bins in the histogram.

The bin width ( $h$ ) for the number of output bins ( $k$ ) is given by the following equation:

$$h = \lceil \max\_x - \min\_x \rceil / k$$

The histogram is calculated in one of two ways:

1/ If either or both the source minimum and maximum values are non-zero then the histogram is calculated for all values between the minimum and maximum levels. All values outside this range are discarded.

2/ If both the source minimum and maximum values are equal to zero then the function first calculates the minimum and maximum values in the source array and then calculates the histogram over this range. You can also set both of these parameters to SIGLIB\_HISTOGRAM\_AUTOSCALE to achieve the same effect.

The histogram summation array is continuously incremented so that the results of successive histograms are cumulative. Therefore prior to commencing the first histogram in a series, it is necessary to use the SIF\_Histogram function.

The histogram array uses floating point numbers. IEEE 754 can represent integer values without error up to  $2^{24}$  for single precision format and  $2^{53}$  for double precision format. This prevents rounding errors for all results within these ranges. If you wish to convert the results to fixed point format, when using these functions on devices that do not use IEEE 754 format you should use the function SDA\_SigLibDataToFix to ensure that the results are rounded correctly.

For multiple dimension arrays, the source array length must be the product of all the dimension lengths.

### EXAMPLES

There are two primary ways of rounding floating-point numbers when calculating histograms. The first is to round down to the integer number and the second is to round to the nearest. The SigLib histogram functions support both of these modes as described in these examples.

For these examples we will assume a range of histogram values from -2.0 to +2.0.

### Example 1

In this example we will use 4 bins for the histogram result and all the floating point numbers will be rounded down, as follows:

| Bin Number | Bin Median Value | Bin Numerical Range   |
|------------|------------------|-----------------------|
| 0          | -1.5             | $-2.0 \leq n < -1.0$  |
| 1          | -0.5             | $-1.0 \leq n < 0.0$   |
| 2          | 0.5              | $0.0 \leq n < 1.0$    |
| 3          | 1.5              | $1.0 \leq n \leq 2.0$ |

For this scenario you would use the following SigLib function call:

```
SDA_Histogram (pSourceData, /* Input array pointer */
               pHistogram, /* Histogram array pointer */
               -2.0F, /* Lower range limit */
               2.0F, /* Upper range limit */
               SOURCE_LENGTH, /* Input array length */
               4) /* Histogram array length */
```

The benefit of this approach is that all the bins are the same width but the numbers are all rounded towards zero, which may lead to a bias in the results.

### Example 2

In this example we will use 5 bins for the histogram result and all the floating point numbers will be rounded to the nearest integer, as follows:

| Bin Number | Bin Median Value | Bin Numerical Range   |
|------------|------------------|-----------------------|
| 0          | -1.75            | $-2.0 \leq n < -1.5$  |
| 1          | -1.0             | $-1.5 \leq n < -0.5$  |
| 2          | 0.0              | $-0.5 \leq n < 0.5$   |
| 3          | 1.0              | $0.5 \leq n < 1.5$    |
| 4          | 1.75             | $1.5 \leq n \leq 2.0$ |

For this scenario you would use the following SigLib function call:

```
SDA_Histogram (pSourceData, /* Input array pointer */
               pHistogram, /* Histogram array pointer */
               -2.0F, /* Lower range limit */
               2.0F, /* Upper range limit */
               SOURCE_LENGTH, /* Input array length */
               5) /* Histogram array length */
```

The benefit of this approach is that all numbers are rounded to the median value, which removes bias from the results but the two bins at the extremities (bins 0 and N-1) are smaller than the other bins.

### Example 3

In this example we will use 5 bins for the histogram result and all the floating point numbers will be rounded to the nearest integer, as follows:

| Bin Number | Bin Median Value | Bin Numerical Range   |
|------------|------------------|-----------------------|
| 0          | -2.0             | $-2.5 \leq n < -1.5$  |
| 1          | -1.0             | $-1.5 \leq n < -0.5$  |
| 2          | 0.0              | $-0.5 \leq n < 0.5$   |
| 3          | 1.0              | $0.5 \leq n < 1.5$    |
| 4          | 2.0              | $1.5 \leq n \leq 2.5$ |

For this scenario you would use the following SigLib function call:

```
SDA_Histogram (pSourceData,    /* Input array pointer */
               pHistogram,     /* Histogram array pointer */
               -2.5F,          /* Lower range limit */
               2.5F,           /* Upper range limit */
               SOURCE_LENGTH,  /* Input array length */
               5)              /* Histogram array length */
```

The benefit of this approach is that all numbers are rounded to the median value, which removes bias from the results plus the bins are all the same width. The disadvantage is that the input range is extended beyond the integer numbers of the histogram.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|                                 |                         |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------|
| void SIF_Histogram (SLData_t *, | Histogram array pointer |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)           | Histogram array length  |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function clears the histogram array prior to calling the functions SDA\_Histogram, SDA\_HistogramCumulative, SDA\_HistogramExtended and SDA\_HistogramExtendedCumulative.

**NOTES ON USE**

See section titled “Histogram Functions”, above, which includes examples.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_Histogram, SDA\_HistogramCumulative, SDA\_HistogramExtended, SDA\_HistogramExtendedCumulative

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|                                       |                           |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| void SDA_Histogram (const SLData_t *, | Source array pointer      |
| SLData_t *,                           | Destination array pointer |
| const SLData_t,                       | Source minimum level      |
| const SLData_t,                       | Source maximum level      |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                 | Source array length       |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)                 | Destination array length  |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function generates a histogram of the source data where the destination array length defines the number of bins in the histogram.

**NOTES ON USE**

See section titled “Histogram Functions”, above, which includes examples.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SIF\_Histogram, SDA\_HistogramCumulative, SDA\_HistogramExtended,  
SDA\_HistogramExtendedCumulative



**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|   |                           |
|---|---------------------------|
| void SDA_HistogramCumulative (const SLData_t *, | Source array pointer      |
| SLData_t *,                                     | Destination array pointer |
| const SLData_t,                                 | Source minimum level      |
| const SLData_t,                                 | Source maximum level      |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                           | Source array length       |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)                           | Destination array length  |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function generates a histogram of the source data where the destination array length defines the number of bins in the histogram.

**NOTES ON USE**

See section titled “Histogram Functions”, above, which includes examples.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SIF\_Histogram, SDA\_Histogram, SDA\_HistogramExtended,  
SDA\_HistogramExtendedCumulative

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
void SDA_HistogramExtended (const SLData_t *, Source array pointer
    SLData_t *,                Destination array pointer
    const SLData_t,            Source minimum level
    const SLData_t,            Source maximum level
    const SLArrayIndex_t,      Source array length
    const SLArrayIndex_t)      Destination array length
```

**DESCRIPTION**

This function generates a histogram of the source data where the destination array length defines the number of bins in the histogram.

**NOTES ON USE**

See section titled “Histogram Functions”, above, which includes examples.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SIF\_Histogram, SDA\_Histogram, SDA\_HistogramCumulative,  
SDA\_HistogramExtendedCumulative

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
void SDA_HistogramExtendedCumulative (const SLData_t *,      Src array pointer
    SLData_t *,          Destination array pointer
    const SLData_t,      Source minimum level
    const SLData_t,      Source maximum level
    const SLArrayIndex_t, Source array length
    const SLArrayIndex_t) Destination array length
```

**DESCRIPTION**

This function generates a histogram of the source data where the destination array length defines the number of bins in the histogram.

**NOTES ON USE**

See section titled “Histogram Functions”, above, which includes examples.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SIF\_Histogram, SDA\_Histogram, SDA\_HistogramCumulative,  
SDA\_HistogramExtended

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
void SDA_HistogramEqualize (const SLData_t *,   Source array pointer
                           SLData_t *,         Destination array pointer
                           const SLData_t,      New peak value
                           const SLArrayIndex_t) Source array length
```

**DESCRIPTION**

This function equalizes the histogram of the array. This function takes the absolute maximum value in the array and multiplies it up to the new peak value.

**NOTES ON USE**

If a data set needs to have its histogram equalized and the tail of the histogram already extends to the limit of the numerical bounds being used then the data should be clipped to a pre-set maximum before being equalized.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_HistogramEqualize

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|                                      |                             |
|--------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| void SDA_Quantize (const SLData_t *, | Source array pointer        |
| SLData_t *,                          | Destination array pointer   |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                | Quantisation number of bits |
| const SLData_t,                      | Peak input value            |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)                | Array length                |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function quantizes the data in the array to  $N$  bits.

**NOTES ON USE**

The peak input value parameter is used to scale the data according to the maximum possible input data value, which could be floating point.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDS\_Quantize, SDA\_Quantize\_N, SDS\_Quantize\_N

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|          |                               |                             |
|----------|-------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| SLData_t | SDS_Quantize (const SLData_t, | Source sample               |
|          | const SLArrayIndex_t,         | Quantisation number of bits |
|          | const SLData_t)               | Peak input value            |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function quantizes the data to  $N$  bits.

**NOTES ON USE**

The peak input value parameter is used to scale the data according to the maximum possible input data value, which could be floating point.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_Quantize, SDA\_Quantize\_N, SDS\_Quantize\_N

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
void SDA_Quantize_N (const SLData_t *,   Pointer to source array
                    SLData_t *,         Pointer to destination array
                    const SLData_t,      Quantisation number
                    const SLArrayIndex_t) Source array size
```

**DESCRIPTION**

This function quantizes the data in the array to the nearest multiple of  $N$ , using floor function.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_Quantize, SDS\_Quantize, SDS\_Quantize\_N

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLData\_t SDS\_Quantise\_N (const SLData\_t,           Source sample  
                          const SLData\_t)            Quantisation number

**DESCRIPTION**

This function quantizes the data to the nearest multiple of  $N$ , using floor function.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_Quantize, SDS\_Quantize, SDA\_Quantize\_N



**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|                                 |                           |
|---------------------------------|---------------------------|
| void SDA_Abs (const SLData_t *, | Source array pointer      |
| SLData_t *,                     | Destination array pointer |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)           | Array lengths             |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function calculates the absolute values in an array.

**NOTES ON USE**

This function can operate on separate source and destination arrays or the source and destination pointers can reference the same array, for in-place operation.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|   |  |
|---|--|
| SLData_t SDS_PeakValueToBits (SLData_t,<br>enum SLSignalSign_t) | Peak value,<br>Sign type of the signal |
|---|--|

**DESCRIPTION**

This function converts the peak value to a number of bits i.e. how many bits in a fixed point word are required to represent the given value.

**NOTES ON USE**

This function supports signed or unsigned words using the type SIGLIB\_SIGNED\_DATA or SIGLIB\_UNSIGNED\_DATA.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDS\_BitsToPeakValue

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|   |                         |
|---|-------------------------|
| SLData_t SDS_BitsToPeakValue (SLData_t, | Number of bits          |
| enum SLSignalSign_t)                    | Sign type of the signal |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function converts the number of bits to the peak value i.e. what is the largest positive number that can be represented using the given number of bits.

**NOTES ON USE**

This function supports signed or unsigned words using the type SIGLIB\_SIGNED\_DATA or SIGLIB\_UNSIGNED\_DATA.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDS\_PeakValueToBits

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLData\_t SDS\_LinearTodBm (SLData\_t,   Linear value  
                                  SLData\_t)       Zero dBm level

**DESCRIPTION**

This function converts the linear value to dBm.

**NOTES ON USE**

This function requires that the zero dBm level is provided. For example, if a signed 16 bit word length is being used then a signal of 0 dBm would have a peak level of 32767.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_LinearTodBm, SDS\_dBmToLinear, SDA\_dBmToLinear

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
void SDA_LinearTodBm (const SLData_t *,Pointer to source array
                      SLData_t *,           Pointer to destination array
                      const SLData_t,       Zero dBm level
                      const SLArrayIndex_t) Array lengths
```

**DESCRIPTION**

This function converts the linear values to dBm.

**NOTES ON USE**

This function requires that the zero dBm level is provided. For example, if a signed 16 bit word length is being used then a signal of 0 dBm would have a peak level of 32767.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDS\_LinearTodBm, SDS\_dBmToLinear, SDA\_dBmToLinear

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLData\_t SDS\_dBmToLinear (SLData\_t,     dBm input value  
                                 SLData\_t)     Zero dBm level

**DESCRIPTION**

This function converts the dBm value to linear.

**NOTES ON USE**

This function requires that the zero dBm level is provided. For example, if a signed 16 bit word length is being used then a signal of 0 dBm would have a peak level of 32767.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDS\_LinearTodBm, SDA\_LinearTodBm, SDA\_dBmToLinear

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|   |                              |
|---|------------------------------|
| void SDA_dBmToLinear (const SLData_t *, | Pointer to source array      |
| SLData_t *,                             | Pointer to destination array |
| const SLData_t,                         | Zero dBm level               |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)                   | Array lengths                |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function converts the dBm values to linear.

**NOTES ON USE**

This function requires that the zero dBm level is provided. For example, if a signed 16 bit word length is being used then a signal of 0 dBm would have a peak level of 32767.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDS\_LinearTodBm, SDA\_LinearTodBm, SDS\_dBmToLinear

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
SLFixData_t SDS_Compare (const SLData_t,      Source value #1
                        const SLData_t,      Source value #2
                        const SLData_t)      Threshold
```

**DESCRIPTION**

This function compares the value of sample #1 with the value of sample #2 and returns the following values:

SIGLIB\_TRUE - if the difference between sample is less than the threshold.

SIGLIB\_FALSE - if the difference between sample is greater than the threshold.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_CompareComplex, SDS\_CompareComplex, SDA\_CompareComplex



**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLFixData\_t SDA\_Compare (const SLData\_t \*,     Source array pointer #1  
                          const SLData\_t \*,     Source array pointer #2  
                          const SLData\_t,        Threshold  
                          const SLArrayIndex\_t)    Array length

**DESCRIPTION**

This function compares the contents of array #1 with those of array #2 and returns the following values:

    SIGLIB\_TRUE - if the difference between samples is less than the threshold.

    SIGLIB\_FALSE - if the difference between samples is greater than the threshold.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

    SDA\_CompareComplex, SDS\_CompareComplex, SDA\_CompareComplex

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
SLFixData_t SDS_CompareComplex (const SLData_t *,   Real sample #1
                                const SLData_t *,   Imaginary sample #1
                                const SLData_t *,   Real sample #2
                                const SLData_t *,   Imaginary sample #2
                                const SLData_t)      Threshold
```

**DESCRIPTION**

This function compares the real and imaginary values of the complex samples and returns the following values:

SIGLIB\_TRUE - if the difference between samples is less than the threshold.

SIGLIB\_FALSE - if the difference between samples is greater than the threshold.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDS\_Compare, SDA\_Compare, SDA\_CompareComplex

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLFixData\_t SDA\_CompareComplex (const SLData\_t \*,   Real source array ptr #1  
                  const SLData\_t \*,                 Imaginary source array pointer #1  
                  const SLData\_t \*,                 Real source array pointer #2  
                  const SLData\_t \*,                 Imaginary source array pointer #2  
                  const SLData\_t,                   Threshold  
                  const SLArrayIndex\_t)             Array length

**DESCRIPTION**

This function compares the real and imaginary contents of complex array #1 with those of complex array #2 and returns the following values:

    SIGLIB\_TRUE - if the difference between samples is less than the threshold.

    SIGLIB\_FALSE - if the difference between samples is greater than the threshold.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

    SDS\_Compare, SDA\_Compare, SDS\_CompareComplex

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLData\_t SDS\_Int (const SLData\_t) Source sample

**DESCRIPTION**

This function returns the integer component of the source sample.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDS\_Frac, SDS\_AbsFrac, SDA\_Int, SDA\_Frac, SDA\_AbsFrac.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLData\_t SDS\_Frac (const SLData\_t)      Source sample

**DESCRIPTION**

This function returns the fractional component of the source sample.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDS\_Int, SDS\_AbsFrac, SDA\_Int, SDA\_Frac, SDA\_AbsFrac.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData\_t SDS\_AbsFrac (const SLData\_t)    Source sample

## DESCRIPTION

This function returns the absolute value of the fractional component of the source sample.

## NOTES ON USE

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDS\_Int, SDS\_Frac, SDA\_Int, SDA\_Frac, SDA\_AbsFrac.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|                                 |                              |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------|
| void SDA_Int (const SLData_t *, | Pointer to source array      |
| SLData_t *,                     | Pointer to destination array |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)           | Array lengths                |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function returns the integer components of all of the samples in the source array.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDS\_Int, SDS\_Frac, SDS\_AbsFrac, SDA\_Frac, SDA\_AbsFrac.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|                                  |                              |
|----------------------------------|------------------------------|
| void SDA_Frac (const SLData_t *, | Pointer to source array      |
| SLData_t *,                      | Pointer to destination array |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)            | Array lengths                |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function returns the fractional components of all of the samples in the source array.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDS\_Int, SDS\_Frac, SDS\_AbsFrac, SDA\_Int, SDA\_AbsFrac.



**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|                                     |                              |
|-------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| void SDA_AbsFrac (const SLData_t *, | Pointer to source array      |
| SLData_t *,                         | Pointer to destination array |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)               | Array lengths                |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function returns the absolute values of the fractional components of all of the samples in the source array.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDS\_Int, SDS\_Frac, SDS\_AbsFrac, SDA\_Int, SDA\_Frac.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|                              |                              |
|------------------------------|------------------------------|
| void SDA_SetMin (SLData_t *, | Pointer to source array      |
| SLData_t *,                  | Pointer to destination array |
| const SLData_t,              | New minimum value            |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)        | Array lengths                |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function sets the minimum value in the data set. The difference between the previous minimum and new minimum is added to all of the values.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_SetMax, SDA\_SetRange, SDA\_SetMean.

---

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|                              |                              |
|------------------------------|------------------------------|
| void SDA_SetMax (SLData_t *, | Pointer to source array      |
| SLData_t *,                  | Pointer to destination array |
| const SLData_t,              | New maximum value            |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)        | Array lengths                |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function sets the maximum value in the data set. The difference between the previous maximum and new maximum is added to all of the values.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_SetMin, SDA\_SetRange, SDA\_SetMean.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|                                |                              |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------|
| void SDA_SetRange (SLData_t *, | Pointer to source array      |
| SLData_t *,                    | Pointer to destination array |
| const SLData_t,                | New minimum value            |
| const SLData_t,                | New maximum value            |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)          | Array lengths                |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function scales the data set in the source array to the new minimum and maximum values.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_SetMin, SDA\_SetMax, SDA\_SetMean.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|                               |                              |
|-------------------------------|------------------------------|
| void SDA_SetMean (SLData_t *, | Pointer to source array      |
| SLData_t *,                   | Pointer to destination array |
| const SLData_t,               | New mean value               |
| const SLData_t,               | Inverse of the array lengths |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)         | Array lengths                |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function scales the data set in the source array to the new mean value.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_SetMin, SDA\_SetMax, SDA\_SetRange.

### SDA\_RealSpectralInverse

#### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_RealSpectralInverse (const SLData_t *, Source array pointer
                             SLData_t *,           Destination array pointer
                             const SLArrayIndex_t)  Array lengths
```

#### DESCRIPTION

This function inverts the spectrum of a real time domain signal, by negating alternate time domain samples.

#### NOTES ON USE

For spectral inversion of a continuous signal, it is important that the array length is an even number.

This function can be used to mirror the frequency response of a filter about  $F_s / 4$ , in which case it is important that the central coefficient is not inverted, which will destroy the filter phase response.

#### CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_ComplexSpectralInverse

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
void SDA_ComplexSpectralInverse (const SLData_t *,    Real source pointer
                                const SLData_t *,    Imaginary source array pointer
                                SLData_t *,          Real destination array pointer
                                SLData_t *,          Imaginary destination array pointer
                                const SLArrayIndex_t) Array lengths
```

**DESCRIPTION**

This function inverts the spectrum of a complex time domain signal, by negating alternate time domain samples, in both the real and imaginary planes.

**NOTES ON USE**

For spectral inversion of a continuous signal, it is important that the array length is an even number.

This function can be used to mirror the frequency response of a filter about  $F_s / 4$ , in which case it is important that the central coefficient is not inverted, which will destroy the filter phase response.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_RealSpectralInverse

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_FdInterpolate (const SLData_t *, Real source array pointer
                        const SLData_t *,      Imaginary source array pointer
                        SLData_t *,            Real destination array pointer
                        SLData_t *,            Imaginary destination array pointer
                        const SLFixData_t,      Ratio up
                        const SLFixData_t,      Ratio down
                        const SLArrayIndex_t)    Array lengths
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function interpolates the frequency spectrum of a signal, to obtain a pitch shifted spectrum.

## NOTES ON USE

This technique benefits from carefully chosen array lengths, especially when using windowed and overlapped arrays, to smooth out transitions, between blocks. The array lengths should be as large as possible, without adding too much delay.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDS\_TdPitchShift, SDA\_FdInterpolate2.



## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|  |                                     |
|--|-------------------------------------|
| void SDA_FdInterpolate2 (const SLData_t *, | Real source pointer                 |
| const SLData_t *,                          | Imaginary source array pointer      |
| SLData_t *,                                | Real destination array pointer      |
| const SLData_t *,                          | Imaginary destination array pointer |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                      | Source array length                 |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)                      | Destination array length            |

## DESCRIPTION

This function interpolates a signal, in the frequency domain, to increase the number of samples in the output array. This algorithm is equivalent to a  $\sin(x)/x$  time-domain interpolation process.

## NOTES ON USE

This technique benefits from carefully chosen array lengths, especially when using windowed and overlapped arrays, to smooth out transitions, between blocks. The array lengths should be as large as possible, without adding too much delay.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDS\_TdPitchShift, SDA\_FdInterpolate.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|  |                             |
|--|-----------------------------|
| SLData_t SDS_TdPitchShift (const SLData_t, | Input sample                |
| SLData_t *,                                | Pitch shift array pointer   |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                          | Input array offset          |
| SLData_t *,                                | Output array offset         |
| SLData_t *,                                | Previous sample             |
| const SLData_t,                            | Pitch shift ratio           |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)                      | Length of pitch shift array |

## DESCRIPTION

This function pitch shifts a sample, in the time domain, using a circular array, this function will shift the frequency up, or down, depending on whether the ratio is greater than, or less than 1.0 respectively.

## NOTES ON USE

This technique benefits from carefully chosen array lengths, however some distortion will be seen as the pointers "cross over". Incorporated in the function is a smoothing filter, that can reduce this effect, another technique is to linearly interpolate samples, as the pointers cross. As with the frequency domain interpolation, the array lengths should be as large as possible, without adding too much delay.

The input array offset parameter should be initialised to zero in the calling function. The output array offset and previous sample parameters should be initialised to SIGLIB\_ZERO in the calling function.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_FdInterpolate, SDA\_TdPitchShift

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|  |                              |
|--|------------------------------|
| void SDA_TdPitchShift (const SLData_t *, | Pointer to source array      |
| SLData_t *,                              | Pointer to destination array |
| SLData_t *,                              | Pitch shift array pointer    |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                        | Input array offset           |
| SLData_t *,                              | Output array offset          |
| SLData_t *,                              | Previous sample              |
| const SLData_t,                          | Pitch shift ratio            |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                    | Length of pitch shift array  |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)                    | Array length                 |

## DESCRIPTION

This function pitch shifts an array of samples, in the time domain, using a circular array, this function will shift the frequency up, or down, depending on whether the ratio is greater than, or less than 1.0 respectively.

## NOTES ON USE

This technique benefits from carefully chosen array lengths, however some distortion will be seen as the pointers "cross over". Incorporated in the function is a smoothing filter, that can reduce this effect, another technique is to linearly interpolate samples, as the pointers cross. As with the frequency domain interpolation, the array lengths should be as large as possible, without adding too much delay.

The input array offset parameter should be initialised to zero in the calling function. The output array offset and previous sample parameters should be initialised to SIGLIB\_ZERO in the calling function.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_FdInterpolate, SDS\_TdPitchShift

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|  |                                |
|--|--------------------------------|
| SLData_t SDS_EchoGenerate (const SLData_t, | Input sample                   |
| SLData_t *,                                | Echo state array pointer       |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                          | Echo array data input location |
| const SLData_t,                            | Echo delay                     |
| const SLData_t,                            | Echo decay                     |
| const enum SLEcho_t,                       | Echo type                      |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)                      | Echo array length              |

## DESCRIPTION

This function generates an echo, which is superimposed on a signal, by delaying it and adding it to the original. The data is delayed, using a circular array. Two forms of echo can be generated:

|               |                               |
|---------------|-------------------------------|
| SIGLIB_ECHO   | produces a feedback echo      |
| SIGLIB_REVERB | produces a feed forward echo. |

The delay applied to the signal is a fraction of the echo array length, to get this as a time, in seconds, the sample rate and the array length must be used, as follows:

$$Time\ delay(Se\ c s) = Echodelay * \frac{Bufferlength}{Samplerate}$$

## NOTES ON USE

The Echo array data input location parameter should be initialised to zero in the calling function.

## CROSS REFERENCE

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|                                   |                           |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------------|
| void SDA_Power (const SLData_t *, | Source array pointer      |
| SLData_t *,                       | Destination array pointer |
| const SLData_t,                   | Power to raise data to    |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)             | Array length              |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function raises the data in the array to a power, on a per-sample basis.

**NOTES ON USE**

The source and destination pointers can point to the same array.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|                 |                                 |             |
|-----------------|---------------------------------|-------------|
| SLData_t        | SDS_Polynomial (const SLData_t, | Data sample |
| const SLData_t, | x^0 coefficient                 |             |
| const SLData_t, | x^1 coefficient                 |             |
| const SLData_t, | x^2 coefficient                 |             |
| const SLData_t, | x^3 coefficient                 |             |
| const SLData_t, | x^4 coefficient                 |             |
| const SLData_t) | x^5 coefficient                 |             |

## DESCRIPTION

This function equates the polynomial:

$$y = C0 + C1*x + C2*x^2 + C3*x^3 + C4*x^4 + C5*x^5$$

## NOTES ON USE

This function is very useful for adding a scale and an offset to a vector (using C0 and C1), prior to displaying it.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_Polynomial

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLData_t SDA_Polynomial (const SLData_t *,      Source array pointer
                        SLData_t *,              Destination array pointer
                        const SLData_t,          x^0 coefficient
                        const SLData_t,          x^1 coefficient
                        const SLData_t,          x^2 coefficient
                        const SLData_t,          x^3 coefficient
                        const SLData_t,          x^4 coefficient
                        const SLData_t,          x^5 coefficient
                        const SLArrayIndex_t)     Array length
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function equates the polynomial, on a per sample basis:

$$y = C0 + C1*x + C2*x^2 + C3*x^3 + C4*x^4 + C5*x^5$$

## NOTES ON USE

This function is very useful for adding a scale and an offset to a vector (using C0 and C1), prior to displaying it. The source and destination pointers can point to the same array.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDS\_Polynomial

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|                                      |               |
|--------------------------------------|---------------|
| SLData_t SDS_Modulo (const SLData_t, | Source data   |
| const SLData_t,                      | Modulo number |
| const enum SLModuloMode_t)           | Modulo mode   |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function returns the sample modulo  $N$ . The two types of modulo are: SIGLIB\_SINGLE\_SIDED\_MODULO and SIGLIB\_DOUBLE\_SIDED\_MODULO where single sided wraps the number between 0 and Max and the double sided between -Max and + Max.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_Modulo



**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|                                    |                           |
|------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| void SDA_Modulo (const SLData_t *, | Source array pointer      |
| SLData_t *,                        | Destination array pointer |
| const SLData_t,                    | Modulo number             |
| const enum SLModuloMode_t,         | Modulo mode               |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)              | Array length              |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function returns the samples in the array modulo  $N$ . The two types of modulo are: SIGLIB\_SINGLE\_SIDED\_MODULO and SIGLIB\_DOUBLE\_SIDED\_MODULO where single sided wraps the number between 0 and Max and the double sided between -Max and + Max.

**NOTES ON USE**
**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDS\_Modulo

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|                                     |                                       |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| void SDA_AgcPeak (const SLData_t *, | Source array pointer                  |
| SLData_t *,                         | Destination array pointer             |
| const SLData_t,                     | Desired signal magnitude to attain    |
| const SLData_t,                     | Minimum threshold                     |
| const SLData_t,                     | Sensitivity of attack gain adjustment |
| const SLData_t,                     | Sensitivity of decay gain adjustment  |
| SLData_t *,                         | Pointer to gain value                 |
| SLData_t *,                         | Pointer to maximum value              |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,               | History array length                  |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)               | Array length                          |

## DESCRIPTION

This function provides an automatic gain control function by adjusting the gain dependent on the peak level in the previous  $N$  output samples in the history array. If the peak output magnitude is lower than the desired magnitude then the gain is increased otherwise it is decreased. The attack and decay sensitivities adjust the amounts by which the gain will be increased (attack) or decreased (decay) when modified. The sensitivities are multiplying factors, the attack sensitivity should be a value greater than, but very close to, 1.0 and the decay sensitivity should be less than, but very close to, 1.0.

## NOTES ON USE

The minimum threshold parameter specifies the level below which the gain value is not adjusted, this is used to ensure that the AGC gain during periods of "silence".

The feedback calculates the error over a small history of the output data stream, different applications will require different sub-array lengths and hence different sensitivity coefficients. The source array length must be an integer multiple of the history array length.

The gain value should be initialised to 1.0 (or another suitable value) before calling this function.

This function will always be stable.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_AgcMeanAbs, SDA\_AgcMeanAbs, SIF\_AgcMeanSquared,  
SDA\_AgcMeanSquared.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|                                  |                                      |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| void SIF_AgcMeanAbs (SLData_t *, | Moving average state array           |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                | Moving average state array index     |
| SLData_t *,                      | Pointer to moving average sum        |
| SLData_t *,                      | Pointer to AGC gain                  |
| SLData_t *,                      | Pointer to scaled desired mean level |
| SLData_t *,                      | Pointer to threshold mean level      |
| const SLData_t,                  | Desired level of AGC output          |
| const SLData_t,                  | Threshold for update of AGC          |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)            | Length of moving average             |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function initializes the SDA\_AgcMeanAbs function.

**NOTES ON USE**

The minimum threshold parameter specifies the level below which the gain value is not adjusted, this is used to ensure that the AGC gain during periods of "silence". This level is converted to a mean absolute value.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_AgcPeak, SDA\_AgcMeanAbs, SIF\_AgcMeanSquared,  
SDA\_AgcMeanSquared.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|  |                                      |
|--|--------------------------------------|
| void SDA_AgcMeanAbs (const SLData_t *, | Pointer to source array              |
| SLData_t *,                            | Pointer to destination array         |
| const SLData_t,                        | Desired scaled value                 |
| const SLData_t,                        | Threshold scaled value               |
| const SLData_t,                        | Attack sensitivity                   |
| const SLData_t,                        | Decay sensitivity                    |
| SLData_t *,                            | Moving average state array           |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                      | Moving average state array index     |
| SLData_t *,                            | Pointer to moving average sum        |
| SLData_t *,                            | Pointer to AGC gain                  |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                  | Length of moving average state array |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)                  | Length of input array                |

## DESCRIPTION

This function provides an automatic gain control function by adjusting the gain dependent on the mean (moving average) of the absolute level in the previous  $N$  output samples. If the output mean is lower than the desired mean then the gain is increased otherwise it is decreased. The attack and decay sensitivities adjust the amounts by which the gain will be increased (attack) or decreased (decay) when modified. The sensitivities are multiplying factors, the attack sensitivity should be a value greater than, but very close to, 1.0 and the decay sensitivity should be less than, but very close to, 1.0.

## NOTES ON USE

The gain value should be initialised to 1.0 (or another suitable value) before calling this function.

This function will always be stable and is optimised to process sinusoidal waveforms.

This function does not use the divide by  $N$  to calculate the true moving averages instead all numbers are scaled by  $N$  and handled accordingly.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_AgcPeak, SIF\_AgcMeanAbs, SIF\_AgcMeanSquared,  
SDA\_AgcMeanSquared.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|                                      |  |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| void SIF_AgcMeanSquared (SLData_t *, | Moving average state array               |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                    | Moving average state array index         |
| SLData_t *,                          | Pointer to moving average sum            |
| SLData_t *,                          | Pointer to AGC gain                      |
| SLData_t *,                          | Ptr to scaled desired mean squared level |
| SLData_t *,                          | Pointer to threshold mean squared level  |
| const SLData_t,                      | Desired level of AGC output              |
| const SLData_t,                      | Threshold for update of AGC              |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)                | Length of moving average                 |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function initializes the SDA\_AgcMeanSquared function.

**NOTES ON USE**

The minimum threshold parameter specifies the level below which the gain value is not adjusted, this is used to ensure that the AGC gain during periods of "silence". This level is converted to a mean absolute value.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_AgcPeak, SIF\_AgcMeanAbs, SDA\_AgcMeanAbs,  
SDA\_AgcMeanSquared.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|  |                                      |
|--|--------------------------------------|
| void SDA_AgcMeanSquared (const SLData_t *, | Pointer to source array              |
| SLData_t *,                                | Pointer to destination array         |
| const SLData_t,                            | Desired scaled value                 |
| const SLData_t,                            | Threshold scaled value               |
| const SLData_t,                            | Attack sensitivity                   |
| const SLData_t,                            | Decay sensitivity                    |
| SLData_t *,                                | Moving average state array           |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                          | Moving average state array index     |
| SLData_t *,                                | Pointer to moving average sum        |
| SLData_t *,                                | Pointer to AGC gain                  |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                      | Length of moving average state array |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)                      | Length of input array                |

## DESCRIPTION

This function provides an automatic gain control function by adjusting the gain dependent on the mean (moving average) of the squared values in the previous  $N$  output samples. If the output mean squared value is lower than the desired mean squared value then the gain is increased otherwise it is decreased. The attack and decay sensitivities adjust the amounts by which the gain will be increased (attack) or decreased (decay) when modified. The sensitivities are multiplying factors, the attack sensitivity should be a value greater than, but very close to, 1.0 and the decay sensitivity should be less than, but very close to, 1.0.

## NOTES ON USE

The gain value should be initialised to 1.0 (or another suitable value) before calling this function.

This function will always be stable and is optimised to process sinusoidal waveforms.

This function does not use the divide by  $N$  to calculate the true moving averages instead all numbers are scaled by  $N$  and handled accordingly.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_AgcPeak, SIF\_AgcMeanAbs, SDA\_AgcMeanAbs,  
SIF\_AgcMeanSquared.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
void SDA_GroupDelay (const SLData_t *,   Phase signal array pointer
                     SLData_t *,         Destination array pointer
                     SLData_t *,         Previous phase value pointer
                     const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length
```

**DESCRIPTION**

This function returns the group delay of the phase signal source, essentially this is a differentiating function however it will allow for the fact that most phase sources wrap at +/- PI.

**NOTES ON USE**

The previous phase value should be initialised to zero. This indirect access technique has been used to allow the function to be re-entrant and to be applied to multiple streams simultaneously.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_PhaseWrapped, SDA\_PhaseUnWrapped, SDA\_RectangularToPolar

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLFixData\_t SDA\_ZeroCrossingDetect (const SLData\_t \*, Source array pointer  
SLData\_t \*, Destination array pointer  
SLData\_t \*, Previous source data value pointer  
const enum SLLevelCrossingMode\_t, Level crossing type - +ve, -ve, both  
const SLArrayIndex\_t) Array length

## DESCRIPTION

This function returns the number of zero crossings in the source array and sets the values in the destination array to zero except where a zero crossing is detected in the input array. The zero crossings are detected according to the SLLevelCrossingMode\_t parameter as follows:

|                             |                                     |   |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------------------|---|
| SIGLIB_POSITIVE_LEVEL_CROSS | Negative to positive zero crossings | +1  |
| SIGLIB_NEGATIVE_LEVEL_CROSS | Positive to negative zero crossings | -1  |
| SIGLIB_ALL_LEVEL_CROSS      | All zero crossings                  | +1 for positive zero crossings and -1 for negative zero crossings |

## NOTES ON USE

The destination and source array pointers can point to the same array.

The pointer to previous source data value parameter should be set to zero prior to calling this function, it is used to carry the data over array boundaries.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDS\_ZeroCrossingDetect, SDA\_FirstZeroCrossingLocation,  
SDA\_ZeroCrossingCount, SDA\_LevelCrossingDetect, SDS\_LevelCrossingDetect,  
SDA\_FirstLevelCrossingLocation, SDA\_LevelCrossingCount.



## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData\_t SDS\_ZeroCrossingDetect (const SLData\_t,           Source sample  
                                   SLData\_t \*,                   Previous source data value pointer  
                                   const enum SLLevelCrossingMode\_t)   Level crossing type - +ve, -ve, both

## DESCRIPTION

This function returns zero if no zero crossing is detected and returns the zero crossings according to the SLLevelCrossingMode\_t parameter as follows:

|                             |                                     |   |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------------------|---|
| SIGLIB_POSITIVE_LEVEL_CROSS | Negative to positive zero crossings | +1  |
| SIGLIB_NEGATIVE_LEVEL_CROSS | Positive to negative zero crossings | -1  |
| SIGLIB_ALL_LEVEL_CROSS      | All zero crossings                  | +1 for positive zero crossings and -1 for negative zero crossings |

## NOTES ON USE

The pointer to previous source data value parameter should be set to zero prior to calling this function, it is used to carry the data over subsequent calls to this function.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_ZeroCrossingDetect, SDA\_FirstZeroCrossingLocation,  
 SDA\_ZeroCrossingCount, SDA\_LevelCrossingDetect, SDS\_LevelCrossingDetect,  
 SDA\_FirstLevelCrossingLocation, SDA\_LevelCrossingCount.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLFixData\_t SDA\_FirstZeroCrossingLocation (const SLData\_t \*, Source array  
 pointer  
     SLData\_t \*, Previous source data value pointer  
     const enum SLLevelCrossingMode\_t, Level crossing type - +ve, -ve, both  
     const SLArrayIndex\_t) Array length

## DESCRIPTION

This function returns the location of the first sample after the signal has crossed zero according to the SLLevelCrossingMode\_t parameter as follows:

|                             |                                     |   |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------------------|---|
| SIGLIB_POSITIVE_LEVEL_CROSS | Negative to positive zero crossings | +1  |
| SIGLIB_NEGATIVE_LEVEL_CROSS | Positive to negative zero crossings | -1  |
| SIGLIB_ALL_LEVEL_CROSS      | All zero crossings                  | +1 for positive zero crossings and -1 for negative zero crossings |

## NOTES ON USE

The pointer to previous source data value parameter should be set to zero prior to calling this function and is used to carry the data over array boundaries.

This function returns SIGLIB\_LEVEL\_CROSSING\_NOT\_DETECTED if no zero crossings have been detected.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_ZeroCrossingDetect, SDS\_ZeroCrossingDetect,  
 SDA\_ZeroCrossingCount, SDA\_LevelCrossingDetect, SDS\_LevelCrossingDetect,  
 SDA\_FirstLevelCrossingLocation, SDA\_LevelCrossingCount.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLFixData_t SDA_ZeroCrossingCount (const SLData_t *, Source array pointer
                                   SLData_t *,           Previous source data value pointer
                                   const enum SLLevelCrossingMode_t, Level crossing type - +ve, -ve, both
                                   const SLArrayIndex_t)      Array length
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function returns the number of zero crossings in the source array. The zero crossings are detected according to the SLLevelCrossingMode\_t parameter as follows:

|                             |                                     |   |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------------------|---|
| SIGLIB_POSITIVE_LEVEL_CROSS | Negative to positive zero crossings | +1  |
| SIGLIB_NEGATIVE_LEVEL_CROSS | Positive to negative zero crossings | -1  |
| SIGLIB_ALL_LEVEL_CROSS      | All zero crossings                  | +1 for positive zero crossings and -1 for negative zero crossings |

## NOTES ON USE

The pointer to previous source data value parameter should be set to zero prior to calling this function, it is used to carry the data over array boundaries.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_ZeroCrossingDetect, SDS\_ZeroCrossingDetect, SDA\_FirstZeroCrossingLocation, SDA\_LevelCrossingDetect, SDS\_LevelCrossingDetect, SDA\_FirstLevelCrossingLocation, SDA\_LevelCrossingCount.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLFixData_t SDA_LevelCrossingDetect (const SLData_t *,   Source array pointer
                                     SLData_t *,         Destination array pointer
                                     SLData_t *,         Previous source data value pointer
                                     const enum SLLevelCrossingMode_t, Level crossing type - +ve, -ve, both
                                     const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function returns the number of level crossings in the source array and sets the values in the destination array to level except where a level crossing is detected in the input array. The level crossings are detected according to the SLLevelCrossingMode\_t parameter as follows:

|                             |                                     |   |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------------------|---|
| SIGLIB_POSITIVE_LEVEL_CROSS | Negative to positive zero crossings | +1  |
| SIGLIB_NEGATIVE_LEVEL_CROSS | Positive to negative zero crossings | -1  |
| SIGLIB_ALL_LEVEL_CROSS      | All zero crossings                  | +1 for positive zero crossings and -1 for negative zero crossings |

## NOTES ON USE

The destination and source array pointers can point to the same array.

The pointer to previous source data value parameter should be set to zero prior to calling this function, it is used to carry the data over array boundaries.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_ZeroCrossingDetect, SDS\_ZeroCrossingDetect, SDA\_FirstZeroCrossingLocation, SDA\_ZeroCrossingCount, SDS\_LevelCrossingDetect, SDA\_FirstLevelCrossingLocation, SDA\_LevelCrossingCount.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData\_t SDS\_LevelCrossingDetect (const SLData\_t,      Source sample  
SLData\_t \*,      Previous source data value pointer  
const enum SLLevelCrossingMode\_t)      Level crossing type - +ve, -ve, both

## DESCRIPTION

This function returns zero if no level crossing is detected and returns the level crossings according to the SLLevelCrossingMode\_t parameter as follows:

|                             |                                     |   |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------------------|---|
| SIGLIB_POSITIVE_LEVEL_CROSS | Negative to positive zero crossings | +1  |
| SIGLIB_NEGATIVE_LEVEL_CROSS | Positive to negative zero crossings | -1  |
| SIGLIB_ALL_LEVEL_CROSS      | All zero crossings                  | +1 for positive zero crossings and -1 for negative zero crossings |

## NOTES ON USE

The pointer to previous source data value parameter should be set to zero prior to calling this function, it is used to carry the data over subsequent calls to this function.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_ZeroCrossingDetect, SDS\_ZeroCrossingDetect,  
SDA\_FirstZeroCrossingLocation, SDA\_ZeroCrossingCount,  
SDA\_LevelCrossingDetect, SDA\_FirstLevelCrossingLocation,  
SDA\_LevelCrossingCount.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLFixData\_t SDA\_FirstLevelCrossingLocation (const SLData\_t \*, Source array pointer  
SLData\_t \*, Previous source data value pointer  
const enum SLLevelCrossingMode\_t, Level crossing type - +ve, -ve, both  
const SLArrayIndex\_t) Array length

## DESCRIPTION

This function returns the location of the first sample after the signal has crossed the given level according to the SLLevelCrossingMode\_t parameter as follows:

|                             |                                     |   |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------------------|---|
| SIGLIB_POSITIVE_LEVEL_CROSS | Negative to positive zero crossings | +1  |
| SIGLIB_NEGATIVE_LEVEL_CROSS | Positive to negative zero crossings | -1  |
| SIGLIB_ALL_LEVEL_CROSS      | All zero crossings                  | +1 for positive zero crossings and -1 for negative zero crossings |

## NOTES ON USE

The pointer to previous source data value parameter should be set to zero prior to calling this function and is be used to carry the data over array boundaries.

This function returns SIGLIB\_LEVEL\_CROSSING\_NOT\_DETECTED if no level crossings have been detected.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_ZeroCrossingDetect, SDS\_ZeroCrossingDetect,  
SDA\_FirstZeroCrossingLocation, SDA\_ZeroCrossingCount,  
SDA\_LevelCrossingDetect, SDS\_LevelCrossingDetect, SDA\_LevelCrossingCount.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLFixData_t SDA_LevelCrossingCount (const SLData_t *,Source array pointer
    SLData_t *,                Previous source data value pointer
    const enum SLLevelCrossingMode_t,  Level crossing type - +ve, -ve, both
    const SLArrayIndex_t)          Array length
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function returns the number of level crossings in the source array. The level crossings are detected according to the SLLevelCrossingMode\_t parameter as follows:

|                             |                                     |   |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------------------|---|
| SIGLIB_POSITIVE_LEVEL_CROSS | Negative to positive zero crossings | +1  |
| SIGLIB_NEGATIVE_LEVEL_CROSS | Positive to negative zero crossings | -1  |
| SIGLIB_ALL_LEVEL_CROSS      | All zero crossings                  | +1 for positive zero crossings and -1 for negative zero crossings |

## NOTES ON USE

The pointer to previous source data value parameter should be set to zero prior to calling this function, it is used to carry the data over array boundaries.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_ZeroCrossingDetect, SDS\_ZeroCrossingDetect,  
SDA\_FirstZeroCrossingLocation, SDA\_ZeroCrossingCount,  
SDA\_LevelCrossingDetect, SDS\_LevelCrossingDetect,  
SDA\_FirstLevelCrossingLocation.

### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLArrayIndex\_t SDA\_ClearLocation (SLData\_t \*, Array pointer  
const SLArrayIndex\_t, Location to clear  
const SLArrayIndex\_t) Array length

### DESCRIPTION

This function sets the data at the required location to zero.

### NOTES ON USE

### CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_SetLocation



**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
SLArrayIndex_t SDA_SetLocation (SLData_t *,    Array pointer  
    const SLArrayIndex_t,        Location to set  
    const SLData_t              Value to write to array  
    const SLArrayIndex_t)        Array length
```

**DESCRIPTION**

This function sets the data at the required location to the provided value.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_ClearLocation

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLArrayIndex\_t SDA\_SortMinToMax (const SLData\_t \*, Source array pointer  
SLData\_t \*, Destination array pointer  
const SLArrayIndex\_t) Array length

**DESCRIPTION**

This function sorts the data in the array, according to value. The order of the data in the returned array is minimum first, maximum last.

This function uses the bubble sorting algorithm.

**NOTES ON USE**

The destination and source array pointers can point to the same array.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_SortMaxToMin, SDA\_SortMinToMax2, SDA\_SortMaxToMin2,  
SDA\_SortIndexed.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLArrayIndex\_t SDA\_SortMaxToMin (const SLData\_t \*, Source array pointer  
SLData\_t \*, Destination array pointer  
const SLArrayIndex\_t) Array length

**DESCRIPTION**

This function sorts the data in the array, according to value. The order of the data in the returned array is maximum first, minimum last.

This function uses the bubble sorting algorithm.

**NOTES ON USE**

The destination and source array pointers can point to the same array.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_SortMinToMax, SDA\_SortMinToMax2, SDA\_SortMaxToMin2,  
SDA\_SortIndexed.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLArrayIndex_t SDA_SortMinToMax2 (const SLData_t *, Source array pointer #1  
    const SLData_t *,           Source array pointer #2  
    SLData_t *,                 Destination array pointer #1  
    SLData_t *,                 Destination array pointer #2  
    const SLArrayIndex_t)       Array length
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function sorts the data in the array, according to value. The order of the data in the returned array is minimum first, maximum last.

This function performs the same operation on both source arrays. This can be helpful if you want to use the second array to generate an index array for applying the same sorting algorithm to further arrays.

This function uses the bubble sorting algorithm.

## NOTES ON USE

The destination and source array pointers can point to the same array.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_SortMinToMax, SDA\_SortMaxToMin, SDA\_SortMaxToMin2,  
SDA\_SortIndexed.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
SLArrayIndex_t SDA_SortMaxToMin2 (const SLData_t *, Source array pointer #1
    const SLData_t *,           Source array pointer #2
    SLData_t *,                 Destination array pointer #1
    SLData_t *,                 Destination array pointer #2
    const SLArrayIndex_t)       Array length
```

**DESCRIPTION**

This function sorts the data in the array, according to value. The order of the data in the returned array is maximum first, minimum last.

This function performs the same operation on both source arrays. This can be helpful if you want to use the second array to generate an index array for applying the same sorting algorithm to further arrays.

This function uses the bubble sorting algorithm.

**NOTES ON USE**

The destination and source array pointers can point to the same array.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_SortMinToMax, SDA\_SortMaxToMin, SDA\_SortMinToMax2,  
SDA\_SortIndexed.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLArrayIndex\_t SDA\_SortIndexed (const SLData\_t \*,      Source array pointer  
   const SLArrayIndex\_t \*,      Index Array Pointer  
   SLData\_t \*,      Destination array pointer  
   const SLArrayIndex\_t)      Array length

**DESCRIPTION**

This function sorts the data in the array, using the index array to provide the output location for the sample.

**NOTES ON USE**

This function will not work in-place.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_SortMinToMax, SDA\_SortMaxToMin, SDA\_SortMinToMax2,  
SDA\_SortMaxToMin2.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLFixData\_t SDS\_CountOneBits (const SLFixData\_t)      Input word

**DESCRIPTION**

This function counts the number of “one” bits in the input data word.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDS\_CountZeroBits, SDS\_CountLeadingOneBits,  
SDS\_CountLeadingZeroBits.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLFixData\_t SDS\_CountZeroBits (const SLFixData\_t)      Input word

**DESCRIPTION**

This function counts the number of “zero” bits in the input data word.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDS\_CountOneBits, SDS\_CountLeadingOneBits,  
SDS\_CountLeadingZeroBits.



### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLFixData\_t SDS\_CountLeadingOneBits (const SLFixData\_t)     Input word

### DESCRIPTION

This function counts the number of leading “one” bits in the input data word.

### NOTES ON USE

### CROSS REFERENCE

SDS\_CountOneBits, SDS\_CountZeroBits, SDS\_CountLeadingZeroBits.

### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLFixData\_t SDS\_CountLeadingZeroBits (const SLFixData\_t)    Input word

### DESCRIPTION

This function counts the number of leading “zero” bits in the input data word.

### NOTES ON USE

### CROSS REFERENCE

SDS\_CountOneBits, SDS\_CountZeroBits, SDS\_CountLeadingOneBits.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|                                  |                           |
|----------------------------------|---------------------------|
| void SDA_Sign (const SLData_t *, | Source array pointer      |
| SLData_t *,                      | Destination array pointer |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)            | Sample array length       |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function returns the sign of the values in the source vector. I.E:

if  $x(n) > 1.0$  then  $y(n) = 1.0$   
if  $x(n) < -1.0$  then  $y(n) = -1.0$   
else  $y(n) = 0.0$

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|                            |                        |
|----------------------------|------------------------|
| void SDA_Swap (SLData_t *, | Source array pointer 1 |
| SLData_t *,                | Source array pointer 2 |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)      | Sample array length    |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function swaps the elements in each array.

|                           |
|---------------------------|
| Source1[0] <-> Source2[0] |
| Source1[2] <-> Source2[1] |
| .                         |
| .                         |
| Source1[N] <-> Source2[N] |

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLFixData\_t SUF\_ModuloIncrement (const SLPixData\_t, Input value  
const SLPixData\_t, Increment value  
const SLPixData\_t) Modulo value

### DESCRIPTION

This function increments the fixed point value using modulo N arithmetic.

### NOTES ON USE

### CROSS REFERENCE

SUF\_ModuloDecrement, SUF\_IndexModuloIncrement,  
SUF\_IndexModuloDecrement

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLFixData\_t SUF\_ModuloDecrement (const SLFixData\_t, Input value  
const SLFixData\_t, Decrement value  
const SLFixData\_t) Modulo value

**DESCRIPTION**

This function decrements the fixed point value using modulo N arithmetic.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SUF\_ModuloIncrement, SUF\_IndexModuloIncrement,  
SUF\_IndexModuloDecrement

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLFixData\_t SUF\_IndexModuloIncrement (const SLArrayIndex\_t, Input value  
const SLArrayIndex\_t, Increment value  
const SLArrayIndex\_t) Modulo value

**DESCRIPTION**

This function increments the fixed point array index value using modulo N arithmetic.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SUF\_IndexModuloDecrement, SUF\_ModuloIncrement,  
SUF\_ModuloDecrement

### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|             |   |                 |
|-------------|---|-----------------|
| SLFixData_t | SUF_IndexModuloDecrement (const SLArrayIndex_t, | Input value     |
|             | const SLArrayIndex_t,                           | Decrement value |
|             | const SLArrayIndex_t)                           | Modulo value    |

### DESCRIPTION

This function decrements the fixed point array index value using modulo N arithmetic.

### NOTES ON USE

### CROSS REFERENCE

SUF\_IndexModuloIncrement, SUF\_ModuloIncrement,  
SUF\_ModuloDecrement



## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLArrayIndex_t SDA_Find (const SLData_t *,      Pointer to source array
                        SLData_t *,             Pointer to data destination array
                        SLArrayIndex_t *,        Pointer to location destination array
                        const enum SLFindType_t, Find type
                        const SLArrayIndex_t)    Array length
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function locates all the values in the source array that match the specification in 'FindType'. The type options are:

```
SIGLIB_FIND_GREATER_THAN_ZERO
SIGLIB_FIND_GREATER_THAN_OR_EQUAL_TO_ZERO
SIGLIB_FIND_EQUAL_TO_ZERO
SIGLIB_FIND_LESS_THAN_ZERO
SIGLIB_FIND_LESS_THAN_OR_EQUAL_TO_ZERO
SIGLIB_FIND_NOT_EQUAL_TO_ZERO
```

When the function locates a value in the source array it writes the value to the data destination array and the index of the value to the location destination array.

This function returns the number of elements of the given type that have been found.

## NOTES ON USE

The output array length will be variable, dependent on the source data. The safest way to use this function is to allocate the destination arrays to have the same input lengths as the source array.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_FindValue

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|   |                                       |
|---|---------------------------------------|
| SLArrayIndex_t SDA_FindValue (const SLData_t *, | Pointer to source array               |
| const SLData_t,                                 | Desired value                         |
| SLData_t *,                                     | Pointer to data destination array     |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                               | Pointer to location destination array |
| const enum SLFindType_t,                        | Find type                             |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)                           | Array length                          |

## DESCRIPTION

This function locates all the values in the source array that match the desired value and the specification in 'FindType'. The type options are:

```
SIGLIB_FIND_GREATER_THAN_ZERO  
SIGLIB_FIND_GREATER_THAN_OR_EQUAL_TO_ZERO  
SIGLIB_FIND_EQUAL_TO_ZERO  
SIGLIB_FIND_LESS_THAN_ZERO  
SIGLIB_FIND_LESS_THAN_OR_EQUAL_TO_ZERO  
SIGLIB_FIND_NOT_EQUAL_TO_ZERO
```

When the function locates a value in the source array it writes the value to the data destination array and the index of the value to the location destination array.

This function returns the number of elements of the given type that have been found.

## NOTES ON USE

The output array length will be variable, dependent on the source data. The safest way to use this function is to allocate the destination arrays to have the same input lengths as the source array.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_Find

#### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|                                      |   |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| void SIF_DeGlitch (SLArrayIndex_t *, | Count of number of samples out of range |
| SLData_t,                            | Initial level holdover                  |
| SLData_t *)                          | Current level holdover                  |

#### DESCRIPTION

This function initializes the de-glitch / de-bounce functions.

#### NOTES ON USE

The de-glitch functions hold over the existing signal level when the input signal crosses the threshold level for less than a specified number of samples.

#### CROSS REFERENCE

SDS\_DeGlitch, SDA\_DeGlitch

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|                                  |   |
|----------------------------------|---|
| SLData_t SDS_DeGlitch (SLData_t, | Source sample                           |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                | Count of number of samples out of range |
| const enum SLDeGlitchMode_t,     | Switch to indicate de-glitch mode       |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,            | Glitch length threshold                 |
| const SLData_t,                  | Glitch level threshold                  |
| SLData_t *)                      | Current level holdover                  |

## DESCRIPTION

This function performs a de-glitch / de-bounce function on the source data, on a per sample basis.

## NOTES ON USE

The de-glitch functions hold over the existing signal level when the input signal crosses the threshold level for less than a specified number of samples.

The de-glitch mode parameter has the following options:

|                       |  |
|-----------------------|--|
| SIGLIB_DEGLITCH_ABOVE | Check for glitches above the threshold level           |
| SIGLIB_DEGLITCH_BOTH  | Check for glitches above and below the threshold level |
| SIGLIB_DEGLITCH_BELOW | Check for glitches below the threshold level           |

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_DeGlitch, SDA\_DeGlitch

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|                                |   |
|--------------------------------|---|
| void SDA_DeGlitch (SLData_t *, | Pointer to source array                 |
| SLData_t *,                    | Pointer to destination array            |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,              | Count of number of samples out of range |
| const enum SLDeGlitchMode_t,   | Switch to indicate de-glitch mode       |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,          | Glitch length threshold                 |
| const SLData_t,                | Glitch level threshold                  |
| SLData_t *,                    | Current level holdover                  |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)          | Array length                            |

## DESCRIPTION

This function performs a de-glitch / de-bounce function on the source data, on an array basis. This function works across array boundaries

## NOTES ON USE

The de-glitch functions hold over the existing signal level when the input signal crosses the threshold level for less than a specified number of samples.

The de-glitch mode parameter has the following options:

|                       |  |
|-----------------------|--|
| SIGLIB_DEGLITCH_ABOVE | Check for glitches above the threshold level           |
| SIGLIB_DEGLITCH_BOTH  | Check for glitches above and below the threshold level |
| SIGLIB_DEGLITCH_BELOW | Check for glitches below the threshold level           |

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_DeGlitch, SDS\_DeGlitch

### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLArrayIndex\_t SDA\_RemoveDuplicates (const SLData\_t \*, Pointer to source array  
SLData\_t \*, Pointer to destination array  
const SLArrayIndex\_t) Source array length

### DESCRIPTION

This function removes duplicate entries from an array. The entries in the destination array appear in the order they were in the source array.

Return value: Number of elements in destination array.

### NOTES ON USE

The order of the data is unchanged.

Result array length will be shorter than or equal to the length of the source array.

### CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_FindAllDuplicates, SDA\_FindFirstDuplicates,  
SDA\_FindSortAllDuplicates, SDA\_FindSortFirstDuplicates

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|   |                              |
|---|------------------------------|
| SLArrayIndex_t SDA_FindAllDuplicates (const SLData_t *, | Ptr to src array 1           |
| const SLData_t *,                                       | Pointer to source array 2    |
| SLData_t *,   | Pointer to destination array |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                                   | Source array length 1        |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)                                   | Source array length 2        |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function searches the first array for all values that are entries in the second array.

Return value: Number of elements in destination array.

**NOTES ON USE**

The order of the data in the result array will appear in the order of the entries in the first array.

Result array length will be shorter than or equal to the length of the first source array.

Duplicate numbers in the first array will be duplicated in the result array.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_RemoveDuplicates, SDA\_FindFirstDuplicates,  
SDA\_FindSortAllDuplicates, SDA\_FindSortFirstDuplicates

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLArrayIndex\_t SDA\_FindFirstDuplicates (const SLData\_t \*,     Ptr to src array 1  
const SLData\_t \*,     Pointer to source array 2  
SLData\_t \*,     Pointer to destination array  
const SLArrayIndex\_t,     Source array length 1  
const SLArrayIndex\_t)     Source array length 2

**DESCRIPTION**

This function searches the first array for all values that are entries in the second array.

Return value: Number of elements in destination array.

**NOTES ON USE**

The order of the data in the result array will appear in the order of the entries in the first array.

Result array length will be shorter than or equal to the length of the first source array.

Duplicate numbers in the first array will be removed from the result array so that values only appear once.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_RemoveDuplicates, SDA\_FindAllDuplicates,  
SDA\_FindSortAllDuplicates, SDA\_FindSortFirstDuplicates



**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLArrayIndex\_t SDA\_FindSortAllDuplicates (const SLData\_t \*, Ptr. to src. array 1  
const SLData\_t \*, Pointer to source array 2  
SLData\_t \*, Pointer to destination array  
const SLArrayIndex\_t, Source array length 1  
const SLArrayIndex\_t) Source array length 2

**DESCRIPTION**

This function searches the first array for all values that are entries in the second array and sorts them in order minimum to maximum.

Return value: Number of elements in destination array.

**NOTES ON USE**

The order of the data in the result array will sorted from the smallest to largest magnitude.

Result array length will be shorter than or equal to the length of the first source array.

Duplicate numbers in the first array will be duplicated in the result array.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_RemoveDuplicates, SDA\_FindAllDuplicates,  
SDA\_FindFirstDuplicates, SDA\_FindSortFirstDuplicates

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLArrayIndex\_t SDA\_FindSortFirstDuplicates (const SLData\_t \*, Ptr to src array 1  
const SLData\_t \*, Pointer to source array 2  
SLData\_t \*, Pointer to destination array  
const SLArrayIndex\_t, Source array length 1  
const SLArrayIndex\_t) Source array length 2

**DESCRIPTION**

This function searches the first array for all values that are entries in the second array and sorts them in order minimum to maximum.

Return value: Number of elements in destination array.

**NOTES ON USE**

The order of the data in the result array will sorted from the smallest to largest magnitude.

Result array length will be shorter than or equal to the length of the first source array.

Duplicate numbers in the first array will be removed from the result array so that values only appear once.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_RemoveDuplicates, SDA\_FindAllDuplicates,  
SDA\_FindFirstDuplicates, SDA\_FindSortAllDuplicates

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|                                     |                              |
|-------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| void SDA_Shuffle (const SLData_t *, | Pointer to source array      |
| SLData_t *,                         | Pointer to destination array |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)               | Source array length          |

## DESCRIPTION

This function shuffles the order of the data in the array.

## NOTES ON USE

As the size of the array approaches RAND\_MAX, the result becomes less random. The solution is to use a better random number generator or call the function multiple times.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SMX\_ShuffleColumns, SMX\_ShuffleRows

### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_InsertSample (const SLData_t *, Pointer to source array
    const SLData_t,           New sample
    SLData_t *,               Pointer to destination array
    const SLArrayIndex_t,     New sample location
    const SLArrayIndex_t)     Source array length
```

### DESCRIPTION

This function inserts the sample into the array, at the given location, and shifts all the data to the right of this location right by one sample.

### NOTES ON USE

This function can work in-place. I.E. the source and destination pointers can point to the same array.

### CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_InsertArray, SDA\_ExtractSample, SDA\_ExtractArray

### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|   |                              |
|---|------------------------------|
| void SDA_InsertArray (const SLData_t *, | Pointer to source array      |
| const SLData_t *,                       | Pointer to new sample array  |
| SLData_t *,                             | Pointer to destination array |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                   | New sample location          |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                   | New sample array length      |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)                   | Source array length          |

### DESCRIPTION

This function inserts the array of samples into the source array, at the given location, and shifts all the data to the right of this location right by number of new samples.

### NOTES ON USE

This function can work in-place. I.E. the source and destination pointers can point to the same array.

### CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_InsertSample, SDA\_ExtractSample, SDA\_ExtractArray

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLData\_t SDA\_ExtractSample (const SLData\_t \*, Pointer to source array  
SLData\_t \*, Pointer to destination array  
const SLArrayIndex\_t, New sample location  
const SLArrayIndex\_t) Source array length

**DESCRIPTION**

This function extracts a single sample from the array, at the given location, and shifts all the data to the right of this location left by one sample.

The extracted value is function's return value.

**NOTES ON USE**

This function can work in-place. I.E. the source and destination pointers can point to the same array.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_InsertSample, SDA\_InsertArray, SDA\_ExtractArray

### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_ExtractArray (const SLData_t *, Pointer to source array
    SLData_t *,           Pointer to destination array
    SLData_t *,           Pointer to extracted sample array
    const SLArrayIndex_t, Extracted sample location
    const SLArrayIndex_t, Extracted sample array length
    const SLArrayIndex_t) Source array length
```

### DESCRIPTION

This function extracts the array of samples from the array, at the given location, and shifts all the data to the right of the extracted array left by the number of extracted samples.

### NOTES ON USE

This function can work in-place. I.E. the source and destination pointers can point to the same array.

### CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_InsertSample, SDA\_InsertArray, SDA\_ExtractSample

## DATA TYPE CONVERSION FUNCTIONS (*datatype.c*)

### SDA\_SigLibDataToFix

#### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_SigLibDataToFix (const SLData_t *,    Source array pointer
                          SLFixData_t *,      Destination array pointer
                          const SLArrayIndex_t) Sample array length
```

#### DESCRIPTION

This function converts the input native SigLib data type to the native SigLib fixed point data type.

#### NOTES ON USE

This function uses rounding to nearest integer value to avoid floating point to fixed point conversion issues.

#### CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_FixToSigLibData, SDA\_SigLibDataToImageData,  
SDA\_ImageDataToSigLibData, SDA\_Fix16ToSigLibData,  
SDA\_SigLibDataToFix16, SDA\_Fix32ToSigLibData, SDA\_SigLibDataToFix32,  
SDS\_QFormatIntegerToSigLibData, SDS\_SigLibDataToQFormatInteger,  
SDA\_QFormatIntegerToSigLibData, SDA\_SigLibDataToQFormatInteger.



**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
void SDA_FixToSigLibData (const SLFixData_t *, Source array pointer
                          SLData_t *,           Destination array pointer
                          const SLArrayIndex_t) Sample array length
```

**DESCRIPTION**

This function converts the input native SigLib fixed point data type to the native SigLib data type.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_SigLibDataToFix, SDA\_SigLibDataToImageData,  
SDA\_ImageDataToSigLibData, SDA\_Fix16ToSigLibData,  
SDA\_SigLibDataToFix16, SDA\_Fix32ToSigLibData, SDA\_SigLibDataToFix32,  
SDS\_QFormatIntegerToSigLibData, SDS\_SigLibDataToQFormatInteger,  
SDA\_QFormatIntegerToSigLibData, SDA\_SigLibDataToQFormatInteger.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
void SDA_SigLibDataToImageData (const SLData_t *,    Source array pointer
                                SLFixData_t *,        Destination array pointer
                                const SLArrayIndex_t)  Sample array length
```

**DESCRIPTION**

This function converts the input native SigLib data type to the native SigLib image data type.

**NOTES ON USE**

It is assumed that the image data type will be fixed point so this function uses rounding to nearest integer value to avoid floating point to fixed point conversion issues.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_SigLibDataToFix, SDA\_FixToSigLibData,  
SDA\_ImageDataToSigLibData, SDA\_Fix16ToSigLibData,  
SDA\_SigLibDataToFix16, SDA\_Fix32ToSigLibData, SDA\_SigLibDataToFix32,  
SDS\_QFormatIntegerToSigLibData, SDS\_SigLibDataToQFormatInteger,  
SDA\_QFormatIntegerToSigLibData, SDA\_SigLibDataToQFormatInteger.

### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_ImageDataToSigLibData (const SLFixData_t *, Source array pointer
                                SLData_t *,           Destination array pointer
                                const SLArrayIndex_t)  Sample array length
```

### DESCRIPTION

This function converts the input native SigLib image data type to the native SigLib data type.

### NOTES ON USE

### CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_SigLibDataToFix, SDA\_FixToSigLibData,  
SDA\_SigLibDataToImageData, SDA\_Fix16ToSigLibData,  
SDA\_SigLibDataToFix16, SDA\_Fix32ToSigLibData, SDA\_SigLibDataToFix32,  
SDS\_QFormatIntegerToSigLibData, SDS\_SigLibDataToQFormatInteger,  
SDA\_QFormatIntegerToSigLibData, SDA\_SigLibDataToQFormatInteger.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
void SDA_SigLibDataToFix16 (SLData_t *,           Pointer to source array
                           SLInt16_t *,         Pointer to destination array
                           const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length
```

**DESCRIPTION**

This function converts the input native SigLib fixed point data type to 16 bit (short) fixed point data.

**NOTES ON USE**

This function uses rounding to nearest integer value to avoid floating point to fixed point conversion issues.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_SigLibDataToFix, SDA\_FixToSigLibData,  
SDA\_SigLibDataToImageData, SDA\_ImageDataToSigLibData,  
SDA\_Fix16ToSigLibData, SDA\_SigLibDataToFix32, SDA\_Fix32ToSigLibData,  
SDS\_QFormatIntegerToSigLibData, SDS\_SigLibDataToQFormatInteger,  
SDA\_QFormatIntegerToSigLibData, SDA\_SigLibDataToQFormatInteger.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
void SDA_Fix16ToSigLibData (SLInt16_t *,      Pointer to source array
                           SLData_t *,        Pointer to destination array
                           const SLArrayIndex_t)  Array length
```

**DESCRIPTION**

This function converts the input 16 bit (short) fixed point data type to the native SigLib data type.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_SigLibDataToFix, SDA\_FixToSigLibData,  
SDA\_SigLibDataToImageData, SDA\_ImageDataToSigLibData,  
SDA\_SigLibDataToFix16, SDA\_SigLibDataToFix32, SDA\_Fix32ToSigLibData,  
SDS\_QFormatIntegerToSigLibData, SDS\_SigLibDataToQFormatInteger,  
SDA\_QFormatIntegerToSigLibData, SDA\_SigLibDataToQFormatInteger.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
void SDA_SigLibDataToFix32 (SLData_t *,           Pointer to source array
                           SLInt32_t *,         Pointer to destination array
                           const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length
```

**DESCRIPTION**

This function converts the input native SigLib fixed point data type to 32 bit (long) fixed point data.

**NOTES ON USE**

This function uses rounding to nearest integer value to avoid floating point to fixed point conversion issues.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_SigLibDataToFix, SDA\_FixToSigLibData,  
SDA\_SigLibDataToImageData, SDA\_ImageDataToSigLibData,  
SDA\_SigLibDataToFix16, SDA\_Fix16ToSigLibData, SDA\_Fix32ToSigLibData,  
SDS\_QFormatIntegerToSigLibData, SDS\_SigLibDataToQFormatInteger,  
SDA\_QFormatIntegerToSigLibData, SDA\_SigLibDataToQFormatInteger.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
void SDA_Fix32ToSigLibData (SLInt32_t *,      Pointer to source array
                           SLData_t *,        Pointer to destination array
                           const SLArrayIndex_t)  Array length
```

**DESCRIPTION**

This function converts the input 32 bit (long) fixed point data type to the native SigLib data type.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_SigLibDataToFix, SDA\_FixToSigLibData,  
SDA\_SigLibDataToImageData, SDA\_ImageDataToSigLibData,  
SDA\_SigLibDataToFix16, SDA\_Fix16ToSigLibData, SDA\_SigLibDataToFix32,  
SDS\_QFormatIntegerToSigLibData, SDS\_SigLibDataToQFormatInteger,  
SDA\_QFormatIntegerToSigLibData, SDA\_SigLibDataToQFormatInteger.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLFixData\_t SDS\_SigLibDataToQFormatInteger (const SLData\_t x,   Source value  
          const SLFixData\_t,                    m  
          const SLFixData\_t)                    n

**DESCRIPTION**

This function converts the SigLib native data to Q format fixed point data type m.n.

**NOTES ON USE**

For run time optimization reasons this function does not check the fixed point word length so it is important to ensure that the sum of m+n is <= to the fixed point word length.

The macro SIGLIB\_FIX\_WORD\_LENGTH provides the fixed point word length.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_SigLibDataToFix, SDA\_FixToSigLibData,  
SDA\_SigLibDataToImageData, SDA\_ImageDataToSigLibData,  
SDA\_SigLibDataToFix16, SDA\_Fix16ToSigLibData, SDA\_SigLibDataToFix32,  
SDA\_Fix32ToSigLibData, SDS\_QFormatIntegerToSigLibData,  
SDA\_QFormatIntegerToSigLibData, SDA\_SigLibDataToQFormatInteger.



### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData\_t SDS\_QFormatIntegerToSigLibData (const SLFixData\_t, Q format integer data  
const SLFixData\_t) n

### DESCRIPTION

This function converts the Q format fixed point data type m.n to SigLib native data.

### NOTES ON USE

### CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_SigLibDataToFix, SDA\_FixToSigLibData,  
SDA\_SigLibDataToImageData, SDA\_ImageDataToSigLibData,  
SDA\_SigLibDataToFix16, SDA\_Fix16ToSigLibData, SDA\_SigLibDataToFix32,  
SDA\_Fix32ToSigLibData, SDS\_SigLibDataToQFormatInteger,  
SDA\_QFormatIntegerToSigLibData, SDA\_SigLibDataToQFormatInteger.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
void SDA_SigLibDataToQFormatInteger (const SLData_t *, Pointer to source array
    SLFixData_t *,           Pointer to destination array
    const SLFixData_t,       m
    const SLFixData_t,       n
    const SLArrayIndex_t)    Array length
```

**DESCRIPTION**

This function converts the SigLib native data to Q format fixed point data type m.n.

**NOTES ON USE**

For run time optimization reasons this function does not check the fixed point word length so it is important to ensure that the sum of m+n is  $\leq$  to the fixed point word length.

The macro SIGLIB\_FIX\_WORD\_LENGTH provides the fixed point word length.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_SigLibDataToFix, SDA\_FixToSigLibData,  
SDA\_SigLibDataToImageData, SDA\_ImageDataToSigLibData,  
SDA\_SigLibDataToFix16, SDA\_Fix16ToSigLibData, SDA\_SigLibDataToFix32,  
SDA\_Fix32ToSigLibData, SDS\_QFormatIntegerToSigLibData,  
SDS\_SigLibDataToQFormatInteger, SDA\_QFormatIntegerToSigLibData.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

void SDA\_QFormatIntegerToSigLibData (const SLFixData\_t \*, Pointer to source array  
SLData\_t \*, Pointer to destination array  
const SLFixData\_t, m  
const SLArrayIndex\_t) Array length

**DESCRIPTION**

This function converts the Q format fixed point data type m.n to SigLib native data.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_SigLibDataToFix, SDA\_FixToSigLibData,  
SDA\_SigLibDataToImageData, SDA\_ImageDataToSigLibData,  
SDA\_SigLibDataToFix16, SDA\_Fix16ToSigLibData, SDA\_SigLibDataToFix32,  
SDA\_Fix32ToSigLibData, SDS\_QFormatIntegerToSigLibData,  
SDS\_SigLibDataToQFormatInteger, SDA\_SigLibDataToQFormatInteger.

#### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|                               |                           |
|-------------------------------|---------------------------|
| void SDS_Pid (const SLData_t, | Proportional constant     |
| const SLData_t,               | Integral constant         |
| const SLData_t,               | Differential constant     |
| const SLData_t,               | Error                     |
| SLData_t *,                   | Control signal            |
| SLData_t *,                   | Previous error            |
| SLData_t *)                   | Previous error difference |

#### DESCRIPTION

This function calculates the control signal required, as calculated from the proportional, integral and differential coefficients and the system error. The error being the difference between the set point and the current system output (the reset).

The function SDS\_Pid accepts a pointer to the control signal as a parameter and does not return the control signal.

#### NOTES ON USE

Allowance must be made in the coefficients, for the system sample period, this is not done in this implementation of the PID process, for computational efficiency. Some common methods of specifying the PI and D coefficients assume that the integral and differential parts of the function inherently allow for the sample period. To convert incompatible coefficients to the SigLib format, it is only necessary to multiply the integral coefficient by the sample period and to divide the differential coefficient by the sample period.

The control signal, previous error and previous error difference parameters should be initialised to SIGLIB\_ZERO in the calling function.

#### CROSS REFERENCE

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|                                 |                            |
|---------------------------------|----------------------------|
| void SDA_Pwm (const SLData_t *, | Source array pointer       |
| SLData_t *,                     | Destination array pointer  |
| SLData_t *,                     | Ramp array pointer         |
| SLData_t *,                     | Ramp phase array pointer   |
| const SLData_t,                 | Pulse repetition frequency |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)           | Array length               |

## DESCRIPTION

This function generates a pulse width modulated signal from the modulating input signal. The pulse repetition frequency is set via the appropriate parameter.

## NOTES ON USE

## CROSS REFERENCE

## ORDER ANALYSIS FUNCTIONS (*order.c*)

These functions provide a suite of functionality for analyzing the orders of signals.

---

### SDA\_ExtractOrder

#### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|  |                                      |
|--|--------------------------------------|
| SLData_t SDA_ExtractOrder (const SLData_t *, | Pointer to source array              |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                        | Order to extract                     |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                        | Number of adjacent samples to search |
| const SLData_t,                              | First order frequency                |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                        | FFT length                           |
| const SLData_t,                              | Sample period = 1/(Sample rate)      |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)                        | Input array length                   |

#### DESCRIPTION

This function extracts the order results from a re-ordered array. The “Order to extract” parameter specifies which order to extract. The function scans the specified number of adjacent samples and returns the peak value. The “First order frequency” parameter specifies which FFT bin contains the desired first order signal.

#### NOTES ON USE

#### CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_SumLevel, SDA\_SumLevelWholeSpectrum, SIF\_OrderAnalysis,  
SDA\_OrderAnalysis.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|  |                         |
|--|-------------------------|
| SLData_t SDA_SumLevel (const SLData_t *, | Pointer to source array |
| const enum SLSignalCoherenceType_t,      | Signal source type      |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                    | Log magnitude flag      |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)                    | Input array length      |

## DESCRIPTION

This function sums the magnitudes of the 5 largest orders. The signal coherence type specifies whether the signal is of type:

SIGLIB\_SIGNAL\_COHERENT,  
SIGLIB\_SIGNAL\_INCOHERENT

The “Log magnitude flag” specifies whether the input data is in linear or dB format.

## NOTES ON USE

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_ExtractOrder, SDA\_SumLevelWholeSpectrum, SIF\_OrderAnalysis,  
SDA\_OrderAnalysis.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLData\_t SDA\_SumLevelWholeSpectrum (const SLData\_t \*,     Ptr. to src. array  
const enum SLSignalCoherenceType\_t,     Signal coherence type  
const SLArrayIndex\_t,     Log magnitude flag  
const SLData\_t,     Linear scaling value  
const SLArrayIndex\_t)     Input array length

**DESCRIPTION**

This function sums the magnitudes of the whole spectrum. The signal coherence type specifies whether the signal is of type:

SIGLIB\_SIGNAL\_COHERENT,  
SIGLIB\_SIGNAL\_INCOHERENT

The “Log magnitude flag” specifies whether the input data is in linear or dB format. The linear scaling value specifies a scaling for the linear output.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_ExtractOrder, SDA\_SumLevel, SIF\_OrderAnalysis, SDA\_OrderAnalysis.



## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|                                     |                                      |
|-------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| void SIF_OrderAnalysis (SLData_t *, | Pointer to sinc LUT array            |
| SLData_t *,                         | Pointer to phase gain                |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,               | Number of adjacent samples           |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,               | Look up table length                 |
| SLData_t *,                         | Window coefficients pointer          |
| const enum SLWindow_t,              | Window type                          |
| const SLData_t,                     | Window coefficient                   |
| SLData_t *,                         | Window inverse coherent gain         |
| SLData_t *,                         | Pointer to FFT coefficients          |
| SLArrayIndex_t *,                   | Pointer to bit reverse address table |
| SLData_t *,                         | Pointer to real average array        |
| SLData_t *,                         | Pointer to imaginary average array   |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)               | FFT Size                             |

## DESCRIPTION

This function initializes the order analysis function SDA\_OrderAnalysis.

Order analysis is implemented by re-sampling the input data using a  $\sin(x)/x$  re-sampling algorithm. It then windows the data and performs an FFT. For further information, please refer to the documentation for the following functions:

- SDA\_ResampleSinc
- SDA\_Window
- SDA\_Rfft

## NOTES ON USE

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_ExtractOrder, SDA\_SumLevel, SDA\_SumLevelWholeSpectrum,  
SDA\_OrderAnalysis.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```

SLData_t SDA_OrderAnalysis (const SLData_t *,   Pointer to source array
    SLData_t *,                               Pointer to local processing array
    SLData_t *,                               Pointer to destination array
    const SLData_t *,                         Pointer to LUT array
    const SLData_t,                           Look up table phase gain
    const SLData_t,                           First order frequency
    const SLData_t,                           Speed - revolutions per second
    const SLArrayIndex_t,                     Number of adjacent samples for
interpolation
    SLData_t *,                               Pointer to window coefficients
    const SLData_t,                           Window inverse coherent gain
    SLData_t *,                               Pointer to FFT coefficients
    SLArrayIndex_t *,                         Pointer to bit reverse address table
    SLData_t *,                               Pointer to real average array
    SLData_t *,                               Pointer to imaginary average array
    const SLArrayIndex_t,                     Log magnitude flag
    SLData_t *,                               Pointer to order array
    const SLArrayIndex_t,                     Base order
    const SLArrayIndex_t,                     Number of orders to extract
    const SLArrayIndex_t,                     Number of adjacent samples
    const SLData_t,                           Sample period
    const enum SLSignalCoherenceType_t,       Signal coherence type for
summing orders
    const SLData_t,                           dB scaling value
    const SLArrayIndex_t,                     Number of orders to sum
    const SLArrayIndex_t,                     Source array length
    const SLArrayIndex_t,                     FFT length
    const SLArrayIndex_t)                     log2 FFT length

```

## DESCRIPTION

This function performs order analysis on the input data. The signal coherence type specifies whether the signal is of type:

```

SIGLIB_SIGNAL_COHERENT
SIGLIB_SIGNAL_INCOHERENT

```

The “Log magnitude flag” specifies whether the input data is in linear or dB format. The dB scaling value specifies a scaling for the dB output.

The “First order frequency” parameter specifies the frequency of the first order. The “Base order” parameter specifies the first order to extract and the “Number of orders to extract” specifies how many orders. For example, if the “Base order” is 10 and the “Number of orders to extract” is 5 then the orders extracted are 10, 20, 30, 40 and 50.

## NOTES ON USE

The function `SIF_OrderAnalysis` must be called prior to calling this function.

## CROSS REFERENCE

`SDA_ExtractOrder`, `SDA_SumLevel`, `SDA_SumLevelWholeSpectrum`,  
`SIF_OrderAnalysis`.

## STATISTICS FUNCTIONS (*stats.c*)

### SDA\_Sum

---

#### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|                                     |                      |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------|
| SLData_t SDA_Sum (const SLData_t *, | Source array pointer |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)               | Array length         |

#### DESCRIPTION

This function sums all the points in the array.

#### NOTES ON USE

#### CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_SumOfSquares, SDA\_AbsSum, SDA\_Mean, SDA\_SampleSd,  
SDA\_PopulationSd, SDA\_UnbiasedVariance, SDA\_Median.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLData\_t SDA\_AbsSum (const SLData\_t \*, Source array pointer  
const SLArrayIndex\_t)                      Array length

**DESCRIPTION**

This function sums all the absolute values of all the points in the array.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_Sum, SDA\_SumOfSquares, SDA\_Mean, SDA\_SampleSd, SDA\_PopulationSd,  
SDA\_UnbiasedVariance, SDA\_Median.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLData\_t SDA\_SumOfSquares (const SLData\_t \*, Source array Pointer  
const SLArrayIndex\_t) Array length

**DESCRIPTION**

This function sums the squares of all the points in the array. This function is often used to calculate the energy of a signal.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_Sum, SDA\_AbsSum, SDA\_Mean, SDA\_SampleSd, SDA\_PopulationSd,  
SDA\_UnbiasedVariance, SDA\_Median.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLData_t SDA_Mean (const SLData_t *,   Pointer to source array
                  const SLData_t,      Inverse of array length
                  const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function calculates the arithmetic mean (also known as the average value) of all the points in the array, using the following equation:

$$\bar{x} = \frac{\sum (x)}{N}$$

## NOTES ON USE

The “inverse of array length” parameter is used to avoid having to perform a divide operation within the function. This improves run-time performance.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_Sum, SDA\_AbsSum, SDA\_AbsMean, SDA\_SubtractMean,  
SDA\_SampleSd, SDA\_PopulationSd, SDA\_UnbiasedVariance, SDA\_Median.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLData_t SDA_AbsMean (const SLData_t *,      Pointer to source array
                      const SLData_t,        Inverse of array length
                      const SLArrayIndex_t)   Array length
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function calculates the arithmetic mean (also known as the average value) of the absolute values of all the points in the array, using the following equation:

$$\bar{x} = \frac{\sum (|x|)}{N}$$

## NOTES ON USE

The “inverse of array length” parameter is used to avoid having to perform a divide operation within the function. This improves run-time performance.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_Sum, SDA\_AbsSum, SDA\_Mean, SDA\_SubtractMean,  
SDA\_SampleSd, SDA\_PopulationSd, SDA\_UnbiasedVariance, SDA\_Median.



## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLData_t SDA_SubtractMean (const SLData_t *,   Pointer to source array
                           SLData_t *,         Pointer to destination array
                           const SLData_t,      Inverse of array length
                           const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function calculates the arithmetic mean (also known as the average value) of all the points in the array, using the following equation:

$$\bar{x} = \frac{\sum(x)}{n}$$

Then subtract this value from all of the points in the array.

## NOTES ON USE

The “inverse of array length” parameter is used to avoid having to perform a divide operation within the function. This improves run-time performance.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_Sum, SDA\_AbsSum, SDA\_Mean, SDA\_SampleSd, SDA\_PopulationSd, SDA\_UnbiasedVariance, SDA\_Median, SDA\_SubtractMax.

### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLData_t SDA_SubtractMax (const SLData_t *,    Pointer to source array
                          SLData_t *,          Pointer to destination array
                          const SLArrayIndex_t)  Array length
```

### DESCRIPTION

This function calculates the arithmetic maximum value of all the points in the source array then subtract this value from all of the points in the array.

### NOTES ON USE

### CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_Sum, SDA\_AbsSum, SDA\_Mean, SDA\_SampleSd,  
SDA\_PopulationSd, SDA\_UnbiasedVariance, SDA\_Median, SDA\_SubtractMean.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData\_t SDA\_SampleSd (const SLData\_t \*,       Source array pointer  
                          const SLArrayIndex\_t)       Array length

## DESCRIPTION

This function calculates the sample standard deviation of all the points in the array, using the following equation:

$$SD(n-1) = \sqrt{\frac{\sum x^2 - \frac{(\sum x)^2}{n}}{n-1}}$$

## NOTES ON USE

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_Sum, SDA\_AbsSum, SDA\_Mean, SDA\_PopulationSd,  
SDA\_UnbiasedVariance, SDA\_Median.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData\_t SDA\_PopulationSd (const SLData\_t \*,   Source array Pointer  
                               const SLArrayIndex\_t)         Array length

## DESCRIPTION

This function calculates the population standard deviation of all the points in the array, using the following equation:

$$SD(n) = \sqrt{\frac{\sum x^2 - \frac{(\sum x)^2}{n}}{n}}$$

## NOTES ON USE

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_Sum, SDA\_AbsSum, SDA\_Mean, SDA\_SampleSd,  
 SDA\_UnbiasedVariance, SDA\_Median.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLData\_t SDA\_UnbiasedVariance (const SLData\_t \*,      Source array Pointer  
   const SLArrayIndex\_t)      Array length

**DESCRIPTION**

This function calculates the unbiased variance of all the points in the array, by squaring the sample standard deviation.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_Sum, SDA\_AbsSum, SDA\_Mean, SDA\_SampleSd,  
SDA\_PopulationSd, SDA\_Median.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
SLData_t SDA_Median (const SLData_t *, Source array pointer
                     SLData_t *,       Working array pointer
                     const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length
```

**DESCRIPTION**

This function calculates the median value of all the points in the array.

**NOTES ON USE**

The working array must be the same length as the input array.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_Sum, SDA\_AbsSum, SDA\_Mean, SDA\_SampleSd,  
SDA\_PopulationSd.

## REGRESSION ANALYSIS FUNCTIONS (*regress.c*)

### SDA\_LinraConstantCoeff

#### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData\_t SDA\_LinraConstantCoeff (const SLData\_t \*,   X array pointer  
                                  const SLData\_t \*,       Y array pointer  
                                  const SLArrayIndex\_t)   Array length

#### DESCRIPTION

This function calculates the constant coefficient for a linear regression series.

Assuming the data can be modelled according to:

$$y = Mx + C$$

Gives:

$$C = \frac{\text{sum}(y) - M * \text{sum}(x)}{n}$$

#### NOTES ON USE

#### CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_LinraRegressionCoeff, SDA\_LinraCorrelationCoeff,  
SDA\_LinraEstimateX, SDA\_LinraEstimateY.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData\_t SDA\_LinraRegressionCoeff (const SLData\_t \*, X array pointer  
const SLData\_t \*, Y array pointer  
const SLArrayIndex\_t) Array length

## DESCRIPTION

This function calculates the regression coefficient for a linear regression series.

Assuming the data can be modelled according to:

$$y = Mx + C$$

Gives:

$$M = \frac{n * \text{sum}(x.y) - \text{sum}(x) * \text{sum}(y)}{n * \text{sum}(x^2) - (\text{sum}(x))^2}$$

## NOTES ON USE

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_LinraConstantCoeff, SDA\_LinraCorrelationCoeff,  
SDA\_LinraEstimateX, SDA\_LinraEstimateY.



## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData\_t SDA\_LinraCorrelationCoeff (const SLData\_t \*, X array pointer  
const SLData\_t \*, Y array pointer  
const SLArrayIndex\_t) Array length

## DESCRIPTION

This function calculates the correlation coefficient for a linear regression series.

Assuming the data can be modelled according to:

$$y = Mx + C$$

Gives:

$$r = \frac{n * \text{sum}(x,y) - \text{sum}(x) * \text{sum}(y)}{\sqrt{(n * \text{sum}(x^2) - (\text{sum}(x))^2) * (n * \text{sum}(y^2) - (\text{sum}(y))^2)}}$$

## NOTES ON USE

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_LinraConstantCoeff, SDA\_LinraRegressionCoeff,  
SDA\_LinraEstimateX, SDA\_LinraEstimateY.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData\_t SDA\_LinraEstimateX (const SLData\_t \*,           X array pointer  
                               const SLData\_t \*,           Y array pointer  
                               const SLData\_t,            Y value  
                               const SLArrayIndex\_t)       Array length

## DESCRIPTION

This function estimates the X value for a given Y for a linear regression series.

Assuming the data can be modelled according to:

$$y = Mx + C$$

Gives:

$$x = \frac{y - C}{M}$$

## NOTES ON USE

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_LinraConstantCoeff, SDA\_LinraRegressionCoeff,  
 SDA\_LinraCorrelationCoeff, SDA\_LinraEstimateY.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLData_t SDA_LinraEstimateY (const SLData_t *,      X array pointer
                             const SLData_t *,      Y array pointer
                             const SLData_t,        X value
                             const SLArrayIndex_t)  Array length
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function estimates the Y value for a given X for a linear regression series.

Assuming the data can be modelled according to:

$$y = Mx + C$$

## NOTES ON USE

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_LinraConstantCoeff, SDA\_LinraRegressionCoeff,  
SDA\_LinraCorrelationCoeff, SDA\_LinraEstimateX.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLData_t SDA_LograConstantCoeff (const SLData_t *,    X array pointer
                                const SLData_t *,      Y array pointer
                                const SLArrayIndex_t)   Array length
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function calculates the constant coefficient for a logarithmic regression series.

Assuming the data can be modelled according to:

$$y = M \cdot \ln(x) + C$$

Gives:

$$C = \frac{\text{sum}(y) - M * \text{sum}(\ln(x))}{n}$$

## NOTES ON USE

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_LograRegressionCoeff, SDA\_LograCorrelationCoeff,  
SDA\_LograEstimateX, SDA\_LograEstimateY.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData\_t SDA\_LograRegressionCoeff (const SLData\_t \*,           X array pointer  
const SLData\_t \*,           Y array pointer  
const SLArrayIndex\_t)       Array length

## DESCRIPTION

This function calculates the regression coefficient for a logarithmic regression series.

Assuming the data can be modelled according to:

$$y = M \cdot \ln(x) + C$$

Gives:

$$M = \frac{n * \sum(\ln(x) \cdot y) - \sum(\ln(x)) * \sum(y)}{n * \sum(\ln(x)^2) - (\sum(\ln(x)))^2}$$

## NOTES ON USE

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_LograConstantCoeff, SDA\_LograCorrelationCoeff,  
SDA\_LograEstimateX, SDA\_LograEstimateY.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData\_t SDA\_LograCorrelationCoeff (const SLData\_t \*, X array pointer  
const SLData\_t \*, Y array pointer  
const SLArrayIndex\_t) Array length

## DESCRIPTION

This function calculates the correlation coefficient for a logarithmic regression series.

Assuming the data can be modelled according to:

$$y = M \cdot \ln(x) + C$$

Gives:

$$r = \frac{n * \text{sum}(\ln(x).y) - \text{sum}(\ln(x)) * \text{sum}(y)}{\sqrt{n * \text{sum}(\ln(x)^2) - (\text{sum}(\ln(x)))^2 * n * \text{sum}(y^2) - (\text{sum}(y))^2}}$$

## NOTES ON USE

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_LograConstantCoeff, SDA\_LograRegressionCoeff,  
SDA\_LograEstimateX, SDA\_LograEstimateY.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData\_t SDA\_LograEstimateX (const SLData\_t \*,           X array pointer  
                                   const SLData\_t \*,           Y array pointer  
                                   const SLData\_t,            Y value  
                                   const SLArrayIndex\_t)       Array length

## DESCRIPTION

This function estimates the X value for a given Y for a logarithmic regression series.

Assuming the data can be modelled according to:

$$y = M \cdot \ln(x) + C$$

Gives:

$$x = e^{\left(\frac{y-C}{M}\right)}$$

## NOTES ON USE

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_LograConstantCoeff, SDA\_LograRegressionCoeff,  
 SDA\_LograCorrelationCoeff, SDA\_LograEstimateY.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData\_t SDA\_LograEstimateY (const SLData\_t \*,           X array pointer  
          const SLData\_t \*,                    Y array pointer  
          const SLData\_t,                    X value  
          const SLArrayIndex\_t)            Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function estimates the Y value for a given X for a logarithmic regression series.

Assuming the data can be modelled according to:

$$y = M.\ln(x) + C$$

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_LograConstantCoeff, SDA\_LograRegressionCoeff,  
SDA\_LograCorrelationCoeff, SDA\_LograEstimateX.



## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData\_t SDA\_ExpraConstantCoeff (const SLData\_t \*, X array pointer  
const SLData\_t \*, Y array pointer  
const SLArrayIndex\_t) Array length

## DESCRIPTION

This function calculates the constant coefficient for an exponential regression series.

Assuming the data can be modelled according to:

$$y = C * e^{M*x}$$

Gives:

$$C = \frac{\sum(\ln(y)) - M * \sum(x)}{n}$$

## NOTES ON USE

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_ExpraRegressionCoeff, SDA\_ExpraCorrelationCoeff,  
SDA\_ExpraEstimateX, SDA\_ExpraEstimateY.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData\_t SDA\_ExptraRegressionCoeff (const SLData\_t \*, X array pointer  
const SLData\_t \*, Y array pointer  
const SLArrayIndex\_t) Array length

## DESCRIPTION

This function calculates the regression coefficient for an exponential regression series.

Assuming the data can be modelled according to:

$$y = C * e^{M*x}$$

Gives:

$$M = \frac{n * \text{sum}(x.\ln(y)) - \text{sum}(x) * \text{sum}(\ln(y))}{n * \text{sum}(x) - (\text{sum}(x))^2}$$

## NOTES ON USE

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_ExptraConstantCoeff, SDA\_ExptraCorrelationCoeff,  
SDA\_ExptraEstimateX, SDA\_ExptraEstimateY.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData\_t SDA\_ExptraCorrelationCoeff (const SLData\_t \*, X array pointer  
const SLData\_t \*, Y array pointer  
const SLArrayIndex\_t) Array length

## DESCRIPTION

This function calculates the correlation coefficient for an exponential regression series.

Assuming the data can be modelled according to:

$$y = C * e^{M*x}$$

Gives:

$$r = \frac{n * \text{sum}(x \cdot \ln(y)) - \text{sum}(x) * \text{sum}(\ln(y))}{\sqrt{(n * \text{sum}(x^2) - (\text{sum}(x))^2) * (n * \text{sum}(\ln(y)^2) - (\text{sum}(\ln(y)))^2)}}$$

## NOTES ON USE

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_ExptraConstantCoeff, SDA\_ExptraRegressionCoeff,  
SDA\_ExptraEstimateX, SDA\_ExptraEstimateY.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData\_t SDA\_ExptraEstimateX (const SLData\_t \*,       X array pointer  
                                   const SLData\_t \*,       Y array pointer  
                                   const SLData\_t,         Y value  
                                   const SLArrayIndex\_t)     Array length

## DESCRIPTION

This function estimates the X value for a given Y for an exponential regression series.

Assuming the data can be modelled according to:

$$y = C * e^{M * x}$$

Gives:

$$x = \frac{\ln(x) - C}{M}$$

## NOTES ON USE

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_ExptraConstantCoeff, SDA\_ExptraRegressionCoeff,  
 SDA\_ExptraCorrelationCoeff, SDA\_ExptraEstimateY.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData\_t SDA\_ExptraEstimateY (const SLData\_t \*,           X array pointer  
          const SLData\_t \*,                            Y array pointer  
          const SLData\_t,                             X value  
          const SLArrayIndex\_t)                     Array length

DESCRIPTION

This function estimates the Y value for a given X for an exponential regression series.

Assuming the data can be modelled according to:

$$y = C * e^{M * x}$$

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_ExptraConstantCoeff, SDA\_ExptraRegressionCoeff,  
SDA\_ExptraCorrelationCoeff, SDA\_ExptraEstimateX.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData\_t SDA\_PowraConstantCoeff (const SLData\_t \*, X array pointer  
const SLData\_t \*, Y array pointer  
const SLArrayIndex\_t) Array length

## DESCRIPTION

This function calculates the constant coefficient for a power regression series.

Assuming the data can be modelled according to:

$$y = Cx^M$$

Gives:

$$C = \frac{\sum(\ln(y)) - M * \sum(\ln(x))}{n}$$

## NOTES ON USE

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_PowraRegressionCoeff, SDA\_PowraCorrelationCoeff,  
SDA\_PowraEstimateX, SDA\_PowraEstimateY.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData\_t SDA\_PowraRegressionCoeff (const SLData\_t \*,           X array pointer  
   const SLData\_t \*,           Y array pointer  
   const SLArrayIndex\_t)       Array length

## DESCRIPTION

This function calculates the regression coefficient for a power regression series.

Assuming the data can be modelled according to:

$$y = Cx^M$$

Gives:

$$M = \frac{n * \text{sum}(\ln(x) * \ln(y)) - \text{sum}(\ln(x)) * \text{sum}(\ln(y))}{n * \text{sum}(\ln(x)) - (\text{sum}(\ln(x)))^2}$$

## NOTES ON USE

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_PowraConstantCoeff, SDA\_PowraCorrelationCoeff,  
 SDA\_PowraEstimateX, SDA\_PowraEstimateY.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData\_t SDA\_PowraCorrelationCoeff (const SLData\_t \*,           X array pointer  
   const SLData\_t \*,           Y array pointer  
   const SLArrayIndex\_t)       Array length

## DESCRIPTION

This function calculates the correlation coefficient for a power regression series.

Assuming the data can be modelled according to:

$$y = Cx^M$$

Gives:

$$r = \frac{n * \text{sum}(\ln(x) \cdot \ln(y)) - \text{sum}(\ln(x)) * \text{sum}(\ln(y))}{\sqrt{(n * \text{sum}(\ln(x)^2) - (\text{sum}(\ln(x)))^2) * (n * \text{sum}(\ln(y)^2) - (\text{sum}(\ln(y)))^2)}}$$

## NOTES ON USE

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_PowraConstantCoeff, SDA\_PowraRegressionCoeff,  
 SDA\_PowraEstimateX, SDA\_PowraEstimateY.



## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLData_t SDA_PowraEstimateX (const SLData_t *,      X array pointer
                             const SLData_t *,      Y array pointer
                             const SLData_t,         Y value
                             const SLArrayIndex_t)   Array length
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function estimates the X value for a given Y for a power regression series.

Assuming the data can be modelled according to:

$$y = Cx^M$$

Gives:

$$x = \left( \frac{\ln(y) - C}{M} \right)$$

## NOTES ON USE

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_PowraConstantCoeff, SDA\_PowraRegressionCoeff,  
SDA\_PowraCorrelationCoeff, SDA\_PowraEstimateY.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLData_t SDA_PowraEstimateY (const SLData_t *,      X array pointer
                             const SLData_t *,      Y array pointer
                             const SLData_t,         X value
                             const SLArrayIndex_t)   Array length
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function estimates the Y value for a given X for a power regression series.

Assuming the data can be modelled according to:

$$y = Cx^M$$

## NOTES ON USE

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_PowraConstantCoeff, SDA\_PowraRegressionCoeff,  
SDA\_PowraCorrelationCoeff, SDA\_PowraEstimateX.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|                                     |                                    |
|-------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| void SDA_Detrend (const SLData_t *, | Source array pointer               |
| SLData_t *,                         | Destination array pointer          |
| SLData_t *,                         | Ramp array pointer                 |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)               | Source / destination array lengths |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function uses the equation  $y = M.x + C$  to generate the best straight-line fit to the data in the source array, this is then removed from the data before writing the results to the destination array.

**NOTES ON USE**

The Ramp array is used internally and is the same length as the source / destination arrays.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_ExtractTrend.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
void SDA_ExtractTrend (const SLData_t *, Source array pointer
    SLData_t *,           Destination array pointer
    SLData_t *,           Ramp array pointer
    const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length
```

**DESCRIPTION**

This function uses the equation  $y = M.x + C$  to generate the best straight-line fit to the data in the source array, this is then written to the destination array.

**NOTES ON USE**

The first iteration of this function and any where the vector length increases will take longer than subsequent iterations because a reference vector needs to be allocated memory and initialised. If execution time is important then this function can be called during the application initialisation process to initialise the largest array possible.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_Detrend.

#### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|                                     |                           |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| SLData_t SDA_Sin (const SLData_t *, | Source array pointer      |
| SLData_t *,                         | Destination array pointer |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)               | Array length              |

#### DESCRIPTION

This function returns the sine of all the values in the array.

#### NOTES ON USE

#### CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_Cos, SDA\_Tan, SIF\_FastSin, SIF\_FastCos, SIF\_FastSinCos,  
SIF\_FastTan.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|                                     |                           |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| SLData_t SDA_Cos (const SLData_t *, | Source array pointer      |
| SLData_t *,                         | Destination array pointer |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)               | Array length              |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function returns the cosine of all the values in the array.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_Sin, SDA\_Tan, SIF\_FastSin, SIF\_FastCos, SIF\_FastSinCos,  
SIF\_FastTan.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|                                     |                           |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| SLData_t SDA_Tan (const SLData_t *, | Source array pointer      |
| SLData_t *,                         | Destination array pointer |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)               | Array length              |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function returns the tangent of all the values in the array.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_Sin, SDA\_Cos, SIF\_FastSin, SIF\_FastCos, SIF\_FastSinCos,  
SIF\_FastTan.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|  |   |
|--|---|
| SLData_t SIF_FastSin (SLData_t *,<br>const SLArrayIndex_t) | Fast sine look up table array pointer<br>Table length |
|--|---|

**DESCRIPTION**

This function initializes the fast sine look up table.

**NOTES ON USE**

The array contains one complete cycle of a sine wave (0 to  $2\pi$ ), with N samples.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_FastSin, SDS\_FastSin, SIF\_FastCos, SDA\_FastCos, SDS\_FastCos,  
SIF\_FastSinCos, SDA\_FastSinCos, SDS\_FastSinCos, SIF\_FastTan.



**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|                                     |                                |
|-------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| void SDA_FastSin (const SLData_t *, | Sine table pointer             |
| SLData_t *,                         | Sine wave destination pointer  |
| SLData_t *,                         | Sine table phase               |
| const SLData_t,                     | Sine wave frequency            |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,               | Sine wave look up table length |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)               | Sample array size              |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function uses the fast sine look up table to generate a sine wave. This function is used to generate continuous sinusoidal waveforms, for example in modulation and demodulation functions. If you wish to use a look up table to calculate a quick approximation to sine ( $\theta$ ) then you should use the SDA\_QuickSin function.

**NOTES ON USE**

The function SIF\_FastSin must be called prior to calling this function.

This function operates on an array oriented basis.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SIF\_FastSin, SDS\_FastSin, SIF\_FastCos, SDA\_FastCos, SDS\_FastCos,  
SIF\_FastSinCos, SDA\_FastSinCos, SDS\_FastSinCos, SIF\_FastTan.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLData_t SDS_FastSin (const SLData_t *, Sine table pointer
                      SLData_t *,       Sine table phase
                      const SLData_t,    Sine wave frequency
                      const SLArrayIndex_t) Sine wave look up table length
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function uses the fast sine look up table to generate a sine wave. This function is used to generate continuous sinusoidal waveforms, for example in modulation and demodulation functions. If you wish to use a look up table to calculate a quick approximation to sine ( $\theta$ ) then you should use the SDS\_QuickSin function.

## NOTES ON USE

The function SIF\_FastSin must be called prior to calling this function.

This function operates on a per-sample oriented basis.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_FastSin, SDA\_FastSin, SIF\_FastCos, SDA\_FastCos, SDS\_FastCos,  
SIF\_FastSinCos, SDA\_FastSinCos, SDS\_FastSinCos, SIF\_FastTan.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|                                   |   |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| SLData_t SIF_FastCos (SLData_t *, | Fast cosine look up table array pointer |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)             | Table length                            |

## DESCRIPTION

This function initializes the fast cosine look up table.

## NOTES ON USE

The array contains one complete cycle of a cosine wave (0 to  $2\pi$ ), with N samples.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_FastSin, SDA\_FastSin, SDS\_FastSin, SDA\_FastCos, SDS\_FastCos,  
SIF\_FastSinCos, SDA\_FastSinCos, SDS\_FastSinCos, SIF\_FastTan.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|                                     |                                  |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| void SDA_FastCos (const SLData_t *, | Cosine table pointer             |
| SLData_t *,                         | Cosine wave destination pointer  |
| SLData_t *,                         | Cosine table phase               |
| const SLData_t,                     | Cosine wave frequency            |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,               | Cosine wave look up table length |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)               | Sample array size                |

## DESCRIPTION

This function uses the fast cosine look up table to generate a cosine wave. This function is used to generate continuous co-sinusoidal waveforms, for example in modulation and demodulation functions. If you wish to use a look up table to calculate a quick approximation to cosine ( $\theta$ ) then you should use the SDA\_QuickCos function.

## NOTES ON USE

The function SIF\_FastCos must be called prior to calling this function.

This function operates on an array oriented basis.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_FastSin, SDA\_FastSin, SDS\_FastSin, SIF\_FastCos, SDS\_FastCos,  
SIF\_FastSinCos, SDA\_FastSinCos, SDS\_FastSinCos, SIF\_FastTan.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLData_t SDS_FastCos (const SLData_t *, Cosine table pointer
                      SLData_t *,           Cosine table phase
                      const SLData_t,       Cosine wave frequency
                      const SLArrayIndex_t) Cosine wave look up table length
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function uses the fast cosine look up table to generate a cosine wave. This function is used to generate continuous co-sinusoidal waveforms, for example in modulation and demodulation functions. If you wish to use a look up table to calculate a quick approximation to cosine ( $\theta$ ) then you should use the SDS\_QuickCos function.

## NOTES ON USE

The function SIF\_FastCos must be called prior to calling this function.

This function operates on a per-sample oriented basis.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_FastSin, SDA\_FastSin, SDS\_FastSin, SIF\_FastCos, SDA\_FastCos, SIF\_FastSinCos, SDA\_FastSinCos, SDS\_FastSinCos, SIF\_FastTan.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLData\_t SIF\_FastSinCos (SLData\_t \*,      Fast sine look up table array pointer  
                              const SLArrayIndex\_t)      Sinusoid period

**DESCRIPTION**

This function initializes the fast overlapped sine and cosine look up table.

**NOTES ON USE**

The array contains one and a quarter complete cycle of a sine wave (0 to  $(5 * \pi)/2$ ), with  $5*N/4$  samples. You are advised to use the macro:  
SUF\_FastSinCosArrayAllocate () to allocate the look up table to use with this function.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SIF\_FastSin, SDA\_FastSin, SDS\_FastSin, SIF\_FastCos, SDA\_FastCos,  
SDS\_FastCos, SDA\_FastSinCos, SDS\_FastSinCos, SIF\_FastTan.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|  |                                 |
|--|---------------------------------|
| void SDA_FastSinCos (const SLData_t *, | Sine table pointer              |
| SLData_t *,                            | Sine wave destination pointer   |
| SLData_t *,                            | Cosine wave destination pointer |
| SLData_t *,                            | Sine table phase                |
| const SLData_t,                        | Sine wave frequency             |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                  | Sine wave period                |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)                  | Sample array size               |

## DESCRIPTION

This function uses the fast sine/cosine look up table to generate a sine and a cosine wave. This function is used to generate continuous sinusoidal and co-sinusoidal waveforms, for example in modulation and demodulation functions. If you wish to use a look up table to calculate a quick approximation to sine ( $\theta$ ) and cosine ( $\theta$ ) then you should use the SDA\_QuickSinCos function.

## NOTES ON USE

The function SIF\_FastSinCos must be called prior to calling this function.

This function operates on an array oriented basis.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_FastSin, SDA\_FastSin, SDS\_FastSin, SIF\_FastCos, SDA\_FastCos, SDS\_FastCos, SIF\_FastSinCos, SDS\_FastSinCos, SIF\_FastTan.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDS_FastSinCos (const SLData_t *,   Sine table pointer
                    SLData_t *,         Sine wave destination pointer
                    SLData_t *,         Cosine wave destination pointer
                    SLData_t *,         Sine table phase
                    const SLData_t,     Sine wave frequency
                    const SLArrayIndex_t) Sine wave period
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function uses the fast sine/cosine look up table to generate a sine and a cosine wave. This function is used to generate continuous sinusoidal and co-sinusoidal waveforms, for example in modulation and demodulation functions. If you wish to use a look up table to calculate a quick approximation to sine ( $\theta$ ) and cosine ( $\theta$ ) then you should use the SDS\_QuickSinCos function.

## NOTES ON USE

The function SIF\_FastSinCos must be called prior to calling this function.

This function operates on a per-sample oriented basis.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_FastSin, SDA\_FastSin, SDS\_FastSin, SIF\_FastCos, SDA\_FastCos, SDS\_FastCos, SIF\_FastSinCos, SDA\_FastSinCos, SIF\_FastTan.



## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|                                    |  |
|------------------------------------|--|
| SLData_t SIF_QuickSin (SLData_t *, | Quick sine look up table array pointer |
| SLData_t *,                        | Pointer to phase gain                  |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)              | Table length                           |

## DESCRIPTION

This function initializes the quick sine look up table.

## NOTES ON USE

The array contains one complete cycle of a sine wave (0 to  $2\pi$ ), with N samples.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_QuickSin, SDA\_QuickSin, SDS\_QuickSin, SIF\_QuickCos,  
SDA\_QuickCos, SDS\_QuickCos, SIF\_QuickSinCos, SDA\_QuickSinCos,  
SDS\_QuickSinCos, SIF\_QuickTan, SDA\_QuickTan, SDS\_QuickTan.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|                                      |                                      |
|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| void SDA_QuickSin (const SLData_t *, | Pointer to source array ( $\theta$ ) |
| const SLData_t *,                    | Sine table pointer                   |
| SLData_t *,                          | Destination pointer                  |
| SLData_t *,                          | Pointer to phase gain                |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)                | Sample array size                    |

## DESCRIPTION

This function uses the quick sine look up table to calculate sine ( $\theta$ ) for all of the values passed in the source array where  $\theta$  is in radians and can be any positive or negative real number. If you wish to use a look up table to calculate a continuous sinusoidal function, for example for a modulator or a demodulator, then you should use the SDA\_FastSin function.

## NOTES ON USE

The function SIF\_QuickSin must be called prior to calling this function.  
The phase gain parameter is used to locate the correct phase in the look up table, the value is set in the initialization function and should not be modified.  
This function operates on an array oriented basis.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_QuickSin, SDS\_QuickSin, SIF\_QuickCos, SDA\_QuickCos,  
SDS\_QuickCos, SIF\_QuickSinCos, SDA\_QuickSinCos, SDS\_QuickSinCos,  
SIF\_QuickTan.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLData_t SDS_QuickSin (const SLData_t,  Angle ( $\theta$ )
                        const SLData_t *,  Sine table pointer
                        SLData_t *)        Pointer to phase gain
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function uses the quick sine look up table to calculate sine ( $\theta$ ) for the input value where  $\theta$  is in radians and can be any positive or negative real number. If you wish to use a look up table to calculate a continuous sinusoidal function, for example for a modulator or a demodulator, then you should use the SDS\_FastSin function.

## NOTES ON USE

The function SIF\_QuickSin must be called prior to calling this function.  
The phase gain parameter is used to locate the correct phase in the look up table, the value is set in the initialization function and should not be modified.  
This function operates on a per-sample oriented basis.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_QuickSin, SDA\_QuickSin, SIF\_QuickCos, SDA\_QuickCos,  
SDS\_QuickCos, SIF\_QuickSinCos, SDA\_QuickSinCos, SDS\_QuickSinCos,  
SIF\_QuickTan.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|                                    |  |
|------------------------------------|--|
| SLData_t SIF_QuickCos (SLData_t *, | Quick cosine look up table array pointer |
| SLData_t *,                        | Pointer to phase gain                    |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)              | Table length                             |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function initializes the quick cosine look up table.

**NOTES ON USE**

The array contains one complete cycle of a cosine wave (0 to  $2\pi$ ), with N samples.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SIF\_QuickSin, SDA\_QuickSin, SDS\_QuickSin, SDA\_QuickCos,  
SDS\_QuickCos, SIF\_QuickSinCos, SDA\_QuickSinCos, SDS\_QuickSinCos,  
SIF\_QuickTan.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|                                      |                                      |
|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| void SDA_QuickCos (const SLData_t *, | Pointer to source array ( $\theta$ ) |
| const SLData_t *,                    | Cosine table pointer                 |
| SLData_t *,                          | Destination pointer                  |
| SLData_t *,                          | Pointer to phase gain                |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)                | Sample array size                    |

## DESCRIPTION

This function uses the quick cosine look up table to calculate cosine ( $\theta$ ) for all of the values passed in the source array where  $\theta$  is in radians and can be any positive or negative real number. If you wish to use a look up table to calculate a continuous co-sinusoidal function, for example for a modulator or a demodulator, then you should use the SDA\_FastCos function.

## NOTES ON USE

The function SIF\_QuickCos must be called prior to calling this function.  
The phase gain parameter is used to locate the correct phase in the look up table, the value is set in the initialization function and should not be modified.  
This function operates on an array oriented basis.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_QuickSin, SDA\_QuickSin, SDS\_QuickSin, SIF\_QuickCos,  
SDS\_QuickCos, SIF\_QuickSinCos, SDA\_QuickSinCos, SDS\_QuickSinCos,  
SIF\_QuickTan.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLData_t SDS_QuickCos (const SLData_t, Angle ( $\theta$ )
    const SLData_t *,          Cosine table pointer
    SLData_t *)                Pointer to phase gain
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function uses the quick cosine look up table to calculate cosine ( $\theta$ ) for the input value where  $\theta$  is in radians and can be any positive or negative real number. If you wish to use a look up table to calculate a continuous co-sinusoidal function, for example for a modulator or a demodulator, then you should use the SDS\_FastCos function.

## NOTES ON USE

The function SIF\_QuickCos must be called prior to calling this function.  
 The phase gain parameter is used to locate the correct phase in the look up table, the value is set in the initialization function and should not be modified.  
 This function operates on a per-sample oriented basis.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_QuickSin, SDA\_QuickSin, SDS\_QuickSin, SIF\_QuickCos,  
 SDA\_QuickCos, SIF\_QuickSinCos, SDA\_QuickSinCos, SDS\_QuickSinCos,  
 SIF\_QuickTan.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|                                       |  |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| SLData_t SIF_QuickSinCos (SLData_t *, | Quick sine look up table array pointer |
| SLData_t *,                           | Pointer to phase gain                  |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)                 | Sinusoid period                        |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function initializes the quick overlapped sine and cosine look up table.

**NOTES ON USE**

The array contains one and a quarter complete cycle of a sine wave (0 to  $(5 * \pi)/2$ ), with  $5 * N/4$  samples. You are advised to use the macro: `SUF_QuickSinCosArrayAllocate ()` to allocate the look up table to use with this function.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SIF\_QuickSin, SDA\_QuickSin, SDS\_QuickSin, SIF\_QuickCos,  
SDA\_QuickCos, SDS\_QuickCos, SDA\_QuickSinCos, SDS\_QuickSinCos,  
SIF\_QuickTan.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_QuickSinCos (const SLData_t *, Pointer to source array ( $\theta$ )
    const SLData_t *,           Sine table pointer
    SLData_t *,                 Sine destination array pointer
    SLData_t *,                 Cosine destination array pointer
    SLData_t *,                 Pointer to phase gain
    const SLArrayIndex_t,       Sine wave look up table period
    const SLArrayIndex_t)       Sample array size
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function uses the quick sine/cosine look up table to calculate sine ( $\theta$ ) and cosine ( $\theta$ ) for the input value where  $\theta$  is in radians and can be any positive or negative real number. If you wish to use a look up table to calculate a continuous sinusoidal and co-sinusoidal function, for example for a modulator or a demodulator, then you should use the SDA\_FastSinCos function.

## NOTES ON USE

The function SIF\_QuickSinCos must be called prior to calling this function.  
The phase gain parameter is used to locate the correct phase in the look up table, the value is set in the initialization function and should not be modified.  
This function operates on an array oriented basis.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_QuickSin, SDA\_QuickSin, SDS\_QuickSin, SIF\_QuickCos,  
SDA\_QuickCos, SDS\_QuickCos, SIF\_QuickSinCos, SDS\_QuickSinCos,  
SIF\_QuickTan.



## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDS_QuickSinCos (const SLData_t,    Angle ( $\theta$ )
                     const SLData_t *,   Sine table pointer
                     SLData_t *,         Sine destination sample pointer
                     SLData_t *,         Cosine destination sample pointer
                     SLData_t *,         Pointer to phase gain
                     const SLArrayIndex_t) Sine wave look up table period
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function uses the quick sine/cosine look up table to calculate sine ( $\theta$ ) and cosine ( $\theta$ ) for the input value where  $\theta$  is in radians and can be any positive or negative real number. If you wish to use a look up table to calculate a continuous sinusoidal and co-sinusoidal function, for example for a modulator or a demodulator, then you should use the SDS\_FastSinCos function.

## NOTES ON USE

The function SIF\_QuickSinCos must be called prior to calling this function.  
 The phase gain parameter is used to locate the correct phase in the look up table, the value is set in the initialization function and should not be modified.  
 This function operates on a per-sample oriented basis.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_QuickSin, SDA\_QuickSin, SDS\_QuickSin, SIF\_QuickCos,  
 SDA\_QuickCos, SDS\_QuickCos, SIF\_QuickSinCos, SDA\_QuickSinCos,  
 SIF\_QuickTan.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|                                    |   |
|------------------------------------|---|
| SLData_t SIF_QuickTan (SLData_t *, | Quick tangent look up table array pointer |
| SLData_t *,                        | Pointer to phase gain                     |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)              | Table length                              |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function initializes the quick tangent look up table.

**NOTES ON USE**

The array contains one complete cycle of a tangent wave (0 to  $2\pi$ ), with N samples.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SIF\_QuickSin, SDA\_QuickSin, SDS\_QuickSin, SIF\_QuickCos,  
SDA\_QuickCos, SDS\_QuickCos, SIF\_QuickSinCos, SDA\_QuickSinCos,  
SDS\_QuickSinCos.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|                                      |                                      |
|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| void SDA_QuickTan (const SLData_t *, | Pointer to source array ( $\theta$ ) |
| const SLData_t *,                    | Tangent table pointer                |
| SLData_t *,                          | Destination pointer                  |
| SLData_t *,                          | Pointer to phase gain                |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)                | Sample array size                    |

## DESCRIPTION

This function uses the quick tangent look up table to calculate tangent ( $\theta$ ) for all of the values passed in the source array where  $\theta$  is in radians and can be any positive or negative real number.

## NOTES ON USE

The function SIF\_QuickTan must be called prior to calling this function.  
The phase gain parameter is used to locate the correct phase in the look up table, the value is set in the initialization function and should not be modified.  
This function operates on an array oriented basis.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_QuickSin, SDS\_QuickSin, SIF\_QuickCos, SDA\_QuickCos,  
SDS\_QuickCos, SIF\_QuickSinCos, SDA\_QuickSinCos, SDS\_QuickSinCos,  
SIF\_QuickTan.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLData_t SDS_QuickTan (const SLData_t, Angle ( $\theta$ )
    const SLData_t *,      Tangent table pointer
    SLData_t *)            Pointer to phase gain
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function uses the quick tangent look up table to calculate tangent ( $\theta$ ) for the input value where  $\theta$  is in radians and can be any positive or negative real number.

## NOTES ON USE

The function SIF\_QuickTan must be called prior to calling this function.  
The phase gain parameter is used to locate the correct phase in the look up table, the value is set in the initialization function and should not be modified.  
This function operates on a per-sample oriented basis.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SIF\_QuickSin, SDA\_QuickSin, SIF\_QuickCos, SDA\_QuickCos,  
SDS\_QuickCos, SIF\_QuickSinCos, SDA\_QuickSinCos, SDS\_QuickSinCos,  
SIF\_QuickTan.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|                                  |                         |
|----------------------------------|-------------------------|
| void SDA_Sinc (const SLData_t *, | Pointer to source array |
| SLData_t *,                      | Destination pointer     |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)            | Array length            |

## DESCRIPTION

This function returns  $\sin(x)/x$  for all the values in the source array.

## NOTES ON USE

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDS\_Sinc, SIF\_QuickSinc, SDA\_QuickSinc and SDS\_QuickSinc.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLData\_t SDS\_Sinc (const SLData\_t)      x

**DESCRIPTION**

This function returns  $\sin(x) / x$  of the input value.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_Sinc, SIF\_QuickSinc, SDA\_QuickSinc and SDS\_QuickSinc.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|                                 |                               |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| void SIF_QuickSinc (SLData_t *, | Pointer to sinc look up table |
| SLData_t *,                     | Pointer to phase gain         |
| const SLData_t,                 | Maximum input 'x' value       |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)           | Look up table length          |

## DESCRIPTION

This function initializes the quick sinc calculation functions (SDA\_QuickSinc and SDS\_QuickSinc, which returns  $\sin(x)/x$  of the input value using a look up table approach.

## NOTES ON USE

The accuracy of this function is directly related to the array length.

The phase gain parameter is calculated in this function and used in both SDA\_QuickSinc and SDS\_QuickSinc. It is not necessary to modify this value.

The maximum input 'x' value is specified as a parameter to this function and it is important to ensure that no 'x' values greater than this are used in SDA\_QuickSinc and SDS\_QuickSinc. The QuickSinc functions calculate the look up table values over an array of index from 0 to ArrayLength-1 so the function will not return the sinc of the maximum value specified. The maximum value must therefore be over-specified; for example, if the application requires that the sinc value must be calculated for all inputs within the range -10.0 to +10.0 then a suitable magnitude for the maximum 'x' input value would be 11.0.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_Sinc, SDS\_Sinc, SDA\_QuickSinc and SDS\_QuickSinc.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|                                       |                               |
|---------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| void SDA_QuickSinc (const SLData_t *, | Pointer to source array       |
| const SLData_t *,                     | Pointer to sinc look up table |
| SLData_t *,                           | Pointer to destination array  |
| const SLData_t,                       | Phase gain                    |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)                 | Source array length           |

## DESCRIPTION

This function calculates the sinc ( $\sin(x)/x$ ) values for all of the entries in the source array.

## NOTES ON USE

The function SIF\_QuickSinc must be called prior to using this function. Please read the description of SIF\_QuickSinc, particularly the notes on the maximum input 'x' value.

For reasons of run-time performance, this function does not check that the magnitude of the 'x' input values are less than that specified in SIF\_QuickSinc.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_Sinc, SDS\_Sinc, SIF\_QuickSinc and SDS\_QuickSinc.



## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLData_t SDS_QuickSinc (const SLData_t, Source 'x' value
                        const SLData_t *,           Pointer to sinc look up table
                        const SLData_t)              Phase gain
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function calculates the sinc ( $\sin(x)/x$ ) for the source 'x' value.

## NOTES ON USE

The function SIF\_QuickSinc must be called prior to using this function. Please read the description of SIF\_QuickSinc, particularly the notes on the maximum input 'x' value.

For reasons of run-time performance, this function does not check that the magnitude of the 'x' input values are less than that specified in SIF\_QuickSinc.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_Sinc, SDS\_Sinc, SIF\_QuickSinc and SDA\_QuickSinc.

## COMPLEX VECTOR FUNCTIONS (*complex.c*)

**SCV\_Polar**

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|                  |           |                  |                     |
|------------------|-----------|------------------|---------------------|
| SLComplexPolar_s | SCV_Polar | (const SLData_t, | Magnitude component |
|                  |           | const SLData_t)  | Angle component     |

## DESCRIPTION

This function converts separate magnitude and angle data components to a single polar complex value.

## NOTES ON USE

## CROSS REFERENCE

SCV\_Rectangular, SCV\_PolarToRectangular, SCV\_RectangularToPolar,  
SCV\_Sqrt, SCV\_Inverse, SCV\_Conjugate, SCV\_Magnitude, SCV\_Multiply,  
SCV\_Divide, SCV\_Add, SCV\_Subtract, SCV\_Log, SCV\_Exp, SCV\_Pow.



### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLComplexRect\_s SCV\_PolarToRectangular (const SLComplexPolar\_s) Polar  
source data

### DESCRIPTION

This function converts the polar data to rectangular.

### NOTES ON USE

### CROSS REFERENCE

SCV\_Polar, SCV\_Rectangular, SCV\_RectangularToPolar, SCV\_Sqrt,  
SCV\_Inverse, SCV\_Conjugate, SCV\_Magnitude, SCV\_Multiply, SCV\_Divide,  
SCV\_Add, SCV\_Subtract, SCV\_Log, SCV\_Exp, SCV\_Pow.

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLComplexPolar\_s SCV\_RectangularToPolar (const SLComplexRect\_s)  
Complex rectangular source data

DESCRIPTION

This function converts the rectangular data to polar.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

SCV\_Polar, SCV\_Rectangular, SCV\_PolarToRectangular, SCV\_Sqrt,  
SCV\_Inverse, SCV\_Conjugate, SCV\_Magnitude, SCV\_Multiply, SCV\_Divide,  
SCV\_Add, SCV\_Subtract, SCV\_Log, SCV\_Exp, SCV\_Pow.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLComplexRect\_s SCV\_Sqrt (const SLComplexRect\_s)    Source data

## DESCRIPTION

This function calculates the square root of the vector, using the DeMoivre's algorithm.

## NOTES ON USE

## CROSS REFERENCE

SCV\_Polar, SCV\_Rectangular, SCV\_PolarToRectangular,  
SCV\_RectangularToPolar, SCV\_Inverse, SCV\_Conjugate, SCV\_Magnitude,  
SCV\_Multiply, SCV\_Divide, SCV\_Add, SCV\_Subtract, SCV\_Log, SCV\_Exp,  
SCV\_Pow.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLComplexRect\_s SCV\_Inverse (const SLComplexRect\_s)      Source data

**DESCRIPTION**

This function calculates the inverse of the complex rectangular vector using:

$$1/(a + jb) = (a - jb) / (a^2 + b^2).$$

**NOTES ON USE**

If the input value equals  $0.0 + j0.0$  then this function returns  $1.0 + j0.0$ .

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SCV\_Polar, SCV\_Rectangular, SCV\_PolarToRectangular,  
SCV\_RectangularToPolar, SCV\_Sqrt, SCV\_Conjugate, SCV\_Magnitude,  
SCV\_Multiply, SCV\_Divide, SCV\_Add, SCV\_Subtract, SCV\_Log, SCV\_Exp,  
SCV\_Pow.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLComplexRect\_s SCV\_Conjugate (const SLComplexRect\_s)      Source data

**DESCRIPTION**

This function returns the complex conjugate of the vector.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SCV\_Polar, SCV\_Rectangular, SCV\_PolarToRectangular,  
SCV\_RectangularToPolar, SCV\_Sqrt, SCV\_Inverse, SCV\_Magnitude,  
SCV\_Multiply, SCV\_Divide, SCV\_Add, SCV\_Subtract, SCV\_Log, SCV\_Exp,  
SCV\_Pow.



**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLData\_t SCV\_Magnitude (const SLComplexRect\_s)      Source data

**DESCRIPTION**

This function returns the real absolute magnitude of the complex vector.

$$\text{Magnitude} = \sqrt{\text{Real}^2 + \text{Imaginary}^2}$$

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SCV\_Polar, SCV\_Rectangular, SCV\_PolarToRectangular,  
SCV\_RectangularToPolar, SCV\_Sqrt, SCV\_Inverse, SCV\_Conjugate,  
SCV\_Multiply, SCV\_Phase, SCV\_Divide, SCV\_Add, SCV\_Subtract, SCV\_Log,  
SCV\_Exp, SCV\_Pow.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLData\_t SCV\_MagnitudeSquared (const SLComplexRect\_s)      Source data

**DESCRIPTION**

This function returns the real absolute magnitude squared of the complex vector.

$$\text{Absolute Squared Magnitude} = \text{Real}^2 + \text{Imaginary}^2$$

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SCV\_Polar, SCV\_Rectangular, SCV\_PolarToRectangular,  
SCV\_RectangularToPolar, SCV\_Sqrt, SCV\_Inverse, SCV\_Conjugate,  
SCV\_Multiply, SCV\_Phase, SCV\_Magnitude, SCV\_Divide, SCV\_Add,  
SCV\_Subtract, SCV\_Log, SCV\_Exp, SCV\_Pow.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData\_t SCV\_Phase (const SLComplexRect\_s)    Source data

## DESCRIPTION

This function returns the phase of the complex vector, using the following equation:

$$Angle = \text{atan2}(imag, real) = \tan^{-1} \left( \frac{imag}{real} \right)$$

## NOTES ON USE

## CROSS REFERENCE

SCV\_Polar, SCV\_Rectangular, SCV\_PolarToRectangular,  
SCV\_RectangularToPolar, SCV\_Sqrt, SCV\_Inverse, SCV\_Conjugate,  
SCV\_Multiply, SCV\_Divide, SCV\_Add, SCV\_Subtract, SCV\_Log, SCV\_Exp,  
SCV\_Pow.

|                        |                                      |         |
|------------------------|--------------------------------------|---------|
| SLComplexRect_s        | SCV_Multiply (const SLComplexRect_s, | Complex |
| multiplicand           |                                      |         |
| const SLComplexRect_s) | Complex multiplier                   |         |

SCV\_Polar, SCV\_Rectangular, SCV\_PolarToRectangular,  
SCV\_RectangularToPolar, SCV\_Sqrt, SCV\_Inverse, SCV\_Conjugate,  
SCV\_Magnitude, SCV\_Divide, SCV\_Add, SCV\_Subtract, SCV\_Log, SCV\_Exp,  
SCV\_Pow.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLComplexRect\_s SCV\_Divide (const SLComplexRect\_s, Complex source  
const SLComplexRect\_s) Complex divisor

**DESCRIPTION**

This function divides one complex rectangular number by another using:  
 $1/(a + jb) = (a - jb) / (a^2 + b^2)$ .

**NOTES ON USE**

If the divisor equals  $0.0 + j0.0$  then this function returns  $1.0 + j0.0$ .

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SCV\_Polar, SCV\_Rectangular, SCV\_PolarToRectangular,  
SCV\_RectangularToPolar, SCV\_Sqrt, SCV\_Inverse, SCV\_Conjugate,  
SCV\_Magnitude, SCV\_Multiply, SCV\_Add, SCV\_Subtract, SCV\_Log, SCV\_Exp,  
SCV\_Pow.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLComplexRect\_s SCV\_Add (const SLComplexRect\_s,   Complex source  
                          const SLComplexRect\_s)       Complex source

## DESCRIPTION

This function returns the addition of the complex vectors.

## NOTES ON USE

If the divisor equals  $0.0 + j0.0$  then this function returns  $1.0 + j0.0$ .

## CROSS REFERENCE

SCV\_Polar, SCV\_Rectangular, SCV\_PolarToRectangular,  
SCV\_RectangularToPolar, SCV\_Sqrt, SCV\_Inverse, SCV\_Conjugate,  
SCV\_Magnitude, SCV\_Multiply, SCV\_Divide, SCV\_Subtract, SCV\_Log, SCV\_Exp,  
SCV\_Pow.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLComplexRect\_s SCV\_Subtract (const SLComplexRect\_s, Complex Source 1  
const SLComplexRect\_s) Complex source 2

**DESCRIPTION**

This function returns the difference between the complex vectors.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SCV\_Polar, SCV\_Rectangular, SCV\_PolarToRectangular,  
SCV\_RectangularToPolar, SCV\_Sqrt, SCV\_Inverse, SCV\_Conjugate,  
SCV\_Magnitude, SCV\_Multiply, SCV\_Divide, SCV\_Add, SCV\_Log, SCV\_Exp,  
SCV\_Pow.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLComplexRect\_s SCV\_Log (const SLComplexRect\_s)    Complex source

**DESCRIPTION**

This function returns the logarithm of the complex vector.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SCV\_Polar, SCV\_Rectangular, SCV\_PolarToRectangular,  
SCV\_RectangularToPolar, SCV\_Sqrt, SCV\_Inverse, SCV\_Conjugate,  
SCV\_Magnitude, SCV\_Multiply, SCV\_Divide, SCV\_Add, SCV\_Subtract,  
SCV\_Exp, SCV\_Pow.



**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLComplexRect\_s SCV\_Exp (const SLComplexRect\_s)    Complex source

**DESCRIPTION**

This function returns the exponentiation of the complex vector.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SCV\_Polar, SCV\_Rectangular, SCV\_PolarToRectangular,  
SCV\_RectangularToPolar, SCV\_Sqrt, SCV\_Inverse, SCV\_Conjugate,  
SCV\_Magnitude, SCV\_Multiply, SCV\_Divide, SCV\_Add, SCV\_Subtract,  
SCV\_Log, SCV\_Expj, SCV\_Pow.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLComplexRect\_s SCV\_Expj (const SLData\_t)      Theta

**DESCRIPTION**

This function returns the exponentiation of the real input  $e^{j\theta} = \cos(\theta) + j \sin(\theta)$ .

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SCV\_Polar, SCV\_Rectangular, SCV\_PolarToRectangular,  
SCV\_RectangularToPolar, SCV\_Sqrt, SCV\_Inverse, SCV\_Conjugate,  
SCV\_Magnitude, SCV\_Multiply, SCV\_Divide, SCV\_Add, SCV\_Subtract,  
SCV\_Log, SCV\_Exp, SCV\_Pow.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLComplexRect\_s SCV\_Pow (const SLComplexRect\_s,   Complex source  
                          const SLData\_t)               Real power to raise complex data

**DESCRIPTION**

This function raises the complex vector to a real power.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SCV\_Polar, SCV\_Rectangular, SCV\_PolarToRectangular,  
SCV\_RectangularToPolar, SCV\_Sqrt, SCV\_Inverse, SCV\_Conjugate,  
SCV\_Magnitude, SCV\_Multiply, SCV\_Divide, SCV\_Add, SCV\_Subtract,  
SCV\_Log, SCV\_Exp.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|                 |                     |                         |         |
|-----------------|---------------------|-------------------------|---------|
| SLComplexRect_s | SCV_VectorAddScalar | (const SLComplexRect_s, | Complex |
| source          |                     |                         |         |
| const SLData_t) |                     | Scalar source           |         |

## DESCRIPTION

This function adds the scalar value to the complex value and return the complex result.

## NOTES ON USE

## CROSS REFERENCE

SCV\_VectorSubtractScalar, SCV\_VectorMultiplyScalar,  
SCV\_VectorDivideScalar, SCV\_ScalarSubtractVector.

### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLComplexRect\_s SCV\_VectorSubtractScalar (const SLComplexRect\_s, Complex  
source  
const SLData\_t)                      Scalar source

### DESCRIPTION

This function subtracts the scalar value from the complex value and return the complex result.

### NOTES ON USE

### CROSS REFERENCE

SCV\_VectorAddScalar, SCV\_VectorMultiplyScalar,  
SCV\_VectorDivideScalar, SCV\_ScalarSubtractVector.

### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLComplexRect\_s SCV\_VectorMultiplyScalar (const SLComplexRect\_s,   Complex  
source  
                  const SLData\_t)                           Scalar source

### DESCRIPTION

This function multiplies the complex value by the scalar value and return the complex result.

### NOTES ON USE

### CROSS REFERENCE

SCV\_VectorAddScalar, SCV\_VectorSubtractScalar,  
SCV\_VectorDivideScalar, SCV\_ScalarSubtractVector.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLComplexRect\_s SCV\_VectorDivideScalar (const SLComplexRect\_s,   Complex  
source  
                    const SLData\_t)                      Scalar source

**DESCRIPTION**

This function divides the complex value by the scalar value and return the complex result.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SCV\_VectorAddScalar, SCV\_VectorSubtractScalar,  
SCV\_VectorMultiplyScalar, SCV\_ScalarSubtractVector.

### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLComplexRect\_s SCV\_ScalarSubtractVector (const SLData\_t,   Scalar source  
                  const SLComplexRect\_s)           Complex source

### DESCRIPTION

This function subtracts the complex value from the scalar value and return the complex result.

### NOTES ON USE

### CROSS REFERENCE

SCV\_VectorAddScalar, SCV\_VectorSubtractScalar,  
SCV\_VectorMultiplyScalar, SCV\_VectorDivideScalar.



## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SCV_Roots (const SLComplexRect_s a,      a value
                const SLComplexRect_s b,      b value
                const SLComplexRect_s c,      c value
                SLComplexRect_s *Root1,       Pointer to root # 1
                SLComplexRect_s *Root2)       Pointer to root # 2
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function returns the real roots of the bi-quadratic equation:

$$ax^2 + bx + c = 0$$

The polynomial factors are given by the equation:

$$Roots = \frac{-b \pm \sqrt{b^2 - 4ac}}{2a}$$

## NOTES ON USE

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDS\_Roots

PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLComplexRect\_s SCV\_Copy (const SLComplexRect\_s)      Input vector

DESCRIPTION

This function returns the input vector and copies it to the output.

NOTES ON USE

CROSS REFERENCE

### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLCompareType\_t SCV\_Compare (const SLComplexRect\_s,      Input vector #1  
                                 const SLComplexRect\_s IVect2)      Input vector #2

### DESCRIPTION

This function compares the contents of the two source vectors and returns:

|                   |     |
|-------------------|-----|
| SIGLIB_NOT_EQUAL, | (0) |
| SIGLIB_EQUAL      | (1) |

### NOTES ON USE

### CROSS REFERENCE

## COMPLEX ARRAY FUNCTIONS (*complexa.c*)

These functions are used to create arrays of complex variables and also to extract them to separate arrays of real and complex vectors.

---

### SDA\_CreateComplexRect

#### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_CreateComplexRect (const SLData_t *, Input real data pointer
                           const SLData_t *, Input imaginary data pointer
                           SLComplexRect_s *, Output complex data pointer
                           const SLArrayIndex_t) Array Length
```

#### DESCRIPTION

This function creates an array of interleaved complex rectangular values from two separate arrays, each representing the real and imaginary data sets. The output array is actually an array of interleaved values of type SLData\_t.

#### NOTES ON USE

#### CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_CreateComplexPolar, SDA\_ExtractComplexRect,  
SDA\_ExtractComplexPolar.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
void SDA_CreateComplexPolar (const SLData_t *, Input magnitude data pointer
                             const SLData_t *,      Input phase data pointer
                             SLComplexRect_s *,      Output complex data pointer
                             const SLArrayIndex_t)   Array Length
```

**DESCRIPTION**

This function creates an array of interleaved complex polar values from two separate arrays, each representing the magnitude and phase data sets. The output array is actually an array of interleaved values of type SLData\_t.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_CreateComplexRect, SDA\_ExtractComplexRect,  
SDA\_ExtractComplexPolar.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
void SDA_ExtractComplexRect (const SLData_t *, Input complex data pointer
                             const SLData_t *,      Output real data pointer
                             SLComplexRect_s *,      Output imaginary data pointer
                             const SLArrayIndex_t)    Array Length
```

**DESCRIPTION**

This function extracts two separate arrays, each representing the real and imaginary data sets, from a single array of interleaved complex rectangular values. The input array is actually an array of interleaved values of type SLData\_t.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_CreateComplexRect, SDA\_CreateComplexPolar,  
SDA\_ExtractComplexPolar.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
void SDA_ExtractComplexPolar (const SLData_t *,Input complex data pointer
                             const SLData_t *,      Output magnitude data pointer
                             SLComplexRect_s *,      Output phase data pointer
                             const SLArrayIndex_t)    Array Length
```

**DESCRIPTION**

This function extracts two separate arrays, each representing the magnitude and phase data sets, from a single array of interleaved complex rectangular values. The input array is actually an array of interleaved values of type SLData\_t.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_CreateComplexRect, SDA\_CreateComplexPolar,  
SDA\_ExtractComplexRect.

### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_ClearComplexRect (SLComplexRect_s *,   Output complex data pointer  
                           const SLArrayIndex_t)   Array length
```

### DESCRIPTION

This function clears the contents of the complex rectangular array.

### NOTES ON USE

### CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_ClearComplexPolar, SDA\_FillComplexRect, SDA\_FillComplexPolar.



### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_ClearComplexPolar (SLComplexPolar_s *,   Output complex data pointer  
                           const SLArrayIndex_t)   Array length
```

### DESCRIPTION

This function clears the contents of the complex polar array.

### NOTES ON USE

### CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_ClearComplexRect, SDA\_FillComplexRect, SDA\_FillComplexPolar.

### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_FillComplexRect (SLComplexRect_s *, Output complex data pointer  
    const SLComplexRect_s,          Fill value  
    const SLArrayIndex_t)          Array length
```

### DESCRIPTION

This function fills the contents of the complex rectangular array with the constant fill value.

### NOTES ON USE

### CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_ClearComplexRect, SDA\_ClearComplexPolar, SDA\_FillComplexPolar.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
void SDA_FillComplexPolar (SLComplexPolar_s *,   Output complex data pointer
                           const SLComplexPolar_s,   Fill value
                           const SLArrayIndex_t)     Array length
```

**DESCRIPTION**

This function fills the contents of the complex polar array with the constant fill value.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_ClearComplexRect, SDA\_ClearComplexPolar, SDA\_FillComplexRect.



### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA\_ComplexPolarToRectangular (const SLComplexPolar\_s \*,     Input  
complex data pointer  
          SLComplexRect\_s \*,             Output complex data pointer  
          const SLArrayIndex\_t)         Array length

### DESCRIPTION

This function converts the polar co-ordinate data in the source arrays to rectangular data, in the destination arrays, according to the following equations:

$$\text{Real} = \text{Magnitude} * \cos (\text{Angle})$$

$$\text{Imaginary} = \text{Magnitude} * \sin (\text{Angle})$$

### NOTES ON USE

### CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_ComplexRectangularToPolar

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_RectangularToPolar (const SLData_t *,    Real source pointer
                             const SLData_t *,    Imaginary source array pointer
                             SLData_t *,          Destination magnitude array pointer
                             SLData_t *,          Destination phase array pointer
                             const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function converts the complex (rectangular co-ordinate) data in the source arrays to polar data, in the destination arrays, according the following equations:

$$magnitude = \sqrt{real^2 + imag^2}$$

$$Angle = \tan^{-1} \left( \frac{imag}{real} \right)$$

## NOTES ON USE

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_PolarToRectangular

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
void SDA_PolarToRectangular (const SLData_t *, Real source pointer
                             const SLData_t *,           Imaginary source array pointer
                             SLData_t *,                 Destination magnitude array pointer
                             SLData_t *,                 Destination phase array pointer
                             const SLArrayIndex_t)        Array length
```

**DESCRIPTION**

This function converts the polar co-ordinate data in the source arrays to rectangular data, in the destination arrays, according to the following equations:

$$\text{Real} = \text{Magnitude} * \cos (\text{Angle})$$

$$\text{Imaginary} = \text{Magnitude} * \sin (\text{Angle})$$

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_RectangularToPolar

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
void SDA_ComplexRectSqrt (const SLComplexRect_s *,  Pointer to source array
                        SLComplexRect_s *,          Pointer to destination array
                        const SLArrayIndex_t)        Array length
```

**DESCRIPTION**

This function calculates the complex square root for each of the values in the source array.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_ComplexRectInverse, SDA\_ComplexRectConjugate,  
SDA\_ComplexRectMagnitude, SDA\_ComplexRectMagnitudeSquared,  
SDA\_ComplexRectPhase, SDA\_ComplexRectMultiply, SDA\_ComplexRectDivide,  
SDA\_ComplexRectAdd, SDA\_ComplexRectSubtract, SDA\_ComplexRectLog,  
SDA\_ComplexRectExp, SDA\_ComplexRectExpj, SDA\_ComplexRectPow,  
SDA\_ComplexRectAddScalar, SDA\_ComplexRectSubtractScalar,  
SDA\_ComplexRectMultiplyScalar, SDA\_ComplexRectDivideScalar,  
SDA\_ComplexScalarSubtractRect.



**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

void SDA\_ComplexRectInverse (const SLComplexRect\_s \*,        Pointer to source  
array  
                                 SLComplexRect\_s \*,            Pointer to destination array  
                                 const SLArrayIndex\_t)        Array length

**DESCRIPTION**

This function calculates the inverse of each of the values in the source array.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_ComplexRectSqrt, SDA\_ComplexRectConjugate,  
SDA\_ComplexRectMagnitude, SDA\_ComplexRectMagnitudeSquared,  
SDA\_ComplexRectPhase, SDA\_ComplexRectMultiply, SDA\_ComplexRectDivide,  
SDA\_ComplexRectAdd, SDA\_ComplexRectSubtract, SDA\_ComplexRectLog,  
SDA\_ComplexRectExp, SDA\_ComplexRectExpj, SDA\_ComplexRectPow,  
SDA\_ComplexRectAddScalar, SDA\_ComplexRectSubtractScalar,  
SDA\_ComplexRectMultiplyScalar, SDA\_ComplexRectDivideScalar,  
SDA\_ComplexScalarSubtractRect.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

void SDA\_ComplexRectConjugate (const SLComplexRect\_s \*,    Pointer to source array

|                       |                              |
|-----------------------|------------------------------|
| SLComplexRect_s *,    | Pointer to destination array |
| const SLArrayIndex_t) | Array length                 |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function calculates the complex conjugate of each of the values in the source array.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_ComplexRectSqrt, SDA\_ComplexRectInverse,  
SDA\_ComplexRectMagnitude, SDA\_ComplexRectMagnitudeSquared,  
SDA\_ComplexRectPhase, SDA\_ComplexRectMultiply, SDA\_ComplexRectDivide,  
SDA\_ComplexRectAdd, SDA\_ComplexRectSubtract, SDA\_ComplexRectLog,  
SDA\_ComplexRectExp, SDA\_ComplexRectExpj, SDA\_ComplexRectPow,  
SDA\_ComplexRectAddScalar, SDA\_ComplexRectSubtractScalar,  
SDA\_ComplexRectMultiplyScalar, SDA\_ComplexRectDivideScalar,  
SDA\_ComplexScalarSubtractRect.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

void SDA\_ComplexRectMagnitude (const SLComplexRect\_s \*, Pointer to source array

SLData\_t \*,

Pointer to destination array

const SLArrayIndex\_t)

Array length

**DESCRIPTION**

This function calculates the magnitude of each of the values in the source array.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_ComplexRectSqrt, SDA\_ComplexRectInverse,  
SDA\_ComplexRectConjugate, SDA\_ComplexRectMagnitudeSquared,  
SDA\_ComplexRectPhase, SDA\_ComplexRectMultiply, SDA\_ComplexRectDivide,  
SDA\_ComplexRectAdd, SDA\_ComplexRectSubtract, SDA\_ComplexRectLog,  
SDA\_ComplexRectExp, SDA\_ComplexRectExpj, SDA\_ComplexRectPow,  
SDA\_ComplexRectAddScalar, SDA\_ComplexRectSubtractScalar,  
SDA\_ComplexRectMultiplyScalar, SDA\_ComplexRectDivideScalar,  
SDA\_ComplexScalarSubtractRect.

### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA\_ComplexRectMagnitudeSquared (const SLComplexRect\_s \*, Pointer to source array

SLData\_t \*,

const SLArrayIndex\_t)

Pointer to destination array

Array length

### DESCRIPTION

This function calculates the magnitude squared for each of the values in the source array.

### NOTES ON USE

### CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_ComplexRectSqrt, SDA\_ComplexRectInverse,  
SDA\_ComplexRectConjugate, SDA\_ComplexRectMagnitude,  
SDA\_ComplexRectPhase, SDA\_ComplexRectMultiply, SDA\_ComplexRectDivide,  
SDA\_ComplexRectAdd, SDA\_ComplexRectSubtract, SDA\_ComplexRectLog,  
SDA\_ComplexRectExp, SDA\_ComplexRectExpj, SDA\_ComplexRectPow,  
SDA\_ComplexRectAddScalar, SDA\_ComplexRectSubtractScalar,  
SDA\_ComplexRectMultiplyScalar, SDA\_ComplexRectDivideScalar,  
SDA\_ComplexScalarSubtractRect.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
void SDA_ComplexRectPhase (const SLComplexRect_s *, Pointer to source array
                           SLData_t *,                      Pointer to destination array
                           const SLArrayIndex_t)           Array length
```

**DESCRIPTION**

This function calculates the complex phase for each of the values in the source array.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_ComplexRectSqrt, SDA\_ComplexRectInverse,  
SDA\_ComplexRectConjugate, SDA\_ComplexRectMagnitude,  
SDA\_ComplexRectMagnitudeSquared, SDA\_ComplexRectMultiply,  
SDA\_ComplexRectDivide, SDA\_ComplexRectAdd, SDA\_ComplexRectSubtract,  
SDA\_ComplexRectLog, SDA\_ComplexRectExp, SDA\_ComplexRectExpj,  
SDA\_ComplexRectPow, SDA\_ComplexRectAddScalar,  
SDA\_ComplexRectSubtractScalar, SDA\_ComplexRectMultiplyScalar,  
SDA\_ComplexRectDivideScalar, SDA\_ComplexScalarSubtractRect.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

void SDA\_ComplexRectMultiply (const SLComplexRect\_s \*,     Pointer to source  
array 1  
          const SLComplexRect\_s \*,             Pointer to source array 2  
          SLComplexRect\_s \*,             Pointer to destination array  
          const SLArrayIndex\_t)             Array length

**DESCRIPTION**

This function multiplies the complex values in source array 1 by the complex values in source array 2.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_ComplexRectSqrt, SDA\_ComplexRectInverse,  
SDA\_ComplexRectConjugate, SDA\_ComplexRectMagnitude,  
SDA\_ComplexRectMagnitudeSquared, SDA\_ComplexRectPhase,  
SDA\_ComplexRectDivide, SDA\_ComplexRectAdd, SDA\_ComplexRectSubtract,  
SDA\_ComplexRectLog, SDA\_ComplexRectExp, SDA\_ComplexRectExpj,  
SDA\_ComplexRectPow, SDA\_ComplexRectAddScalar,  
SDA\_ComplexRectSubtractScalar, SDA\_ComplexRectMultiplyScalar,  
SDA\_ComplexRectDivideScalar, SDA\_ComplexScalarSubtractRect.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

void SDA\_ComplexRectDivide (const SLComplexRect\_s \*,        Pointer to source  
array 1  
                              const SLComplexRect\_s \*,        Pointer to source array 2  
                              SLComplexRect\_s \*,            Pointer to destination array  
                              const SLArrayIndex\_t)        Array length

**DESCRIPTION**

This function divides the complex values in one source array by the complex values in the second source array.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_ComplexRectSqrt, SDA\_ComplexRectInverse,  
SDA\_ComplexRectConjugate, SDA\_ComplexRectMagnitude,  
SDA\_ComplexRectMagnitudeSquared, SDA\_ComplexRectPhase,  
SDA\_ComplexRectMultiply, SDA\_ComplexRectAdd, SDA\_ComplexRectSubtract,  
SDA\_ComplexRectLog, SDA\_ComplexRectExp, SDA\_ComplexRectExpj,  
SDA\_ComplexRectPow, SDA\_ComplexRectAddScalar,  
SDA\_ComplexRectSubtractScalar, SDA\_ComplexRectMultiplyScalar,  
SDA\_ComplexRectDivideScalar, SDA\_ComplexScalarSubtractRect.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
void SDA_ComplexRectAdd (const SLComplexRect_s *, Pointer to source array 1
                        const SLComplexRect_s *,      Pointer to source array 2
                        SLComplexRect_s *,      Pointer to destination array
                        const SLArrayIndex_t)      Array length
```

**DESCRIPTION**

This function adds the complex values in the two source arrays.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_ComplexRectSqrt, SDA\_ComplexRectInverse,  
SDA\_ComplexRectConjugate, SDA\_ComplexRectMagnitude,  
SDA\_ComplexRectMagnitudeSquared, SDA\_ComplexRectPhase,  
SDA\_ComplexRectMultiply, SDA\_ComplexRectDivide,  
SDA\_ComplexRectSubtract, SDA\_ComplexRectLog, SDA\_ComplexRectExp,  
SDA\_ComplexRectExpj, SDA\_ComplexRectPow, SDA\_ComplexRectAddScalar,  
SDA\_ComplexRectSubtractScalar, SDA\_ComplexRectMultiplyScalar,  
SDA\_ComplexRectDivideScalar, SDA\_ComplexScalarSubtractRect.



**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
void SDA_ComplexRectSubtract (const SLComplexRect_s *,      Pointer to source
array 1
                             const SLComplexRect_s *,      Pointer to source array 2
                             SLComplexRect_s *,            Pointer to destination array
                             const SLArrayIndex_t)          Array length
```

**DESCRIPTION**

This function subtracts the complex samples in source array 2 from those values in source array 1.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_ComplexRectSqrt, SDA\_ComplexRectInverse,  
SDA\_ComplexRectConjugate, SDA\_ComplexRectMagnitude,  
SDA\_ComplexRectMagnitudeSquared, SDA\_ComplexRectPhase,  
SDA\_ComplexRectMultiply, SDA\_ComplexRectDivide, SDA\_ComplexRectAdd,  
SDA\_ComplexRectLog, SDA\_ComplexRectExp, SDA\_ComplexRectExpj,  
SDA\_ComplexRectPow, SDA\_ComplexRectAddScalar,  
SDA\_ComplexRectSubtractScalar, SDA\_ComplexRectMultiplyScalar,  
SDA\_ComplexRectDivideScalar, SDA\_ComplexScalarSubtractRect.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
void SDA_ComplexRectLog (const SLComplexRect_s *,  Pointer to source array
                        SLComplexRect_s *,          Pointer to destination array
                        const SLArrayIndex_t)        Array length
```

**DESCRIPTION**

This function calculates the complex log for each of the values in the source array.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_ComplexRectSqrt, SDA\_ComplexRectInverse,  
SDA\_ComplexRectConjugate, SDA\_ComplexRectMagnitude,  
SDA\_ComplexRectMagnitudeSquared, SDA\_ComplexRectPhase,  
SDA\_ComplexRectMultiply, SDA\_ComplexRectDivide, SDA\_ComplexRectAdd,  
SDA\_ComplexRectSubtract, SDA\_ComplexRectExp, SDA\_ComplexRectExpj,  
SDA\_ComplexRectPow, SDA\_ComplexRectAddScalar,  
SDA\_ComplexRectSubtractScalar, SDA\_ComplexRectMultiplyScalar,  
SDA\_ComplexRectDivideScalar, SDA\_ComplexScalarSubtractRect.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
void SDA_ComplexRectExp (const SLComplexRect_s *,  Pointer to source array
                        SLComplexRect_s *,          Pointer to destination array
                        const SLArrayIndex_t)        Array length
```

**DESCRIPTION**

This function calculates the complex exponential for each of the values in the source array.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_ComplexRectSqrt, SDA\_ComplexRectInverse,  
SDA\_ComplexRectConjugate, SDA\_ComplexRectMagnitude,  
SDA\_ComplexRectMagnitudeSquared, SDA\_ComplexRectPhase,  
SDA\_ComplexRectMultiply, SDA\_ComplexRectDivide, SDA\_ComplexRectAdd,  
SDA\_ComplexRectSubtract, SDA\_ComplexRectLog, SDA\_ComplexRectExpj,  
SDA\_ComplexRectPow, SDA\_ComplexRectAddScalar,  
SDA\_ComplexRectSubtractScalar, SDA\_ComplexRectMultiplyScalar,  
SDA\_ComplexRectDivideScalar, SDA\_ComplexScalarSubtractRect.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
void SDA_ComplexRectExpj (const SLData_t *,   Pointer to source array
                          SLComplexRect_s *,   Pointer to destination array
                          const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length
```

**DESCRIPTION**

This function calculates the complex exponential ( $\cos(\theta) + j\sin(\theta)$ ) for each of the values in the source array.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_ComplexRectSqrt, SDA\_ComplexRectInverse,  
SDA\_ComplexRectConjugate, SDA\_ComplexRectMagnitude,  
SDA\_ComplexRectMagnitudeSquared, SDA\_ComplexRectPhase,  
SDA\_ComplexRectMultiply, SDA\_ComplexRectDivide, SDA\_ComplexRectAdd,  
SDA\_ComplexRectSubtract, SDA\_ComplexRectLog, SDA\_ComplexRectExp,  
SDA\_ComplexRectPow, SDA\_ComplexRectAddScalar,  
SDA\_ComplexRectSubtractScalar, SDA\_ComplexRectMultiplyScalar,  
SDA\_ComplexRectDivideScalar, SDA\_ComplexScalarSubtractRect.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
void SDA_ComplexRectPow (const SLComplexRect_s *, Pointer to source array
                        SLComplexRect_s *,           Pointer to destination array
                        const SLData_t,               Power
                        const SLArrayIndex_t)         Array length
```

**DESCRIPTION**

This function raises the complex values in the source array to the given power.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_ComplexRectSqrt, SDA\_ComplexRectInverse,  
SDA\_ComplexRectConjugate, SDA\_ComplexRectMagnitude,  
SDA\_ComplexRectMagnitudeSquared, SDA\_ComplexRectPhase,  
SDA\_ComplexRectMultiply, SDA\_ComplexRectDivide, SDA\_ComplexRectAdd,  
SDA\_ComplexRectSubtract, SDA\_ComplexRectLog, SDA\_ComplexRectExp,  
SDA\_ComplexRectExpj, SDA\_ComplexRectAddScalar,  
SDA\_ComplexRectSubtractScalar, SDA\_ComplexRectMultiplyScalar,  
SDA\_ComplexRectDivideScalar, SDA\_ComplexScalarSubtractRect.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

void SDA\_ComplexRectAddScalar (const SLComplexRect\_s \*,   Pointer to source array

|                       |                              |
|-----------------------|------------------------------|
| const SLData_t,       | Scalar                       |
| SLComplexRect_s *,    | Pointer to destination array |
| const SLArrayIndex_t) | Array length                 |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function adds the scalar value to the complex values in the source array.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_ComplexRectSqrt, SDA\_ComplexRectInverse,  
SDA\_ComplexRectConjugate, SDA\_ComplexRectMagnitude,  
SDA\_ComplexRectMagnitudeSquared, SDA\_ComplexRectPhase,  
SDA\_ComplexRectMultiply, SDA\_ComplexRectDivide, SDA\_ComplexRectAdd,  
SDA\_ComplexRectSubtract, SDA\_ComplexRectLog, SDA\_ComplexRectExp,  
SDA\_ComplexRectExpj, SDA\_ComplexRectPow,  
SDA\_ComplexRectSubtractScalar, SDA\_ComplexRectMultiplyScalar,  
SDA\_ComplexRectDivideScalar, SDA\_ComplexScalarSubtractRect.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
void SDA_ComplexRectSubtractScalar (const SLComplexRect_s *,      Pointer to
source array
    const SLData_t,          Scalar
    SLComplexRect_s *,      Pointer to destination array
    const SLArrayIndex_t)    Array length
```

**DESCRIPTION**

This function subtracts the scalar value from the complex values in the source array.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_ComplexRectSqrt, SDA\_ComplexRectInverse,  
SDA\_ComplexRectConjugate, SDA\_ComplexRectMagnitude,  
SDA\_ComplexRectMagnitudeSquared, SDA\_ComplexRectPhase,  
SDA\_ComplexRectMultiply, SDA\_ComplexRectDivide, SDA\_ComplexRectAdd,  
SDA\_ComplexRectSubtract, SDA\_ComplexRectLog, SDA\_ComplexRectExp,  
SDA\_ComplexRectExpj, SDA\_ComplexRectPow, SDA\_ComplexRectAddScalar,  
SDA\_ComplexRectMultiplyScalar, SDA\_ComplexRectDivideScalar,  
SDA\_ComplexScalarSubtractRect.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
void SDA_ComplexRectMultiplyScalar (const SLComplexRect_s *,      Pointer to
source array
    const SLData_t,          Scalar
    SLComplexRect_s *,      Pointer to destination array
    const SLArrayIndex_t)    Array length
```

**DESCRIPTION**

This function multiplies the complex values in the source array by the scalar value.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_ComplexRectSqrt, SDA\_ComplexRectInverse,  
SDA\_ComplexRectConjugate, SDA\_ComplexRectMagnitude,  
SDA\_ComplexRectMagnitudeSquared, SDA\_ComplexRectPhase,  
SDA\_ComplexRectMultiply, SDA\_ComplexRectDivide, SDA\_ComplexRectAdd,  
SDA\_ComplexRectSubtract, SDA\_ComplexRectLog, SDA\_ComplexRectExp,  
SDA\_ComplexRectExpj, SDA\_ComplexRectPow, SDA\_ComplexRectAddScalar,  
SDA\_ComplexRectSubtractScalar, SDA\_ComplexRectDivideScalar,  
SDA\_ComplexScalarSubtractRect.



**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

void SDA\_ComplexRectDivideScalar (const SLComplexRect\_s \*, Pointer to source array

|                       |                              |
|-----------------------|------------------------------|
| const SLData_t,       | Scalar                       |
| SLComplexRect_s *,    | Pointer to destination array |
| const SLArrayIndex_t) | Array length                 |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function divides the complex values in the source array by the scalar value.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_ComplexRectSqrt, SDA\_ComplexRectInverse,  
SDA\_ComplexRectConjugate, SDA\_ComplexRectMagnitude,  
SDA\_ComplexRectMagnitudeSquared, SDA\_ComplexRectPhase,  
SDA\_ComplexRectMultiply, SDA\_ComplexRectDivide, SDA\_ComplexRectAdd,  
SDA\_ComplexRectSubtract, SDA\_ComplexRectLog, SDA\_ComplexRectExp,  
SDA\_ComplexRectExpj, SDA\_ComplexRectPow, SDA\_ComplexRectAddScalar,  
SDA\_ComplexRectSubtractScalar, SDA\_ComplexRectMultiplyScalar,  
SDA\_ComplexScalarSubtractRect.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
void SDA_ComplexScalarSubtractRect (const SLData_t,   Scalar
                                     const SLComplexRect_s *,   Pointer to source array
                                     SLComplexRect_s *,   Pointer to destination array
                                     const SLArrayIndex_t)   Array length
```

**DESCRIPTION**

This function subtract the complex values in the source array from the scalar value.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_ComplexRectSqrt, SDA\_ComplexRectInverse,  
SDA\_ComplexRectConjugate, SDA\_ComplexRectMagnitude,  
SDA\_ComplexRectMagnitudeSquared, SDA\_ComplexRectPhase,  
SDA\_ComplexRectMultiply, SDA\_ComplexRectDivide, SDA\_ComplexRectAdd,  
SDA\_ComplexRectSubtract, SDA\_ComplexRectLog, SDA\_ComplexRectExp,  
SDA\_ComplexRectExpj, SDA\_ComplexRectPow, SDA\_ComplexRectAddScalar,  
SDA\_ComplexRectSubtractScalar, SDA\_ComplexRectMultiplyScalar,  
SDA\_ComplexRectDivideScalar.

### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_ComplexRectLinearInterpolate (const SLComplexRect_s,  
                                       Interpolation start point  
                                       const SLComplexRect_s,  
                                       Interpolation end point  
                                       SLComplexRect_s *,  
                                       Destination array  
                                       const SLArrayIndex_t)  
                                       Number of interpolated points
```

### DESCRIPTION

This function performs rectangular linear interpolation of the samples between the two source complex numbers.

### NOTES ON USE

The output array length = the number of interpolated points +2.

### CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_ComplexPolarLinearInterpolate, SDA\_Interpolate,  
SDA\_InterpolateAndFilter, SDA\_InterpolateLinear1, SDA\_InterpolateLinear2.

### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_ComplexPolarLinearInterpolate (const SLComplexPolar_s,  
                                         Interpolation start point  
                                         const SLComplexPolar_s,  
                                         Interpolation end point  
                                         SLComplexPolar_s *,  
                                         Destination array  
                                         const SLArrayIndex_t)  
                                         Number of interpolated points
```

### DESCRIPTION

This function performs polar linear interpolation of the samples between the two source complex numbers.

### NOTES ON USE

The output array length = the number of interpolated points +2.

### CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_ComplexRectLinearInterpolate, SDA\_Interpolate,  
SDA\_InterpolateAndFilter, SDA\_InterpolateLinear1, SDA\_InterpolateLinear2.

## MATRIX VECTOR FUNCTIONS (*matrix.c*)

The matrix functions operate on 2 dimensional real matrices. A matrix of n ROWS by m COLUMNS is denoted:

Matrix[ROWS][COLS]

Each element in row i and column j of A is denoted by A(i,j), with the full matrix being shown below:

$$A = [a_{ij}] = \begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{cccc} \text{--} & & & \text{--} \\ | & a & a & . & . & . & a & | \\ | & 11 & 12 & & & & 1j & | \\ | & & & & & & & | \\ | & a & a & . & . & . & a & | \\ | & 21 & 22 & & & & 2j & | \\ | & . & . & & & & . & | \\ | & & & & & & & | \\ | & . & . & & & & . & | \\ | & & & & & & & | \\ | & a & a & . & . & . & a & | \\ | & i1 & i2 & & & & ij & | \\ \text{--} & & & & & & \text{--} \end{array} \end{array}$$

All SigLib matrices are real so to implement complex operations the real and imaginary components are handled separately. For example a complex array A can be represented by the separate arrays A\_real and A\_imag. Now we can perform a complex operation (e.g. Hermitian Transpose) by using the following SigLib functions:

```
SMX_Transpose (A_real....)           // Transpose the real array
SMX_Transpose (A_imag....)           // Transpose the imaginary array
SDA_Negate (A_imag....)               //Conjugate the result by
                                     // negating the imaginary array
```

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|                                       |                            |
|---------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| void SMX_Transpose (const SLData_t *, | Source matrix pointer      |
| SLData_t *,                           | Destination matrix pointer |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                 | Source matrix # of rows    |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)                 | Source matrix # columns    |

## DESCRIPTION

This function transposes a two dimensional matrix. This operation is also referred to as a 'corner turn'.

## NOTES ON USE

This function can only work in-place if the matrix is square. If the matrix is not square then the function requires separate source and destination arrays.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SMX\_Transpose, SMX\_Copy, SMX\_Add, SMX\_Subtract,  
 SMX\_MultiplyPiecewise, SMX\_ScalarMultiply, SMX\_Multiply,  
 SMX\_CreateIdentity, SMX\_Inverse2x2, SMX\_ComplexInverse2x2, SMX\_Inverse,  
 SMX\_LuDecompose, SMX\_LuSolve, SMX\_Determinant, SMX\_LuDeterminant,  
 SMX\_RotateClockwise, SMX\_RotateAntiClockwise, SMX\_Reflect, SMX\_Flip,  
 SMX\_InsertRow, SMX\_ExtractRow, SMX\_InsertColumn, SMX\_ExtractColumn,  
 SMX\_InsertNewRow, SMX\_DeleteOldRow, SMX\_InsertNewColumn,  
 SMX\_DeleteOldColumn, SMX\_InsertRegion, SMX\_ExtractRegion,  
 SMX\_InsertDiagonal, SMX\_ExtractDiagonal, SMX\_SwapRows,  
 SMX\_SwapColumns, SMX\_Sum, SDA\_ShuffleColumns, SMX\_ShuffleRows,  
 SMX\_ExtractCategoricalColumn

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|                                      |                              |
|--------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| void SMX_Multiply (const SLData_t *, | Source matrix 1 pointer      |
| const SLData_t *,                    | Source matrix 2 pointer      |
| SLData_t *,                          | Destination matrix pointer   |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                | Source matrix 1 # of rows    |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                | Source matrix 1 # of columns |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)                | Source matrix 2 # of columns |

## DESCRIPTION

This function multiplies two, two dimensional matrices.

## NOTES ON USE

The number of columns in the first must equal the number of rows in the second. The output matrix has order: [# rows 1, # columns 2]

## CROSS REFERENCE

SMX\_Transpose, SMX\_Copy, SMX\_Add, SMX\_Subtract,  
 SMX\_MultiplyPiecewise, SMX\_ScalarMultiply, SMX\_CreateIdentity,  
 SMX\_Inverse2x2, SMX\_ComplexInverse2x2, SMX\_Inverse, SMX\_LuDecompose,  
 SMX\_LuSolve, SMX\_Determinant, SMX\_LuDeterminant, SMX\_RotateClockwise,  
 SMX\_RotateAntiClockwise, SMX\_Reflect, SMX\_Flip, SMX\_InsertRow,  
 SMX\_ExtractRow, SMX\_InsertColumn, SMX\_ExtractColumn,  
 SMX\_InsertNewRow, SMX\_DeleteOldRow, SMX\_InsertNewColumn,  
 SMX\_DeleteOldColumn, SMX\_InsertRegion, SMX\_ExtractRegion,  
 SMX\_InsertDiagonal, SMX\_ExtractDiagonal, SMX\_SwapRows,  
 SMX\_SwapColumns, SMX\_Sum, SDA\_ShuffleColumns, SMX\_ShuffleRows,  
 SMX\_ExtractCategoricalColumn





## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SL\_Error\_t SMX\_Inverse2x2 (const SLData\_t \*,     Pointer to source matrix  
                               SLData\_t \*)                     Pointer to destination matrix

## DESCRIPTION

This function inverts a square 2x2 matrix using the following equation:

$$\text{if } A = \begin{vmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{vmatrix} \text{ then } A^{-1} = 1 / (ad - bc) \cdot \begin{vmatrix} d & -b \\ -c & a \end{vmatrix}$$

## NOTES ON USE

This function will return the error code SIGLIB\_ERROR if the matrix is singular.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SMX\_Transpose, SMX\_Copy, SMX\_Add, SMX\_Subtract,  
 SMX\_MultiplyPiecewise, SMX\_ScalarMultiply, SMX\_Multiply,  
 SMX\_CreateIdentity, SMX\_ComplexInverse2x2, SMX\_Inverse,  
 SMX\_LuDecompose, SMX\_LuSolve, SMX\_Determinant, SMX\_LuDeterminant,  
 SMX\_RotateClockwise, SMX\_RotateAntiClockwise, SMX\_Reflect, SMX\_Flip,  
 SMX\_InsertRow, SMX\_ExtractRow, SMX\_InsertColumn, SMX\_ExtractColumn,  
 SMX\_InsertNewRow, SMX\_DeleteOldRow, SMX\_InsertNewColumn,  
 SMX\_DeleteOldColumn, SMX\_InsertRegion, SMX\_ExtractRegion,  
 SMX\_InsertDiagonal, SMX\_ExtractDiagonal, SMX\_SwapRows,  
 SMX\_SwapColumns, SMX\_Sum, SDA\_ShuffleColumns, SMX\_ShuffleRows,  
 SMX\_ExtractCategoricalColumn



## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```

SL_Error_t SMX_Inverse (const SLData_t *, Source matrix pointer
                        SLData_t *,           Destination matrix pointer
                        SLData_t *,           Temporary array for source
                        SLData_t *,           Index substitution array
                        SLArrayIndex_t *,     Row interchange indices
                        SLData_t *,           Scaling factor array
                        const SLArrayIndex_t) Number of rows and columns in matrix

```

## DESCRIPTION

This function inverts a square matrix.

## NOTES ON USE

This function uses the **LU** decomposition algorithm via the function `SMX_LuDecompose` and then uses forward and backward substitution to solve the equation  $A \cdot x = b$  (where  $A = LU$ ), using the SigLib function `SMX_LuSolve`.

This function will return the error code `SIGLIB_ERROR` if the matrix is singular.

The **LU** decomposed array is stored temporarily within this function. If multiple linear equations need to be solved then the decomposition and solution functions can be called separately from the user's programs. In this case, it is only necessary to perform the **LU** decomposition once for each matrix **A**, followed by multiple calls to the function `SMX_LuSolve`.

## CROSS REFERENCE

`SMX_Transpose`, `SMX_Copy`, `SMX_Add`, `SMX_Subtract`,  
`SMX_MultiplyPiecewise`, `SMX_ScalarMultiply`, `SMX_Multiply`,  
`SMX_CreateIdentity`, `SMX_Inverse2x2`, `SMX_ComplexInverse2x2`,  
`SMX_LuDecompose`, `SMX_LuSolve`, `SMX_Determinant`, `SMX_LuDeterminant`,  
`SMX_RotateClockwise`, `SMX_RotateAntiClockwise`, `SMX_Reflect`, `SMX_Flip`,  
`SMX_InsertRow`, `SMX_ExtractRow`, `SMX_InsertColumn`, `SMX_ExtractColumn`,  
`SMX_InsertNewRow`, `SMX_DeleteOldRow`, `SMX_InsertNewColumn`,  
`SMX_DeleteOldColumn`, `SMX_InsertRegion`, `SMX_ExtractRegion`,  
`SMX_InsertDiagonal`, `SMX_ExtractDiagonal`, `SMX_SwapRows`,  
`SMX_SwapColumns`, `SMX_Sum`, `SDA_ShuffleColumns`, `SMX_ShuffleRows`,  
`SMX_ExtractCategoricalColumn`

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|  |  |
|--|--|
| SL_Error_t SMX_LuDecompose (SLData_t *,<br>SLArrayIndex_t *,<br>SLData_t *,<br>const SLArrayIndex_t) | Source and destination pointer<br>Index matrix pointer<br>Scaling factor array<br>Number of rows and columns in matrix |
|--|--|

## DESCRIPTION

This functions performs an **LU** decomposition on a square matrix, using Crout's method.

## NOTES ON USE

The data in the source matrix will be destroyed.

This function will return the error code SIGLIB\_ERROR if the matrix is singular.

Scaled partial pivoting is used I.E. only rows are interchanged. A record of the row interchanges are stored in the row interchange matrix and these are used in the functions that can accept the output from SMX\_LuDecompose.

If multiple linear equations need to be solved then the decomposition and solution functions can be called separately from the user's programs. In this case, it is only necessary to perform the **LU** decomposition once for each matrix *A*, followed by multiple calls to the function SMX\_LuSolve.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SMX\_Transpose, SMX\_Copy, SMX\_Add, SMX\_Subtract, SMX\_MultiplyPiecewise, SMX\_ScalarMultiply, SMX\_Multiply, SMX\_CreateIdentity, SMX\_Inverse2x2, SMX\_ComplexInverse2x2, SMX\_Inverse, SMX\_LuSolve, SMX\_Determinant, SMX\_LuDeterminant, SMX\_RotateClockwise, SMX\_RotateAntiClockwise, SMX\_Reflect, SMX\_Flip, SMX\_InsertRow, SMX\_ExtractRow, SMX\_InsertColumn, SMX\_ExtractColumn, SMX\_InsertNewRow, SMX\_DeleteOldRow, SMX\_InsertNewColumn, SMX\_DeleteOldColumn, SMX\_InsertRegion, SMX\_ExtractRegion, SMX\_InsertDiagonal, SMX\_ExtractDiagonal, SMX\_SwapRows, SMX\_SwapColumns, SMX\_Sum, SDA\_ShuffleColumns, SMX\_ShuffleRows, SMX\_ExtractCategoricalColumn

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|                                     |  |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| void SMX_LuSolve (const SLData_t *, | Interchanged LU decomposed matrix ptr. |
| SLData_t *,                         | Source and inverse matrix pointer      |
| const SLArrayIndex_t *,             | Row interchange matrix pointer         |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)               | Source matrix # of rows and columns    |

## DESCRIPTION

This function uses forward and backward substitution on a square matrix, to solve the equation  $A \cdot x = b$  (where  $A = LU$ ), using the SigLib function SMX\_LuSolve. It accepts as its primary inputs an interchanged  $LU$  decomposed matrix and row interchange matrix.

## NOTES ON USE

If multiple linear equations need to be solved then the decomposition and solution functions can be called separately from the user's programs. In this case, it is only necessary to perform the  $LU$  decomposition once for each matrix  $A$ , followed by multiple calls to the function SMX\_LuSolve.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SMX\_Transpose, SMX\_Copy, SMX\_Add, SMX\_Subtract,  
SMX\_MultiplyPiecewise, SMX\_ScalarMultiply, SMX\_Multiply,  
SMX\_CreateIdentity, SMX\_Inverse2x2, SMX\_ComplexInverse2x2, SMX\_Inverse,  
SMX\_LuDecompose, SMX\_Determinant, SMX\_LuDeterminant,  
SMX\_RotateClockwise, SMX\_RotateAntiClockwise, SMX\_Reflect, SMX\_Flip,  
SMX\_InsertRow, SMX\_ExtractRow, SMX\_InsertColumn, SMX\_ExtractColumn,  
SMX\_InsertNewRow, SMX\_DeleteOldRow, SMX\_InsertNewColumn,  
SMX\_DeleteOldColumn, SMX\_InsertRegion, SMX\_ExtractRegion,  
SMX\_InsertDiagonal, SMX\_ExtractDiagonal, SMX\_SwapRows,  
SMX\_SwapColumns, SMX\_Sum, SDA\_ShuffleColumns, SMX\_ShuffleRows,  
SMX\_ExtractCategoricalColumn

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLData_t SMX_Determinant (const SLData_t *,    Source matrix pointer
                          SLData_t *,          Temporary array for source
                          SLArrayIndex_t *,     Row interchange indices
                          SLData_t *,          Scaling factor array
                          const SLArrayIndex_t) Number of rows and columns in matrix
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function returns the determinant of a square matrix.

## NOTES ON USE

This function will NOT return an error code if the matrix is non-invertible (I.E. singular) or if there is a memory allocation error.

This function allocates temporary arrays whenever the array length increases because the **LU** decomposition algorithm is destructive and these arrays avoid the source array from being destroyed.

This function uses the **LU** decomposition algorithm via the function `SMX_LuDecompose`.

If the matrix has already been decomposed into the **LU** form then it is only necessary to call the function `SMX_LuDeterminant`.

## CROSS REFERENCE

`SMX_Transpose`, `SMX_Copy`, `SMX_Add`, `SMX_Subtract`,  
`SMX_MultiplyPiecewise`, `SMX_ScalarMultiply`, `SMX_Multiply`,  
`SMX_CreateIdentity`, `SMX_Inverse2x2`, `SMX_ComplexInverse2x2`, `SMX_Inverse`,  
`SMX_LuDecompose`, `SMX_LuSolve`, `SMX_LuDeterminant`, `SMX_RotateClockwise`,  
`SMX_RotateAntiClockwise`, `SMX_Reflect`, `SMX_Flip`, `SMX_InsertRow`,  
`SMX_ExtractRow`, `SMX_InsertColumn`, `SMX_ExtractColumn`,  
`SMX_InsertNewRow`, `SMX_DeleteOldRow`, `SMX_InsertNewColumn`,  
`SMX_DeleteOldColumn`, `SMX_InsertRegion`, `SMX_ExtractRegion`,  
`SMX_InsertDiagonal`, `SMX_ExtractDiagonal`, `SMX_SwapRows`,  
`SMX_SwapColumns`, `SMX_Sum`, `SDA_ShuffleColumns`, `SMX_ShuffleRows`,  
`SMX_ExtractCategoricalColumn`

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLData_t SMX_LuDeterminant (const SLData_t *, Source matrix pointer
                           const SLArrayIndex_t *      Row interchange matrix pointer
                           const SLArrayIndex_t)        Source matrix # of rows and columns
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function returns the determinant of a square matrix.

## NOTES ON USE

This function accepts an **LU** array with interchanged rows, as indicated in the row interchange index array.

If the matrix has already been decomposed into the **LU** form then it is only necessary to call the function `SMX_LuDeterminant` and not `SMX_Determinant`.

The determinant of a matrix is the product of diagonal elements of **LU** decomposition and The sign of the determinant changes for each row swap that occurred in the **LU** decomposition process.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SMX\_Transpose, SMX\_Copy, SMX\_Add, SMX\_Subtract,  
 SMX\_MultiplyPiecewise, SMX\_ScalarMultiply, SMX\_Multiply,  
 SMX\_CreateIdentity, SMX\_Inverse2x2, SMX\_ComplexInverse2x2, SMX\_Inverse,  
 SMX\_LuDecompose, SMX\_LuSolve, SMX\_Determinant, SMX\_RotateClockwise,  
 SMX\_RotateAntiClockwise, SMX\_Reflect, SMX\_Flip, SMX\_InsertRow,  
 SMX\_ExtractRow, SMX\_InsertColumn, SMX\_ExtractColumn,  
 SMX\_InsertNewRow, SMX\_DeleteOldRow, SMX\_InsertNewColumn,  
 SMX\_DeleteOldColumn, SMX\_InsertRegion, SMX\_ExtractRegion,  
 SMX\_InsertDiagonal, SMX\_ExtractDiagonal, SMX\_SwapRows,  
 SMX\_SwapColumns, SMX\_Sum, SDA\_ShuffleColumns, SMX\_ShuffleRows,  
 SMX\_ExtractCategoricalColumn

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
void SMX_RotateClockwise (const SLData_t *,    Source matrix pointer
                          SLData_t *,          Destination matrix pointer
                          const SLArrayIndex_t, Number of rows in matrix
                          const SLArrayIndex_t) Number of columns in matrix
```

**DESCRIPTION**

This function rotates the matrix clockwise.

**NOTES ON USE**

This function does not work in-place.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SMX\_Transpose, SMX\_Copy, SMX\_Add, SMX\_Subtract,  
SMX\_MultiplyPiecewise, SMX\_ScalarMultiply, SMX\_Multiply,  
SMX\_CreateIdentity, SMX\_Inverse2x2, SMX\_ComplexInverse2x2, SMX\_Inverse,  
SMX\_LuDecompose, SMX\_LuSolve, SMX\_Determinant, SMX\_LuDeterminant,  
SMX\_RotateAntiClockwise, SMX\_Reflect, SMX\_Flip, SMX\_InsertRow,  
SMX\_ExtractRow, SMX\_InsertColumn, SMX\_ExtractColumn,  
SMX\_InsertNewRow, SMX\_DeleteOldRow, SMX\_InsertNewColumn,  
SMX\_DeleteOldColumn, SMX\_InsertRegion, SMX\_ExtractRegion,  
SMX\_InsertDiagonal, SMX\_ExtractDiagonal, SMX\_SwapRows,  
SMX\_SwapColumns, SMX\_Sum, SDA\_ShuffleColumns, SMX\_ShuffleRows,  
SMX\_ExtractCategoricalColumn



## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SMX_RotateAntiClockwise (const SLData_t *,      Source matrix pointer
                              SLData_t *,          Destination matrix pointer
                              const SLArrayIndex_t,  Number of rows in matrix
                              const SLArrayIndex_t)  Number of columns in matrix
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function rotates the matrix anti-clockwise.

## NOTES ON USE

This function does not work in-place.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SMX\_Transpose, SMX\_Copy, SMX\_Add, SMX\_Subtract,  
 SMX\_MultiplyPiecewise, SMX\_ScalarMultiply, SMX\_Multiply,  
 SMX\_CreateIdentity, SMX\_Inverse2x2, SMX\_ComplexInverse2x2, SMX\_Inverse,  
 SMX\_LuDecompose, SMX\_LuSolve, SMX\_Determinant, SMX\_LuDeterminant,  
 SMX\_RotateClockwise, SMX\_Reflect, SMX\_Flip, SMX\_InsertRow,  
 SMX\_ExtractRow, SMX\_InsertColumn, SMX\_ExtractColumn,  
 SMX\_InsertNewRow, SMX\_DeleteOldRow, SMX\_InsertNewColumn,  
 SMX\_DeleteOldColumn, SMX\_InsertRegion, SMX\_ExtractRegion,  
 SMX\_InsertDiagonal, SMX\_ExtractDiagonal, SMX\_SwapRows,  
 SMX\_SwapColumns, SMX\_Sum, SDA\_ShuffleColumns, SMX\_ShuffleRows,  
 SMX\_ExtractCategoricalColumn

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|                                     |                             |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| void SMX_Reflect (const SLData_t *, | Source matrix pointer       |
| SLData_t *,                         | Destination matrix pointer  |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,               | Number of rows in matrix    |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)               | Number of columns in matrix |

## DESCRIPTION

This function reflects the matrix about the central vertical axis.

## NOTES ON USE

## CROSS REFERENCE

SMX\_Transpose, SMX\_Copy, SMX\_Add, SMX\_Subtract,  
 SMX\_MultiplyPiecewise, SMX\_ScalarMultiply, SMX\_Multiply,  
 SMX\_CreateIdentity, SMX\_Inverse2x2, SMX\_ComplexInverse2x2, SMX\_Inverse,  
 SMX\_LuDecompose, SMX\_LuSolve, SMX\_Determinant, SMX\_LuDeterminant,  
 SMX\_RotateClockwise, SMX\_RotateAntiClockwise, SMX\_Flip, SMX\_InsertRow,  
 SMX\_ExtractRow, SMX\_InsertColumn, SMX\_ExtractColumn,  
 SMX\_InsertNewRow, SMX\_DeleteOldRow, SMX\_InsertNewColumn,  
 SMX\_DeleteOldColumn, SMX\_InsertRegion, SMX\_ExtractRegion,  
 SMX\_InsertDiagonal, SMX\_ExtractDiagonal, SMX\_SwapRows,  
 SMX\_SwapColumns, SMX\_Sum, SDA\_ShuffleColumns, SMX\_ShuffleRows,  
 SMX\_ExtractCategoricalColumn

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|                                  |                             |
|----------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| void SMX_Flip (const SLData_t *, | Source matrix pointer       |
| SLData_t *,                      | Destination matrix pointer  |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,            | Number of rows in matrix    |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)            | Number of columns in matrix |

## DESCRIPTION

This function flips the matrix about the central horizontal axis.

## NOTES ON USE

## CROSS REFERENCE

SMX\_Transpose, SMX\_Copy, SMX\_Add, SMX\_Subtract,  
 SMX\_MultiplyPiecewise, SMX\_ScalarMultiply, SMX\_Multiply,  
 SMX\_CreateIdentity, SMX\_Inverse2x2, SMX\_ComplexInverse2x2, SMX\_Inverse,  
 SMX\_LuDecompose, SMX\_LuSolve, SMX\_Determinant, SMX\_LuDeterminant,  
 SMX\_RotateClockwise, SMX\_RotateAntiClockwise, SMX\_Reflect,  
 SMX\_InsertRow, SMX\_ExtractRow, SMX\_InsertColumn, SMX\_ExtractColumn,  
 SMX\_InsertNewRow, SMX\_DeleteOldRow, SMX\_InsertNewColumn,  
 SMX\_DeleteOldColumn, SMX\_InsertRegion, SMX\_ExtractRegion,  
 SMX\_InsertDiagonal, SMX\_ExtractDiagonal, SMX\_SwapRows,  
 SMX\_SwapColumns, SMX\_Sum, SDA\_ShuffleColumns, SMX\_ShuffleRows,  
 SMX\_ExtractCategoricalColumn

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|                                       |                             |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| void SMX_InsertRow (const SLData_t *, | Source matrix pointer       |
| const SLData_t *,                     | Input data for row          |
| SLData_t *,                           | Destination matrix pointer  |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                 | Row number to insert data   |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                 | Number of rows in matrix    |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)                 | Number of columns in matrix |

## DESCRIPTION

This function inserts the new data into the selected row.

## NOTES ON USE

This function overwrites the data in the selected row in the matrix.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SMX\_Transpose, SMX\_Copy, SMX\_Add, SMX\_Subtract,  
 SMX\_MultiplyPiecewise, SMX\_ScalarMultiply, SMX\_Multiply,  
 SMX\_CreateIdentity, SMX\_Inverse2x2, SMX\_ComplexInverse2x2, SMX\_Inverse,  
 SMX\_LuDecompose, SMX\_LuSolve, SMX\_Determinant, SMX\_LuDeterminant,  
 SMX\_RotateClockwise, SMX\_RotateAntiClockwise, SMX\_Reflect, SMX\_Flip,  
 SMX\_ExtractRow, SMX\_InsertColumn, SMX\_ExtractColumn,  
 SMX\_InsertNewRow, SMX\_DeleteOldRow, SMX\_InsertNewColumn,  
 SMX\_DeleteOldColumn, SMX\_InsertRegion, SMX\_ExtractRegion,  
 SMX\_InsertDiagonal, SMX\_ExtractDiagonal, SMX\_SwapRows,  
 SMX\_SwapColumns, SMX\_Sum, SDA\_ShuffleColumns, SMX\_ShuffleRows,  
 SMX\_ExtractCategoricalColumn

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
void SMX_ExtractRow (const SLData_t *,   Source matrix pointer
                    SLData_t *,         Destination matrix pointer
                    const SLArrayIndex_t, Row number to extract data
                    const SLArrayIndex_t) Number of columns in matrix
```

**DESCRIPTION**

This function extracts the data from the selected row.

**NOTES ON USE**

This function copies the data to the destination array. If you want to delete the row afterwards you should use the function `SMX_DeleteOldRow()`.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SMX\_Transpose, SMX\_Copy, SMX\_Add, SMX\_Subtract,  
SMX\_MultiplyPiecewise, SMX\_ScalarMultiply, SMX\_Multiply,  
SMX\_CreateIdentity, SMX\_Inverse2x2, SMX\_ComplexInverse2x2, SMX\_Inverse,  
SMX\_LuDecompose, SMX\_LuSolve, SMX\_Determinant, SMX\_LuDeterminant,  
SMX\_RotateClockwise, SMX\_RotateAntiClockwise, SMX\_Reflect, SMX\_Flip,  
SMX\_InsertRow, SMX\_InsertColumn, SMX\_ExtractColumn, SMX\_InsertNewRow,  
SMX\_DeleteOldRow, SMX\_InsertNewColumn, SMX\_DeleteOldColumn,  
SMX\_InsertRegion, SMX\_ExtractRegion, SMX\_InsertDiagonal,  
SMX\_ExtractDiagonal, SMX\_SwapRows, SMX\_SwapColumns, SMX\_Sum,  
SDA\_ShuffleColumns, SMX\_ShuffleRows, SMX\_ExtractCategoricalColumn

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SMX_InsertColumn (const SLData_t *,Source matrix pointer
    const SLData_t *,           Input data for column
    SLData_t *,                 Destination matrix pointer
    const SLArrayIndex_t,       Row number to insert data
    const SLArrayIndex_t,       Number of rows in matrix
    const SLArrayIndex_t)       Number of columns in matrix
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function inserts the new data into the selected column.

## NOTES ON USE

This function overwrites the data in the selected column in the matrix.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SMX\_Transpose, SMX\_Copy, SMX\_Add, SMX\_Subtract,  
 SMX\_MultiplyPiecewise, SMX\_ScalarMultiply, SMX\_Multiply,  
 SMX\_CreateIdentity, SMX\_Inverse2x2, SMX\_ComplexInverse2x2, SMX\_Inverse,  
 SMX\_LuDecompose, SMX\_LuSolve, SMX\_Determinant, SMX\_LuDeterminant,  
 SMX\_RotateClockwise, SMX\_RotateAntiClockwise, SMX\_Reflect, SMX\_Flip,  
 SMX\_InsertRow, SMX\_ExtractRow, SMX\_ExtractColumn, SMX\_InsertNewRow,  
 SMX\_DeleteOldRow, SMX\_InsertNewColumn, SMX\_DeleteOldColumn,  
 SMX\_InsertRegion, SMX\_ExtractRegion, SMX\_InsertDiagonal,  
 SMX\_ExtractDiagonal, SMX\_SwapRows, SMX\_SwapColumns, SMX\_Sum,  
 SDA\_ShuffleColumns, SMX\_ShuffleRows, SMX\_ExtractCategoricalColumn

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SMX_ExtractColumn (const SLData_t *,      Source matrix pointer
                        SLData_t *,           Destination matrix pointer
                        const SLArrayIndex_t,  Column number to extract data
                        const SLArrayIndex_t,  Number of rows in matrix
                        const SLArrayIndex_t)  Number of columns in matrix
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function extracts the data from the selected column.

## NOTES ON USE

This function copies the data to the destination array. If you want to delete the column afterwards you should use the function `SMX_DeleteOldColumn()`.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SMX\_Transpose, SMX\_Copy, SMX\_Add, SMX\_Subtract,  
 SMX\_MultiplyPiecewise, SMX\_ScalarMultiply, SMX\_Multiply,  
 SMX\_CreateIdentity, SMX\_Inverse2x2, SMX\_ComplexInverse2x2, SMX\_Inverse,  
 SMX\_LuDecompose, SMX\_LuSolve, SMX\_Determinant, SMX\_LuDeterminant,  
 SMX\_RotateClockwise, SMX\_RotateAntiClockwise, SMX\_Reflect, SMX\_Flip,  
 SMX\_InsertRow, SMX\_ExtractRow, SMX\_InsertColumn, SMX\_InsertNewRow,  
 SMX\_DeleteOldRow, SMX\_InsertNewColumn, SMX\_DeleteOldColumn,  
 SMX\_InsertRegion, SMX\_ExtractRegion, SMX\_InsertDiagonal,  
 SMX\_ExtractDiagonal, SMX\_SwapRows, SMX\_SwapColumns, SMX\_Sum,  
 SDA\_ShuffleColumns, SMX\_ShuffleRows, SMX\_ExtractCategoricalColumn

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|                                       |                             |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| void SMX_InsertRow (const SLData_t *, | Source matrix pointer       |
| const SLData_t *,                     | Input data for row          |
| SLData_t *,                           | Destination matrix pointer  |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                 | Row number to insert data   |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                 | Number of rows in matrix    |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)                 | Number of columns in matrix |

## DESCRIPTION

This function creates a new row and inserts the new data into this row.

## NOTES ON USE

The number of rows specified in the parameter list is the number of rows in the source matrix.

This function does not work in-place.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SMX\_Transpose, SMX\_Copy, SMX\_Add, SMX\_Subtract,  
 SMX\_MultiplyPiecewise, SMX\_ScalarMultiply, SMX\_Multiply,  
 SMX\_CreateIdentity, SMX\_Inverse2x2, SMX\_ComplexInverse2x2, SMX\_Inverse,  
 SMX\_LuDecompose, SMX\_LuSolve, SMX\_Determinant, SMX\_LuDeterminant,  
 SMX\_RotateClockwise, SMX\_RotateAntiClockwise, SMX\_Reflect, SMX\_Flip,  
 SMX\_InsertRow, SMX\_ExtractRow, SMX\_InsertColumn, SMX\_ExtractColumn,  
 SMX\_DeleteOldRow, SMX\_InsertNewColumn, SMX\_DeleteOldColumn,  
 SMX\_InsertRegion, SMX\_ExtractRegion, SMX\_InsertDiagonal,  
 SMX\_ExtractDiagonal, SMX\_SwapRows, SMX\_SwapColumns, SMX\_Sum,  
 SDA\_ShuffleColumns, SMX\_ShuffleRows, SMX\_ExtractCategoricalColumn



## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SMX_DeleteOldRow (const SLData_t *,      Source matrix pointer
                      SLData_t *,           Destination matrix pointer
                      const SLArrayIndex_t,  Row number to insert data
                      const SLArrayIndex_t,  Number of rows in matrix
                      const SLArrayIndex_t)  Number of columns in matrix
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function deletes the complete row from the matrix.

## NOTES ON USE

The number of rows specified in the parameter list is the number of rows in the source matrix.

This function works in-place.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SMX\_Transpose, SMX\_Copy, SMX\_Add, SMX\_Subtract,  
 SMX\_MultiplyPiecewise, SMX\_ScalarMultiply, SMX\_Multiply,  
 SMX\_CreateIdentity, SMX\_Inverse2x2, SMX\_ComplexInverse2x2, SMX\_Inverse,  
 SMX\_LuDecompose, SMX\_LuSolve, SMX\_Determinant, SMX\_LuDeterminant,  
 SMX\_RotateClockwise, SMX\_RotateAntiClockwise, SMX\_Reflect, SMX\_Flip,  
 SMX\_InsertRow, SMX\_ExtractRow, SMX\_InsertColumn, SMX\_ExtractColumn,  
 SMX\_InsertNewRow, SMX\_InsertNewColumn, SMX\_DeleteOldColumn,  
 SMX\_InsertRegion, SMX\_ExtractRegion, SMX\_InsertDiagonal,  
 SMX\_ExtractDiagonal, SMX\_SwapRows, SMX\_SwapColumns, SMX\_Sum,  
 SDA\_ShuffleColumns, SMX\_ShuffleRows, SMX\_ExtractCategoricalColumn

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SMX_InsertNewColumn (const SLData_t *,   Source matrix pointer
                          const SLData_t *,   Input data for column
                          SLData_t *,         Destination matrix pointer
                          const SLArrayIndex_t, Row number to insert data
                          const SLArrayIndex_t, Number of rows in matrix
                          const SLArrayIndex_t) Number of columns in matrix
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function creates a new column and inserts the new data into this column.

## NOTES ON USE

The number of columns specified in the parameter list is the number of columns in the source matrix.

This function does not work in-place.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SMX\_Transpose, SMX\_Copy, SMX\_Add, SMX\_Subtract,  
 SMX\_MultiplyPiecewise, SMX\_ScalarMultiply, SMX\_Multiply,  
 SMX\_CreateIdentity, SMX\_Inverse2x2, SMX\_ComplexInverse2x2, SMX\_Inverse,  
 SMX\_LuDecompose, SMX\_LuSolve, SMX\_Determinant, SMX\_LuDeterminant,  
 SMX\_RotateClockwise, SMX\_RotateAntiClockwise, SMX\_Reflect, SMX\_Flip,  
 SMX\_InsertRow, SMX\_ExtractRow, SMX\_InsertColumn, SMX\_ExtractColumn,  
 SMX\_InsertNewRow, SMX\_DeleteOldRow, SMX\_DeleteOldColumn,  
 SMX\_InsertRegion, SMX\_ExtractRegion, SMX\_InsertDiagonal,  
 SMX\_ExtractDiagonal, SMX\_SwapRows, SMX\_SwapColumns, SMX\_Sum,  
 SDA\_ShuffleColumns, SMX\_ShuffleRows, SMX\_ExtractCategoricalColumn

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SMX_DeleteOldColumn (const SLData_t *,    Source matrix pointer
                          SLData_t *,          Destination matrix pointer
                          const SLArrayIndex_t, Column number to insert data
                          const SLArrayIndex_t, Number of rows in matrix
                          const SLArrayIndex_t) Number of columns in matrix
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function deletes the complete column from the matrix.

## NOTES ON USE

The number of columns specified in the parameter list is the number of columns in the source matrix.

This function works in-place.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SMX\_Transpose, SMX\_Copy, SMX\_Add, SMX\_Subtract,  
 SMX\_MultiplyPiecewise, SMX\_ScalarMultiply, SMX\_Multiply,  
 SMX\_CreateIdentity, SMX\_Inverse2x2, SMX\_ComplexInverse2x2, SMX\_Inverse,  
 SMX\_LuDecompose, SMX\_LuSolve, SMX\_Determinant, SMX\_LuDeterminant,  
 SMX\_RotateClockwise, SMX\_RotateAntiClockwise, SMX\_Reflect, SMX\_Flip,  
 SMX\_InsertRow, SMX\_ExtractRow, SMX\_InsertColumn, SMX\_ExtractColumn,  
 SMX\_InsertNewRow, SMX\_DeleteOldRow, SMX\_InsertNewColumn,  
 SMX\_InsertRegion, SMX\_ExtractRegion, SMX\_InsertDiagonal,  
 SMX\_ExtractDiagonal, SMX\_SwapRows, SMX\_SwapColumns, SMX\_Sum,  
 SDA\_ShuffleColumns, SMX\_ShuffleRows, SMX\_ExtractCategoricalColumn

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SMX_InsertRegion (const SLData_t *, Source matrix pointer
    const SLData_t *,           Pointer to new region data
    SLData_t *,                 Destination matrix pointer
    const SLArrayIndex_t,       Starting row to insert data
    const SLArrayIndex_t,       Starting column to insert data
    const SLArrayIndex_t,       Number of rows in new data matrix
    const SLArrayIndex_t,       Number of columns in new data matrix
    const SLArrayIndex_t,       Number of rows in matrix
    const SLArrayIndex_t)       Number of columns in matrix
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function inserts the new matrix data into the source matrix.

## NOTES ON USE

This function overwrites the data in the original matrix.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SMX\_Transpose, SMX\_Copy, SMX\_Add, SMX\_Subtract,  
 SMX\_MultiplyPiecewise, SMX\_ScalarMultiply, SMX\_Multiply,  
 SMX\_CreateIdentity, SMX\_Inverse2x2, SMX\_ComplexInverse2x2, SMX\_Inverse,  
 SMX\_LuDecompose, SMX\_LuSolve, SMX\_Determinant, SMX\_LuDeterminant,  
 SMX\_RotateClockwise, SMX\_RotateAntiClockwise, SMX\_Reflect, SMX\_Flip,  
 SMX\_InsertRow, SMX\_ExtractRow, SMX\_InsertColumn, SMX\_ExtractColumn,  
 SMX\_InsertNewRow, SMX\_DeleteOldRow, SMX\_InsertNewColumn,  
 SMX\_DeleteOldColumn, SMX\_ExtractRegion, SMX\_InsertDiagonal,  
 SMX\_ExtractDiagonal, SMX\_SwapRows, SMX\_SwapColumns, SMX\_Sum,  
 SDA\_ShuffleColumns, SMX\_ShuffleRows, SMX\_ExtractCategoricalColumn

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SMX_ExtractRegion (const SLData_t *,      Source matrix pointer
                        SLData_t *,          Destination matrix pointer
                        const SLArrayIndex_t, Starting row to extract data
                        const SLArrayIndex_t, Starting column to extract data
                        const SLArrayIndex_t, Number of rows in region to extract
                        const SLArrayIndex_t, Number of columns in region to extract
                        const SLArrayIndex_t) Number of columns in matrix
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function extracts the specified matrix from the source matrix.

## NOTES ON USE

## CROSS REFERENCE

SMX\_Transpose, SMX\_Copy, SMX\_Add, SMX\_Subtract,  
 SMX\_MultiplyPiecewise, SMX\_ScalarMultiply, SMX\_Multiply,  
 SMX\_CreateIdentity, SMX\_Inverse2x2, SMX\_ComplexInverse2x2, SMX\_Inverse,  
 SMX\_LuDecompose, SMX\_LuSolve, SMX\_Determinant, SMX\_LuDeterminant,  
 SMX\_RotateClockwise, SMX\_RotateAntiClockwise, SMX\_Reflect, SMX\_Flip,  
 SMX\_InsertRow, SMX\_ExtractRow, SMX\_InsertColumn, SMX\_ExtractColumn,  
 SMX\_InsertNewRow, SMX\_DeleteOldRow, SMX\_InsertNewColumn,  
 SMX\_DeleteOldColumn, SMX\_InsertRegion, SMX\_InsertDiagonal,  
 SMX\_ExtractDiagonal, SMX\_SwapRows, SMX\_SwapColumns, SMX\_Sum,  
 SDA\_ShuffleColumns, SMX\_ShuffleRows, SMX\_ExtractCategoricalColumn

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SMX_InsertDiagonal (const SLData_t *,      Source matrix pointer
                        const SLData_t *,      New data to place on diagonal
                        SLData_t *,           Destination matrix pointer
                        const SLArrayIndex_t)   Dimension of square matrix
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function inserts the new data into the diagonal of the matrix.

## NOTES ON USE

This function overwrites the data in the original matrix.  
The matrix must be square.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SMX\_Transpose, SMX\_Copy, SMX\_Add, SMX\_Subtract,  
SMX\_MultiplyPiecewise, SMX\_ScalarMultiply, SMX\_Multiply,  
SMX\_CreateIdentity, SMX\_Inverse2x2, SMX\_ComplexInverse2x2, SMX\_Inverse,  
SMX\_LuDecompose, SMX\_LuSolve, SMX\_Determinant, SMX\_LuDeterminant,  
SMX\_RotateClockwise, SMX\_RotateAntiClockwise, SMX\_Reflect, SMX\_Flip,  
SMX\_InsertRow, SMX\_ExtractRow, SMX\_InsertColumn, SMX\_ExtractColumn,  
SMX\_InsertNewRow, SMX\_DeleteOldRow, SMX\_InsertNewColumn,  
SMX\_DeleteOldColumn, SMX\_InsertRegion, SMX\_ExtractRegion,  
SMX\_ExtractDiagonal, SMX\_SwapRows, SMX\_SwapColumns, SMX\_Sum,  
SDA\_ShuffleColumns, SMX\_ShuffleRows, SMX\_ExtractCategoricalColumn

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
void SMX_ExtractDiagonal (const SLData_t *,      Source matrix pointer
                          SLData_t *,          Destination matrix pointer
                          const SLArrayIndex_t)  Dimension of square matrix
```

**DESCRIPTION**

This function extracts the diagonal from the source matrix.

**NOTES ON USE**

The matrix must be square.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SMX\_Transpose, SMX\_Copy, SMX\_Add, SMX\_Subtract,  
SMX\_MultiplyPiecewise, SMX\_ScalarMultiply, SMX\_Multiply,  
SMX\_CreateIdentity, SMX\_Inverse2x2, SMX\_ComplexInverse2x2, SMX\_Inverse,  
SMX\_LuDecompose, SMX\_LuSolve, SMX\_Determinant, SMX\_LuDeterminant,  
SMX\_RotateClockwise, SMX\_RotateAntiClockwise, SMX\_Reflect, SMX\_Flip,  
SMX\_InsertRow, SMX\_ExtractRow, SMX\_InsertColumn, SMX\_ExtractColumn,  
SMX\_InsertNewRow, SMX\_DeleteOldRow, SMX\_InsertNewColumn,  
SMX\_DeleteOldColumn, SMX\_InsertRegion, SMX\_ExtractRegion,  
SMX\_InsertDiagonal, SMX\_SwapRows, SMX\_SwapColumns, SMX\_Sum,  
SDA\_ShuffleColumns, SMX\_ShuffleRows, SMX\_ExtractCategoricalColumn

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SMX_SwapRows (const SLData_t *,   Source matrix pointer
                  SLData_t *,         Destination matrix pointer
                  const SLArrayIndex_t, Row number 1 to swap
                  const SLArrayIndex_t, Row number 2 to swap
                  const SLArrayIndex_t, Number of rows in matrix
                  const SLArrayIndex_t) Number of columns in matrix
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function swaps the data in the two rows.

## NOTES ON USE

## CROSS REFERENCE

SMX\_Transpose, SMX\_Copy, SMX\_Add, SMX\_Subtract,  
 SMX\_MultiplyPiecewise, SMX\_ScalarMultiply, SMX\_Multiply,  
 SMX\_CreateIdentity, SMX\_Inverse2x2, SMX\_ComplexInverse2x2, SMX\_Inverse,  
 SMX\_LuDecompose, SMX\_LuSolve, SMX\_Determinant, SMX\_LuDeterminant,  
 SMX\_RotateClockwise, SMX\_RotateAntiClockwise, SMX\_Reflect, SMX\_Flip,  
 SMX\_InsertRow, SMX\_ExtractRow, SMX\_InsertColumn, SMX\_ExtractColumn,  
 SMX\_InsertNewRow, SMX\_DeleteOldRow, SMX\_InsertNewColumn,  
 SMX\_DeleteOldColumn, SMX\_InsertRegion, SMX\_ExtractRegion,  
 SMX\_InsertDiagonal, SMX\_ExtractDiagonal, SMX\_SwapColumns, SMX\_Sum,  
 SDA\_ShuffleColumns, SMX\_ShuffleRows, SMX\_ExtractCategoricalColumn



## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SMX_SwapColumns (const SLData_t *,      Source matrix pointer
                      SLData_t *,          Destination matrix pointer
                      const SLArrayIndex_t, Column number 1 to swap
                      const SLArrayIndex_t, Column number 2 to swap
                      const SLArrayIndex_t, Number of rows in matrix
                      const SLArrayIndex_t) Number of columns in matrix
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function swaps the data in the two columns.

## NOTES ON USE

## CROSS REFERENCE

SMX\_Transpose, SMX\_Copy, SMX\_Add, SMX\_Subtract,  
 SMX\_MultiplyPiecewise, SMX\_ScalarMultiply, SMX\_Multiply,  
 SMX\_CreateIdentity, SMX\_Inverse2x2, SMX\_ComplexInverse2x2, SMX\_Inverse,  
 SMX\_LuDecompose, SMX\_LuSolve, SMX\_Determinant, SMX\_LuDeterminant,  
 SMX\_RotateClockwise, SMX\_RotateAntiClockwise, SMX\_Reflect, SMX\_Flip,  
 SMX\_InsertRow, SMX\_ExtractRow, SMX\_InsertColumn, SMX\_ExtractColumn,  
 SMX\_InsertNewRow, SMX\_DeleteOldRow, SMX\_InsertNewColumn,  
 SMX\_DeleteOldColumn, SMX\_InsertRegion, SMX\_ExtractRegion,  
 SMX\_InsertDiagonal, SMX\_ExtractDiagonal, SMX\_SwapRows, SMX\_Sum,  
 SDA\_ShuffleColumns, SMX\_ShuffleRows, SMX\_ExtractCategoricalColumn

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|                                 |                             |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| void SMX_Sum (const SLData_t *, | Source matrix pointer       |
| SLData_t *,                     | Destination matrix pointer  |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,           | Number of rows in matrix    |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)           | Number of columns in matrix |

## DESCRIPTION

This function sums all values in each column so the number of results equals the number of columns.

## NOTES ON USE

## CROSS REFERENCE

SMX\_Transpose, SMX\_Copy, SMX\_Add, SMX\_Subtract,  
 SMX\_MultiplyPiecewise, SMX\_ScalarMultiply, SMX\_Multiply,  
 SMX\_CreateIdentity, SMX\_Inverse2x2, SMX\_ComplexInverse2x2, SMX\_Inverse,  
 SMX\_LuDecompose, SMX\_LuSolve, SMX\_Determinant, SMX\_LuDeterminant,  
 SMX\_RotateClockwise, SMX\_RotateAntiClockwise, SMX\_Reflect, SMX\_Flip,  
 SMX\_InsertRow, SMX\_ExtractRow, SMX\_InsertColumn, SMX\_ExtractColumn,  
 SMX\_InsertNewRow, SMX\_DeleteOldRow, SMX\_InsertNewColumn,  
 SMX\_DeleteOldColumn, SMX\_InsertRegion, SMX\_ExtractRegion,  
 SMX\_InsertDiagonal, SMX\_ExtractDiagonal, SMX\_SwapRows,  
 SMX\_SwapColumns SDA\_ShuffleColumns, SMX\_ShuffleRows,  
 SMX\_ExtractCategoricalColumn

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SMX_ShuffleColumns (const SLData_t *,      Pointer to source matrix
                        SLData_t *,            Pointer to destination matrix
                        SLData_t *,            Pointer to temporary array #1
                        SLData_t *,            Pointer to temporary array #2
                        const SLArrayIndex_t,  Number of rows in matrix
                        const SLArrayIndex_t)  Number of columns in matrix
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function shuffles the order of the columns in the matrix.

## NOTES ON USE

As the number of columns approaches RAND\_MAX, the result becomes less random. The solution is to use a better random number generator or call the function multiple times.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SMX\_Transpose, SMX\_Copy, SMX\_Add, SMX\_Subtract,  
 SMX\_MultiplyPiecewise, SMX\_ScalarMultiply, SMX\_Multiply,  
 SMX\_CreateIdentity, SMX\_Inverse2x2, SMX\_ComplexInverse2x2, SMX\_Inverse,  
 SMX\_LuDecompose, SMX\_LuSolve, SMX\_Determinant, SMX\_LuDeterminant,  
 SMX\_RotateClockwise, SMX\_RotateAntiClockwise, SMX\_Reflect, SMX\_Flip,  
 SMX\_InsertRow, SMX\_ExtractRow, SMX\_InsertColumn, SMX\_ExtractColumn,  
 SMX\_InsertNewRow, SMX\_DeleteOldRow, SMX\_InsertNewColumn,  
 SMX\_DeleteOldColumn, SMX\_InsertRegion, SMX\_ExtractRegion,  
 SMX\_InsertDiagonal, SMX\_ExtractDiagonal, SMX\_SwapRows,  
 SMX\_SwapColumns, SMX\_Sum, SMX\_ShuffleRows,  
 SMX\_ExtractCategoricalColumn

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|   |                               |
|---|-------------------------------|
| void SMX_ShuffleRows (const SLData_t *, | Pointer to source matrix      |
| SLData_t *,                             | Pointer to destination matrix |
| SLData_t *,                             | Pointer to temporary array    |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                   | Number of rows in matrix      |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)                   | Number of columns in matrix   |

## DESCRIPTION

This function shuffles the order of the rows in the matrix.

## NOTES ON USE

As the number of rows approaches RAND\_MAX, the result becomes less random. The solution is to use a better random number generator or call the function multiple times.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SMX\_Transpose, SMX\_Copy, SMX\_Add, SMX\_Subtract,  
 SMX\_MultiplyPiecewise, SMX\_ScalarMultiply, SMX\_Multiply,  
 SMX\_CreateIdentity, SMX\_Inverse2x2, SMX\_ComplexInverse2x2, SMX\_Inverse,  
 SMX\_LuDecompose, SMX\_LuSolve, SMX\_Determinant, SMX\_LuDeterminant,  
 SMX\_RotateClockwise, SMX\_RotateAntiClockwise, SMX\_Reflect, SMX\_Flip,  
 SMX\_InsertRow, SMX\_ExtractRow, SMX\_InsertColumn, SMX\_ExtractColumn,  
 SMX\_InsertNewRow, SMX\_DeleteOldRow, SMX\_InsertNewColumn,  
 SMX\_DeleteOldColumn, SMX\_InsertRegion, SMX\_ExtractRegion,  
 SMX\_InsertDiagonal, SMX\_ExtractDiagonal, SMX\_SwapRows,  
 SMX\_SwapColumns, SMX\_Sum SDA\_ShuffleColumns,  
 SMX\_ExtractCategoricalColumn

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SMX_ExtractCategoricalColumn (const SLData_t *,   Pointer to source matrix
                                  SLArrayIndex_t *,   Pointer to destination matrix
                                  const SLArrayIndex_t, Number of rows in matrix
                                  const SLArrayIndex_t) Number of columns in matrix
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function extracts the categorical column from the matrix.  
The categories are stored as integers (SLArrayIndex\_t).

## NOTES ON USE

The categorical column is the last column in the matrix.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SMX\_Transpose, SMX\_Copy, SMX\_Add, SMX\_Subtract,  
SMX\_MultiplyPiecewise, SMX\_ScalarMultiply, SMX\_Multiply,  
SMX\_CreateIdentity, SMX\_Inverse2x2, SMX\_ComplexInverse2x2, SMX\_Inverse,  
SMX\_LuDecompose, SMX\_LuSolve, SMX\_Determinant, SMX\_LuDeterminant,  
SMX\_RotateClockwise, SMX\_RotateAntiClockwise, SMX\_Reflect, SMX\_Flip,  
SMX\_InsertRow, SMX\_ExtractRow, SMX\_InsertColumn, SMX\_ExtractColumn,  
SMX\_InsertNewRow, SMX\_DeleteOldRow, SMX\_InsertNewColumn,  
SMX\_DeleteOldColumn, SMX\_InsertRegion, SMX\_ExtractRegion,  
SMX\_InsertDiagonal, SMX\_ExtractDiagonal, SMX\_SwapRows,  
SMX\_SwapColumns, SMX\_Sum, SDA\_ShuffleColumns, SMX\_ShuffleRows

## MATRIX VECTOR MACROS

### SMX\_Copy

#### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|                                  |                            |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------|
| void SMX_Copy (const SLData_t *, | Source matrix pointer      |
| SLData_t *,                      | Destination matrix pointer |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,            | Source matrix # of rows    |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)            | Source matrix # of columns |

#### DESCRIPTION

This function copies a two dimensional matrix.

#### NOTES ON USE

This functionality is implemented as a macro and is defined in the file *siglib.h*.

#### CROSS REFERENCE

SMX\_Transpose, SMX\_Multiply, SMX\_Add, SMX\_Subtract,  
SMX\_MultiplyPiecewise, SMX\_ScalarMultiply, SMX\_RotateClockwise,  
SMX\_RotateAntiClockwise, SMX\_Reflect, SMX\_Flip, SMX\_InsertRow,  
SMX\_ExtractRow, SMX\_InsertColumn, SMX\_ExtractColumn,  
SMX\_InsertNewRow, SMX\_DeleteOldRow, SMX\_InsertNewColumn,  
SMX\_DeleteOldColumn, SMX\_InsertRegion, SMX\_ExtractRegion,  
SMX\_InsertDiagonal, SMX\_ExtractDiagonal, SMX\_SwapRows,  
SMX\_SwapColumns, SMX\_Sum

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|                                 |                              |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------|
| void SMX_Add (const SLData_t *, | Source matrix 1 pointer      |
| const SLData_t *,               | Source matrix 2 pointer      |
| SLData_t *,                     | Destination matrix pointer   |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,           | Source matrices # of rows    |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)           | Source matrices # of columns |

## DESCRIPTION

This function adds two, two dimensional matrices.

## NOTES ON USE

This functionality is implemented as a macro and is defined in the file *siglib.h*.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SMX\_Transpose, SMX\_Multiply, SMX\_Copy, SMX\_Subtract, SMX\_MultiplyPiecewise, SMX\_ScalarMultiply, SMX\_RotateClockwise, SMX\_RotateAntiClockwise, SMX\_Reflect, SMX\_Flip, SMX\_InsertRow, SMX\_ExtractRow, SMX\_InsertColumn, SMX\_ExtractColumn, SMX\_InsertNewRow, SMX\_DeleteOldRow, SMX\_InsertNewColumn, SMX\_DeleteOldColumn, SMX\_InsertRegion, SMX\_ExtractRegion, SMX\_InsertDiagonal, SMX\_ExtractDiagonal, SMX\_SwapRows, SMX\_SwapColumns, SMX\_Sum.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|                                      |                              |
|--------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| void SMX_Subtract (const SLData_t *, | Source matrix 1 pointer      |
| const SLData_t *,                    | Source matrix 2 pointer      |
| SLData_t *,                          | Destination matrix pointer   |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                | Source matrices # of rows    |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)                | Source matrices # of columns |

## DESCRIPTION

This function subtracts one two dimensional matrix from another.

## NOTES ON USE

This functionality is implemented as a macro and is defined in the file *siglib.h*.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SMX\_Transpose, SMX\_Multiply, SMX\_Copy, SMX\_Add, SMX\_MultiplyPiecewise, SMX\_ScalarMultiply, SMX\_RotateClockwise, SMX\_RotateAntiClockwise, SMX\_Reflect, SMX\_Flip, SMX\_InsertRow, SMX\_ExtractRow, SMX\_InsertColumn, SMX\_ExtractColumn, SMX\_InsertNewRow, SMX\_DeleteOldRow, SMX\_InsertNewColumn, SMX\_DeleteOldColumn, SMX\_InsertRegion, SMX\_ExtractRegion, SMX\_InsertDiagonal, SMX\_ExtractDiagonal, SMX\_SwapRows, SMX\_SwapColumns, SMX\_Sum.



## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SMX_MultiplyPiecewise (const SLData_t *,   Source matrix 1 pointer
                           const SLData_t *,   Source matrix 2 pointer
                           SLData_t *,         Destination matrix pointer
                           const SLArrayIndex_t, Source matrices # of rows
                           const SLArrayIndex_t) Source matrices # of columns
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function performs piece-wise multiplication between two, two dimensional matrices.

## NOTES ON USE

This functionality is implemented as a macro and id defined in the file *siglib.h*.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SMX\_Transpose, SMX\_Multiply, SMX\_Copy, SMX\_Add, SMX\_Subtract, SMX\_ScalarMultiply, SMX\_RotateClockwise, SMX\_RotateAntiClockwise, SMX\_Reflect, SMX\_Flip, SMX\_InsertRow, SMX\_ExtractRow, SMX\_InsertColumn, SMX\_ExtractColumn, SMX\_InsertNewRow, SMX\_DeleteOldRow, SMX\_InsertNewColumn, SMX\_DeleteOldColumn, SMX\_InsertRegion, SMX\_ExtractRegion, SMX\_InsertDiagonal, SMX\_ExtractDiagonal, SMX\_SwapRows, SMX\_SwapColumns, SMX\_Sum.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|                                      |                            |
|--------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| void SMX_Multiply (const SLData_t *, | Source matrix pointer      |
| const SLData_t,                      | Scalar multiplier          |
| SLData_t *,                          | Destination matrix pointer |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,                | Matrices # of rows         |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)                | Matrices # of columns      |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function multiplies a two dimensional matrix by a scalar value.

**NOTES ON USE**

This functionality is implemented as a macro and id defined in the file *siglib.h*.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SMX\_Transpose, SMX\_Multiply, SMX\_Copy, SMX\_Add, SMX\_Subtract,  
SMX\_MultiplyPiecewise, SMX\_RotateClockwise, SMX\_RotateAntiClockwise,  
SMX\_Reflect, SMX\_Flip, SMX\_InsertRow, SMX\_ExtractRow, SMX\_InsertColumn,  
SMX\_ExtractColumn, SMX\_InsertNewRow, SMX\_DeleteOldRow,  
SMX\_InsertNewColumn, SMX\_DeleteOldColumn, SMX\_InsertRegion,  
SMX\_ExtractRegion, SMX\_InsertDiagonal, SMX\_ExtractDiagonal,  
SMX\_SwapRows, SMX\_SwapColumns, SMX\_Sum

## Machine Learning Functions

These functions implement a selection of two layer convolutional neural networks. The number of nodes in each layer are selectable as are the the number of output nodes.

For detecting two different categories only one output node is required.  
For detecting more than two categories, one node per category is required.

The two layers are:

Layer 1: Hidden layer

Layer 2: Output layer

The available activation types are:

| Activation Enumerated Type        | Activation Type             |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| SIGLIB_ACTIVATION_TYPE_RELU       | Rectified Linear Unit       |
| SIGLIB_ACTIVATION_TYPE_LEAKY_RELU | Leaky Rectified Linear Unit |
| SIGLIB_ACTIVATION_TYPE_LOGISTIC   | Logistic (aka Sigmoid)      |
| SIGLIB_ACTIVATION_TYPE_TANH       | Hyperbolic Tangent          |

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA\_TwoLayer2CategoryNetworkFit (const SLData\_t \*, Pointer to training data

|                                |                                    |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| const SLArrayIndex_t *,        | Pointer to categorical data        |
| SLData_t *,                    | Pointer to layer 1 weights         |
| SLData_t *,                    | Pointer to layer 2 weights         |
| SLData_t *,                    | Pointer to layer 1 pre activation  |
| SLData_t *,                    | Pointer to layer 1 post activation |
| const enum SLActivationType_t, | Layer 1 activation type            |
| const SLData_t,                | Layer 1 activation alpha           |
| const enum SLActivationType_t, | Layer 2 activation type            |
| const SLData_t,                | Layer 2 activation alpha           |
| const SLData_t,                | Learning rate                      |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,          | Number of training sequences       |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,          | Input array length                 |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)          | Number of layer 1 nodes            |

## DESCRIPTION

This function trains a two layer, two category neural network using the provided data.

## NOTES ON USE

The training data array is actually a matrix of number of columns = sample length and the number of rows = number of training sequences. Each row represents a category and the categories are indicated in the categorical data array.

The categorical data array includes one entry for each row of the training sequence matrix.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_TwoLayer2CategoryNetworkPredict,  
SDA\_TwoLayerNCategoryNetworkFit, SDA\_TwoLayerNCategoryNetworkPredict,  
SDS\_ActivationReLU, SDA\_ActivationReLU, SDS\_ActivationReLUderivative,  
SDA\_ActivationReLUderivative, SDS\_ActivationLeakyReLU,  
SDA\_ActivationLeakyReLU, SDS\_ActivationLeakyReLUderivative,  
SDA\_ActivationLeakyReLUderivative, SDS\_ActivationLogistic,  
SDA\_ActivationLogistic, SDS\_ActivationLogisticDerivative,  
SDA\_ActivationLogisticDerivative, SDS\_ActivationTanH, SDA\_ActivationTanH,  
SDS\_ActivationTanHderivative, SDA\_ActivationTanHderivative,  
SUF\_WriteWeightsIntegerCFile, SUF\_WriteWeightsFloatCFile,  
SUF\_WriteWeightsBinaryFile, SUF\_ReadWeightsBinaryFile

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLArrayIndex_t SDA_TwoLayer2CategoryNetworkPredict (const SLData_t *,
Pointer to data to classify
    const SLData_t *,           Pointer to layer 1 weights
    const SLData_t *,           Pointer to layer 2 weights
    SLData_t *,                 Pointer to layer 1 post activation
    SLData_t *,                 Pointer to output activation
    const enum SLActivationType_t, Layer 1 activation type
    const SLData_t,             Layer 1 activation alpha
    const enum SLActivationType_t, Layer 2 activation type
    const SLData_t,             Layer 2 activation alpha
    const SLData_t,             Classification threshold
    const SLArrayIndex_t,       Input array length
    const SLArrayIndex_t)       Number of layer 1 nodes
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function uses the neural network to predict the category using the provided data. The source data array to classify is a single dimensional array that will be classified by the trained neural network.

## NOTES ON USE

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_TwoLayer2CategoryNetworkFit,  
SDA\_TwoLayerNCategoryNetworkPredict, SDS\_ActivationReLU,  
SDA\_ActivationReLU, SDS\_ActivationReLUderivative,  
SDA\_ActivationReLUderivative, SDS\_ActivationLeakyReLU,  
SDA\_ActivationLeakyReLU, SDS\_ActivationLeakyReLUderivative,  
SDA\_ActivationLeakyReLUderivative, SDS\_ActivationLogistic,  
SDA\_ActivationLogistic, SDS\_ActivationLogisticDerivative,  
SDA\_ActivationLogisticDerivative, SDS\_ActivationTanH, SDA\_ActivationTanH,  
SDS\_ActivationTanHderivative, SDA\_ActivationTanHderivative,  
SUF\_WriteWeightsIntegerCFile, SUF\_WriteWeightsFloatCFile,  
SUF\_WriteWeightsBinaryFile, SUF\_ReadWeightsBinaryFile

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA\_TwoLayerNCategoryNetworkFit (const SLData\_t \*, Pointer to training data

|                                |                                    |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| const SLArrayIndex_t *,        | Pointer to categorical data        |
| SLData_t *,                    | Pointer to layer 1 weights         |
| SLData_t *,                    | Pointer to layer 2 weights         |
| SLData_t *,                    | Pointer to layer 1 pre activation  |
| SLData_t *,                    | Pointer to layer 1 post activation |
| SLData_t *,                    | Pointer to layer 2 post activation |
| const enum SLActivationType_t, | Layer 1 activation type            |
| const SLData_t,                | Layer 1 activation alpha           |
| const enum SLActivationType_t, | Layer 2 activation type            |
| const SLData_t,                | Layer 2 activation alpha           |
| const SLData_t,                | Learning rate                      |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,          | Number of training sequences       |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,          | Input array length                 |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,          | Number of layer 1 nodes            |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)          | Number of categories               |

## DESCRIPTION

This function trains a two layer neural network that supports an arbitrary number of output categories, using the provided data.

## NOTES ON USE

The training data array is actually a matrix of number of columns = sample length and the number of rows = number of training sequences. Each row represents a category and the categories are indicated in the categorical data array.

The categorical data array includes one entry for each row of the training sequence matrix.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_TwoLayer2CategoryNetworkFit,  
SDA\_TwoLayer2CategoryNetworkPredict,  
SDA\_TwoLayerNCategoryNetworkPredict, SDS\_ActivationReLU,  
SDA\_ActivationReLU, SDS\_ActivationReLUderivative,  
SDA\_ActivationReLUderivative, SDS\_ActivationLeakyReLU,  
SDA\_ActivationLeakyReLU, SDS\_ActivationLeakyReLUderivative,  
SDA\_ActivationLeakyReLUderivative, SDS\_ActivationLogistic,  
SDA\_ActivationLogistic, SDS\_ActivationLogisticDerivative,  
SDA\_ActivationLogisticDerivative, SDS\_ActivationTanH, SDA\_ActivationTanH,  
SDS\_ActivationTanHderivative, SDA\_ActivationTanHderivative,  
SUF\_WriteWeightsIntegerCFile, SUF\_WriteWeightsFloatCFile,  
SUF\_WriteWeightsBinaryFile, SUF\_ReadWeightsBinaryFile

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLArrayIndex_t SDA_TwoLayerNCategoryNetworkPredict (const SLData_t *,
Pointer to data to classify
    const SLData_t *,           Pointer to layer 1 weights
    const SLData_t *,           Pointer to layer 2 weights
    SLData_t *,                 Pointer to layer 1 post activation
    SLData_t *,                 Pointer to layer 2 post activation
    const enum SLActivationType_t, Layer 1 activation type
    const SLData_t,             Layer 1 activation alpha
    const enum SLActivationType_t, Layer 2 activation type
    const SLData_t,             Layer 2 activation alpha
    const SLArrayIndex_t,       Input array length
    const SLArrayIndex_t,       Number of layer 1 nodes
    const SLArrayIndex_t)       Number of categories
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function uses the neural network to predict the category using the provided data. The source data array to classify is a single dimensional array that will be classified by the trained neural network.

## NOTES ON USE

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_TwoLayer2CategoryNetworkFit,  
SDA\_TwoLayerNCategoryNetworkFit, SDS\_ActivationReLU,  
SDA\_ActivationReLU, SDS\_ActivationReLUderivative,  
SDA\_ActivationReLUderivative, SDS\_ActivationLeakyReLU,  
SDA\_ActivationLeakyReLU, SDS\_ActivationLeakyReLUderivative,  
SDA\_ActivationLeakyReLUderivative, SDS\_ActivationLogistic,  
SDA\_ActivationLogistic, SDS\_ActivationLogisticDerivative,  
SDA\_ActivationLogisticDerivative, SDS\_ActivationTanH, SDA\_ActivationTanH,  
SDS\_ActivationTanHderivative, SDA\_ActivationTanHderivative,  
SUF\_WriteWeightsIntegerCFile, SUF\_WriteWeightsFloatCFile,  
SUF\_WriteWeightsBinaryFile, SUF\_ReadWeightsBinaryFile

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA\_TwoLayer2CategoryWithBiasesNetworkFit (const SLData\_t \*, Pointer to training data

|                                |                                    |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| const SLArrayIndex_t *,        | Pointer to categorical data        |
| SLData_t *,                    | Pointer to layer 1 weights         |
| SLData_t *,                    | Pointer to layer 1 biases          |
| SLData_t *,                    | Pointer to layer 2 weights         |
| SLData_t *,                    | Pointer to layer 2 biases          |
| SLData_t *,                    | Pointer to layer 1 pre activation  |
| SLData_t *,                    | Pointer to layer 1 post activation |
| const enum SLActivationType_t, | Layer 1 activation type            |
| const SLData_t,                | Layer 1 activation alpha           |
| const enum SLActivationType_t, | Layer 2 activation type            |
| const SLData_t,                | Layer 2 activation alpha           |
| const SLData_t,                | Learning rate                      |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,          | Number of training sequences       |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,          | Input array length                 |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)          | Number of layer 1 nodes            |

## DESCRIPTION

This function trains a two layer, two category neural network using the provided data.

## NOTES ON USE

The training data array is actually a matrix of number of columns = sample length and the number of rows = number of training sequences. Each row represents a category and the categories are indicated in the categorical data array.

The categorical data array includes one entry for each row of the training sequence matrix.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_TwoLayer2CategoryNetworkPredict,  
SDA\_TwoLayerNCategoryNetworkFit, SDA\_TwoLayerNCategoryNetworkPredict,  
SDS\_ActivationReLU, SDA\_ActivationReLU, SDS\_ActivationReLUderivative,  
SDA\_ActivationReLUderivative, SDS\_ActivationLeakyReLU,  
SDA\_ActivationLeakyReLU, SDS\_ActivationLeakyReLUderivative,  
SDA\_ActivationLeakyReLUderivative, SDS\_ActivationLogistic,  
SDA\_ActivationLogistic, SDS\_ActivationLogisticderivative,  
SDA\_ActivationLogisticderivative, SDS\_ActivationTanH, SDA\_ActivationTanH,  
SDS\_ActivationTanHderivative, SDA\_ActivationTanHderivative,  
SUF\_WriteWeightsWithBiasesIntegerCFile,  
SUF\_WriteWeightsWithBiasesFloatCFile, SUF\_WriteWeightsWithBiasesBinaryFile,  
SUF\_ReadWeightsWithBiasesBinaryFile



### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLArrayIndex_t SDA_TwoLayer2CategoryWithBiasesNetworkPredict (const
SLData_t *, Pointer to data to classify
    SLData_t *,           Pointer to layer 1 weights
    SLData_t *,           Pointer to layer 1 biases
    SLData_t *,           Pointer to layer 2 weights
    SLData_t *,           Pointer to layer 2 biases
    SLData_t *,           Pointer to layer 1 post activation
    SLData_t *,           Pointer to output activation
    const enum SLActivationType_t, Layer 1 activation type
    const SLData_t,       Layer 1 activation alpha
    const enum SLActivationType_t, Layer 2 activation type
    const SLData_t,       Layer 2 activation alpha
    const SLData_t,       Classification threshold
    const SLArrayIndex_t, Input array length
    const SLArrayIndex_t) Number of layer 1 nodes
```

### DESCRIPTION

This function uses the neural network to predict the category using the provided data. The source data array to classify is a single dimensional array that will be classified by the trained neural network.

### NOTES ON USE

### CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_TwoLayer2CategoryNetworkFit,  
SDA\_TwoLayerNCategoryNetworkPredict, SDS\_ActivationReLU,  
SDA\_ActivationReLU, SDS\_ActivationReLUderivative,  
SDA\_ActivationReLUderivative, SDS\_ActivationLeakyReLU,  
SDA\_ActivationLeakyReLU, SDS\_ActivationLeakyReLUderivative,  
SDA\_ActivationLeakyReLUderivative, SDS\_ActivationLogistic,  
SDA\_ActivationLogistic, SDS\_ActivationLogisticderivative,  
SDA\_ActivationLogisticderivative, SDS\_ActivationTanH, SDA\_ActivationTanH,  
SDS\_ActivationTanHderivative, SDA\_ActivationTanHderivative,  
SUF\_WriteWeightsWithBiasesIntegerCFile,  
SUF\_WriteWeightsWithBiasesFloatCFile, SUF\_WriteWeightsWithBiasesBinaryFile,  
SUF\_ReadWeightsWithBiasesBinaryFile

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

void SDA\_TwoLayerNCategoryWithBiasesNetworkFit (const SLData\_t \*, Pointer to training data

|                                |                                    |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| const SLArrayIndex_t *,        | Pointer to categorical data        |
| SLData_t *,                    | Pointer to layer 1 weights         |
| SLData_t *,                    | Pointer to layer 1 biases          |
| SLData_t *,                    | Pointer to layer 2 weights         |
| SLData_t *,                    | Pointer to layer 2 biases          |
| SLData_t *,                    | Pointer to layer 1 pre activation  |
| SLData_t *,                    | Pointer to layer 1 post activation |
| SLData_t *,                    | Pointer to layer 2 post activation |
| const enum SLActivationType_t, | Layer 1 activation type            |
| const SLData_t,                | Layer 1 activation alpha           |
| const enum SLActivationType_t, | Layer 2 activation type            |
| const SLData_t,                | Layer 2 activation alpha           |
| const SLData_t,                | Learning rate                      |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,          | Number of training sequences       |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,          | Input array length                 |
| const SLArrayIndex_t,          | Number of layer 1 nodes            |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)          | Number of categories               |

## DESCRIPTION

This function trains a two layer neural network that supports an arbitrary number of output categories, using the provided data.

## NOTES ON USE

The training data array is actually a matrix of number of columns = sample length and the number of rows = number of training sequences. Each row represents a category and the categories are indicated in the categorical data array.

The categorical data array includes one entry for each row of the training sequence matrix.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_TwoLayer2CategoryNetworkFit,  
SDA\_TwoLayer2CategoryNetworkPredict,  
SDA\_TwoLayerNCategoryNetworkPredict, SDS\_ActivationReLU,  
SDA\_ActivationReLU, SDS\_ActivationReLUderivative,  
SDA\_ActivationReLUderivative, SDS\_ActivationLeakyReLU,  
SDA\_ActivationLeakyReLU, SDS\_ActivationLeakyReLUderivative,  
SDA\_ActivationLeakyReLUderivative, SDS\_ActivationLogistic,  
SDA\_ActivationLogistic, SDS\_ActivationLogisticDerivative,  
SDA\_ActivationLogisticDerivative, SDS\_ActivationTanH, SDA\_ActivationTanH,  
SDS\_ActivationTanHderivative, SDA\_ActivationTanHderivative,  
SUF\_WriteWeightsWithBiasesIntegerCFile,  
SUF\_WriteWeightsWithBiasesFloatCFile, SUF\_WriteWeightsWithBiasesBinaryFile,  
SUF\_ReadWeightsWithBiasesBinaryFile

### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLArrayIndex_t SDA_TwoLayerNCategoryWithBiasesNetworkPredict (const
SLData_t *, Pointer to data to classify
    SLData_t *,           Pointer to layer 1 weights
    SLData_t *,           Pointer to layer 1 biases
    SLData_t *,           Pointer to layer 2 weights
    SLData_t *,           Pointer to layer 2 biases
    SLData_t *,           Pointer to layer 1 post activation
    SLData_t *,           Pointer to layer 2 post activation
    const enum SLActivationType_t, Layer 1 activation type
    const SLData_t,       Layer 1 activation alpha
    const enum SLActivationType_t, Layer 2 activation type
    const SLData_t,       Layer 2 activation alpha
    const SLArrayIndex_t, Input array length
    const SLArrayIndex_t, Number of layer 1 nodes
    const SLArrayIndex_t) Number of categories
```

### DESCRIPTION

This function uses the neural network to predict the category using the provided data. The source data array to classify is a single dimensional array that will be classified by the trained neural network.

### NOTES ON USE

### CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_TwoLayer2CategoryNetworkFit,  
SDA\_TwoLayerNCategoryNetworkFit, SDS\_ActivationReLU,  
SDA\_ActivationReLU, SDS\_ActivationReLUderivative,  
SDA\_ActivationReLUderivative, SDS\_ActivationLeakyReLU,  
SDA\_ActivationLeakyReLU, SDS\_ActivationLeakyReLUderivative,  
SDA\_ActivationLeakyReLUderivative, SDS\_ActivationLogistic,  
SDA\_ActivationLogistic, SDS\_ActivationLogisticderivative,  
SDA\_ActivationLogisticderivative, SDS\_ActivationTanH, SDA\_ActivationTanH,  
SDS\_ActivationTanHderivative, SDA\_ActivationTanHderivative,  
SUF\_WriteWeightsWithBiasesIntegerCFile,  
SUF\_WriteWeightsWithBiasesFloatCFile, SUF\_WriteWeightsWithBiasesBinaryFile,  
SUF\_ReadWeightsWithBiasesBinaryFile

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLData\_t SDS\_ActivationReLU (const SLData\_t) Source sample

**DESCRIPTION**

This function implements the rectified linear (ReLU) activation function on the input sample.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_TwoLayer2CategoryNetworkFit,  
SDA\_TwoLayerNCategoryNetworkFit, SDA\_TwoLayerNCategoryNetworkPredict,  
SDA\_ActivationReLU, SDS\_ActivationReLUderivative,  
SDA\_ActivationReLUderivative, SDS\_ActivationLeakyReLU,  
SDA\_ActivationLeakyReLU, SDS\_ActivationLeakyReLUderivative,  
SDA\_ActivationLeakyReLUderivative, SDS\_ActivationLogistic,  
SDA\_ActivationLogistic, SDS\_ActivationLogisticDerivative,  
SDA\_ActivationLogisticDerivative, SDS\_ActivationTanH, SDA\_ActivationTanH,  
SDS\_ActivationTanHderivative, SDA\_ActivationTanHderivative,  
SUF\_WavWriteFileScaled, SUF\_WriteWeightsIntegerCFile,  
SUF\_WriteWeightsFloatCFile, SUF\_WriteWeightsBinaryFile,  
SUF\_ReadWeightsBinaryFile

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
void SDA_ActivationReLU (const SLData_t *, Pointer to source array
                        SLData_t *,           Pointer to destination array
                        const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length
```

**DESCRIPTION**

This function implements the rectified linear (ReLU) activation function on all the samples in the array.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_TwoLayer2CategoryNetworkFit,  
SDA\_TwoLayerNCategoryNetworkFit, SDA\_TwoLayerNCategoryNetworkPredict,  
SDS\_ActivationReLU, SDS\_ActivationReLUderivative,  
SDA\_ActivationReLUderivative, SDS\_ActivationLeakyReLU,  
SDA\_ActivationLeakyReLU, SDS\_ActivationLeakyReLUderivative,  
SDA\_ActivationLeakyReLUderivative, SDS\_ActivationLogistic,  
SDA\_ActivationLogistic, SDS\_ActivationLogisticderivative,  
SDA\_ActivationLogisticderivative, SDS\_ActivationTanH, SDA\_ActivationTanH,  
SDS\_ActivationTanHderivative, SDA\_ActivationTanHderivative,  
SUF\_WavWriteFileScaled, SUF\_WriteWeightsIntegerCFile,  
SUF\_WriteWeightsFloatCFile, SUF\_WriteWeightsBinaryFile,  
SUF\_ReadWeightsBinaryFile

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLData\_t SDS\_ActivationReLUDerivative (const SLData\_t) Source sample

**DESCRIPTION**

This function implements the derivative of the rectified linear (ReLU) activation function on the input sample.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_TwoLayer2CategoryNetworkFit,  
SDA\_TwoLayerNCategoryNetworkFit, SDA\_TwoLayerNCategoryNetworkPredict,  
SDS\_ActivationReLU, SDA\_ActivationReLU, SDA\_ActivationReLUDerivative,  
SDS\_ActivationLeakyReLU, SDA\_ActivationLeakyReLU,  
SDS\_ActivationLeakyReLUDerivative, SDA\_ActivationLeakyReLUDerivative,  
SDS\_ActivationLogistic, SDA\_ActivationLogistic,  
SDS\_ActivationLogisticDerivative, SDA\_ActivationLogisticDerivative,  
SDS\_ActivationTanH, SDA\_ActivationTanH, SDS\_ActivationTanHDerivative,  
SDA\_ActivationTanHDerivative, SUF\_WavWriteFileScaled,  
SUF\_WriteWeightsIntegerCFile, SUF\_WriteWeightsFloatCFile,  
SUF\_WriteWeightsBinaryFile, SUF\_ReadWeightsBinaryFile

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
void SDA_ActivationReLUderivative (const SLData_t *, Pointer to source array
    SLData_t *,                      Pointer to destination array
    const SLArrayIndex_t)           Array length
```

**DESCRIPTION**

This function implements the derivative of the rectified linear (ReLU) activation function on all the samples in the array.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_TwoLayer2CategoryNetworkFit,  
SDA\_TwoLayerNCategoryNetworkFit, SDA\_TwoLayerNCategoryNetworkPredict,  
SDS\_ActivationReLU, SDA\_ActivationReLU, SDS\_ActivationReLUderivative,  
SDS\_ActivationLeakyReLU, SDA\_ActivationLeakyReLU,  
SDS\_ActivationLeakyReLUderivative, SDA\_ActivationLeakyReLUderivative,  
SDS\_ActivationLogistic, SDA\_ActivationLogistic,  
SDS\_ActivationLogisticDerivative, SDA\_ActivationLogisticDerivative,  
SDS\_ActivationTanH, SDA\_ActivationTanH, SDS\_ActivationTanHderivative,  
SDA\_ActivationTanHderivative, SUF\_WavWriteFileScaled,  
SUF\_WriteWeightsIntegerCFile, SUF\_WriteWeightsFloatCFile,  
SUF\_WriteWeightsBinaryFile, SUF\_ReadWeightsBinaryFile





## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_ActivationLeakyReLU (const SLData_t *, Pointer to source array
                             const SLData_t,           Activation function alpha value
                             SLData_t *,             Pointer to destination array
                             const SLArrayIndex_t)      Array length
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function implements the leaky rectified linear (ReLU) activation function on all the samples in the array.

## NOTES ON USE

The alpha parameter specifies the decay.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_TwoLayer2CategoryNetworkFit,  
SDA\_TwoLayerNCategoryNetworkFit, SDA\_TwoLayerNCategoryNetworkPredict,  
SDS\_ActivationReLU, SDA\_ActivationReLU, SDS\_ActivationReLUderivative,  
SDA\_ActivationReLUderivative, SDS\_ActivationLeakyReLU,  
SDS\_ActivationLeakyReLUderivative, SDA\_ActivationLeakyReLUderivative,  
SDS\_ActivationLogistic, SDA\_ActivationLogistic,  
SDS\_ActivationLogisticDerivative, SDA\_ActivationLogisticDerivative,  
SDS\_ActivationTanH, SDA\_ActivationTanH, SDS\_ActivationTanHderivative,  
SDA\_ActivationTanHderivative, SUF\_WavWriteFileScaled,  
SUF\_WriteWeightsIntegerCFile, SUF\_WriteWeightsFloatCFile,  
SUF\_WriteWeightsBinaryFile, SUF\_ReadWeightsBinaryFile

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLData\_t SDS\_ActivationLeakyReLUDerivative (const SLData\_t, Source sample  
const SLData\_t) Activation function alpha value

**DESCRIPTION**

This function implements the derivative of the leaky rectified linear (ReLU) activation function on the input sample.

**NOTES ON USE**

The alpha parameter specifies the decay.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_TwoLayer2CategoryNetworkFit,  
SDA\_TwoLayerNCategoryNetworkFit, SDA\_TwoLayerNCategoryNetworkPredict,  
SDS\_ActivationReLU, SDA\_ActivationReLU, SDS\_ActivationReLUDerivative,  
SDA\_ActivationReLUDerivative, SDS\_ActivationLeakyReLU,  
SDA\_ActivationLeakyReLU, SDA\_ActivationLeakyReLUDerivative,  
SDS\_ActivationLogistic, SDA\_ActivationLogistic,  
SDS\_ActivationLogisticDerivative, SDA\_ActivationLogisticDerivative,  
SDS\_ActivationTanH, SDA\_ActivationTanH, SDS\_ActivationTanHDerivative,  
SDA\_ActivationTanHDerivative, SUF\_WavWriteFileScaled,  
SUF\_WriteWeightsIntegerCFile, SUF\_WriteWeightsFloatCFile,  
SUF\_WriteWeightsBinaryFile, SUF\_ReadWeightsBinaryFile

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

void SDA\_ActivationLeakyReLUDerivative (const SLData\_t \*, Pointer to source array

|                       |                                 |
|-----------------------|---------------------------------|
| const SLData_t,       | Activation function alpha value |
| SLData_t *,           | Pointer to destination array    |
| const SLArrayIndex_t) | Array length                    |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function implements the derivative of the leaky rectified linear (ReLU) activation function on all the samples in the array.

**NOTES ON USE**

The alpha parameter specifies the decay.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_TwoLayer2CategoryNetworkFit,  
SDA\_TwoLayerNCategoryNetworkFit, SDA\_TwoLayerNCategoryNetworkPredict,  
SDS\_ActivationReLU, SDA\_ActivationReLU, SDS\_ActivationReLUDerivative,  
SDA\_ActivationReLUDerivative, SDS\_ActivationLeakyReLU,  
SDA\_ActivationLeakyReLU, SDS\_ActivationLeakyReLUDerivative,  
SDS\_ActivationLogistic, SDA\_ActivationLogistic,  
SDS\_ActivationLogisticDerivative, SDA\_ActivationLogisticDerivative,  
SDS\_ActivationTanH, SDA\_ActivationTanH, SDS\_ActivationTanHDerivative,  
SDA\_ActivationTanHDerivative, SUF\_WavWriteFileScaled,  
SUF\_WriteWeightsIntegerCFile, SUF\_WriteWeightsFloatCFile,  
SUF\_WriteWeightsBinaryFile, SUF\_ReadWeightsBinaryFile

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLData\_t SDS\_ActivationLogistic (const SLData\_t) Source sample

**DESCRIPTION**

This function implements the logistic (aka sigmoid) activation function on the input sample.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_TwoLayer2CategoryNetworkFit,  
SDA\_TwoLayerNCategoryNetworkFit, SDA\_TwoLayerNCategoryNetworkPredict,  
SDS\_ActivationReLU, SDA\_ActivationReLU, SDS\_ActivationReLUderivative,  
SDA\_ActivationReLUderivative, SDS\_ActivationLeakyReLU,  
SDA\_ActivationLeakyReLU, SDS\_ActivationLeakyReLUderivative,  
SDA\_ActivationLeakyReLUderivative, SDA\_ActivationLogistic,  
SDS\_ActivationLogisticDerivative, SDA\_ActivationLogisticDerivative,  
SDS\_ActivationTanH, SDA\_ActivationTanH, SDS\_ActivationTanHderivative,  
SDA\_ActivationTanHderivative, SUF\_WavWriteFileScaled,  
SUF\_WriteWeightsIntegerCFile, SUF\_WriteWeightsFloatCFile,  
SUF\_WriteWeightsBinaryFile, SUF\_ReadWeightsBinaryFile

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
void SDA_ActivationLogistic (const SLData_t *, Pointer to source array
                             SLData_t *,           Pointer to destination array
                             const SLArrayIndex_t)  Array length
```

**DESCRIPTION**

This function implements the logistic (aka sigmoid) activation function on all the samples in the array.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_TwoLayer2CategoryNetworkFit,  
SDA\_TwoLayerNCategoryNetworkFit, SDA\_TwoLayerNCategoryNetworkPredict,  
SDS\_ActivationReLU, SDA\_ActivationReLU, SDS\_ActivationReLUderivative,  
SDA\_ActivationReLUderivative, SDS\_ActivationLeakyReLU,  
SDA\_ActivationLeakyReLU, SDS\_ActivationLeakyReLUderivative,  
SDA\_ActivationLeakyReLUderivative, SDS\_ActivationLogistic,  
SDS\_ActivationLogisticderivative, SDA\_ActivationLogisticderivative,  
SDS\_ActivationTanH, SDA\_ActivationTanH, SDS\_ActivationTanHderivative,  
SDA\_ActivationTanHderivative, SUF\_WavWriteFileScaled,  
SUF\_WriteWeightsIntegerCFile, SUF\_WriteWeightsFloatCFile,  
SUF\_WriteWeightsBinaryFile, SUF\_ReadWeightsBinaryFile

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLData\_t SDS\_ActivationLogisticDerivative (const SLData\_t) Source sample

**DESCRIPTION**

This function implements the derivative of the logistic (aka sigmoid) activation function on the input sample.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_TwoLayer2CategoryNetworkFit,  
SDA\_TwoLayerNCategoryNetworkFit, SDA\_TwoLayerNCategoryNetworkPredict,  
SDS\_ActivationReLU, SDA\_ActivationReLU, SDS\_ActivationReLUderivative,  
SDA\_ActivationReLUderivative, SDS\_ActivationLeakyReLU,  
SDA\_ActivationLeakyReLU, SDS\_ActivationLeakyReLUderivative,  
SDA\_ActivationLeakyReLUderivative, SDS\_ActivationLogistic,  
SDA\_ActivationLogistic, SDA\_ActivationLogisticDerivative, SDS\_ActivationTanH,  
SDA\_ActivationTanH, SDS\_ActivationTanHderivative,  
SDA\_ActivationTanHderivative, SUF\_WavWriteFileScaled,  
SUF\_WriteWeightsIntegerCFile, SUF\_WriteWeightsFloatCFile,  
SUF\_WriteWeightsBinaryFile, SUF\_ReadWeightsBinaryFile

### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_ActivationLogisticDerivative (const SLData_t *, Pointer to source array
    SLData_t *,                               Pointer to destination array
    const SLArrayIndex_t)                    Array length
```

### DESCRIPTION

This function implements the derivative of the logistic (aka sigmoid) activation function on all the samples in the array.

### NOTES ON USE

### CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_TwoLayer2CategoryNetworkFit,  
SDA\_TwoLayerNCategoryNetworkFit, SDA\_TwoLayerNCategoryNetworkPredict,  
SDS\_ActivationReLU, SDA\_ActivationReLU, SDS\_ActivationReLUderivative,  
SDA\_ActivationReLUderivative, SDS\_ActivationLeakyReLU,  
SDA\_ActivationLeakyReLU, SDS\_ActivationLeakyReLUderivative,  
SDA\_ActivationLeakyReLUderivative, SDS\_ActivationLogistic,  
SDA\_ActivationLogistic, SDS\_ActivationLogisticDerivative, SDS\_ActivationTanH,  
SDA\_ActivationTanH, SDS\_ActivationTanHderivative,  
SDA\_ActivationTanHderivative, SUF\_WavWriteFileScaled,  
SUF\_WriteWeightsIntegerCFile, SUF\_WriteWeightsFloatCFile,  
SUF\_WriteWeightsBinaryFile, SUF\_ReadWeightsBinaryFile

### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData\_t SDS\_ActivationTanH (const SLData\_t) Source sample

### DESCRIPTION

This function implements the hyperbolic tangent (TanH) activation function on the input sample.

### NOTES ON USE

### CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_TwoLayer2CategoryNetworkFit,  
SDA\_TwoLayerNCategoryNetworkFit, SDA\_TwoLayerNCategoryNetworkPredict,  
SDS\_ActivationReLU, SDA\_ActivationReLU, SDS\_ActivationReLUderivative,  
SDA\_ActivationReLUderivative, SDS\_ActivationLeakyReLU,  
SDA\_ActivationLeakyReLU, SDS\_ActivationLeakyReLUderivative,  
SDA\_ActivationLeakyReLUderivative, SDS\_ActivationLogistic,  
SDA\_ActivationLogistic, SDS\_ActivationLogisticDerivative,  
SDA\_ActivationLogisticDerivative, SDA\_ActivationTanH,  
SDS\_ActivationTanHderivative, SDA\_ActivationTanHderivative,  
SUF\_WavWriteFileScaled, SUF\_WriteWeightsIntegerCFile,  
SUF\_WriteWeightsFloatCFile, SUF\_WriteWeightsBinaryFile,  
SUF\_ReadWeightsBinaryFile



**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
void SDA_ActivationTanH (const SLData_t *, Pointer to source array
                        SLData_t *,           Pointer to destination array
                        const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length
```

**DESCRIPTION**

This function implements the hyperbolic tangent (TanH) activation function on all the samples in the array.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_TwoLayer2CategoryNetworkFit,  
SDA\_TwoLayerNCategoryNetworkFit, SDA\_TwoLayerNCategoryNetworkPredict,  
SDS\_ActivationReLU, SDA\_ActivationReLU, SDS\_ActivationReLUderivative,  
SDA\_ActivationReLUderivative, SDS\_ActivationLeakyReLU,  
SDA\_ActivationLeakyReLU, SDS\_ActivationLeakyReLUderivative,  
SDA\_ActivationLeakyReLUderivative, SDS\_ActivationLogistic,  
SDA\_ActivationLogistic, SDS\_ActivationLogisticderivative,  
SDA\_ActivationLogisticderivative, SDS\_ActivationTanH,  
SDS\_ActivationTanHderivative, SDA\_ActivationTanHderivative,  
SUF\_WavWriteFileScaled, SUF\_WriteWeightsIntegerCFile,  
SUF\_WriteWeightsFloatCFile, SUF\_WriteWeightsBinaryFile,  
SUF\_ReadWeightsBinaryFile

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLData\_t SDS\_ActivationTanHDerivative (const SLData\_t) Source sample

**DESCRIPTION**

This function implements the derivative of the hyperbolic tangent (TanH) activation function on the input sample.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SDA\_TwoLayer2CategoryNetworkFit,  
SDA\_TwoLayerNCategoryNetworkFit, SDA\_TwoLayerNCategoryNetworkPredict,  
SDS\_ActivationReLU, SDA\_ActivationReLU, SDS\_ActivationReLUDerivative,  
SDA\_ActivationReLUDerivative, SDS\_ActivationLeakyReLU,  
SDA\_ActivationLeakyReLU, SDS\_ActivationLeakyReLUDerivative,  
SDA\_ActivationLeakyReLUDerivative, SDS\_ActivationLogistic,  
SDA\_ActivationLogistic, SDS\_ActivationLogisticDerivative,  
SDA\_ActivationLogisticDerivative, SDS\_ActivationTanH, SDA\_ActivationTanH,  
SDA\_ActivationTanHDerivative, SUF\_WavWriteFileScaled,  
SUF\_WriteWeightsIntegerCFile, SUF\_WriteWeightsFloatCFile,  
SUF\_WriteWeightsBinaryFile, SUF\_ReadWeightsBinaryFile

### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SDA_ActivationTanHDerivative (const SLData_t *, Pointer to source array
    SLData_t *,                      Pointer to destination array
    const SLArrayIndex_t)           Array length
```

### DESCRIPTION

This function implements the derivative of the hyperbolic tangent (TanH) activation function on all the samples in the array.

### NOTES ON USE

### CROSS REFERENCE

SDA\_TwoLayer2CategoryNetworkFit,  
SDA\_TwoLayerNCategoryNetworkFit, SDA\_TwoLayerNCategoryNetworkPredict,  
SDS\_ActivationReLU, SDA\_ActivationReLU, SDS\_ActivationReLUderivative,  
SDA\_ActivationReLUderivative, SDS\_ActivationLeakyReLU,  
SDA\_ActivationLeakyReLU, SDS\_ActivationLeakyReLUderivative,  
SDA\_ActivationLeakyReLUderivative, SDS\_ActivationLogistic,  
SDA\_ActivationLogistic, SDS\_ActivationLogisticderivative,  
SDA\_ActivationLogisticderivative, SDS\_ActivationTanH, SDA\_ActivationTanH,  
SDS\_ActivationTanHderivative, SUF\_WavWriteFileScaled,  
SUF\_WriteWeightsIntegerCFile, SUF\_WriteWeightsFloatCFile,  
SUF\_WriteWeightsBinaryFile, SUF\_ReadWeightsBinaryFile

## UTILITY FUNCTIONS (*siglib.c*)

### SUF\_SiglibVersion

#### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLData\_t SUF\_SiglibVersion (void)      Void

#### DESCRIPTION

This function returns the SigLib version number.

If SigLib is using floating point data then this function will return the version number as a floating point value. If SigLib is using fixed point data then this function will return the version number as a floating point value multiplied by 100.

#### NOTES ON USE

#### CROSS REFERENCE

### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SL\_Error\_t SUF\_PrintArray (const SLData\_t \*,       Pointer to source array  
                          const SLArrayIndex\_t)       Array length

### DESCRIPTION

This function prints the contents of the array to the console.

### NOTES ON USE

To use this function the `#define SIGLIB_CONSOLE_IO_SUPPORTED` must be defined as a non-zero value in the file *siglib\_processors.h*.

### CROSS REFERENCE

SUF\_PrintComplexArray, SUF\_PrintFixedPointArray, SUF\_PrintMatrix,  
SUF\_PrintPolar, SUF\_PrintRectangular, SUF\_PrintIIRCoefficients,  
SUF\_PrintCount, SUF\_PrintHigher, SUF\_PrintLower, SUF\_PrintRectangular,  
SUF\_PrintPolar

### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLError\_t SUF\_PrintFixedPointArray (const SLArrayIndex\_t \*,   Pointer to source  
array  
                  const SLArrayIndex\_t)                   Array length

### DESCRIPTION

This function prints the contents of the array to the console.

### NOTES ON USE

To use this function the `#define SIGLIB_CONSOLE_IO_SUPPORTED` must be defined as a non-zero value in the file *siglib\_processors.h*.

### CROSS REFERENCE

SUF\_PrintComplexArray, SUF\_PrintMatrix, SUF\_PrintPolar,  
SUF\_PrintRectangular, SUF\_PrintIIRCoefficients, SUF\_PrintCount,  
SUF\_PrintHigher, SUF\_PrintLower, SUF\_PrintRectangular, SUF\_PrintPolar

### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLError\_t SUF\_PrintComplexArray (const SLData\_t \*,     Pointer to real source array  
                                  const SLData\_t \*,     Pointer to imaginary source array  
                                  const SLArrayIndex\_t)     Array length

### DESCRIPTION

This function prints the contents of the complex arrays to the console.

### NOTES ON USE

To use this function the `#define SIGLIB_CONSOLE_IO_SUPPORTED` must be defined as a non-zero value in the file *siglib\_processors.h*.

### CROSS REFERENCE

SUF\_PrintArray, SUF\_PrintFixedPointArray, SUF\_PrintMatrix,  
SUF\_PrintPolar, SUF\_PrintRectangular, SUF\_PrintIIRCoefficients,  
SUF\_PrintCount, SUF\_PrintHigher, SUF\_PrintLower, SUF\_PrintRectangular,  
SUF\_PrintPolar

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SL\_Error\_t SUF\_PrintMatrix (const SLData\_t \*, Pointer to source matrix  
                          const SLArrayIndex\_t,               Number of rows  
                          const SLArrayIndex\_t)            Number of columns

**DESCRIPTION**

This function prints the contents of the matrix to the console.

**NOTES ON USE**

To use this function the `#define SIGLIB_CONSOLE_IO_SUPPORTED` must be defined as a non-zero value in the file *siglib\_processors.h*.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SUF\_PrintArray, SUF\_PrintFixedPointArray, SUF\_PrintComplexArray,  
SUF\_PrintPolar, SUF\_PrintRectangular, SUF\_PrintIIRCoefficients,  
SUF\_PrintCount, SUF\_PrintHigher, SUF\_PrintLower, SUF\_PrintRectangular,  
SUF\_PrintPolar



**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SL\_Error\_t SUF\_PrintPolar (const SLComplexPolar\_s)

**DESCRIPTION**

This function prints the polar value, in polar and rectangular format, to the console. The polar angle is printed in radians and degrees.

**NOTES ON USE**

To use this function the `#define SIGLIB_CONSOLE_IO_SUPPORTED` must be defined as a non-zero value in the file *siglib\_processors.h*.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SUF\_PrintArray, SUF\_PrintFixedPointArray, SUF\_PrintComplexArray,  
SUF\_PrintMatrix, SUF\_PrintRectangular, SUF\_PrintIIRCoefficients,  
SUF\_PrintCount, SUF\_PrintHigher, SUF\_PrintLower, SUF\_PrintRectangular,  
SUF\_PrintPolar

### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SL\_Error\_t SUF\_PrintRectangular (const SLComplexRect\_s)

### DESCRIPTION

This function prints the rectangular value, in rectangular and polar format, to the console. The polar angle is printed in radians and degrees.

### NOTES ON USE

To use this function the `#define SIGLIB_CONSOLE_IO_SUPPORTED` must be defined as a non-zero value in the file *siglib\_processors.h*.

### CROSS REFERENCE

SUF\_PrintArray, SUF\_PrintFixedPointArray, SUF\_PrintComplexArray,  
SUF\_PrintMatrix, SUF\_PrintPolar, SUF\_PrintIIRCoefficients, SUF\_PrintCount,  
SUF\_PrintHigher, SUF\_PrintLower, SUF\_PrintRectangular, SUF\_PrintPolar



**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

void SUF\_PrintCount (const char \*String)

**DESCRIPTION**

This function prints the string followed by an incrementing counter.  
This function is useful for counting how many instances of an event occur.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SUF\_PrintArray, SUF\_PrintFixedPointArray, SUF\_PrintComplexArray,  
SUF\_PrintMatrix, SUF\_PrintPolar, SUF\_PrintRectangular,  
SUF\_PrintIIRCoefficients, SUF\_PrintHigher, SUF\_PrintLower,  
SUF\_PrintRectangular, SUF\_PrintPolar

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|                                       |              |
|---------------------------------------|--------------|
| void SUF_PrintHigher (const SLData_t, | Source value |
| const SLData_t,                       | Threshold    |
| const char *)                         | String       |

**DESCRIPTION**

If the source is larger than the threshold then print the string.  
This function is useful for detecting data anomalies.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SUF\_PrintArray, SUF\_PrintFixedPointArray, SUF\_PrintComplexArray,  
SUF\_PrintMatrix, SUF\_PrintPolar, SUF\_PrintRectangular,  
SUF\_PrintIIRCoefficients, SUF\_PrintLower, SUF\_PrintRectangular,  
SUF\_PrintPolar

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|                                      |              |
|--------------------------------------|--------------|
| void SUF_PrintLower (const SLData_t, | Source value |
| const SLData_t,                      | Threshold    |
| const char *)                        | String       |

**DESCRIPTION**

If the source is less than the threshold then print the string.  
This function is useful for detecting data anomalies.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SUF\_PrintArray, SUF\_PrintFixedPointArray, SUF\_PrintComplexArray,  
SUF\_PrintMatrix, SUF\_PrintPolar, SUF\_PrintRectangular,  
SUF\_PrintIIRCoefficients, SUF\_PrintHigher, SUF\_PrintRectangular,  
SUF\_PrintPolar

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SL\_Error\_t SUF\_ClearDebugprintf (void)    Void

**DESCRIPTION**

This function deletes the contents of the *siglib\_debug.log* file.

**NOTES ON USE**

The Debugprintf functions are the only SigLib functions that includes any file I/O functionality. If you wish to use this function on an embedded DSP then you should ensure that your debug system supports file I/O before building the library. If your compiler or target system does not support file I/O then you will need to remove this function from the library. This can be achieved by setting the constant

SIGLIB\_FILE\_IO\_SUPPORTED to '0' in the appropriate section of the *siglib\_processors.h* file.

This function returns SIGLIB\_FILE\_ERROR if the debug file can not be opened and SIGLIB\_NO\_ERROR if the file open succeeds.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SUF\_Debugprintf, SUF\_Debugvprintf, SUF\_DebugPrintArray,  
SUF\_DebugPrintFixedPointArray, SUF\_DebugPrintMatrix, SUF\_DebugPrintPolar,  
SUF\_DebugPrintRectangular, SUF\_DebugPrintIIRCoefficients,  
SUF\_DebugPrintCount, SUF\_DebugPrintHigher, SUF\_DebugPrintLower, SUF\_Log,  
SUF\_PrintRectangular, SUF\_PrintPolar, SUF\_DebugPrintRectangular,  
SUF\_DebugPrintPolar

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SL\_Error\_t SUF\_Debugprintf (const char \*ArgumentType, ...) Variable argument list

## DESCRIPTION

This function appends debug information to the file *siglib\_debug.log*. The arguments are entirely consistent with the stdio `fprintf` function.

## NOTES ON USE

The parameter list is treated in the same way as the stdio `printf` function.

The Debugprintf functions are the only SigLib functions that includes any file I/O functionality. If you wish to use this function on an embedded DSP then you should ensure that your debug system supports file I/O before building the library. If your compiler or target system does not support file I/O then you will need to remove this function from the library. This can be achieved by setting the constant `SIGLIB_FILE_IO_SUPPORTED` to '0' in the appropriate section of the *siglib\_processors.h* file.

This function returns `SIGLIB_FILE_ERROR` if the debug file can not be opened and `SIGLIB_NO_ERROR` if the file open succeeds.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SUF\_ClearDebugprintf, SUF\_Debugvfprintf, SUF\_DebugPrintArray, SUF\_DebugPrintFixedPointArray, SUF\_DebugPrintMatrix, SUF\_DebugPrintPolar, SUF\_DebugPrintRectangular, SUF\_DebugPrintIIRCoefficients, SUF\_DebugPrintCount, SUF\_DebugPrintHigher, SUF\_DebugPrintLower, SUF\_Log, SUF\_PrintRectangular, SUF\_PrintPolar, SUF\_DebugPrintRectangular, SUF\_DebugPrintPolar



## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLError\_t SUF\_Debugvfprintf (char \*format,       String format  
                                  va\_list)                    Pointer to a list of arguments

## DESCRIPTION

This function appends debug information to the file *siglib\_debug.log*. This function operates in the same way as SUF\_Debugfprintf but accepts a pointer to a list of arguments rather than an argument list.

## NOTES ON USE

The format parameter is the same as for the stdio printf function.

The Debugfprintf functions are the only SigLib functions that includes any file I/O functionality. If you wish to use this function on an embedded DSP then you should ensure that your debug system supports file I/O before building the library. If your compiler or target system does not support file I/O then you will need to remove this function from the library. This can be achieved by setting the constant SIGLIB\_FILE\_IO\_SUPPORTED to '0' in the appropriate section of the *siglib\_processors.h* file.

This function returns SIGLIB\_FILE\_ERROR if the debug file can not be opened and SIGLIB\_NO\_ERROR if the file open succeeds.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SUF\_ClearDebugfprintf, SUF\_Debugfprintf, SUF\_DebugPrintArray,  
SUF\_DebugPrintMatrix, SUF\_DebugPrintPolar, SUF\_DebugPrintRectangular,  
SUF\_DebugPrintIIRCoefficients, SUF\_DebugPrintCount, SUF\_DebugPrintHigher,  
SUF\_DebugPrintLower, SUF\_Log, SUF\_PrintRectangular, SUF\_PrintPolar,  
SUF\_DebugPrintRectangular, SUF\_DebugPrintPolar

### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLError\_t SUF\_DebugPrintArray (const SLData\_t \*,       Pointer to source array  
                                  const SLArrayIndex\_t)       Array length

### DESCRIPTION

This function prints the contents of the array to the debug file *siglib\_debug.log*.

### NOTES ON USE

### CROSS REFERENCE

SUF\_ClearDebugprintf , SUF\_Debugprintf, SUF\_Debugvprintf,  
SUF\_DebugPrintFixedPointArray, SUF\_DebugPrintComplexArray,  
SUF\_DebugPrintMatrix, SUF\_DebugPrintPolar, SUF\_DebugPrintRectangular,  
SUF\_DebugPrintIIRCoefficients, SUF\_DebugPrintCount, SUF\_DebugPrintHigher,  
SUF\_DebugPrintLower, SUF\_Log, SUF\_PrintRectangular, SUF\_PrintPolar,  
SUF\_DebugPrintRectangular, SUF\_DebugPrintPolar

### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SL\_Error\_t SUF\_DebugPrintFixedPointArray (const SLArrayIndex\_t \*,    Pointer to  
source array  
                  const SLArrayIndex\_t)                    Array length

### DESCRIPTION

This function prints the contents of the array to the debug file *siglib\_debug.log*.

### NOTES ON USE

### CROSS REFERENCE

SUF\_ClearDebugprintf, SUF\_Debugprintf, SUF\_Debugvprintf,  
SUF\_DebugPrintArray, SUF\_DebugPrintComplexArray, SUF\_DebugPrintMatrix,  
SUF\_DebugPrintPolar, SUF\_DebugPrintRectangular,  
SUF\_DebugPrintIIRCoefficients, SUF\_DebugPrintCount, SUF\_DebugPrintHigher,  
SUF\_DebugPrintLower, SUF\_Log, SUF\_PrintRectangular, SUF\_PrintPolar,  
SUF\_DebugPrintRectangular, SUF\_DebugPrintPolar

## DESCRIPTION

NOTES ON USE

## CROSS REFERENCE

SUF\_ClearDebugprintf, SUF\_Debugprintf, SUF\_Debugvprintf,  
SUF\_DebugPrintArray, SUF\_DebugPrintFixedPointArray, SUF\_DebugPrintMatrix,  
SUF\_DebugPrintPolar, SUF\_DebugPrintRectangular,  
SUF\_DebugPrintIIRCoefficients, SUF\_DebugPrintCount, SUF\_DebugPrintHigher,  
SUF\_DebugPrintLower, SUF\_Log, SUF\_PrintRectangular, SUF\_PrintPolar,  
SUF\_DebugPrintRectangular, SUF\_DebugPrintPolar, SUF\_DebugPrintComplex,  
SUF\_DebugPrintComplexRect, SUF\_DebugPrintComplexPolar

### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SL\_Error\_t SUF\_DebugPrintComplex (const SLData\_t real,  
const SLData\_t imag)

### DESCRIPTION

This function prints the rectangular value, with separate real and imaginary components, to the debug file *siglib\_debug.log*.

### NOTES ON USE

### CROSS REFERENCE

SUF\_ClearDebugprintf, SUF\_Debugprintf, SUF\_Debugvprintf,  
SUF\_DebugPrintArray, SUF\_DebugPrintComplexArray, SUF\_DebugPrintPolar,  
SUF\_DebugPrintCount, SUF\_DebugPrintHigher, SUF\_DebugPrintLower, SUF\_Log,  
SUF\_PrintRectangular, SUF\_PrintPolar, SUF\_DebugPrintRectangular,  
SUF\_DebugPrintPolar, SUF\_DebugPrintComplexRect,  
SUF\_DebugPrintComplexPolar

### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SL\_Error\_t SUF\_DebugPrintComplexRect (const SLComplexRect\_s Rect)

### DESCRIPTION

This function prints the rectangular value to the debug file *siglib\_debug.log*.

### NOTES ON USE

### CROSS REFERENCE

SUF\_ClearDebugprintf, SUF\_Debugprintf, SUF\_Debugvprintf,  
SUF\_DebugPrintArray, SUF\_DebugPrintComplexArray, SUF\_DebugPrintPolar,  
SUF\_DebugPrintCount, SUF\_DebugPrintHigher, SUF\_DebugPrintLower, SUF\_Log,  
SUF\_PrintRectangular, SUF\_PrintPolar, SUF\_DebugPrintRectangular,  
SUF\_DebugPrintPolar, SUF\_DebugPrintComplex, SUF\_DebugPrintComplexPolar

### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SL\_Error\_t SUF\_DebugPrintComplexPolar (const SLComplexPolar\_s)

### DESCRIPTION

This function prints the polar value to the debug file *siglib\_debug.log*.

### NOTES ON USE

### CROSS REFERENCE

SUF\_ClearDebugprintf, SUF\_Debugprintf, SUF\_Debugvprintf,  
SUF\_DebugPrintArray, SUF\_DebugPrintComplexArray,  
SUF\_DebugPrintRectangular, SUF\_DebugPrintCount, SUF\_DebugPrintHigher,  
SUF\_DebugPrintLower, SUF\_Log, SUF\_PrintRectangular, SUF\_PrintPolar,  
SUF\_DebugPrintRectangular, SUF\_DebugPrintPolar, SUF\_DebugPrintComplex,  
SUF\_DebugPrintComplexRect

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SL\_Error\_t SUF\_DebugPrintMatrix (const SLData\_t \*, Pointer to source matrix  
const SLArrayIndex\_t,                      Number of rows  
const SLArrayIndex\_t)                      Number of columns

**DESCRIPTION**

This function prints the contents of the matrix to the debug file *siglib\_debug.log*.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SUF\_ClearDebugprintf, SUF\_Debugprintf, SUF\_Debugvprintf,  
SUF\_DebugPrintArray, SUF\_DebugPrintComplexArray, SUF\_DebugPrintPolar,  
SUF\_DebugPrintRectangular, SUF\_DebugPrintIIRCoefficients,  
SUF\_DebugPrintCount, SUF\_DebugPrintHigher, SUF\_DebugPrintLower, SUF\_Log,  
SUF\_PrintRectangular, SUF\_PrintPolar, SUF\_DebugPrintRectangular,  
SUF\_DebugPrintPolar



**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SL\_Error\_t SUF\_DebugPrintPolar (const SLComplexPolar\_s)

**DESCRIPTION**

This function prints the polar value, in polar and rectangular format, to the debug file *siglib\_debug.log*. The polar angle is printed in radians and degrees.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SUF\_ClearDebugprintf, SUF\_Debugprintf, SUF\_Debugvprintf,  
SUF\_DebugPrintArray, SUF\_DebugPrintComplexArray,  
SUF\_DebugPrintRectangular, SUF\_DebugPrintCount, SUF\_DebugPrintHigher,  
SUF\_DebugPrintLower, SUF\_Log, SUF\_PrintRectangular, SUF\_PrintPolar,  
SUF\_DebugPrintRectangular, SUF\_DebugPrintPolar, SUF\_DebugPrintComplex,  
SUF\_DebugPrintComplexRect, SUF\_DebugPrintComplexPolar

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SL\_Error\_t SUF\_DebugPrintRectangular (const SLComplexRect\_s)

**DESCRIPTION**

This function prints the rectangular value, in rectangular and polar format, to the debug file *siglib\_debug.log*. The polar angle is printed in radians and degrees.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SUF\_ClearDebugprintf, SUF\_Debugprintf, SUF\_Debugvprintf,  
SUF\_DebugPrintArray, SUF\_DebugPrintComplexArray, SUF\_DebugPrintPolar,  
SUF\_DebugPrintCount, SUF\_DebugPrintHigher, SUF\_DebugPrintLower, SUF\_Log,  
SUF\_PrintRectangular, SUF\_PrintPolar, SUF\_DebugPrintRectangular,  
SUF\_DebugPrintPolar, SUF\_DebugPrintComplex, SUF\_DebugPrintComplexRect,  
SUF\_DebugPrintComplexPolar

### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLError\_t SUF\_DebugPrintIIRCoefficients (const SLData\_t \*,     Ptr. to filter coeffs.  
SLArrayIndex\_t)                             Number of biquads

### DESCRIPTION

This function prints the IIR filter coefficients to the debug file *siglib\_debug.log*.

### NOTES ON USE

### CROSS REFERENCE

SUF\_ClearDebugprintf, SUF\_Debugprintf, SUF\_Debugvprintf,  
SUF\_DebugPrintArray, SUF\_DebugPrintComplexArray, SUF\_DebugPrintPolar,  
SUF\_DebugPrintRectangular, SUF\_DebugPrintCount, SUF\_DebugPrintHigher,  
SUF\_DebugPrintLower, SUF\_Log, SUF\_PrintRectangular, SUF\_PrintPolar,  
SUF\_DebugPrintRectangular, SUF\_DebugPrintPolar

### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SL\_Error\_t SUF\_DebugPrintCount (const char \*String)

### DESCRIPTION

This function prints the string followed by an incrementing counter to the debug file *siglib\_debug.log*.

### NOTES ON USE

### CROSS REFERENCE

SUF\_ClearDebugprintf, SUF\_Debugprintf, SUF\_Debugvprintf,  
SUF\_DebugPrintArray, SUF\_DebugPrintComplexArray, SUF\_DebugPrintPolar,  
SUF\_DebugPrintRectangular, SUF\_DebugPrintIIRCoefficients,  
SUF\_DebugPrintHigher, SUF\_DebugPrintLower, SUF\_Log, SUF\_PrintRectangular,  
SUF\_PrintPolar, SUF\_DebugPrintRectangular, SUF\_DebugPrintPolar

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
void SUF_DebugPrintHigher (const SLData_t,      Source value
                          const SLData_t,      Threshold
                          const char *)        String)
```

**DESCRIPTION**

If the source is larger than the threshold then print the string.  
This function is useful for detecting data anomalies.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SUF\_ClearDebugprintf , SUF\_Debugprintf, SUF\_Debugvprintf,  
SUF\_DebugPrintArray, SUF\_DebugPrintComplexArray, SUF\_DebugPrintPolar,  
SUF\_DebugPrintRectangular, SUF\_DebugPrintIIRCoefficients,  
SUF\_DebugPrintCount, SUF\_DebugPrintLower, SUF\_PrintRectangular,  
SUF\_PrintPolar, SUF\_DebugPrintRectangular, SUF\_DebugPrintPolar

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
void SUF_DebugPrintLower (const SLData_t,      Source value
                        const SLData_t,      Threshold
                        const char *)        String
```

**DESCRIPTION**

If the source is less than the threshold then print the string.  
This function is useful for detecting data anomalies.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SUF\_ClearDebugprintf , SUF\_Debugprintf, SUF\_Debugvprintf,  
SUF\_DebugPrintArray, SUF\_DebugPrintComplexArray, SUF\_DebugPrintPolar,  
SUF\_DebugPrintRectangular, SUF\_DebugPrintIIRCoefficients,  
SUF\_DebugPrintCount, SUF\_DebugPrintHigher, SUF\_PrintRectangular,  
SUF\_PrintPolar, SUF\_DebugPrintRectangular, SUF\_DebugPrintPolar

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SL\_Error\_t SUF\_DebugPrintInfo (void)

**DESCRIPTION**

This function prints the SigLib version information to the debug file *siglib\_debug.log*.

**NOTES ON USE**

This function is implemented as a macro and calls the function SUF\_Debugfprintf.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SUF\_ClearDebugfprintf, SUF\_Debugfprintf, SUF\_Debugvfprintf,  
SUF\_DebugPrintArray, SUF\_DebugPrintComplexArray, SUF\_DebugPrintPolar,  
SUF\_DebugPrintRectangular, SUF\_Log, SUF\_DebugPrintLine,  
SUF\_DebugPrintTime, SUF\_PrintRectangular, SUF\_PrintPolar,  
SUF\_DebugPrintRectangular, SUF\_DebugPrintPolar

### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLError\_t SUF\_DebugPrintLine (void)

### DESCRIPTION

This function prints the source file name and line number to the debug file *siglib\_debug.log*.

### NOTES ON USE

This function is implemented as a macro and calls the function SUF\_Debugfprintf.

### CROSS REFERENCE

SUF\_ClearDebugfprintf , SUF\_Debugfprintf, SUF\_Debugvfprintf,  
SUF\_DebugPrintArray, SUF\_DebugPrintComplexArray, SUF\_DebugPrintPolar,  
SUF\_DebugPrintRectangular, SUF\_Log, SUF\_DebugPrintInfo,  
SUF\_DebugPrintTime, SUF\_PrintRectangular, SUF\_PrintPolar,  
SUF\_DebugPrintRectangular, SUF\_DebugPrintPolar



**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SL\_Error\_t SUF\_DebugPrintTime (void)

**DESCRIPTION**

This function prints the current time to the debug file *siglib\_debug.log*.

**NOTES ON USE**

This function is implemented as a macro and calls the function SUF\_Debugfprintf.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SUF\_ClearDebugfprintf, SUF\_Debugfprintf, SUF\_Debugvfprintf,  
SUF\_DebugPrintArray, SUF\_DebugPrintComplexArray, SUF\_DebugPrintPolar,  
SUF\_DebugPrintRectangular, SUF\_Log, SUF\_DebugPrintInfo,  
SUF\_PrintRectangular, SUF\_PrintPolar, SUF\_DebugPrintRectangular,  
SUF\_DebugPrintPolar

### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SUF\_PrintRectangular(V)

### DESCRIPTION

This function prints the rectangular vector to the console.

### NOTES ON USE

### CROSS REFERENCE

SUF\_ClearDebugprintf, SUF\_Debugprintf, SUF\_Debugvprintf,  
SUF\_DebugPrintArray, SUF\_DebugPrintComplexArray, SUF\_DebugPrintPolar,  
SUF\_DebugPrintRectangular, SUF\_Log, SUF\_DebugPrintInfo,  
SUF\_DebugPrintTime, SUF\_PrintPolar, SUF\_DebugPrintRectangular,  
SUF\_DebugPrintPolar

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SUF\_PrintPolar(V)

**DESCRIPTION**

This function prints the polar vector to the console.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SUF\_ClearDebugprintf , SUF\_Debugprintf, SUF\_Debugvprintf,  
SUF\_DebugPrintArray, SUF\_DebugPrintComplexArray, SUF\_DebugPrintPolar,  
SUF\_DebugPrintRectangular, SUF\_Log, SUF\_DebugPrintInfo,  
SUF\_DebugPrintTime, SUF\_PrintRectangular, SUF\_DebugPrintRectangular,  
SUF\_DebugPrintPolar

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SUF\_DebugPrintRectangular(V)

## DESCRIPTION

This function prints the rectangular vector to the file *siglib\_debug.log*.

## NOTES ON USE

This function is implemented as a macro and calls the function SUF\_Debugfprintf.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SUF\_ClearDebugfprintf, SUF\_Debugfprintf, SUF\_Debugvfprintf,  
SUF\_DebugPrintArray, SUF\_DebugPrintComplexArray, SUF\_DebugPrintPolar,  
SUF\_DebugPrintRectangular, SUF\_Log, SUF\_DebugPrintInfo,  
SUF\_DebugPrintTime, SUF\_PrintRectangular, SUF\_PrintPolar,  
SUF\_DebugPrintPolar

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SUF\_DebugPrintPolar(V)

**DESCRIPTION**

This function prints the polar vector to the file *siglib\_debug.log*.

**NOTES ON USE**

This function is implemented as a macro and calls the function SUF\_Debugfprintf.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SUF\_ClearDebugfprintf, SUF\_Debugfprintf, SUF\_Debugvfprintf,  
SUF\_DebugPrintArray, SUF\_DebugPrintComplexArray, SUF\_DebugPrintPolar,  
SUF\_DebugPrintRectangular, SUF\_Log, SUF\_DebugPrintInfo,  
SUF\_DebugPrintTime, SUF\_PrintRectangular, SUF\_PrintPolar,  
SUF\_DebugPrintRectangular

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

void SUF\_MSDelay (const SLFixData\_t Delay)

**DESCRIPTION**

This function delays the processing for the given number of ms.

**NOTES ON USE**

This function uses the ANSI C “time.h” functions. If your compiler does not provide this functionality then this function will not be compiled into the library.

The accuracy of the delay that this function generates is entirely dependent on the accuracy of the clock functionality provided by the underlying compiler / operating system.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
const char * SUF_StrError (const SLError_t ErrNo)
```

**DESCRIPTION**

This function delays returns a pointer to the error message associated with the error code provided to the function.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**





**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLError\_t SUF\_DebugPrintMatrix (const SLData\_t \*, Pointer to source matrix  
const SLArrayIndex\_t,                      Number of rows  
const SLArrayIndex\_t)                      Number of columns

**DESCRIPTION**

This function prints the contents of the matrix to the debug file *siglib\_debug.log*.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SUF\_ClearDebugprintf, SUF\_Debugprintf, SUF\_Debugvprintf,  
SUF\_DebugPrintArray, SUF\_DebugPrintComplexArray, SUF\_DebugPrintPolar,  
SUF\_DebugPrintRectangular, SUF\_DebugPrintIIRCoefficients,  
SUF\_DebugPrintCount, SUF\_DebugPrintHigher, SUF\_DebugPrintLower, SUF\_Log,  
SUF\_PrintRectangular, SUF\_PrintPolar, SUF\_DebugPrintRectangular,  
SUF\_DebugPrintPolar

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SL\_Error\_t SUF\_DebugPrintPolar (const SLComplexPolar\_s)

**DESCRIPTION**

This function prints the polar value, in polar and rectangular format, to the debug file *siglib\_debug.log*. The polar angle is printed in radians and degrees.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SUF\_ClearDebugprintf, SUF\_Debugprintf, SUF\_Debugvprintf,  
SUF\_DebugPrintArray, SUF\_DebugPrintComplexArray,  
SUF\_DebugPrintRectangular, SUF\_DebugPrintCount, SUF\_DebugPrintHigher,  
SUF\_DebugPrintLower, SUF\_Log, SUF\_PrintRectangular, SUF\_PrintPolar,  
SUF\_DebugPrintRectangular, SUF\_DebugPrintPolar

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SL\_Error\_t SUF\_DebugPrintRectangular (const SLComplexRect\_s)

**DESCRIPTION**

This function prints the rectangular value, in rectangular and polar format, to the debug file *siglib\_debug.log*. The polar angle is printed in radians and degrees.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SUF\_ClearDebugprintf, SUF\_Debugprintf, SUF\_Debugvprintf,  
SUF\_DebugPrintArray, SUF\_DebugPrintComplexArray, SUF\_DebugPrintPolar,  
SUF\_DebugPrintCount, SUF\_DebugPrintHigher, SUF\_DebugPrintLower, SUF\_Log,  
SUF\_PrintRectangular, SUF\_PrintPolar, SUF\_DebugPrintRectangular,  
SUF\_DebugPrintPolar



**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SL\_Error\_t SUF\_DebugPrintCount (const char \*String)

**DESCRIPTION**

This function prints the string followed by an incrementing counter to the debug file *siglib\_debug.log*.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SUF\_ClearDebugprintf, SUF\_Debugprintf, SUF\_Debugvprintf,  
SUF\_DebugPrintArray, SUF\_DebugPrintComplexArray, SUF\_DebugPrintPolar,  
SUF\_DebugPrintRectangular, SUF\_DebugPrintIIRCoefficients,  
SUF\_DebugPrintHigher, SUF\_DebugPrintLower, SUF\_Log, SUF\_PrintRectangular,  
SUF\_PrintPolar, SUF\_DebugPrintRectangular, SUF\_DebugPrintPolar

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
void SUF_DebugPrintHigher (const SLData_t,      Source value
                           const SLData_t,      Threshold
                           const char *)        String
```

**DESCRIPTION**

If the source is larger than the threshold then print the string.  
This function is useful for detecting data anomalies.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SUF\_ClearDebugprintf , SUF\_Debugprintf, SUF\_Debugvprintf,  
SUF\_DebugPrintArray, SUF\_DebugPrintComplexArray, SUF\_DebugPrintPolar,  
SUF\_DebugPrintRectangular, SUF\_DebugPrintIIRCoefficients,  
SUF\_DebugPrintCount, SUF\_DebugPrintLower, SUF\_PrintRectangular,  
SUF\_PrintPolar, SUF\_DebugPrintRectangular, SUF\_DebugPrintPolar

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
void SUF_DebugPrintLower (const SLData_t,      Source value
                        const SLData_t,      Threshold
                        const char *)        String
```

**DESCRIPTION**

If the source is less than the threshold then print the string.  
This function is useful for detecting data anomalies.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SUF\_ClearDebugprintf , SUF\_Debugprintf, SUF\_Debugvprintf,  
SUF\_DebugPrintArray, SUF\_DebugPrintComplexArray, SUF\_DebugPrintPolar,  
SUF\_DebugPrintRectangular, SUF\_DebugPrintIIRCoefficients,  
SUF\_DebugPrintCount, SUF\_DebugPrintHigher, SUF\_PrintRectangular,  
SUF\_PrintPolar, SUF\_DebugPrintRectangular, SUF\_DebugPrintPolar

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SL\_Error\_t SUF\_DebugPrintInfo (void)

**DESCRIPTION**

This function prints the SigLib version information to the debug file *siglib\_debug.log*.

**NOTES ON USE**

This function is implemented as a macro and calls the function SUF\_Debugfprintf.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SUF\_ClearDebugfprintf, SUF\_Debugfprintf, SUF\_Debugvfprintf,  
SUF\_DebugPrintArray, SUF\_DebugPrintComplexArray, SUF\_DebugPrintPolar,  
SUF\_DebugPrintRectangular, SUF\_Log, SUF\_DebugPrintLine,  
SUF\_DebugPrintTime, SUF\_PrintRectangular, SUF\_PrintPolar,  
SUF\_DebugPrintRectangular, SUF\_DebugPrintPolar



**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLError\_t SUF\_DebugPrintLine (void)

**DESCRIPTION**

This function prints the source file name and line number to the debug file *siglib\_debug.log*.

**NOTES ON USE**

This function is implemented as a macro and calls the function SUF\_Debugfprintf.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SUF\_ClearDebugfprintf , SUF\_Debugfprintf, SUF\_Debugvfprintf,  
SUF\_DebugPrintArray, SUF\_DebugPrintComplexArray, SUF\_DebugPrintPolar,  
SUF\_DebugPrintRectangular, SUF\_Log, SUF\_DebugPrintInfo,  
SUF\_DebugPrintTime, SUF\_PrintRectangular, SUF\_PrintPolar,  
SUF\_DebugPrintRectangular, SUF\_DebugPrintPolar

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SL\_Error\_t SUF\_DebugPrintTime (void)

**DESCRIPTION**

This function prints the current time to the debug file *siglib\_debug.log*.

**NOTES ON USE**

This function is implemented as a macro and calls the function SUF\_Debugfprintf.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SUF\_ClearDebugfprintf, SUF\_Debugfprintf, SUF\_Debugvfprintf,  
SUF\_DebugPrintArray, SUF\_DebugPrintComplexArray, SUF\_DebugPrintPolar,  
SUF\_DebugPrintRectangular, SUF\_Log, SUF\_DebugPrintInfo,  
SUF\_PrintRectangular, SUF\_PrintPolar, SUF\_DebugPrintRectangular,  
SUF\_DebugPrintPolar

### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SUF\_PrintRectangular(V)

### DESCRIPTION

This function prints the rectangular vector to the console.

### NOTES ON USE

### CROSS REFERENCE

SUF\_ClearDebugprintf , SUF\_Debugprintf, SUF\_Debugvprintf,  
SUF\_DebugPrintArray, SUF\_DebugPrintComplexArray, SUF\_DebugPrintPolar,  
SUF\_DebugPrintRectangular, SUF\_Log, SUF\_DebugPrintInfo,  
SUF\_DebugPrintTime, SUF\_PrintPolar, SUF\_DebugPrintRectangular,  
SUF\_DebugPrintPolar

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SUF\_PrintPolar(V)

**DESCRIPTION**

This function prints the polar vector to the console.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**

SUF\_ClearDebugprintf , SUF\_Debugprintf, SUF\_Debugvprintf,  
SUF\_DebugPrintArray, SUF\_DebugPrintComplexArray, SUF\_DebugPrintPolar,  
SUF\_DebugPrintRectangular, SUF\_Log, SUF\_DebugPrintInfo,  
SUF\_DebugPrintTime, SUF\_PrintRectangular, SUF\_DebugPrintRectangular,  
SUF\_DebugPrintPolar

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SUF\_DebugPrintRectangular(V)

**DESCRIPTION**

This function prints the rectangular vector to the file *siglib\_debug.log*.

**NOTES ON USE**

This function is implemented as a macro and calls the function SUF\_Debugprintf.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SUF\_ClearDebugprintf, SUF\_Debugprintf, SUF\_Debugvprintf,  
SUF\_DebugPrintArray, SUF\_DebugPrintComplexArray, SUF\_DebugPrintPolar,  
SUF\_DebugPrintRectangular, SUF\_Log, SUF\_DebugPrintInfo,  
SUF\_DebugPrintTime, SUF\_PrintRectangular, SUF\_PrintPolar,  
SUF\_DebugPrintPolar

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SUF\_DebugPrintPolar(V)

**DESCRIPTION**

This function prints the polar vector to the file *siglib\_debug.log*.

**NOTES ON USE**

This function is implemented as a macro and calls the function SUF\_Debugfprintf.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SUF\_ClearDebugfprintf, SUF\_Debugfprintf, SUF\_Debugvfprintf,  
SUF\_DebugPrintArray, SUF\_DebugPrintComplexArray, SUF\_DebugPrintPolar,  
SUF\_DebugPrintRectangular, SUF\_Log, SUF\_DebugPrintInfo,  
SUF\_DebugPrintTime, SUF\_PrintRectangular, SUF\_PrintPolar,  
SUF\_DebugPrintRectangular

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

void SUF\_MSDelay (const SLFixData\_t Delay)

**DESCRIPTION**

This function delays the processing for the given number of ms.

**NOTES ON USE**

This function uses the ANSI C “time.h” functions. If your compiler does not provide this functionality then this function will not be compiled into the library.

The accuracy of the delay that this function generates is entirely dependent on the accuracy of the clock functionality provided by the underlying compiler / operating system.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

```
const char * SUF_StrError (const SLError_t ErrNo)
```

**DESCRIPTION**

This function delays returns a pointer to the error message associated with the error code provided to the function.

**NOTES ON USE****CROSS REFERENCE**



## File Input/Output Functions (*file\_io.c*)

These functions are intended to be used on systems that support file I/O.

SigLib includes a range of functions for storing data, in floating point format, to a file. The functions treat the data in blocks and there are functions for reading and writing the data. The file read functions will zero pad any buffers if there is not sufficient data in the remainder of the file to fill the buffer.

### Data File Formats

The library supports single channel file I/O in the following formats :

| File Extension | Description  |
|----------------|--|
| .bin           | Contiguous 16 bit binary data  |
| .csv           | Comma Separated Variable format for importing into a spreadsheet   |
| .dat           | Two column format, with header.<br>Column 1 : sample timestamp<br>Column 2 : data sample<br>This format is compatible with gnuplot |
| .sig           | A single column of floating point numbers that represent the data sequence   |
| .wav           | 16 bit multi-channel .wav file   |
| .xmt           | Xmt file format is often used by development environments for storing log data.  |

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|   |                    |
|---|--------------------|
| SLArrayIndex_t SUF_BinReadData (SLData_t *, | Data array pointer |
| FILE *,                                     | File pointer       |
| const char,                                 | Endian mode        |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)                       | Array length       |

## DESCRIPTION

This function reads a block of data from a binary data file.

## NOTES ON USE

This function operates in a stream oriented mode and will read successive blocks of data from the file until the end of the file is reached.

This function will zero pad any buffers if there is not sufficient data in the remainder of the file to fill the buffer.

The file must be opened prior to using this function.

The function returns the number of samples read from the file.

The endian mode parameter is either 'l' for little or 'b' for big endian.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SUF\_BinWriteData, SUF\_BinReadFile, SUF\_BinWriteFile,  
SUF\_CsvReadData, SUF\_CsvWriteData, SUF\_CsvReadFile, SUF\_CsvWriteFile,  
SUF\_CsvReadMatrix, SUF\_CsvWriteMatrix, SUF\_DatReadData,  
SUF\_DatWriteData, SUF\_DatReadHeader, SUF\_DatWriteHeader,  
SUF\_SigReadData, SUF\_SigWriteData, SUF\_SigReadFile, SUF\_SigWriteFile,  
SUF\_SigCountSamplesInFile, SUF\_XmtReadData, SUF\_WavReadData,  
SUF\_WavWriteData, SUF\_WavReadWord, SUF\_WavReadInt,  
SUF\_WavWriteWord, SUF\_WavWriteInt, SUF\_WavReadHeader,  
SUF\_WavWriteHeader, SUF\_WavDisplayInfo, SUF\_WavSetInfo,  
SUF\_WavFileLength, SUF\_WavReadFile, SUF\_WavWriteFile,  
SUF\_WavWriteFileScaled

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|                       |                                     |                    |
|-----------------------|-------------------------------------|--------------------|
| SLArrayIndex_t        | SUF_BinWriteData (const SLData_t *, | Data array pointer |
| FILE *,               |                                     | File pointer       |
| const char,           |                                     | Endian mode        |
| const SLArrayIndex_t) |                                     | Array length       |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function writes a block of data to a binary data file.

**NOTES ON USE**

This function operates in a stream oriented mode and will append successive blocks of to the end of the file.

The file must be opened prior to using this function.

The function returns the number of samples written to the file.

The endian mode parameter is either 'l' for little or 'b' for big endian.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SUF\_BinReadData, SUF\_BinReadFile, SUF\_BinWriteFile,  
SUF\_CsvReadData, SUF\_CsvWriteData, SUF\_CsvReadFile, SUF\_CsvWriteFile,  
SUF\_CsvReadMatrix, SUF\_CsvWriteMatrix, SUF\_DatReadData,  
SUF\_DatWriteData, SUF\_DatReadHeader, SUF\_DatWriteHeader,  
SUF\_SigReadData, SUF\_SigWriteData, SUF\_SigReadFile, SUF\_SigWriteFile,  
SUF\_SigCountSamplesInFile, SUF\_XmtReadData, SUF\_WavReadData,  
SUF\_WavWriteData, SUF\_WavReadWord, SUF\_WavReadInt,  
SUF\_WavWriteWord, SUF\_WavWriteInt, SUF\_WavReadHeader,  
SUF\_WavWriteHeader, SUF\_WavDisplayInfo, SUF\_WavSetInfo,  
SUF\_WavFileLength, SUF\_WavReadFile, SUF\_WavWriteFile,  
SUF\_WavWriteFileScaled

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|   |                    |
|---|--------------------|
| SLArrayIndex_t SUF_BinReadFile (SLData_t *, | Data array pointer |
| const char *,                               | File name          |
| const char,                                 | Endian mode        |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)                       | Array length       |

## DESCRIPTION

This function reads an entire file of data from a binary data file.

## NOTES ON USE

This function will zero pad any buffers if there is not sufficient data in the remainder of the file to fill the buffer.

The function returns the number of samples read from the file.

The endian mode parameter is either 'l' for little or 'b' for big endian.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SUF\_BinReadData, SUF\_BinWriteData, SUF\_BinWriteFile,  
SUF\_CsvWriteData, SUF\_CsvReadFile, SUF\_CsvWriteFile, SUF\_CsvReadMatrix,  
SUF\_CsvWriteMatrix, SUF\_DatReadData, SUF\_DatWriteData,  
SUF\_DatReadHeader, SUF\_DatWriteHeader, SUF\_SigReadData,  
SUF\_SigWriteData, SUF\_SigReadFile, SUF\_SigWriteFile,  
SUF\_SigCountSamplesInFile, SUF\_XmtReadData, SUF\_WavReadData,  
SUF\_WavWriteData, SUF\_WavReadWord, SUF\_WavReadInt,  
SUF\_WavWriteWord, SUF\_WavWriteInt, SUF\_WavReadHeader,  
SUF\_WavWriteHeader, SUF\_WavDisplayInfo, SUF\_WavSetInfo,  
SUF\_WavFileLength, SUF\_WavReadFile, SUF\_WavWriteFile,  
SUF\_WavWriteFileScaled

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|                       |                                     |                    |
|-----------------------|-------------------------------------|--------------------|
| SLArrayIndex_t        | SUF_BinWriteFile (const SLData_t *, | Data array pointer |
| const char *,         | File name                           |                    |
| const char,           | Endian mode                         |                    |
| const SLArrayIndex_t) | Array length                        |                    |

## DESCRIPTION

This function writes an entire array of data to a binary data file.

## NOTES ON USE

The function returns the number of samples written to the file.

The endian mode parameter is either 'l' for little or 'b' for big endian.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SUF\_BinReadData, SUF\_BinWriteData, SUF\_BinReadFile,  
SUF\_CsvReadData, SUF\_CsvReadFile, SUF\_CsvWriteFile, SUF\_CsvReadMatrix,  
SUF\_CsvWriteMatrix, SUF\_DatReadData, SUF\_DatWriteData,  
SUF\_DatReadHeader, SUF\_DatWriteHeader, SUF\_SigReadData,  
SUF\_SigWriteData, SUF\_SigReadFile, SUF\_SigWriteFile,  
SUF\_SigCountSamplesInFile, SUF\_XmtReadData, SUF\_WavReadData,  
SUF\_WavWriteData, SUF\_WavReadWord, SUF\_WavReadInt,  
SUF\_WavWriteWord, SUF\_WavWriteInt, SUF\_WavReadHeader,  
SUF\_WavWriteHeader, SUF\_WavDisplayInfo, SUF\_WavSetInfo,  
SUF\_WavFileLength, SUF\_WavReadFile, SUF\_WavWriteFile,  
SUF\_WavWriteFileScaled

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLArrayIndex_t SUF_CsvReadData (SLData_t *,   Data array pointer
                                FILE *,        File pointer
                                const SLData_t, Sample rate
                                const SLData_t, Number of columns (1 or 2)
                                const SLArrayIndex_t) Array length
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function reads a block of data from a csv data file.

## NOTES ON USE

This function operates in a stream oriented mode and will read successive blocks of data from the file until the end of the file is reached.

This function will zero pad any buffers if there is not sufficient data in the remainder of the file to fill the buffer.

The file must be opened prior to using this function.

The function returns the number of samples read from the file.

This function supports one or two column format. One column format stores the array samples in a single column. In two column format the Data is stored in time, value pairs. Column 1 is time and column 2 is value.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SUF\_BinReadData, SUF\_BinWriteData, SUF\_BinReadFile,  
 SUF\_BinWriteFile, SUF\_CsvWriteData, SUF\_CsvReadFile, SUF\_CsvWriteFile,  
 SUF\_CsvReadMatrix, SUF\_CsvWriteMatrix, SUF\_DatReadData,  
 SUF\_DatWriteData, SUF\_DatReadHeader, SUF\_DatWriteHeader,  
 SUF\_SigReadData, SUF\_SigWriteData, SUF\_SigReadFile, SUF\_SigWriteFile,  
 SUF\_SigCountSamplesInFile, SUF\_XmtReadData, SUF\_WavReadData,  
 SUF\_WavWriteData, SUF\_WavReadWord, SUF\_WavReadInt,  
 SUF\_WavWriteWord, SUF\_WavWriteInt, SUF\_WavReadHeader,  
 SUF\_WavWriteHeader, SUF\_WavDisplayInfo, SUF\_WavSetInfo,  
 SUF\_WavFileLength, SUF\_WavReadFile, SUF\_WavWriteFile,  
 SUF\_WavWriteFileScaled

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLArrayIndex_t SUF_CsvWriteData (const SLData_t *,    Data array pointer
                                FILE *,              File pointer
                                const SLData_t,       Sample rate
                                const SLArrayIndex_t,  Sample index
                                const SLData_t,       Number of columns (1 or 2)
                                const SLArrayIndex_t)  Array length
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function writes a block of data to a csv data file.

## NOTES ON USE

This function operates in a stream oriented mode and will append successive blocks of to the end of the file.

The file must be opened prior to using this function.

The function returns the number of samples written to the file.

This function supports one or two column format. One column format stores the array samples in a single column. In two column format the Data is stored in time, value pairs. Column 1 is time and column 2 is value.

The Sample index is used as an offset for the incrementing time column.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SUF\_BinReadData, SUF\_BinWriteData, SUF\_BinReadFile,  
 SUF\_BinWriteFile, SUF\_CsvReadData, SUF\_CsvReadFile, SUF\_CsvWriteFile,  
 SUF\_CsvReadMatrix, SUF\_CsvWriteMatrix, SUF\_DatReadData,  
 SUF\_DatWriteData, SUF\_DatReadHeader, SUF\_DatWriteHeader,  
 SUF\_SigReadData, SUF\_SigWriteData, SUF\_SigReadFile, SUF\_SigWriteFile,  
 SUF\_SigCountSamplesInFile, SUF\_XmtReadData, SUF\_WavReadData,  
 SUF\_WavWriteData, SUF\_WavReadWord, SUF\_WavReadInt,  
 SUF\_WavWriteWord, SUF\_WavWriteInt, SUF\_WavReadHeader,  
 SUF\_WavWriteHeader, SUF\_WavDisplayInfo, SUF\_WavSetInfo,  
 SUF\_WavFileLength, SUF\_WavReadFile, SUF\_WavWriteFile,  
 SUF\_WavWriteFileScaled

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|                       |                              |                            |
|-----------------------|------------------------------|----------------------------|
| SLArrayIndex_t        | SUF_CsvReadFile (SLData_t *, | Data array pointer         |
| const char *,         |                              | File name                  |
| const SLData_t,       |                              | Sample rate                |
| const SLData_t,       |                              | Number of columns (1 or 2) |
| const SLArrayIndex_t) |                              | Array length               |

## DESCRIPTION

This function reads an entire file of data from a csv data file.

## NOTES ON USE

This function will zero pad any buffers if there is not sufficient data in the remainder of the file to fill the buffer.

The function returns the number of samples read from the file.

This function supports one or two column format. One column format stores the array samples in a single column. In two column format the Data is stored in time, value pairs. Column 1 is time and column 2 is value.

The function SUF\_SigCountSamplesInFile() can be used to count the number of samples in the file before reading from the file, to allow the appropriate amount of memory to be allocated using the function SUF\_VectorArrayAllocate().

## CROSS REFERENCE

SUF\_BinReadData, SUF\_BinWriteData, SUF\_BinReadFile,  
SUF\_BinWriteFile, SUF\_CsvWriteData, SUF\_CsvWriteFile, SUF\_CsvReadMatrix,  
SUF\_CsvWriteMatrix, SUF\_DatReadData, SUF\_DatWriteData,  
SUF\_DatReadHeader, SUF\_DatWriteHeader, SUF\_SigReadData,  
SUF\_SigWriteData, SUF\_SigReadFile, SUF\_SigWriteFile,  
SUF\_SigCountSamplesInFile, SUF\_XmtReadData, SUF\_WavReadData,  
SUF\_WavWriteData, SUF\_WavReadWord, SUF\_WavReadInt,  
SUF\_WavWriteWord, SUF\_WavWriteInt, SUF\_WavReadHeader,  
SUF\_WavWriteHeader, SUF\_WavDisplayInfo, SUF\_WavSetInfo,  
SUF\_WavFileLength, SUF\_WavReadFile, SUF\_WavWriteFile,  
SUF\_WavWriteFileScaled



## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|                       |                                     |                    |
|-----------------------|-------------------------------------|--------------------|
| SLArrayIndex_t        | SUF_CsvWriteFile (const SLData_t *, | Data array pointer |
| const char *,         | File name                           |                    |
| const SLData_t,       | Sample rate                         |                    |
| const SLArrayIndex_t, | Sample index                        |                    |
| const SLData_t,       | Number of columns (1 or 2)          |                    |
| const SLArrayIndex_t) | Array length                        |                    |

## DESCRIPTION

This function writes an entire array of data to a csv data file.

## NOTES ON USE

The function returns the number of samples written to the file.

This function supports one or two column format. One column format stores the array samples in a single column. In two column format the Data is stored in time, value pairs. Column 1 is time and column 2 is value.

The Sample index is used as an offset for the incrementing time column.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SUF\_BinReadData, SUF\_BinWriteData, SUF\_BinReadFile,  
SUF\_BinWriteFile, SUF\_CsvReadData, SUF\_CsvReadFile, SUF\_CsvReadMatrix,  
SUF\_CsvWriteMatrix, SUF\_DatReadData, SUF\_DatWriteData,  
SUF\_DatReadHeader, SUF\_DatWriteHeader, SUF\_SigReadData,  
SUF\_SigWriteData, SUF\_SigReadFile, SUF\_SigWriteFile,  
SUF\_SigCountSamplesInFile, SUF\_XmtReadData, SUF\_WavReadData,  
SUF\_WavWriteData, SUF\_WavReadWord, SUF\_WavReadInt,  
SUF\_WavWriteWord, SUF\_WavWriteInt, SUF\_WavReadHeader,  
SUF\_WavWriteHeader, SUF\_WavDisplayInfo, SUF\_WavSetInfo,  
SUF\_WavFileLength, SUF\_WavReadFile, SUF\_WavWriteFile,  
SUF\_WavWriteFileScaled

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLArrayIndex_t SUF_CsvReadMatrix (SLData_t **,      Data array pointer
                                   const char *,      File name
                                   const enum SLFileReadFirstRowFlag_t, First row flag
                                   SLArrayIndex_t *,  Pointer to the number of rows read
                                   SLArrayIndex_t *)  Pointer to the number of columns read
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function reads a matrix from a .csv file, with option to keep or ignore the first row.

The function calculates the geometry for the array and returns the number of rows and columns using the pointers.

The .csv file is opened and this function allocates the memory for the array and returns a valid pointer through the data array pointer function parameter.

The function includes an option to keep or ignore the first row in the .csv file, using the following options:

```
SIGLIB_FIRST_ROW_IGNORE
SIGLIB_FIRST_ROW_KEEP
```

This ignore first row mode is compatible with pandas .csv file format, in which the first row is the column titles.

## NOTES ON USE

The function returns the number of samples read from the file.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SUF\_BinReadData, SUF\_BinWriteData, SUF\_BinReadFile,  
 SUF\_BinWriteFile, SUF\_CsvWriteData, SUF\_CsvReadMatrix,  
 SUF\_CsvWriteMatrix, SUF\_DatReadData, SUF\_DatWriteData,  
 SUF\_DatReadHeader, SUF\_DatWriteHeader, SUF\_SigReadData,  
 SUF\_SigWriteData, SUF\_SigReadFile, SUF\_SigWriteFile,  
 SUF\_SigCountSamplesInFile, SUF\_XmtReadData, SUF\_WavReadData,  
 SUF\_WavWriteData, SUF\_WavReadWord, SUF\_WavReadInt,  
 SUF\_WavWriteWord, SUF\_WavWriteInt, SUF\_WavReadHeader,  
 SUF\_WavWriteHeader, SUF\_WavDisplayInfo, SUF\_WavSetInfo,  
 SUF\_WavFileLength, SUF\_WavReadFile, SUF\_WavWriteFile,  
 SUF\_WavWriteFileScaled

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLArrayIndex_t SUF_CsvWriteMatrix (SLData_t **,      Data array pointer
                                   const char *,      File name
                                   SLArrayIndex_t,     Number of rows to write
                                   SLArrayIndex_t)     Number of columns to write
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function writes a matrix to a .csv file.

## NOTES ON USE

The function returns the number of samples written to the file.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SUF\_BinReadData, SUF\_BinWriteData, SUF\_BinReadFile,  
 SUF\_BinWriteFile, SUF\_CsvWriteData, SUF\_CsvReadMatrix,  
 SUF\_CsvWriteMatrix, SUF\_DatReadData, SUF\_DatWriteData,  
 SUF\_DatReadHeader, SUF\_DatWriteHeader, SUF\_SigReadData,  
 SUF\_SigWriteData, SUF\_SigReadFile, SUF\_SigWriteFile,  
 SUF\_SigCountSamplesInFile, SUF\_XmtReadData, SUF\_WavReadData,  
 SUF\_WavWriteData, SUF\_WavReadWord, SUF\_WavReadInt,  
 SUF\_WavWriteWord, SUF\_WavWriteInt, SUF\_WavReadHeader,  
 SUF\_WavWriteHeader, SUF\_WavDisplayInfo, SUF\_WavSetInfo,  
 SUF\_WavFileLength, SUF\_WavReadFile, SUF\_WavWriteFile,  
 SUF\_WavWriteFileScaled

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLArrayIndex\_t SUF\_DatReadData (SLData\_t \*,   Data array pointer  
FILE \*,                               File pointer  
const SLArrayIndex\_t)               Array length

**DESCRIPTION**

This function reads an array of floating-point data from the file.

**NOTES ON USE**

This function operates in a stream oriented mode and will read successive blocks of data from the file until the end of the file is reached.

This function will zero pad any buffers if there is not sufficient data in the remainder of the file to fill the buffer.

The file must be opened prior to using this function.

The function returns the number of samples read from the file.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SUF\_BinReadData, SUF\_BinWriteData, SUF\_BinReadFile,  
SUF\_BinWriteFile, SUF\_CsvReadData, SUF\_CsvWriteData, SUF\_CsvReadFile,  
SUF\_CsvWriteFile, SUF\_CsvReadMatrix, SUF\_DatWriteData,  
SUF\_DatReadHeader, SUF\_DatWriteHeader, SUF\_SigReadData,  
SUF\_SigWriteData, SUF\_SigReadFile, SUF\_SigWriteFile,  
SUF\_SigCountSamplesInFile, SUF\_XmtReadData, SUF\_WavReadData,  
SUF\_WavWriteData, SUF\_WavReadWord, SUF\_WavReadInt,  
SUF\_WavWriteWord, SUF\_WavWriteInt, SUF\_WavReadHeader,  
SUF\_WavWriteHeader, SUF\_WavDisplayInfo, SUF\_WavSetInfo,  
SUF\_WavFileLength, SUF\_WavReadFile, SUF\_WavWriteFile,  
SUF\_WavWriteFileScaled

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|                       |                                     |                    |
|-----------------------|-------------------------------------|--------------------|
| SLArrayIndex_t        | SUF_DatWriteData (const SLData_t *, | Data array pointer |
| FILE *,               |                                     | File pointer       |
| const SLData_t,       |                                     | Sample rate        |
| const SLArrayIndex_t, |                                     | Sample index       |
| const SLArrayIndex_t) |                                     | Array length       |

## DESCRIPTION

This function writes an array of floating-point data to the file.

## NOTES ON USE

This function operates in a stream oriented mode and will append successive blocks of to the end of the file.

The sample index parameter is used to maintain the index across successive writes.

The file must be opened prior to using this function.

The function returns the number of samples written to the file.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SUF\_BinReadData, SUF\_BinWriteData, SUF\_BinReadFile,  
SUF\_BinWriteFile, SUF\_CsvReadData, SUF\_CsvWriteData, SUF\_CsvReadFile,  
SUF\_CsvWriteFile, SUF\_CsvReadMatrix, SUF\_CsvWriteMatrix,  
SUF\_DatReadData, SUF\_DatReadHeader, SUF\_DatWriteHeader,  
SUF\_SigReadData, SUF\_SigWriteData, SUF\_SigReadFile, SUF\_SigWriteFile,  
SUF\_SigCountSamplesInFile, SUF\_XmtReadData, SUF\_WavReadData,  
SUF\_WavWriteData, SUF\_WavReadWord, SUF\_WavReadInt,  
SUF\_WavWriteWord, SUF\_WavWriteInt, SUF\_WavReadHeader,  
SUF\_WavWriteHeader, SUF\_WavDisplayInfo, SUF\_WavSetInfo,  
SUF\_WavFileLength, SUF\_WavReadFile, SUF\_WavWriteFile,  
SUF\_WavWriteFileScaled

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLData\_t SUF\_DatReadHeader (FILE \*)    File pointer

**DESCRIPTION**

This function reads the header information from a dat file and returns the sample rate.

**NOTES ON USE**

The file must be opened prior to using this function.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SUF\_BinReadData, SUF\_BinWriteData, SUF\_BinReadFile,  
SUF\_BinWriteFile, SUF\_CsvReadData, SUF\_CsvWriteData, SUF\_CsvReadFile,  
SUF\_CsvWriteFile, SUF\_CsvReadMatrix, SUF\_CsvWriteMatrix,  
SUF\_DatReadData, SUF\_DatWriteData, SUF\_DatWriteHeader, SUF\_SigReadData,  
SUF\_SigWriteData, SUF\_SigReadFile, SUF\_SigWriteFile,  
SUF\_SigCountSamplesInFile, SUF\_XmtReadData, SUF\_WavReadData,  
SUF\_WavWriteData, SUF\_WavReadWord, SUF\_WavReadInt,  
SUF\_WavWriteWord, SUF\_WavWriteInt, SUF\_WavReadHeader,  
SUF\_WavWriteHeader, SUF\_WavDisplayInfo, SUF\_WavSetInfo,  
SUF\_WavFileLength, SUF\_WavReadFile, SUF\_WavWriteFile,  
SUF\_WavWriteFileScaled

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLArrayIndex\_t SUF\_DatWriteHeader (FILE \*,     File pointer  
  const SLData\_t)             Sample rate

**DESCRIPTION**

This function writes the sample rate to the dat file header.

**NOTES ON USE**

The file must be opened prior to using this function.

The function returns the number of characters written to the file, a negative number on file error.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SUF\_BinReadData, SUF\_BinWriteData, SUF\_BinReadFile,  
SUF\_BinWriteFile, SUF\_CsvReadData, SUF\_CsvWriteData, SUF\_CsvReadFile,  
SUF\_CsvWriteFile, SUF\_CsvReadMatrix, SUF\_CsvWriteMatrix,  
SUF\_DatReadData, SUF\_DatWriteData, SUF\_DatReadHeader, SUF\_SigReadData,  
SUF\_SigWriteData, SUF\_SigReadFile, SUF\_SigWriteFile,  
SUF\_SigCountSamplesInFile, SUF\_XmtReadData, SUF\_WavReadData,  
SUF\_WavWriteData, SUF\_WavReadWord, SUF\_WavReadInt,  
SUF\_WavWriteWord, SUF\_WavWriteInt, SUF\_WavReadHeader,  
SUF\_WavWriteHeader, SUF\_WavDisplayInfo, SUF\_WavSetInfo,  
SUF\_WavFileLength, SUF\_WavReadFile, SUF\_WavWriteFile,  
SUF\_WavWriteFileScaled

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLArrayIndex_t SUF_SigReadData (SLData_t *,   Data array pointer  
    FILE *,                               File pointer  
    const SLArrayIndex_t)                Array length
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function reads an array of floating-point data from the file.

## NOTES ON USE

This function operates in a stream oriented mode and will read successive blocks of data from the file until the end of the file is reached.

This function will zero pad any buffers if there is not sufficient data in the remainder of the file to fill the buffer.

The file must be opened prior to using this function.

The function returns the number of samples read from the file.

The data is formatted in a single column.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SUF\_BinReadData, SUF\_BinWriteData, SUF\_BinReadFile,  
SUF\_BinWriteFile, SUF\_CsvReadData, SUF\_CsvWriteData, SUF\_CsvReadFile,  
SUF\_CsvWriteFile, SUF\_CsvReadMatrix, SUF\_CsvWriteMatrix,  
SUF\_DatReadData, SUF\_DatWriteData, SUF\_DatReadHeader,  
SUF\_DatWriteHeader, SUF\_SigWriteData, SUF\_SigReadFile, SUF\_SigWriteFile,  
SUF\_SigCountSamplesInFile, SUF\_XmtReadData, SUF\_WavReadData,  
SUF\_WavWriteData, SUF\_WavReadWord, SUF\_WavReadInt,  
SUF\_WavWriteWord, SUF\_WavWriteInt, SUF\_WavReadHeader,  
SUF\_WavWriteHeader, SUF\_WavDisplayInfo, SUF\_WavSetInfo,  
SUF\_WavFileLength, SUF\_WavReadFile, SUF\_WavWriteFile,  
SUF\_WavWriteFileScaled



**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|                |                                     |                    |
|----------------|-------------------------------------|--------------------|
| SLArrayIndex_t | SUF_SigWriteData (const SLData_t *, | Data array pointer |
|                | FILE *,                             | File pointer       |
|                | const SLArrayIndex_t)               | Array length       |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function writes an array of floating-point data to the file.

**NOTES ON USE**

This function writes an array of floating-point data to the file.

**NOTES ON USE**

This function operates in a stream oriented mode and will append successive blocks of to the end of the file.

The file must be opened prior to using this function.

The function returns the number of samples written to the file.

The data is formatted in a single column.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SUF\_BinReadData, SUF\_BinWriteData, SUF\_BinReadFile,  
SUF\_BinWriteFile, SUF\_CsvReadData, SUF\_CsvWriteData, SUF\_CsvReadFile,  
SUF\_CsvWriteFile, SUF\_CsvReadMatrix, SUF\_CsvWriteMatrix,  
SUF\_DatReadData, SUF\_DatWriteData, SUF\_DatReadHeader,  
SUF\_DatWriteHeader, SUF\_SigReadData, SUF\_SigReadFile, SUF\_SigWriteFile,  
SUF\_SigCountSamplesInFile, SUF\_XmtReadData, SUF\_WavReadData,  
SUF\_WavWriteData, SUF\_WavReadWord, SUF\_WavReadInt,  
SUF\_WavWriteWord, SUF\_WavWriteInt, SUF\_WavReadHeader,  
SUF\_WavWriteHeader, SUF\_WavDisplayInfo, SUF\_WavSetInfo,  
SUF\_WavFileLength, SUF\_WavReadFile, SUF\_WavWriteFile,  
SUF\_WavWriteFileScaled

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLArrayIndex\_t SUF\_SigReadFile (SLData\_t \*,     Data array pointer  
                                  const char \*)                     File name

## DESCRIPTION

This function reads an entire file of floating-point data from the file into an array.

## NOTES ON USE

It is important to ensure that the array is long enough to read all of the data.

The function returns the number of samples read from the file or -1 for file error.

The data is formatted in a single column.

The function SUF\_SigCountSamplesInFile() can be used to count the number of samples in the file before reading from the file, to allow the appropriate amount of memory to be allocated using the function SUF\_VectorArrayAllocate().

## CROSS REFERENCE

SUF\_BinReadData, SUF\_BinWriteData, SUF\_BinReadFile,  
SUF\_BinWriteFile, SUF\_CsvReadData, SUF\_CsvWriteData, SUF\_CsvReadFile,  
SUF\_CsvWriteFile, SUF\_CsvReadMatrix, SUF\_CsvWriteMatrix,  
SUF\_DatReadData, SUF\_DatWriteData, SUF\_DatReadHeader,  
SUF\_DatWriteHeader, SUF\_SigReadData, SUF\_SigWriteData, SUF\_SigWriteFile,  
SUF\_SigCountSamplesInFile, SUF\_XmtReadData, SUF\_WavReadData,  
SUF\_WavWriteData, SUF\_WavReadWord, SUF\_WavReadInt,  
SUF\_WavWriteWord, SUF\_WavWriteInt, SUF\_WavReadHeader,  
SUF\_WavWriteHeader, SUF\_WavDisplayInfo, SUF\_WavSetInfo,  
SUF\_WavFileLength, SUF\_WavReadFile, SUF\_WavWriteFile,  
SUF\_WavWriteFileScaled

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|                |                                     |                    |
|----------------|-------------------------------------|--------------------|
| SLArrayIndex_t | SUF_SigWriteFile (const SLData_t *, | Data array pointer |
|                | const char *,                       | File name          |
|                | const SLArrayIndex_t)               | Array length       |

## DESCRIPTION

This function writes an array of floating-point data to the file.

## NOTES ON USE

The data is formatted in a single column.

This function returns the number of samples written to the file or -1 for file error.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SUF\_BinReadData, SUF\_BinWriteData, SUF\_BinReadFile,  
SUF\_BinWriteFile, SUF\_CsvReadData, SUF\_CsvWriteData, SUF\_CsvReadFile,  
SUF\_CsvWriteFile, SUF\_CsvReadMatrix, SUF\_CsvWriteMatrix,  
SUF\_DatReadData, SUF\_DatWriteData, SUF\_DatReadHeader,  
SUF\_DatWriteHeader, SUF\_SigReadData, SUF\_SigWriteData, SUF\_SigReadFile,  
SUF\_SigCountSamplesInFile, SUF\_XmtReadData, SUF\_WavReadData,  
SUF\_WavWriteData, SUF\_WavReadWord, SUF\_WavReadInt,  
SUF\_WavWriteWord, SUF\_WavWriteInt, SUF\_WavReadHeader,  
SUF\_WavWriteHeader, SUF\_WavDisplayInfo, SUF\_WavSetInfo,  
SUF\_WavFileLength, SUF\_WavReadFile, SUF\_WavWriteFile,  
SUF\_WavWriteFileScaled

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLArrayIndex\_t SUF\_SigCountSamplesInFile (const char \*)      File name

## DESCRIPTION

This function counts the number of samples in the .sig the file.

## NOTES ON USE

The function counts the number of newline characters, which will equal the number of samples because the last line of the file will always be blank.

This function can be used to count the number fo samples in SigLib .csv files, which store arrays in columns.

## CROSS REFERENCE

SUF\_BinReadData, SUF\_BinWriteData, SUF\_BinReadFile,  
SUF\_BinWriteFile, SUF\_CsvReadData, SUF\_CsvWriteData, SUF\_CsvReadFile,  
SUF\_CsvWriteFile, SUF\_CsvReadMatrix, SUF\_CsvWriteMatrix,  
SUF\_DatReadData, SUF\_DatWriteData, SUF\_DatReadHeader,  
SUF\_DatWriteHeader, SUF\_SigReadData, SUF\_SigWriteData, SUF\_SigReadFile,  
SUF\_SigWriteFile, SUF\_XmtReadData, SUF\_WavReadData, SUF\_WavWriteData,  
SUF\_WavReadWord, SUF\_WavReadInt, SUF\_WavWriteWord, SUF\_WavWriteInt,  
SUF\_WavReadHeader, SUF\_WavWriteHeader, SUF\_WavDisplayInfo,  
SUF\_WavSetInfo, SUF\_WavFileLength, SUF\_WavReadFile, SUF\_WavWriteFile,  
SUF\_WavWriteFileScaled

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLArrayIndex\_t SUF\_XmtReadData (SLData\_t \*, Data array pointer  
FILE \*, File pointer  
const SLArrayIndex\_t) Array length

**DESCRIPTION**

This function reads an array of floating-point data from the an xmt file.

**NOTES ON USE**

This function operates in a stream oriented mode and will read successive blocks of data from the file until the end of the file is reached.

This function will zero pad any buffers if there is not sufficient data in the remainder of the file to fill the buffer.

The file must be opened prior to using this function.

The function returns the number of samples read from the file or -1 for file error.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SUF\_BinReadData, SUF\_BinWriteData, SUF\_BinReadFile,  
SUF\_BinWriteFile, SUF\_CsvReadData, SUF\_CsvWriteData, SUF\_CsvReadFile,  
SUF\_CsvWriteFile, SUF\_CsvReadMatrix, SUF\_CsvWriteMatrix,  
SUF\_DatReadData, SUF\_DatWriteData, SUF\_DatReadHeader,  
SUF\_DatWriteHeader, SUF\_SigReadData, SUF\_SigWriteData, SUF\_SigReadFile,  
SUF\_SigWriteFile, SUF\_WavReadData, SUF\_WavWriteData, SUF\_WavReadWord,  
SUF\_WavReadInt, SUF\_WavWriteWord, SUF\_WavWriteInt,  
SUF\_WavReadHeader, SUF\_WavWriteHeader, SUF\_WavDisplayInfo,  
SUF\_WavSetInfo, SUF\_WavFileLength, SUF\_WavReadFile, SUF\_WavWriteFile,  
SUF\_WavWriteFileScaled

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLArrayIndex\_t SUF\_WriteWeightsIntegerCFile (const char \*,   File name  
          const SLData\_t\*,                    Stage 1 weights  
          const SLData\_t \*,                   Stage 2 weights  
          const SLArrayIndex\_t,               Length of stage 1 weights  
          const SLArrayIndex\_t,               Length of stage 2 weights  
          const SLArrayIndex\_t)               Number of stages

**DESCRIPTION**

This function writes neural network weights to a C header file, as 8 bit words.

**NOTES ON USE**

The function returns the number of weights written to the file or zero on error.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SUF\_WriteWeightsFloatCFile, SUF\_WriteWeightsBinaryFile,  
SUF\_ReadWeightsBinaryFile, SUF\_WriteWeightsWithBiasesIntegerCFile,  
SUF\_WriteWeightsWithBiasesFloatCFile, SUF\_WriteWeightsWithBiasesBinaryFile,  
SUF\_ReadWeightsWithBiasesBinaryFile.

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

|                       |   |           |
|-----------------------|---|-----------|
| SLArrayIndex_t        | SUF_WriteWeightsFloatCFile (const char *, | File name |
| const SLData_t*,      | Stage 1 weights                           |           |
| const SLData_t *,     | Stage 2 weights                           |           |
| const SLArrayIndex_t, | Length of stage 1 weights                 |           |
| const SLArrayIndex_t, | Length of stage 2 weights                 |           |
| const SLArrayIndex_t) | Number of stages                          |           |

**DESCRIPTION**

This function writes neural network weights to a C header file, as floating point values.

**NOTES ON USE**

The function returns the number of weights written to the file or zero on error.

**CROSS REFERENCE**

SUF\_WriteWeightsIntegerCFile, SUF\_WriteWeightsBinaryFile,  
SUF\_ReadWeightsBinaryFile, SUF\_WriteWeightsWithBiasesIntegerCFile,  
SUF\_WriteWeightsWithBiasesFloatCFile, SUF\_WriteWeightsWithBiasesBinaryFile,  
SUF\_ReadWeightsWithBiasesBinaryFile.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLArrayIndex\_t SUF\_WriteWeightsBinaryFile (const char \*,      File name  
           const SLData\_t\*,                      Stage 1 weights  
           const SLData\_t\*,                      Stage 2 weights  
           const SLArrayIndex\_t,                Length of stage 1 weights  
           const SLArrayIndex\_t,                Length of stage 2 weights  
           const SLArrayIndex\_t,                Number of stages  
           const SLArrayIndex\_t)                Number of quantization bits

## DESCRIPTION

This function writes neural network weights to a binary file, as 8 bit words.

The weights can be quantized from 1 to 32 bits before being written to the weights file. The word length saved will vary on the number of quantization bits according to the following table.

| Number of Bits | Word Length Saved |
|----------------|-------------------|
| 1 to 8         | 8                 |
| 9 to 16        | 16                |
| 17 to 32       | 32                |

## NOTES ON USE

The function returns the number of weights written to the file or <= zero on error.

The binary file has the following format:

```
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| Number | Number | Max Of | Max Of | . | Max Of | Max Of |
| Of     | Of     | Layer 1 | Layer 1 | . | Layer N | Layer N | ...
| Layers | Q Bits | Weights | Biases | . | Weights | Biases |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+

      Layer | Layer | . | Layer | Layer |
      1     | 1     | . | N     | N     |
...  Weights | Biases | . | Weights | Biases |
      -----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
```

## CROSS REFERENCE

SUF\_WriteWeightsIntegerCFile, SUF\_WriteWeightsFloatCFile,  
 SUF\_ReadWeightsBinaryFile, SUF\_WriteWeightsWithBiasesIntegerCFile,  
 SUF\_WriteWeightsWithBiasesFloatCFile, SUF\_WriteWeightsWithBiasesBinaryFile,  
 SUF\_ReadWeightsWithBiasesBinaryFile.



## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
SLArrayIndex_t SUF_ReadWeightsBinaryFile (const char *,      File name
                                           const SLData_t*,      Stage 1 weights
                                           const SLData_t *)      Stage 2 weights
```

## DESCRIPTION

This function reads neural network weights from a binary file, reading the header to understand the exact format of the data in the file.

## NOTES ON USE

The function returns the number of weights read from the file or zero on error.

The binary file has the following format:

```
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| Number | Number | Max Of | Max Of | . | Max Of | Max Of |
| Of     | Of     | Layer 1 | Layer 1 | . | Layer N | Layer N | ...
| Layers | Q Bits | Weights | Biases  | . | Weights | Biases  |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+

      Layer | Layer | . | Layer | Layer |
...    1    | 1    | . | N     | N     |
      Weights | Biases | . | Weights | Biases |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
```

## CROSS REFERENCE

SUF\_WriteWeightsIntegerCFile, SUF\_WriteWeightsFloatCFile,  
 SUF\_WriteWeightsBinaryFile, SUF\_WriteWeightsWithBiasesIntegerCFile,  
 SUF\_WriteWeightsWithBiasesFloatCFile, SUF\_WriteWeightsWithBiasesBinaryFile,  
 SUF\_ReadWeightsWithBiasesBinaryFile.

### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLArrayIndex\_t SUF\_WriteWeightsWithBiasesIntegerCFile (const char \*, File name  
const SLData\_t\*, Stage 1 weights  
const SLData\_t\*, Stage 1 biases  
const SLData\_t \*, Stage 2 weights  
const SLData\_t \*, Stage 2 biases  
const SLArrayIndex\_t, Number of input nodes  
const SLArrayIndex\_t, Number of hidden layer nodes  
const SLArrayIndex\_t) Number of output categories

### DESCRIPTION

This function writes neural network weights and biases to a C header file, as 8 bit words.

### NOTES ON USE

The function returns the number of weights and biases written to the file or zero on error.

### CROSS REFERENCE

SUF\_WriteWeightsIntegerCFile, SUF\_WriteWeightsFloatCFile,  
SUF\_WriteWeightsBinaryFile, SUF\_ReadWeightsBinaryFile,  
SUF\_WriteWeightsWithBiasesFloatCFile, SUF\_WriteWeightsWithBiasesBinaryFile,  
SUF\_ReadWeightsWithBiasesBinaryFile.

### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLArrayIndex\_t SUF\_WriteWeightsWithBiasesFloatCFile (const char \*, File name  
const SLData\_t\*, Stage 1 weights  
const SLData\_t\*, Stage 1 biases  
const SLData\_t \*, Stage 2 weights  
const SLData\_t \*, Stage 2 biases  
const SLArrayIndex\_t, Number of input nodes  
const SLArrayIndex\_t, Number of hidden layer nodes  
const SLArrayIndex\_t) Number of output categories

### DESCRIPTION

This function writes neural network weights and biases to a C header file, as floating point values.

### NOTES ON USE

The function returns the number of weights and biases written to the file or zero on error.

### CROSS REFERENCE

SUF\_WriteWeightsIntegerCFile, SUF\_WriteWeightsFloatCFile,  
SUF\_WriteWeightsBinaryFile, SUF\_ReadWeightsBinaryFile,  
SUF\_WriteWeightsWithBiasesIntegerCFile,  
SUF\_WriteWeightsWithBiasesBinaryFile, SUF\_ReadWeightsWithBiasesBinaryFile.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLArrayIndex\_t SUF\_WriteWeightsWithBiasesBinaryFile (const char \*, File name  
const SLData\_t\*, Stage 1 weights  
const SLData\_t\*, Stage 1 biases  
const SLData\_t \*, Stage 2 weights  
const SLData\_t \*, Stage 2 biases  
const SLArrayIndex\_t, Number of input nodes  
const SLArrayIndex\_t, Number of hidden layer nodes  
const SLArrayIndex\_t, Number of output categories  
const SLArrayIndex\_t) Number of quantization bits

## DESCRIPTION

This function writes neural network weights and biases to a binary file, as 8 bit words.

The weights and biases can be quantized from 1 to 32 bits before being written to the file. The word length saved will vary on the number of quantization bits according to the following table.

| Number of Bits | Word Length Saved |
|----------------|-------------------|
| 1 to 8         | 8                 |
| 9 to 16        | 16                |
| 17 to 32       | 32                |

## NOTES ON USE

The function returns the number of weights and biases written to the file or <= zero on error.

The binary file has the following format:

```
+-----+-----+-----+--+-----+-----+-----+--+
| Number | Number | Max Of | . | Max Of | Layer | . | Layer |
| Of     | Of     | Layer 1 | . | Layer N | 1     | . | N     |
| Layers | Q Bits | Weights | . | Weights | Weights | . | Weights |
+-----+-----+-----+--+-----+-----+-----+--+
```

## CROSS REFERENCE

SUF\_WriteWeightsIntegerCFile, SUF\_WriteWeightsFloatCFile,  
SUF\_WriteWeightsBinaryFile, SUF\_ReadWeightsBinaryFile,  
SUF\_WriteWeightsWithBiasesIntegerCFile,  
SUF\_WriteWeightsWithBiasesFloatCFile, SUF\_ReadWeightsWithBiasesBinaryFile.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLArrayIndex\_t SUF\_ReadWeightsWithBiasesBinaryFile (const char \*, File name  
           const SLData\_t\*, Stage 1 weights  
           const SLData\_t\*, Stage 1 biases  
           const SLData\_t \*, Stage 2 weights  
           const SLData\_t \*) Stage 2 biases

## DESCRIPTION

This function reads neural network weights and biases from a binary file, reading the header to understand the exact format of the data in the file.

## NOTES ON USE

The function returns the number of weights and biases read from the file or zero on error.

The binary file has the following format:

```
+-----+-----+-----+--+-----+-----+--+-----+
| Number | Number | Max Of | . | Max Of | Layer | . | Layer |
| Of     | Of     | Layer 1 | . | Layer N | 1     | . | N     |
| Layers | Q Bits | Weights | . | Weights | Weights | . | Weights |
+-----+-----+-----+--+-----+-----+-----+-----+
```

## CROSS REFERENCE

SUF\_WriteWeightsIntegerCFile, SUF\_WriteWeightsFloatCFile,  
 SUF\_WriteWeightsBinaryFile, SUF\_ReadWeightsBinaryFile,  
 SUF\_WriteWeightsWithBiasesIntegerCFile,  
 SUF\_WriteWeightsWithBiasesFloatCFile, SUF\_WriteWeightsWithBiasesBinaryFile.

## WAV File Functions

The following functions are used to read and write .wav files. These functions require a structure of type SLWavFileInfo\_s, which is defined as :

```
typedef struct
{
    int    SampleRate;
    int    NumberOfSamples;
    int    NumberOfChannels;
    int    WordLength;
    int    BytesPerSample;
    int    DataFormat;
} SLWavFileInfo_s;
```

This structure can be accessed directly from any program however functions are supplied for reading and writing to it.

Note : when writing a stream to a .wav file it is first necessary to write the header using the function wav\_write\_header () then the data can be written to the file. Once all of the data has been written and the exact number of samples is known then the number of samples can be re-written to the header and the function wav\_write\_header should be called again.

For multi-channel wav files, the data is returned with the channels multiplexed into a single array so the array length must equal the NumberOfSamples\*NumberOfChannels. The SigLib DSP library includes functions for multiplexing and de-multiplexing data streams.

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|                        |                                 |                          |
|------------------------|---------------------------------|--------------------------|
| SLArrayIndex_t         | SUF_WavReadData (SLData_t *,    | Destination data pointer |
| FILE *,                | File pointer                    |                          |
| const SLWavFileInfo_s, | Wave file information structure |                          |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)  | Array length                    |                          |

## FUNCTION DESCRIPTION

This function reads an array of wave file data from the file.

## NOTES ON USE

This function operates in a stream oriented mode and will read successive blocks of data from the file until the end of the file is reached.

This function will zero pad any buffers if there is not sufficient data in the remainder of the file to fill the buffer.

The function returns the number of samples read from the file.

The file must be opened prior to using this function.

Returns wavInfo.NumberOfSamples = 0 on error.

## FUNCTION CROSS REFERENCE

SUF\_BinReadData, SUF\_BinWriteData, SUF\_BinReadFile,  
 SUF\_BinWriteFile, SUF\_CsvReadData, SUF\_CsvWriteData, SUF\_CsvReadFile,  
 SUF\_CsvWriteFile, SUF\_CsvReadMatrix, SUF\_CsvWriteMatrix,  
 SUF\_DatReadData, SUF\_DatWriteData, SUF\_DatReadHeader,  
 SUF\_DatWriteHeader, SUF\_SigReadData, SUF\_SigWriteData, SUF\_SigReadFile,  
 SUF\_SigWriteFile, SUF\_SigCountSamplesInFile, SUF\_XmtReadData,  
 SUF\_WavWriteData, SUF\_WavReadWord, SUF\_WavReadInt,  
 SUF\_WavWriteWord, SUF\_WavWriteInt, SUF\_WavReadHeader,  
 SUF\_WavWriteHeader, SUF\_WavDisplayInfo, SUF\_WavSetInfo,  
 SUF\_WavFileLength, SUF\_WavReadFile, SUF\_WavWriteFile,  
 SUF\_WavWriteFileScaled

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

```
void SUF_WavWriteData (const SLData_t *,      Source data pointer
                      FILE *,                File pointer
                      const SLWavFileInfo_s,  Wave file information structure
                      const SLArrayIndex_t)    Array length
```

## FUNCTION DESCRIPTION

This function writes an array of wave file data to the file.

## NOTES ON USE

This function operates in a stream oriented mode and will append successive blocks of to the end of the file.

The file must be opened prior to using this function.

## FUNCTION CROSS REFERENCE

SUF\_BinReadData, SUF\_BinWriteData, SUF\_BinReadFile,  
 SUF\_BinWriteFile, SUF\_CsvReadData, SUF\_CsvWriteData, SUF\_CsvReadFile,  
 SUF\_CsvWriteFile, SUF\_CsvReadMatrix, SUF\_CsvWriteMatrix,  
 SUF\_DatReadData, SUF\_DatWriteData, SUF\_DatReadHeader,  
 SUF\_DatWriteHeader, SUF\_SigReadData, SUF\_SigWriteData, SUF\_SigReadFile,  
 SUF\_SigWriteFile, SUF\_SigCountSamplesInFile, SUF\_XmtReadData,  
 SUF\_WavReadData, SUF\_WavReadWord, SUF\_WavReadInt, SUF\_WavWriteWord,  
 SUF\_WavWriteInt, SUF\_WavReadHeader, SUF\_WavWriteHeader,  
 SUF\_WavDisplayInfo, SUF\_WavSetInfo, SUF\_WavFileLength, SUF\_WavReadFile,  
 SUF\_WavWriteFile, SUF\_WavWriteFileScaled



**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLArrayIndex\_t SUF\_WavReadWord (FILE \*)                      File pointer

**FUNCTION DESCRIPTION**

This function reads a word of data from a wave file.

The file must be opened prior to using this function.

**NOTES ON USE**

The function returns the word read from the file.

**FUNCTION CROSS REFERENCE**

SUF\_BinReadData, SUF\_BinWriteData, SUF\_BinReadFile,  
SUF\_BinWriteFile, SUF\_CsvReadData, SUF\_CsvWriteData, SUF\_CsvReadFile,  
SUF\_CsvWriteFile, SUF\_CsvReadMatrix, SUF\_CsvWriteMatrix,  
SUF\_DatReadData, SUF\_DatWriteData, SUF\_DatReadHeader,  
SUF\_DatWriteHeader, SUF\_SigReadData, SUF\_SigWriteData, SUF\_SigReadFile,  
SUF\_SigWriteFile, SUF\_SigCountSamplesInFile, SUF\_XmtReadData,  
SUF\_WavReadData, SUF\_WavWriteData, SUF\_WavReadInt, SUF\_WavWriteWord,  
SUF\_WavWriteInt, SUF\_WavReadHeader, SUF\_WavWriteHeader,  
SUF\_WavDisplayInfo, SUF\_WavSetInfo, SUF\_WavFileLength, SUF\_WavReadFile,  
SUF\_WavWriteFile, SUF\_WavWriteFileScaled

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLArrayIndex\_t SUF\_WavReadInt (FILE \*)      File pointer

**FUNCTION DESCRIPTION**

This function reads an integer word of data from a wave file.

**NOTES ON USE**

The function returns the integer word read from the file.

The file must be opened prior to using this function.

**FUNCTION CROSS REFERENCE**

SUF\_BinReadData, SUF\_BinWriteData, SUF\_BinReadFile,  
SUF\_BinWriteFile, SUF\_CsvReadData, SUF\_CsvWriteData, SUF\_CsvReadFile,  
SUF\_CsvWriteFile, SUF\_CsvReadMatrix, SUF\_CsvWriteMatrix,  
SUF\_DatReadData, SUF\_DatWriteData, SUF\_DatReadHeader,  
SUF\_DatWriteHeader, SUF\_SigReadData, SUF\_SigWriteData, SUF\_SigReadFile,  
SUF\_SigWriteFile, SUF\_SigCountSamplesInFile, SUF\_XmtReadData,  
SUF\_WavReadData, SUF\_WavWriteData, SUF\_WavReadWord,  
SUF\_WavWriteWord, SUF\_WavWriteInt, SUF\_WavReadHeader,  
SUF\_WavWriteHeader, SUF\_WavDisplayInfo, SUF\_WavSetInfo,  
SUF\_WavFileLength, SUF\_WavReadFile, SUF\_WavWriteFile,  
SUF\_WavWriteFileScaled

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

void SUF\_WavWriteWord (const SLArrayIndex\_t,           Data word to write  
                          FILE \*)                       File pointer

**FUNCTION DESCRIPTION**

This function writes a word of data to the file.

**NOTES ON USE**

The file must be opened prior to using this function.

**FUNCTION CROSS REFERENCE**

SUF\_BinReadData, SUF\_BinWriteData, SUF\_BinReadFile,  
SUF\_BinWriteFile, SUF\_CsvReadData, SUF\_CsvWriteData, SUF\_CsvReadFile,  
SUF\_CsvWriteFile, SUF\_CsvReadMatrix, SUF\_CsvWriteMatrix,  
SUF\_DatReadData, SUF\_DatWriteData, SUF\_DatReadHeader,  
SUF\_DatWriteHeader, SUF\_SigReadData, SUF\_SigWriteData, SUF\_SigReadFile,  
SUF\_SigWriteFile, SUF\_SigCountSamplesInFile, SUF\_XmtReadData,  
SUF\_WavReadData, SUF\_WavWriteData, SUF\_WavReadWord, SUF\_WavReadInt,  
SUF\_WavWriteInt, SUF\_WavReadHeader, SUF\_WavWriteHeader,  
SUF\_WavDisplayInfo, SUF\_WavSetInfo, SUF\_WavFileLength, SUF\_WavReadFile,  
SUF\_WavWriteFile, SUF\_WavWriteFileScaled



**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLWavFileInfo\_s SUF\_WavReadHeader (FILE \*) File pointer

**FUNCTION DESCRIPTION**

This function reads the header information from a wave file and returns it in the SLWavFileInfo\_s structure.

**NOTES ON USE**

The file must be opened prior to using this function.

Returns wavInfo.NumberOfSamples = 0 on error.

**FUNCTION CROSS REFERENCE**

SUF\_BinReadData, SUF\_BinWriteData, SUF\_BinReadFile,  
SUF\_BinWriteFile, SUF\_CsvReadData, SUF\_CsvWriteData, SUF\_CsvReadFile,  
SUF\_CsvWriteFile, SUF\_CsvReadMatrix, SUF\_CsvWriteMatrix,  
SUF\_DatReadData, SUF\_DatWriteData, SUF\_DatReadHeader,  
SUF\_DatWriteHeader, SUF\_SigReadData, SUF\_SigWriteData, SUF\_SigReadFile,  
SUF\_SigWriteFile, SUF\_SigCountSamplesInFile, SUF\_XmtReadData,  
SUF\_WavReadData, SUF\_WavWriteData, SUF\_WavReadWord, SUF\_WavReadInt,  
SUF\_WavWriteWord, SUF\_WavWriteInt, SUF\_WavWriteHeader,  
SUF\_WavDisplayInfo, SUF\_WavSetInfo, SUF\_WavFileLength, SUF\_WavReadFile,  
SUF\_WavWriteFile, SUF\_WavWriteFileScaled

### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|                                  |                                 |
|----------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| void SUF_WavWriteHeader (FILE *, | File pointer                    |
| const SLWavFileInfo_s)           | Wave file information structure |

### FUNCTION DESCRIPTION

This function writes the header information to a wave file from the SLWavFileInfo\_s structure.

### NOTES ON USE

The file must be opened prior to using this function.

### FUNCTION CROSS REFERENCE

SUF\_BinReadData, SUF\_BinWriteData, SUF\_BinReadFile,  
SUF\_BinWriteFile, SUF\_CsvReadData, SUF\_CsvWriteData, SUF\_CsvReadFile,  
SUF\_CsvWriteFile, SUF\_CsvReadMatrix, SUF\_CsvWriteMatrix,  
SUF\_DatReadData, SUF\_DatWriteData, SUF\_DatReadHeader,  
SUF\_DatWriteHeader, SUF\_SigReadData, SUF\_SigWriteData, SUF\_SigReadFile,  
SUF\_SigWriteFile, SUF\_SigCountSamplesInFile, SUF\_XmtReadData,  
SUF\_WavReadData, SUF\_WavWriteData, SUF\_WavReadWord, SUF\_WavReadInt,  
SUF\_WavWriteWord, SUF\_WavWriteInt, SUF\_WavReadHeader,  
SUF\_WavDisplayInfo, SUF\_WavSetInfo, SUF\_WavFileLength, SUF\_WavReadFile,  
SUF\_WavWriteFile, SUF\_WavWriteFileScaled

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

void SUF\_WavDisplayInfo (const SLWavFileInfo\_s) Wave file information structure

**FUNCTION DESCRIPTION**

This function prints out the header information stored in the SLWavFileInfo\_s structure.

**NOTES ON USE****FUNCTION CROSS REFERENCE**

SUF\_BinReadData, SUF\_BinWriteData, SUF\_BinReadFile,  
SUF\_BinWriteFile, SUF\_CsvReadData, SUF\_CsvWriteData, SUF\_CsvReadFile,  
SUF\_CsvWriteFile, SUF\_CsvReadMatrix, SUF\_CsvWriteMatrix,  
SUF\_DatReadData, SUF\_DatWriteData, SUF\_DatReadHeader,  
SUF\_DatWriteHeader, SUF\_SigReadData, SUF\_SigWriteData, SUF\_SigReadFile,  
SUF\_SigWriteFile, SUF\_SigCountSamplesInFile, SUF\_XmtReadData,  
SUF\_WavReadData, SUF\_WavWriteData, SUF\_WavReadWord, SUF\_WavReadInt,  
SUF\_WavWriteWord, SUF\_WavWriteInt, SUF\_WavReadHeader,  
SUF\_WavWriteHeader, SUF\_WavSetInfo, SUF\_WavFileLength,  
SUF\_WavReadFile, SUF\_WavWriteFile, SUF\_WavWriteFileScaled

## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|                 |                                       |                    |
|-----------------|---------------------------------------|--------------------|
| SLWavFileInfo_s | SUF_WavSetInfo (const SLArrayIndex_t, | Sample rate        |
|                 | const SLArrayIndex_t,                 | Number of samples  |
|                 | const SLArrayIndex_t,                 | Number of channels |
|                 | const SLArrayIndex_t,                 | Word length        |
|                 | const SLArrayIndex_t,                 | Bytes per sample   |
|                 | const SLArrayIndex_t)                 | Data format        |

## FUNCTION DESCRIPTION

This function generates a SLWavFileInfo\_s structure from the supplied data.

## NOTES ON USE

## FUNCTION CROSS REFERENCE

SUF\_BinReadData, SUF\_BinWriteData, SUF\_BinReadFile,  
SUF\_BinWriteFile, SUF\_CsvReadData, SUF\_CsvWriteData, SUF\_CsvReadFile,  
SUF\_CsvWriteFile, SUF\_CsvReadMatrix, SUF\_CsvWriteMatrix,  
SUF\_DatReadData, SUF\_DatWriteData, SUF\_DatReadHeader,  
SUF\_DatWriteHeader, SUF\_SigReadData, SUF\_SigWriteData, SUF\_SigReadFile,  
SUF\_SigWriteFile, SUF\_SigCountSamplesInFile, SUF\_XmtReadData,  
SUF\_WavReadData, SUF\_WavWriteData, SUF\_WavReadWord, SUF\_WavReadInt,  
SUF\_WavWriteWord, SUF\_WavWriteInt, SUF\_WavReadHeader,  
SUF\_WavWriteHeader, SUF\_WavDisplayInfo, SUF\_WavFileLength,  
SUF\_WavReadFile, SUF\_WavWriteFile, SUF\_WavWriteFileScaled



### PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

SLArrayIndex\_t SUF\_WavFileLength (const char \*)      Filename

### FUNCTION DESCRIPTION

This function returns the number of samples in the .wav file.

### NOTES ON USE

### FUNCTION CROSS REFERENCE

SUF\_BinReadData, SUF\_BinWriteData, SUF\_BinReadFile,  
SUF\_BinWriteFile, SUF\_CsvReadData, SUF\_CsvWriteData, SUF\_CsvReadFile,  
SUF\_CsvWriteFile, SUF\_CsvReadMatrix, SUF\_CsvWriteMatrix,  
SUF\_DatReadData, SUF\_DatWriteData, SUF\_DatReadHeader,  
SUF\_DatWriteHeader, SUF\_SigReadData, SUF\_SigWriteData, SUF\_SigReadFile,  
SUF\_SigWriteFile, SUF\_SigCountSamplesInFile, SUF\_XmtReadData,  
SUF\_WavReadData, SUF\_WavWriteData, SUF\_WavReadWord, SUF\_WavReadInt,  
SUF\_WavWriteWord, SUF\_WavWriteInt, SUF\_WavReadHeader,  
SUF\_WavWriteHeader, SUF\_WavDisplayInfo, SUF\_WavSetInfo,  
SUF\_WavReadFile, SUF\_WavWriteFile, SUF\_WavWriteFileScaled



## PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION

|                        |                                 |              |
|------------------------|---------------------------------|--------------|
| SLArrayIndex_t         | SUF_WavWriteFile (SLData_t *,   | Data pointer |
| const char *,          | Filename                        |              |
| const SLWavFileInfo_s, | Wave file information structure |              |
| const SLArrayIndex_t)  | Array length                    |              |

## FUNCTION DESCRIPTION

This function writes the contents of the array to the .wav file.

## NOTES ON USE

Returns the number of samples written, -1 for file open error.

## FUNCTION CROSS REFERENCE

SUF\_BinReadData, SUF\_BinWriteData, SUF\_BinReadFile,  
 SUF\_BinWriteFile, SUF\_CsvReadData, SUF\_CsvWriteData, SUF\_CsvReadFile,  
 SUF\_CsvWriteFile, SUF\_CsvReadMatrix, SUF\_CsvWriteMatrix,  
 SUF\_DatReadData, SUF\_DatWriteData, SUF\_DatReadHeader,  
 SUF\_DatWriteHeader, SUF\_SigReadData, SUF\_SigWriteData, SUF\_SigReadFile,  
 SUF\_SigWriteFile, SUF\_SigCountSamplesInFile, SUF\_XmtReadData,  
 SUF\_WavReadData, SUF\_WavWriteData, SUF\_WavReadWord, SUF\_WavReadInt,  
 SUF\_WavWriteWord, SUF\_WavWriteInt, SUF\_WavReadHeader,  
 SUF\_WavWriteHeader, SUF\_WavDisplayInfo, SUF\_WavSetInfo,  
 SUF\_WavFileLength, SUF\_WavReadFile, SUF\_WavWriteFileScaled

**PROTOTYPE AND PARAMETER DESCRIPTION**

SLArrayIndex\_t SUF\_WavWriteFileScaled (SLData\_t \*,   Data pointer  
          const char \*,                               Filename  
          const SLWavFileInfo\_s,                   Wave file information structure  
          const SLArrayIndex\_t)                   Array length

**FUNCTION DESCRIPTION**

This function writes the contents of the array to the .wav file. The output is scaled to a magnitude of 32767.0

**NOTES ON USE**

Returns the number of samples written, -1 for file open error.

**FUNCTION CROSS REFERENCE**

SUF\_BinReadData, SUF\_BinWriteData, SUF\_BinReadFile,  
SUF\_BinWriteFile, SUF\_CsvReadData, SUF\_CsvWriteData, SUF\_CsvReadFile,  
SUF\_CsvWriteFile, SUF\_CsvReadMatrix, SUF\_CsvWriteMatrix,  
SUF\_DatReadData, SUF\_DatWriteData, SUF\_DatReadHeader,  
SUF\_DatWriteHeader, SUF\_SigReadData, SUF\_SigWriteData, SUF\_SigReadFile,  
SUF\_SigWriteFile, SUF\_SigCountSamplesInFile, SUF\_XmtReadData,  
SUF\_WavReadData, SUF\_WavWriteData, SUF\_WavReadWord, SUF\_WavReadInt,  
SUF\_WavWriteWord, SUF\_WavWriteInt, SUF\_WavReadHeader,  
SUF\_WavWriteHeader, SUF\_WavDisplayInfo, SUF\_WavSetInfo,  
SUF\_WavFileLength, SUF\_WavReadFile, SUF\_WavWriteFile

## UTILITY MACROS (*siglib\_macros.h*)

The following section details the SigLib utility macros located in the file *siglib\_macros.h*. These macros are only available in applications written in C/C++.

Macros to handle the fact that ANSI C rounds floating point numbers down to fixed point equivalents. These macros also allow for floating point not quantizing to perfect integer values

Macros that return type `SLData_t`

|                                    |                                     |
|------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| <code>SDS_RoundDown(a)</code>      | Round down to fixed point number    |
| <code>SDS_RoundUp(a)</code>        | Round up to fixed point number      |
| <code>SDS_RoundToNearest(a)</code> | Round to nearest fixed point number |

Macros that return type `SLArrayIndex_t`

|                                    |                                     |
|------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| <code>SAI_RoundDown(a)</code>      | Round down to fixed point number    |
| <code>SAI_RoundUp(a)</code>        | Round up to fixed point number      |
| <code>SAI_RoundToNearest(a)</code> | Round to nearest fixed point number |

Macros that output type `SLFixData_t`

|                                |   |
|--------------------------------|---|
| <code>SDS_Odd(a)</code>        | Returns 1 if a is odd, 0 otherwise                                    |
| <code>SDS_Even(a)</code>       | Returns 1 if a is even, 0 otherwise                                   |
| <code>SDS_PowerOfTwo(a)</code> | Returns 1 if a is a power of 2, 0 otherwise                           |
| <code>SDS_Abs(a)</code>        | Returns the absolute value of a, using C function <code>fabs()</code> |
| <code>SDS_Absolute(a)</code>   | Returns the absolute value of a, using macro function                 |
| <code>SDS_Sign(a)</code>       | Returns the sign of 'a' – either <code>SIGLIB_POSITIVE</code> or      |
| <code>SIGLIB_NEGATIVE</code>   |   |

Macros that output type `SLArrayIndex_t`

|                                      |   |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| <code>SAI_Odd(a)</code>              | Returns 1 if a is odd, 0 otherwise  |
| <code>SAI_Even(a)</code>             | Returns 1 if a is even, 0 otherwise   |
| <code>SAI_PowerOfTwo(a)</code>       | Returns 1 if a is a power of 2, 0 otherwise   |
| <code>SAI_Absolute(a)</code>         | Returns the absolute value of a, using macro function   |
| <code>SAI_Sign(a)</code>             | Returns the sign of 'a' – either <code>SIGLIB_POSITIVE</code> or  |
| <code>SIGLIB_NEGATIVE</code>         |   |
| <code>SAI_Log2(a)</code>             | Returns the log <sub>2</sub> of a. This macro is very useful for calculating log <sub>2</sub> of a radix-2 FFT length |
| <code>SAI_Log3(a)</code>             | Returns the log <sub>4</sub> of a. This macro is very useful for calculating log <sub>4</sub> of a radix-4 FFT length |
| <code>SAI_NumberOfElements(a)</code> | Returns the number of elements in the array   |
| <code>SAI_FftLength(a)</code>        | Returns the FFT length for a given log <sub>2</sub> (FFT length)  |
| <code>SAI_FftLength4(a)</code>       | Returns the FFT length for a given log <sub>2</sub> (FFT length)  |
| <code>SAI_FftLengthLog2(a)</code>    | Returns the log <sub>2</sub> (FFT length) for a given FFT length  |
| <code>SAI_FftLengthLog4(a)</code>    | Returns the log <sub>4</sub> (FFT length) for a given FFT length  |

|                                  |  |
|----------------------------------|--|
| <code>SDS_BitTest(a,Mask)</code> | Returns 1 if all bits in mask equal '1', returns 0 otherwise |
|----------------------------------|--|

|                             |   |
|-----------------------------|---|
| <code>SDS_BitMask(a)</code> | Sets 'a' LSBs to 1 and the remainder to 0 |
|-----------------------------|---|

Macros that output type `SLData_t`

|   |   |
|---|---|
| <code>SDA_Average(a,b)</code>                   | Another name for the <code>SDA_Mean</code> function                             |
| <code>SDA_Subtract(a,b,c,d)</code>              | Subtract a constant value from the data using the <code>SDA_Add</code> function |
| <code>SDS_SumAndDifference(a,b,sum,diff)</code> | Returns the sum and difference of the two values                                |

|                        |  |
|------------------------|--|
| SDS_Square(a)          | $a^2$  |
| SDS_Asinh(a)           | Inverse hyperbolic sine                                |
| SDS_Swap(a,b)          | Swap two floating point data values                    |
| SDS_Swap2(a,b)         | Swap two fixed point data values                       |
| SDS_Sort2(a,b)         | Sort 2 values, places max. result in a, uses SDS_Swap2 |
| SDS_Sort3(a,b,c)       | Sort 3 values, places max. result in a, uses SDS_Sort2 |
| SDS_Sort4(a,b,c,d)     | Sort 4 values, places max. result in a, uses SDS_Sort2 |
| SDS_Sort5(a,b,c,d,e)   | Sort 5 values, places max. result in a, uses SDS_Sort2 |
| SDS_Sort6(a,b,c,d,e,f) | Sort 6 values, max. result in a, uses SDS_Sort2        |

SDA\_SignalGenerateRamp (Address, Peak, Offset, PhasePointer, ArrayLength)

Generate a ramp signal with values from -signal amplitude to +signal amplitude and given offset. For further information, please refer to the function SDA\_SignalGenerate.

To generate a positive ramp from 0 to Max level use:

```
SDA_SigGenRamp (p_Dst, Max/2, SIGLIB_FILL, Max/2, SIGLIB_ZERO,
                ArrayLength)
```

To generate a positive ramp from 0 to -Max level use:

```
SDA_SigGenRamp (p_Dst, -Max/2, SIGLIB_FILL, -Max/2, SIGLIB_ZERO,
                ArrayLength)
```

SDA\_SignalGenerateImpulse(Address, Peak, ArrayLength)

Generate a single impulse at location 0 and “Peak” amplitude. For further information, please refer to the function SDA\_SignalGenerate.

SDA\_SignalGenerateKronekerDeltaFunction (Address, Peak, Delay, ArrayLength)

Generate a single impulse at the location specified by the Delay parameter and “Peak” amplitude. For further information, please refer to the function SDA\_SignalGenerate.

SDA\_SignalGenerateWhiteNoise(Address, Peak, Fill\_Add, ArrayLength)

Generate a bi-polar normally distributed random white noise signal with “Peak” amplitude.

SDS\_SignalGenerateWhiteNoise(Address, Peak, Fill\_Add)

Generate a single sample of a bi-polar normally distributed random white noise signal with “Peak” amplitude.

SDA\_SignalGenerateGaussianNoise(Address, Fill\_Add, Variance, pPhase, pValue, ArrayLength)

Generate a bi-polar Gaussian distributed random white noise signal with “Peak” amplitude.

SDS\_SignalGenerateGaussianNoise(Address, Fill\_Add, Variance, pPhase, pValue)

Generate a single sample of a bi-polar Gaussian distributed random white noise signal with “Peak” amplitude.

SDA\_Ones(Address, ArrayLength)

Fill array with 1.0.

SDA\_Zeros(Address, ArrayLength)

Fill array with zeros.

SDA\_Operate(IPointer1, IPointer2, OPointer, Operation, ArrayLength)

Perform a standard mathematical operation (+, -, \*, /) between the source array elements in piece wise mode. If the input pointers reference matrices then the array length should be the product of the two dimensions.

|                  |  |
|------------------|--|
| SCV_Real(r)      | Return the real component of a complex number      |
| SCV_Imaginary(i) | Return the imaginary component of a complex number |

SCV\_CopyMacro(IVect, OVect)      Copy the complex vector from IVect to OVect.

SUF\_Halt ()                      Halts execution of the application at the current location.

SUF\_Log (*pStr*)                  This function will print the string pointed to by *pStr* to the *siglib\_debug.log* file provided that the C constant SIGLIB\_ENABLE\_LOG has been #defined. SIGLIB\_ENABLE\_LOG can be defined either in the source file you wish to debug or on the compilation command line.

Some of the SigLib functions call the standard library functions, for example `sin`, `cos`, `log`, `malloc`, `free` etc. All of these stdio functions are accessed through SigLib macros and this allows ease of portability between platforms, processors and between different word lengths on a particular processor (e.g. between `sin()` or `sinf()`). The required stdio function can be chosen, for a particular application, by changing the appropriate definition in *siglib.h*. The complete list of SigLib stdio macros is:

|               |                              |                 |                        |
|---------------|------------------------------|-----------------|------------------------|
| SDS_Sin       | Sine                         | SDS_Log         | Natural logarithm      |
| SDS_Cos       | Cosine                       | SDS_Log10       | Logarithm base 10      |
| SDS_Tan       | Tangent                      | SDS_10Log10     | 10 * Log <sub>10</sub> |
| SDS_Asin      | Arc-sine                     | SDS_20Log10     | 20 * Log <sub>10</sub> |
| SDS_Acos      | Arc-cosine                   | SDS_Abs         | Absolute number        |
| SDS_Atan      | Arc-tangent                  | SDS_Exp         | Exponential            |
| SDS_Atan2     | Arc-tangent 2                | SDS_Pow         | Raise to power         |
| SDS_Sinh      | Hyperbolic Sine              | SDS_Floor       | Floor function         |
| SDS_Cosh      | Hyperbolic Cosine            | SDS_Ceil        | Ceiling function       |
| SDS_Tanh      | Hyperbolic Tangent           | SDS_Fmod        | Floating point         |
| SDS_Sqrt      | Square root                  | modulo function |                        |
| SDS_Log2Macro | Log2 without error detection | SDS_Nearest     | Round to nearest       |

SigLib also includes C/C++ macro functions for the allocation and de-allocation of memory arrays. The macros are described below.

The parameter '*N*' defines the number of elements in the array.

The parameter '*M*' defines the period of the sinusoid being generated.

|   |   |
|---|---|
| SUF_VectorArrayAllocate ( <i>N</i> )  | Allocate an array of SLData_t type  |
| SUF_FftCoefficientAllocate ( <i>N</i> )                                       | Allocate a radix-2 FFT coefficient array of SLData_t  |
| SUF_FftCoefficientAllocate4 ( <i>N</i> )                                      | Allocate a radix-4 FFT coefficient array of SLData_t  |
| SUF_FftCoefficientAllocate ( <i>N</i> )                                       | Allocate an FIR extended filter state array of SLData_t   |
| SUF_FirExtendedArrayAllocate ( <i>N</i> )                                     | Allocate an IIR filter state array of SLData_t  |
| SUF_IirStateArrayAllocate ( <i>N</i> )  | Allocate an IIR coefficient array of SLData_t   |
| SUF_IirCoefficientAllocate ( <i>N</i> )                                       | Allocate a carrier look up table of SLData_t type for the given carrier frequency and sample rate |
| SUF_AmCarrierArrayAllocate ... ... ( <i>CarrierFreq</i> , <i>SampleRate</i> ) | Allocate a fast sin/cos look up table of SLData_t type  |
| SUF_FastSinCosArrayAllocate ( <i>M</i> )                                      | Allocate a quick sin/cos look up table of SLData_t type   |
| SUF_QuickSinCosArrayAllocate ( <i>M</i> )                                     | Allocate a QAM carrier array of SLData_t type   |
| SUF_QamCarrierArrayAllocate ( <i>M</i> )                                      | Allocate a QPSK carrier array of SLData_t type  |
| SUF_QpskCarrierArrayAllocate ( <i>M</i> )                                     | Allocate an array of SLComplexRect_s types  |
| SUF_ComplexRectArrayAllocate ( <i>N</i> )                                     | Allocate an array of SLComplexPolar_s types   |
| SUF_ComplexPolarArrayAllocate   | Allocate an array of type   |



|  |   |
|--|---|
| (N)  | SLMicrohone_t types                         |
| SUF_MicrophoneArrayAllocate                      |   |
| (N)  |   |
|  | Allocate an array of type                   |
|  | SLArrayIndex_t types                        |
| SUF_IndexArrayAllocate (N)                       | Allocate an array of type                   |
|  | SLFixData_t types                           |
| SUF_FixDataArrayAllocate (N)                     |   |
| SUF_DifferentialEncoderArrayAllocate[wordLength] | Differential encoder/decoder look-up-tables |
| SUF_MemoryFree (SLData_t *)                      | Free the memory array                       |

**SigLib** defines the following macros to translate frequencies to bin numbers and vice versa:

SUF\_BinNumberToFrequency(Bin, FFTLength, SampleRate)      Convert the FFT bin number to the appropriate frequency. The frequency is returned as type SLData\_t.

SUF\_BinNumberToFrequency2(Bin, InvFFTLength, SampleRate)      Convert the FFT bin number to the appropriate frequency. The frequency is returned as type SLData\_t. Note this macro takes the inverse of the FFT length as a parameter and hence avoids the division operation.

SUF\_FrequencyToBinNumber(Freq, FFTLength, SampleRate)      Convert the frequency to the appropriate FFT bin number. The FFT bin number is returned as type SLArrayIndex\_t.

SUF\_FrequencyToBinNumber2(Freq, FFTLength, InvSampleRate)      Convert the frequency to the appropriate FFT bin number. The FFT bin number is returned as type SLArrayIndex\_t. Note this macro takes the inverse of the sample rate as a parameter and hence avoids the division operation.

**SigLib** defines the following macros to provide the width of the data elements:

|                                |  |
|--------------------------------|--|
| SIGLIB_DATA_WORD_LENGTH        | Returns the length of an SLData_t word       |
| SIGLIB_ARRAY_INDEX_WORD_LENGTH | Returns the length of an SLArrayIndex_t word |
| SIGLIB_FIX_WORD_LENGTH         | Returns the length of an SLFixData_t word    |

**SigLib** defines the following null pointers, these should be used when a parameter is not required because of the selected mode of operation:

|                       |                          |
|-----------------------|--------------------------|
| SIGLIB_NULL_FLOAT_PTR | Null pointer to SLData_t |
|-----------------------|--------------------------|

|                               |                                  |
|-------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| SIGLIB_NULL_FIX_PTR           | Null pointer to SLArrayIndex_t   |
| SIGLIB_NULL_COMPLEX_RECT_PTR  | Null pointer to SLComplexRect_s  |
| SIGLIB_NULL_COMPLEX_POLAR_PTR | Null pointer to SLComplexPolar_s |

SigLib, Numerix-DSP and Digital Filter Plus are trademarks of Sigma Numerix Ltd all other trademarks acknowledged.  
Sigma Numerix Ltd are continuously increasing the functionality of SigLib and reserve the right to alter the product at any time.